






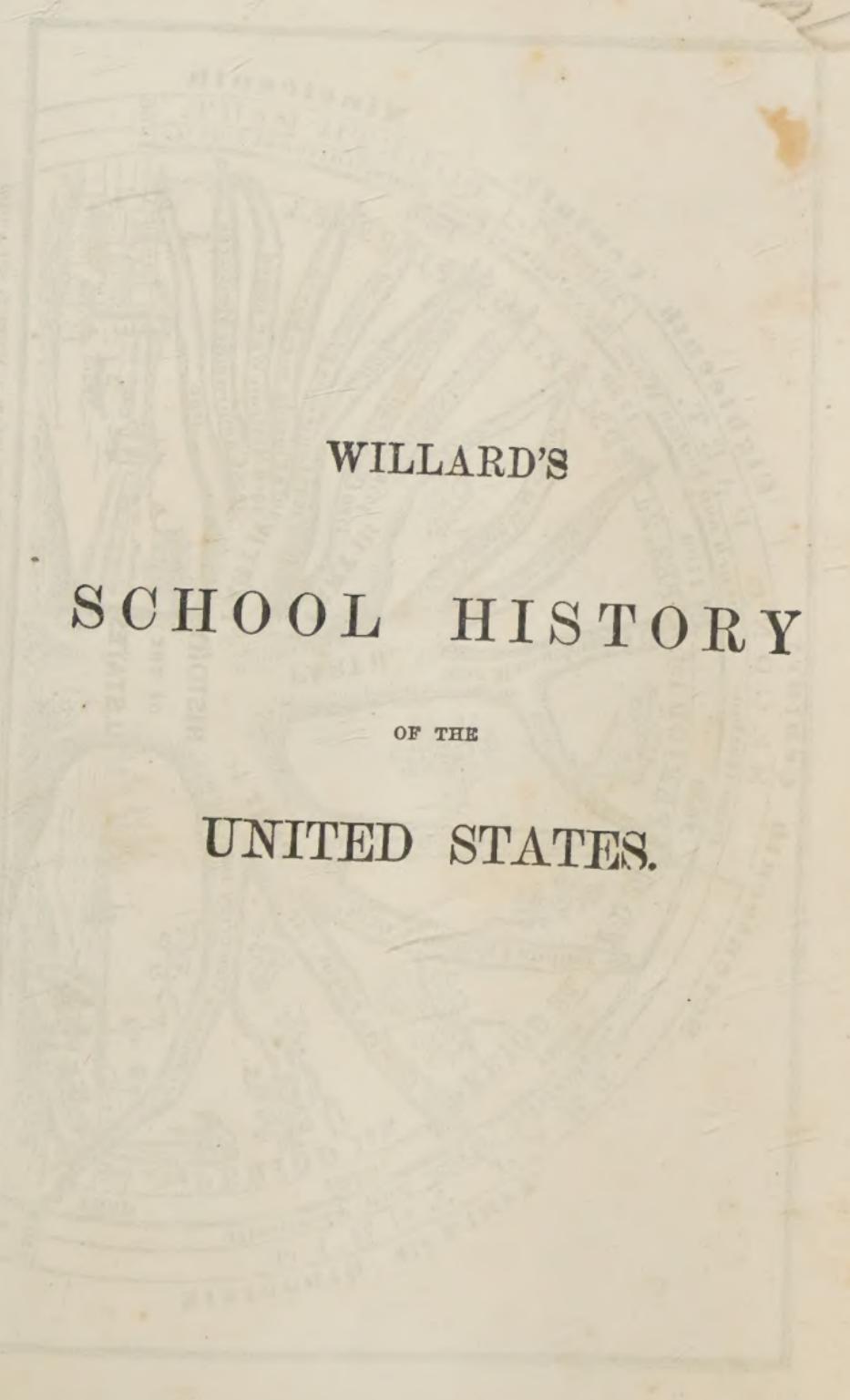
Annals of Grayton

Book

May



Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2024



WILLARD'S  
SCHOOL HISTORY  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES.



Yale  
302

ABRIDGED HISTORY  
OF  
THE UNITED STATES,  
OR  
REPUBLIC OF AMERICA.



IN UNION'S CHAIN, WITHIN ITS SPELL,  
FREEDOM AND PEACE AND SAFETY DWELL ;

NOR LION FORCE, NOR SERPENT GULE,  
SHALL HARM THE BLESSED MAIDS THE WHILE.

By EMMA WILLARD,  
AUTHOR OF A SERIES OF HISTORIES AND CHRONOGRAPHIC CHARTS.

NEW AND ENLARGED EDITION.

A. S. BARNES & COMPANY,  
NEW YORK AND CHICAGO.

1870

ABRIDGED HISTORY

OF

THE UNITED STATES

OF

REPORTING OF AMERICAN

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1860,

By A. S. BARNES & BURE

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the  
Southern District of New York

## PREFACE.

---

THE leading objects of the author of this work have been to give the events of the history with clearness and accuracy; with such illustrations of time and place addressed to the eye, as shall secure their retention in the memory; and, at the same time, with such an order of arrangement as will enable the mind to recall, at need, what it thus retains. This we regard as important, not only with respect to this particular study, but as rightly laying out the ground-plan of the intellect, so far as the whole range of history is concerned. We have endeavored to make the book convenient;—by side notes with dates—by numbered paragraphs of suitable length for reading classes—and by questions on each paragraph, placed at the bottom of the page. These questions are so put, that youthful teachers may avail themselves of the author's long experience, to acquire a manner of questioning, which, while it is not obscure, will yet oblige the pupil to think, and which will bring into relief prominent points.

We have, indeed, been desirous to cultivate the memory, the intellect, and the taste. But much more anxious have we been to sow the seeds of virtue, by showing the good in such amiable lights, that the youthful heart shall kindle into desires of imitation. And we have been careful to give clear conceptions of those deeds, which are proper to imitate; while with regard to bad actions we have, as far as possible, given the result, rather than the detail.

There are those, who rashly speak, as if in despair of the fortunes of our Republic; because, say they, political virtue has declined. If so, then is there the more need to infuse patriotism into the breasts of the coming generation. And what is so likely to effect this national self-preservation, as to give our

children, for their daily reading and study, a record of the sublime virtues of the worthies of our earliest day ; as well as of those of Washington and his compatriots? And what but the study of their dangers and toils,—their devotion of life and fortune, can make our posterity know, what our country, and our liberties have cost? And what but the History of our peculiar, and complicated fabric of government, by which it may be examined, as piece by piece the structure was built up, can impart such a knowledge of the powers it gives, and the duties it enjoins, as shall enable our future citizens to become its enlightened and judicious supporters?

---

*Remarks prefatory to the Improved Edition of 1860.*

IN publishing the revisal of this work, the author returns her thanks to the public for the constant and unceasing support which it has received ; and she desires to express a holier sentiment of gratitude arising in her heart for the belief which she has reason to entertain, that its extensive circulation in schools and families has been an agency for good ; in helping to stem a downward current, which, if unresisted, would lead our noble Republic to ruinous anarchy, and destructive disunion.

The author, while improving the work, by new illustrations (as the Chart of Early Land-Titles, and the American Temple of Time), has not suffered the important study of our country's history to be run down in her hands, by putting into a synopsis, where every inch of room is needed for essential events, either mere biographies, pictures to amuse, or imperfect likenesses of the great and good, which diminish reverence by destroying the mind's ideal of moral beauty. Let the students of this history *study*, not play, and they will be rewarded by a noble advance in education.

E. W.

*Troy, June, 1860.*

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

INTRODUCTION.		PAGE
CHAPTER		
	I. Definitions, &c.....	13
	II. The Aborigines.....	16
PART I.		
PERIOD	I. First Discovery—Columbus, &c.....	21
I.	II. English Discoveries—French.....	24
1492.	III. Spanish Discoveries, Adventures, and Cruelties—St. Augustine.....	23
PERIOD		
II.	I. Unsuccessful attempt of Gilbert, Raleigh, and others..	33
1578.	II. First settlement of Virginia .....	38
	III. Early settlement of Virginia—continued .....	43
	IV. Virginia—Hudson river—Canada.....	46
PERIOD		
III.	I. Departure of the Pilgrims from England, and their so- journ in Holland.....	51
1620.	II. Progress of the Pilgrims from Holland to America....	55
	III. The Savages—Massasoit's Alliance—Winslow's Visit to the Pokanokets.....	59
	IV. Grand Council of Plymouth—New Hampshire—Massa- chusetts Bay.....	62
	V. The Colony of Massachusetts Bay.....	64
	VI. Rhode Island and its Founder.....	66
	VII. Connecticut and its Founders.....	69
	VIII. The Pequod War.....	78
	IX. Intolerance of the times—Harvard College founded— Rhode Island—New Hampshire—Delaware.....	77
	X Maryland—Virginia from 1631 to 1641.....	79
	XI. Massachusetts threatened—the Puritans in England— Vane—UNION BEGUN.....	83

## PART II.

	CHAPTER	PAGE
PERIOD I. 1643.	I. Virginia—Second Indian Massacre—Bacon's Rebellion	87
	II. New York settled by the Dutch—taken by the English	92
	III. Pennsylvania and its Founder.....	96
	IV. New Jersey—its settlement, and various claimants....	99
	V. Miantonomoh—Rhode Island and Connecticut obtain Charters—Elliot, the Apostle of the Indians.....	102
	VI. King Philip's War—Destruction of the Narragansetts and Pokanokets.....	105
	VII. The Regicides—New Hampshire and Maine—Charter of Massachusetts annulled.....	109
	VIII. New York—its governors—Leisler—Quakers in Massa- chusetts .....	113
	IX. Jesuit Missionaries of France—their Discoveries.....	116
	X. North and South Carolina—The Great Patent—Mr. Locke's Constitution.....	122
	XI. French and Indian War.....	124
<hr/>		
PERIOD II. 1692.	I. Sir William Phipps—Cotton Mather—Salem Witch- craft—Schools—Yale College.....	129
	II. European Politics—Peace of Ryswick, which closes King William's War—Queen Anne's War soon begins .....	133
	III. Fletcher—Piracy—The Jerseys united, and joined with New York .....	136
	IV. Pennsylvania—Penn's second visit—Maryland.....	137
	V. The Huguenots—War with the Spaniards—Tuscaroras and Yamassees.....	139
	VI. Extension of the French Empire—New France.....	142
	VII. Controversy in Massachusetts, respecting a fixed salary for the Royal Governor .....	144
<hr/>		
PERIOD III. 1733.	I. Georgia and Carolina engaged in war with the Spaniards of Florida—The Slave Trade—War of the French with the Chickasaws.....	149
	II. Old French War—Capture of Louisburg—French and English claims to the basin of the Mississippi ....	152
	III. George Washington—his birth, parentage, and educa- tion—his conduct in places of trust, private and public.....	155
	IV. Congress at Albany—Convention of Governors in Vir- ginia—Braddock .....	160

CHAPTER	PAGE
V. Remainder of the Campaign of 1755—Campaign of 1756	164
VI. Campaigns of 1757 and 1758—Massacre of Ft. William Henry .....	165
VII. The Campaign of 1759—Wolfe.....	169
VIII. Wars with the Indians.....	173

PART III.

PERIOD I. 1763.	I. Causes of the Revolutionary War.....	179
	II. Congress at New York—Repeal of the Stamp Act.....	183
	III. Second attempt to tax America—Opposition.....	186
	IV. Seizure of Tea—Boston Port Bill—Arrival of British Troops .....	190
	V. Congress at Philadelphia.....	192
	VI. War approaches—Massachusetts—British Parliament..	195
	VII. The War begins by the Battle of Lexington.....	197
	VIII. Battle of Bunker Hill—Washington, Commander-in- Chief .....	201
	IX. Invasion of Canada—Death of Montgomery .....	203
	X. Washington enters Boston—Disasters in Canada.....	208
	List of American, French, and British Officers.....	212

PERIOD II. 1776.	I. Lord Howe attempts pacification—American defeat at Long Island.....	215
	II. Disasters following the defeat on Long Island.....	219
	III. American successes at Trenton and Princeton.....	222
	IV. Difficulties and exertions of Congress—Campaign of 1777—Arrival of Lafayette .....	224
	V. Burgoyne's invasion—1777.....	227
	VI. Battle of Brandywine—British in Philadelphia—Ger- mantown,—1777.....	231
	VII. Battle of Monmouth—Seat of War transferred to the South,—1778 .....	236
	VIII. Campaigns of 1779 and 1780—the British conquer the South.....	239
	IX. Arnold's Treason.....	244
	X. Robert Morris—Revolt of the Pennsylvania Line— Cornwallis at the South.....	248
	XI. Campaign of 1781—Battle of Eutaw Springs—Cornwal- lis taken at Yorktown.....	251
	XII. Vermont—Measures of Peace—Fears and Discontents of the Army happily quieted.....	256
	XIII. Depression subsequent to the War—Shay's Rebellion— Constitution formed .....	259

## PART IV.

	CHAPTER	PAGE
PERIOD I. 1789.	I. Organization of the New Government—the Funding System—Party lines strongly drawn.....	265
	II. The Moravians—The Indians of the Northwest.....	268
	III. America resents the Indignities of France—Adams's Administration—Jefferson's.....	274
<hr/>		
PERIOD II. 1803.	I. War with Tripoli—Troubles with England and France	279
	II. War of 1812—Condition of the Country—Hull's Surrender .....	285
	III. Naval Victories—Guerriere—Macedonian—Java.....	288
	IV. Campaign of 1813—Massacre of Frenchtown.....	291
	V. Northern Army—Loss of the Chesapeake—Creek War	295
	VI. The Niagara Frontier—Battles of Chippewa and Bridge-water .....	298
	VII. Washington taken by the British—Baltimore threatened	301
	VIII. British invasion and defeat at New Orleans .....	306
	IX. Peace with England—Naval combats—War with Algiers	309
	X. Internal Improvements—Seminole War.....	311
<hr/>		
PERIOD III. 1820.	I. The Missouri Question—The Tariff—Gen. Lafayette's Visit .....	317
	II. Black Hawk's War—The Cholera—Nullification.....	321
	III. The Aboriginal Tribes of the Mississippi go to the Far West—The Florida War .....	324
	IV. The Bank Question—The Revulsion—Van Buren's Administration—Harrison's Election and Death.....	329
	V. Mr. Tyler's administration—Mobs—Disturbances in Rhode Island—Anti-Rentism—Mormonism, &c....	338
	VI. Texas—Mexico—Causes of Annexation, and the Mexican War .....	339
	VII. Mexican War—Battles of the Rio Grande—Gen. Taylor	347
	VIII. Army of the Centre—General Wool's march—Battle of Buena Vista.....	358
	IX. Army of the West—Conquest of New Mexico and California—Gen. Kearney.....	359
	X. Doniphan's Expedition to Chihuahua—Revolt in New Mexico .....	364
	XI. Scott's Invasion—Vera Cruz—Cerro Gordo.....	367
	XII. State of the Army—Its March—Contreras—Churubusco	371
	XIII. Armistice—Molinos del Rey—Chapultepec—Mexico..	376
	XIV. Rozales—Treaty of Peace.....	380

PERIOD	CHAPTER	PAGE
IV. 1848.	I. Oregon—American California—Capt. Wilkes' Exploring Expedition—Capt. Fremont's Explorations—Discovery of Gold, and its effects. ....	387
	II. Taylor's Inauguration—Close of the 30th Congress—California—Establishment of Civil Government—Difficulty with Texas .....	397
	III. Congressional Eloquence—The Compromise—Death of President Taylor .....	306
V. 1850.	I. Sketch of the Condition of the Aborigines in 1860—Degree of Civilization—Diversities of Character, Wars, &c. ....	408
	II. Second Era of good feeling—Invasion of Cuba—Evidences of Progress in the World—in the Republic of America .....	414
EXTENDING TO 1860.	III. Brilliant diplomacy—Commodore Perry and the Japan Expedition—China .....	417
	IV. Kansas-Nebraska Bill—First settlement of Kansas—Invasion of the Polls—Retaliatory Measures—Provisional Government—Topeka Constitution .....	421
	V. Civil War in Kansas—Sacking of Lawrence .....	428
	VI. Geary's troubles—Presidential election—Walker's governorship—The Lecompton Constitution .....	432
	VII. The Sound Dues—Dr. Kane's Arctic Expedition—Walker, the Filibuster—Mormon War—The Revulsion—Paraguay—England and America .....	438
	VIII. Territories—Routes of Travel to the Pacific—Causes of the Diminution of Foreign Immigration—Riots—Disasters by sea and land—Benefactions—Mount Vernon Association .....	446
	IX. Harper's Ferry .....	450

PART V.

I. 1860 TO 1867.	I. Presidential Nominations—Character of Abraham Lincoln—Debate with Douglas—Secession—Mr. Lincoln's Inauguration .....	459
	II. Fort Sumter—Call for troops—Opening of the War—Bull Run—Fort Donelson .....	465
	III. McClellan's Peninsular Campaign—Pope's Campaign—Vicksburg Campaign—Naval operations—Enlistment and Draft—Elections .....	473
	IV. Number of opposing forces—Grant made Lieutenant-General—Battle of the Wilderness—Sherman's Campaign—Farragut in Mobile Bay—Kearsarge and Alabama—Re-election of President Lincoln—Thomas defeats Hood .....	494
	V. Sherman's March through the Carolinas—Siege of Petersburg and Richmond—Fall of Richmond—Pursuit and surrender of Lee—Closing events of the war .....	490
	VI. Financial History of the Parties—Conflicting Policy of President and of Congress—Proposed Constitutional Amendment—Reconstruction Law—Russian America—Electro-Magnetic Telegraph .....	497
	CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES .....	506

EARLY LAND TITLES DERIVED FROM THE CROWN OF ENGLAND

EITHER DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY.

1578  
THE WHOLE COAST OF NORTH-AMERICA GRANTED TO SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT

1606  
CALLED ALSO THE S. VIRGINIA COMPANY  
LONDON COMPANY FROM 34° TO 41° N. L.

VIRGINIA 1607

LONDON COMPANY DISSOLVED 1624  
AND ITS RIGHTS REVERT TO THE CROWN

1606  
CALLED ALSO THE N. VIRGINIA COMPANY,  
PLYMOUTH COMPANY FROM 34° TO 45° N. L.

PLYMOUTH COLONY 1620

GRAND COUNCIL OF PLYMOUTH 40° TO 48°  
SIR F. GORGES, Pres., MASON Sec 1620  
MASON'S PATENT 1620

CONNECTICUT 1631 MASSACHUSETTS 1628

MARYLAND 1632

THE PLYMOUTH COMPANY DISSOLVED IN 1634  
AND ITS RIGHTS REVERT TO THE CROWN

CHARLES II GIVES AWAY TO HIS FAVORITES, THE CAROLINAS, 1663.

1664 PATENT TO THE DUKE OF YORK FROM DELAWARE BAY TO NOVA SCOTIA. NEW YORK NOW ENGLISH

1665 HE EXTENDS THE GRANT, GIVING TO SEVERAL NOBLEMEN, A LARGE EMPIRE FROM OCEAN TO OCEAN

PENNSYLVANIA 1681

DELAWARE 1682

GEORGE II GIVES A CORPORATION HEADED BY OGLETHORPE THE FIRST GROUND PLOT OF GEORGIA 1733.

CHART OF EARLY LAND TITLES.

16th

17th CENTURY

18th

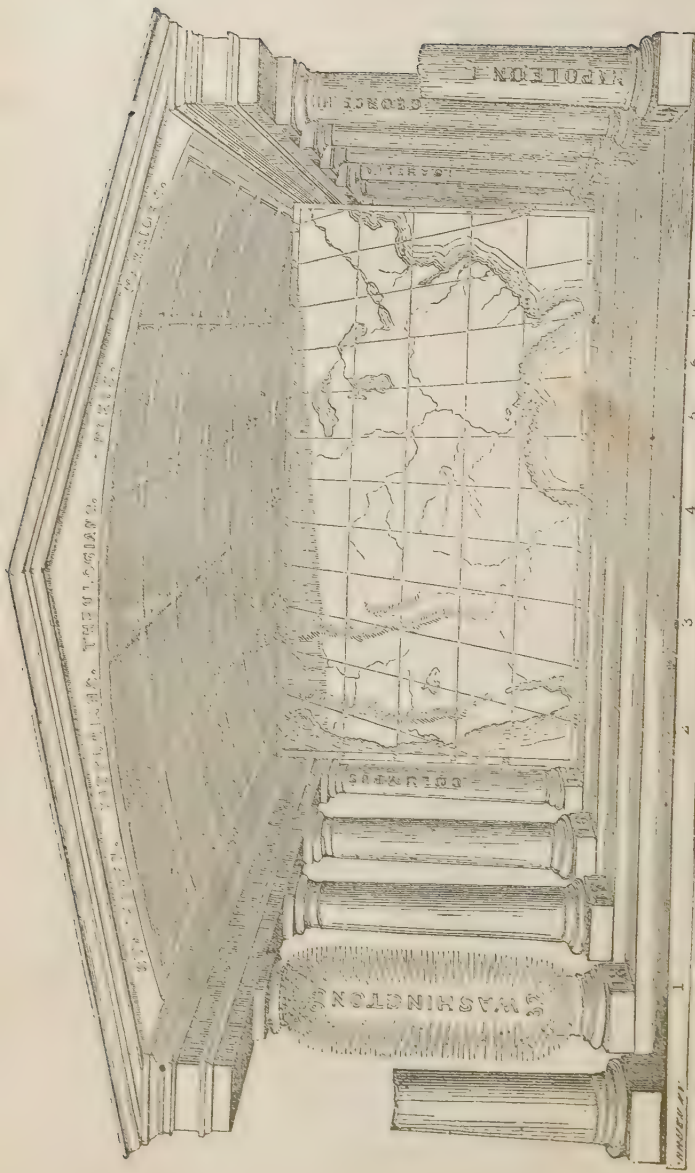
EXPLANATION  
OF THE  
CHART OF EARLY LAND-TITLES—  
(i. e., *Charters and Patents.*)

---

THIS Chart is valuable for reference, and for school study. Scholars who have learned it, in connection with the history, have found their memories greatly eased in this most difficult portion of their study,—to acquire things so important to be distinguished, yet so apt to be confounded.

This Chart, in teaching, should be regarded as a diagram to be drawn. Let the pupil begin it, when in the history he comes to the first, or Gilbert's Patent, on a large sheet of paper. On the left-hand line, or line of time, let each century be divided by alternate lines of dark and light shading, as on the Tree Chronographer;—then each patent can be placed in its exact time, which in a very small space is not possible. Then, on coming to another English patent, or charter, let the diagram be continued by drawing that; and so on to Oglethorpe's, when the diagram will be completed. The pupil's explanation of it will constitute an easy and highly satisfactory examination of the subject.

All the patents and charters here represented, are shown to be derived either *directly* from the Crown of England, or *indirectly*—that is, from some company or individual, who formerly derived the title from a sovereign of England.



THE ORIGINAL 13 U. STATES.

| PART OF N. F. | N.W.TER. | LOUISIANA.

| FLA. | TEX. | OR. |

CEDED BY MEXICO.

AMERICAN TEMPLE OF TIME.

1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8

DESCRIPTION  
OF THE  
AMERICAN TEMPLE OF TIME.

---

THIS is a modification of the author's TEMPLE OF TIME. By the method of perspective, and by that alone, can any past time be made to appear to the eye as past, and in the exact proportion in which it is past.

The Temple of Time is a vast imaginary edifice, with pillars on each side, each of which represents a century. Each corresponding two, represent the same century. This is shown to be an American Temple of Time, because the map of AMERICA (the Republic) is drawn over the perspective, cutting off all the centuries beyond the 15th,—that in which America was discovered; and also by the name of WASHINGTON, here shown as the glory of America.

The floor and the roof of the Temple are divided by transverse lines into parts, each of which corresponds with the bottoms and the tops of the mated pillars, and designates the same century. Eight unequal divisions are also made on the floor by lines running back from the front. The use of these is shown in the directions to the pupil for drawing the Temple.

This sketch may be enlarged and filled up by the pupil, by a drawing of his own. Should he make his drawing four times the lineal size (sixteen times the real) of this, he will have room to place on it names and words, which, after he has learned them as connected with the history, will be to his eye a picture of actors and events as they exist, or have existed, in Time.

---

\* This was, in 1851, at the World's Fair in London, adjudged by a jury of nations, to be a new and a true method of delineating time; and to this author, was accordingly awarded a medal.

## TEACHING THE CHRONOGRAPHERS.

(A large painted Chronographer is prepared to accompany this work, which can be hung in presence of the class, and explained by the teacher.)

---

1. THE word CHRONOGRAPHER is composed of two Greek words: *chronos*, time, and *grapho*, to delineate; and literally signifies *a visible delineation of time*.

To the *First, or Tree Chronographer*, is now added the *Second, or American Temple of Time*. The first may properly be called a *logical*, the second a *perspective* Chronographer.

Each of these chronographers has its peculiar excellencies. The first is for the learner to use in studying the work; of which it contains an exact plan, which is both *logical* and *chronographical*. It is *logical*, because it shows that this History is divided, as every great subject should be, into parts clearly defined; and that these being properly subdivided, the division completely exhausts the subject. It is *chronographical*, because the whole subject, with its divisions and subdivisions of time, is addressed to the sight. So that whoever learns this book in connection with this chronographer, will not only be laying a permanent foundation for a knowledge of American history, but also of clear and logical habits of mind.

### 2. THE LOGICAL, OR TREE CHRONOGRAPHER

is divided into two parts, the inner of which is called the HISTORIC TREE, and the outer the CIRCLE OF TIME,—which represents *the whole time* of the American history, from the discovery of America in 1492, to the present day. The *Historic Tree* has *four large limbs*, which represent the four *parts* into which the history is divided. *The branches* of these limbs represent *epochs* of the history. An *epoch* is an important event in any

history, which, having happened on some certain day, or in some one year, is regarded but as *a point* in time. These branches, then, which represent the epochs, *meet the circle of time in certain points*, which are their *dates*.

3. Points may divide a line: so we suppose *our circular line of time to be divided, by these points or epochs, into PERIODS*. The word *period* is here used to denote an unbroken succession of years, whether few or many. Each of the four parts of the history has one more epoch than period. The reason of this is, that the same epoch is used for the end of one period and the beginning of another. The outer circumference of the circle of time is the *line of centuries*. It represents the centuries through which American history has passed. *A century is a hundred years*.

4. All Christian countries reckon time from the birth of our Lord and Saviour Jesus Christ; which is called the CHRISTIAN ERA, OR GREAT CHRISTIAN EPOCH.

This continent was unknown to our European forefathers until its discovery, in 1492, eight years before the close of the 15th century. Tracing, then, on the chronographer, from 1492 to 1500, we find eight years only, belonging to the 15th century. From 1500 to 1600 is the whole of the 16th century; from 1600 to 1700, the 17th century; from 1700 to 1800, the 18th century; and from 1800 to the *present day* is more than half of the 19th century: so that the whole course of American history exceeds three centuries and a half.

Since the close of 1800, we have lived in the 19th century: so, young persons past eighteen, are said to be in their nineteenth year. Any date in a century belongs to a century *one higher than the hundreds which express the date—excepting only those dates which are expressed by exact hundreds*. Thus, 1704 belongs to the 18th century; 1825 to the 19th; while 1700 belongs to the 17th century, and 1800 to the 18th.

5. The graduated part of the circle of time is called the *scale of years*. This is first divided, by alternate light and shade, into *tens of years*. Then, by black lines through the

light tens, and white ones through the black tens, the whole scale is divided into years: so that, having any given date, you can at once refer it, on the chronographer, to its proper place. For example, suppose I ask you, where, on the circle of time, is the place of King Philip's war, which occurred in 1675? First look for the large figures which denote the centuries, until the eye catches **1600**: then trace to the right, to 1650, take two tens beyond, and half of the next, and this will compose 1675, the required date.

6. The first large limb of the historic tree represents PART I. of the History. Observe the points of intersection of the first and fourth branches with the graduated circle of time. The first point is at 1492, the epoch of *the Discovery of America by Columbus*; and the fourth is 1643, when *the first Confederacy or Union* took place. This is an important epoch, as it marks the time when several colonies confederated together, thus laying the foundation of our great Federal Republic. This FIRST PART, then, extends from 1492 to 1643. The subject, as seen above the scale of years, is, THE DISCOVERY AND EARLY SETTLEMENT of the different parts of the country. It occupies a century and a half, viz., eight years of the 15th century, the whole of the 16th, and nearly half of the 17th. It extends through a longer time than either of the other Parts of the History, although there are fewer events for the historian to record.

7. The SECOND PART extends from 1643, the epoch of *the Beginning of the Confederacy*, to 1763, *the Close of the French war*. Previously to this war, the English had the government over what, after the Revolution, became the United States, or Republic of AMERICA. The Second Part of the History occupies 120 years. It embraces the last half of the 17th century, and the first part of the 18th. The subject of the Second Part is, COLONIZATION—FRENCH AND INDIAN WARS: that is, the colonization of this country by the English, and the wars which our hardy and suffering forefathers had, with the Indians and the French of Canada.

8. The THIRD PART of the History contains more numerous events, although shorter in time, than either of the others,—comprising only 26 years in the last half of the 18th century. Its subject is, THE REVOLUTION—in which the Americans, having been oppressed by the British Government, fought the troops which they sent over, and, under the command of WASHINGTON, defeated them, and made the United States of AMERICA a free and independent nation. The epoch to which this part extends, is *the Adoption of the present Constitution of the United States—1789.*

9. The FOURTH PART extends from the adoption of the Constitution to the present time. It comprises the whole time of our FREE CONSTITUTIONAL GOVERNMENT, which now (in 1860) is 71 years. It occupies the last portion of the 18th century, and what is passed of the 19th.

## THE PERSPECTIVE CHRONOGRAPHER;

OR,

### AMERICAN TEMPLE OF TIME.

THIS being a new feature of the work, the description of it stands by itself on a preceding page. Let the pupil answer from it the following questions:

By the method of perspective, how is past time made to appear? What is the Temple of Time? How is the American Temple modified from this? What do the pillars represent? How are the floor and the roof divided in regard to time?

Since American history does not yet occupy so much as four centuries, it may better be studied on the first Chronographer, logically as well as chronographically; but the perspective method, or that of the Temple of Time, is better for laying it up in the memory. It is also a method applicable to all history. But a larger Temple is indispensable for this purpose.

Before giving the pupil directions for drawing the Temple, we would suggest that he should be occasionally exercised, during his studies, with transferring dates from the Tree Chronographer to the Temple. The small one on the frontispiece will be sufficient for this purpose. Suppose these questions be asked: Where on the pillar of the 15th century, should be placed the epoch of the discovery of America? Where on that of the 16th, that of Gilbert's Patent?—and so on, through all the epochs of the history. Then show how the four Parts of the history would occupy the pillars of the Temple.

It would be well also to have the pupils accustomed to consider, as they read of names of statesmen, &c., where on the Temple their names should be placed. This is explained in the following

*Directions for making and filling up an enlarged drawing of the American temple.*—Pupils accustomed to draw diagrams, can draw by imitation; but a few

lessons from a teacher who understands the science of perspective, would enable them to draw this Temple with far more ease and accuracy. We recommend its being drawn on a sheet of drawing-paper which allows of its being enlarged four times its lineal size; that is, make the base lines four times as long, the pillars four times as high, and so on, every line being put in its proper proportional place, each being thus increased in length; and the spaces between the lines must also be increased by four. The whole Temple, when completed, will then be enlarged in the proportion of the square of 1 to the square of 4—i. e., 1 : 16.

*Pillars.*—Divide, by dots, the back line of each pillar into ten equal parts, for tens of years. The first dot from the bottom is 10 years, the second 20, the third 30, and so on to a hundred. On the 18th pillar, near the 9th ten (1789), print across the pillar Washington. This was the time when he became President. (The name as on the frontispiece must be left off.) Next—in 1797, three years before the close of the century—put down J. Adams. Then, beginning at the bottom or beginning of the 19th century, place, at the time of accession to the presidency, the name of each president. Before the time of the presidents, place on the pillars the names of the sovereigns of England. (*For the names of the Presidents and their dates, see p. 315.*)

*Names for the Roof.*—Place the eminent men found in the history, according to their character as WARRIORS, STATESMEN, &c., each in his own time and place on the roof. As these drawings are mostly to illustrate a history which treats more of men in these characters than in the others mentioned on the roof as THEOLOGICALS, POETS, &c., a greater proportion of the room can at pleasure be taken. Also other departments, as for INVENTORS, DISCOVERERS, &c.,—the small size of the frontispiece not allowing the full development of the plan.

*Map.*—Let this be carefully drawn and imitated from the 11th map of the series, with its eight divisions, showing the order in time of each.

*Floor.*—The unequal divisions, 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, refer to the eight divisions of the map, and show a plan for marking on the floor (as are the *Nations* on the Temple of Time) every STATE in the Union: the first settled (Virginia), on the left hand; and so on, in the order of time in which the old thirteen were settled, and afterwards when each was admitted to the Union.\* Between two lines drawn from the front to the beginning of the 17th century, write the name VIRGINIA. Then place 7 where the lines stop. This will show that Virginia was settled in 1607. Next put (as next settled) MASSACHUSETTS, adding another line—stopping a little short, and placing 20, as this State was settled in 1620. In drawing the lines for Virginia, leave at the foot of the left-hand pillars sufficient room for setting down the principal battle-fields, as on the Temple of Time.

\* These dates may be found on Map 13.

*Questions on Teaching the Chronographers.*—1. Of what words is the term Chronographer composed? What is its literal meaning? What is said concerning the First and Second Chronographers? What is the peculiar excellence of the First, and why may it be called logical?—why chronological?—2. Describe the two parts into which the First is divided. What do the branches of the four large limbs represent? What is an epoch? What is signified by the meeting of the branches with the circle of time?—3. How is this circle divided so as to represent the divisions of the history? Why has each of the four parts one more epoch than period? How are centuries represented?—4. What is the great Christian epoch? Explain the whole time of American history by centuries? In what century are you living? To what does any date in a century belong? What one exception is there to this general rule? Give examples.—5. Explain the scale of years. Give an example of finding on this circle any date.—6. Describe the first large limb of the historic tree.—7. Describe the second.—8. The third.—9. The fourth.



MAP N<sup>o</sup> 1.

WANDERINGS & LOCATIONS  
OF THE  
ABORIGINES.





Smith showing his Compass

## INTRODUCTION.

### CHAPTER I.

Definitions, &c.

1. THE subject of this work is the United States of America; or, as those States are sometimes called, the Republic or Nation of America. CHAP. I.  
Subject.

What constitutes a nation? First, there must be a country, with the natural divisions of land and water; second, there must be men, women, and children to inhabit that country; and third, those inhabitants must be bound together in one, by living under a common government, which extends its protection over all, and which all are bound to obey. Its triple  
division.

2. To every nation there belongs a *history*: For whenever the inhabitants of any large portion of the earth are united under one government, *important public events* must there have taken place. *The record of these events* constitutes the history of that country. Any na-  
tion's his-  
tory.

3. The events of history should always be recorded, with the circumstances of *time* and *place*. To tell *when* events happened, is to give their chronology;

1. What is the subject of this work? What three parts compose a nation? — 2. What constitutes any nation's history? 3. How should events be recorded? What is it to give their chronology?

## CHAP. I.

Connect-  
ed with its  
geography  
and chro-  
nology.

Where  
ur coun-  
try is.

Its lati-  
tude and  
longitude.

Its cli-  
mate.

Soil.

Natural  
advan-  
tages.

A good re-  
gion for  
one  
nation.

to tell *where* they happened, their geography. The history of a nation, is therefore inseparably connected with its geography and chronology. Chronology may properly be called the skeleton of history, geography the base on which it stands.

4. First, let us inquire, where is the country of which we desire to know the history? In the vast universe, is a system of planets surrounding a sun, hence called the solar system. The third planet from the sun is called the earth. On the earth's surface, the UNITED STATES OF AMERICA occupies a northern portion of the smaller of two continents. In extent, it is one of the largest nations of the world.

5. In longitude, the Republic of America ranges through sixty degrees, from the Atlantic ocean to the Pacific. In latitude, it reaches from the Cape of Florida, in north latitude twenty-five degrees, to British and Russian America in forty-nine. Thus stretching through the greater part of the northern temperate zone, it includes every variety of climate, from the hot unhealthy swamps of Florida, to the cold mountainous regions of northern New England, and the north-western territories.

6. The soil and productions of our country are as various as its climate. Compared with other countries, it contains a large proportion of arable land; and what is of the utmost consequence to the accommodation of man, it is *well watered*. On the whole, it may be pronounced, one of the most fertile, healthy, and desirable regions of the earth.

7. In observing the United States, there is much to convince us, that an Almighty, Overruling Providence, designed from the first, to place here a great, united people. Although this country, being one

---

3. Their geography? Are chronology and geography connected with history?—4. In regard to the universe where, as astronomy teaches, are the United States? In regard to the earth's surface, or as respects geography, where is this country? What can you say of its extent?—5. What of its longitude? Of its latitude? Climate?—6. Soil and productions? Its natural advantages generally?—7. Does this region seem designed for one great nation, or for several small ones?

nation, is by means of its mighty rivers, well enabled to carry its inland productions to the ocean, and thence to foreign markets; yet, if it were divided, like southern Europe, into different nations, this would not be the case. CHAP. I.

8. For this country is not, like southern Europe, indented with deep bays, gulfs, seas, and channels; whereby many small nations, can each be accommodated with a portion of the sea-board. If our long rivers were owned in part by one government, and in part by another, the commerce of the inland nations, would be perpetually hampered, by those who owned the sea-board, and the mouths of the rivers. For they would be likely to insist on being paid for the use of their ports; and this would naturally breed quarrels and bloodshed. This is one reason among many, to show that the American people should continue to be ONE NATION; and, in the words of Washington, "frown indignantly on the first attempt to sever the Union." Necessary evils of division.  
  
Washington's solemn injunction.

9. The government of this vast nation, which contains nearly thirty millions of inhabitants, is a **FEDERATIVE REPUBLIC**. It is *federative*, because in it there are several separate, independent states, confederated under one head, or general government. It is a *republic*, because the rulers are chosen by the people. The manner in which they are to be chosen, and in which they are bound to administer the government, is set forth in the **CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES**. This therefore, should be early learned, and thoroughly understood by every American. The American government made for all.  
  
Should be understood by all.

10. The government of the United States is acknowledged by the wise and good of other nations, to be the most free, impartial, and righteous government. It is equitable and should be sustained.

7. Why is it in regard to commerce better for one than for several? What part of the world admits of several small nations, and why?—8. Mention one among many evils, which would result from dividing this nation into several smaller ones? What is the language of Washington on this subject?—9. How many inhabitants has the United States? What is its form of government? Why federative? Why a republic? Where can we learn the form of government and our duties as citizens?

**CHAP. II.** ment of the world; but all agree, that for such a government to be sustained many years, the principles of truth and righteousness, taught in the Holy Scriptures must be practised. *The rulers must govern in the fear of God, and the people conscientiously obey the laws.*

## CHAPTER II.

### The Aborigines.

**1.** BEFORE the territory of which our history treats, was inhabited by the ancestors of its present inhabitants, it was occupied by another and a different race. The red men were here, when the European settlers came; and either as friends or as enemies, for a time they dwelt contiguous to each other, and their history is blended.

**2.** The aborigines, or natives of the country, were by the Europeans, called Indians. As found by the earliest settlers, they may be considered under three general divisions. First, the DELAWARES or ALGONQUINS; second, the IROQUOIS, and third, the MOBILIANS.

**3.** The Delawares, or Algonquins, were formerly called the *Lenni Lenape*, and the Iroquois the *Mengwe*. They have a tradition that, in ancient times, each came, though in somewhat different directions, from far distant western regions. Happening to meet as they approached the Mississippi, they united, and made war upon the Allegewi, a more civilized people, who inhabited the great valley of the Mississippi, and dwelt in cities. The *Allegewi* were defeated and fled down the river. Perhaps the Mobil-

**10.** What is the character of this government? What is necessary to its being permanently sustained?

**CHAPTER II.—2.** What term is used to distinguish the race found in this country by our ancestors? What three general divisions may be made?—**3.** Give an account of the tradition of the two former, respecting the direction from which they anciently came. Where did they unite? What more civilized nation did they find? What happened to this nation?

ian tribes were their descendants. Perhaps portions of them went still further south, and were the builders of those cities, the ruins of which have lately been found in Central America. CHAP. II.

4. The Lenape and Mengwe, says the tradition, soon divided. The former crossed the Alleghany mountains—explored, and took possession of the sea coast, fixing their chief place of council, or seat of government, on the Delaware river. This river received from a European nobleman the name, which it communicated to the Indian confederacy. As this confederacy increased in numbers, various tribes went off from the parent stock. But they still looked up to the Delawares, and gave them, long after, the reverential title of “grandfather.” Delaware river the principal seat of the Delawares.

5. Of these branches of the Delaware or Algonquin race, the first who figure in the early history of our nation, were the POWHATANS, a confederacy of thirty tribes; so called from their great sachem, Powhatan. His principal residence was on James river, near the site of Richmond. His authority extended throughout the lowlands, and to the falls of the rivers. Powhatan—thirty tribes.

6. Farther west, and extending to the mountains, were two confederacies, with whom the Powhatans were at war: the *Manahoacks*, consisting of eight tribes on the north, and the *Monacans* of five, stretching southerly into Carolina. Afterwards the latter changed their name, to that of *Tuscaroras*, removed northerly, and joined the Iroquois. The *Yamasees* were in South Carolina. Manahoacks—eight tribes.  
Monacans—five tribes.

7. Of the *Algonquins of New England* the first known were the *POKANOKETS* or *Wanpanoags*,

3. What conjectures may be formed respecting their descendants?
4. According to the tradition what course did the Lenape take? Where fix their place of council? When they became numerous what became of the various tribes of their descendants? What were their sentiments and language towards the Delawares?
5. Which of them are first brought into notice? What the number of tribes? Their principal seat? How far did their limits extend?
6. Give an account of the Manahoacks. Of the Monacans. Tell from Map I. which is the most northerly, the Manahoacks or Monacans. Where were the Catawbis? The Yamasees?

## CHAP. II.

The first  
N. E.  
tribe  
known to  
the  
English.

1614.

III  
usage of  
the na-  
tives by  
the Eng-  
lish.

Indians  
of the  
Merri-  
mack.

Of Mas-  
sachusetts  
Bay

which produced the two most remarkable savage chiefs of New England, the good MASSASOIT, and his valiant son, KING PHILIP. Their residence was at *Montaup* or Mount Hope, near Bristol, in Rhode Island.

8. The government of the sachem of the *Pokanokets* extended over the southern part of Massachusetts, and the eastern of Rhode Island. A number of tribes of different names were his subjects; among others the *Nausets* of Cape Cod. In 1614, CAPT. HUNT, an English ship-master, who accompanied CAPT. JOHN SMITH in exploring the coast, wickedly seized and carried off twenty-seven of these unoffending natives, and sold them in Europe as slaves. One of them, named Tisquantum, found his way to England, where he learned the English language, was kindly treated, and sent back to his country. He was afterwards of great service to the first English settlers, as interpreter.

9. The PAWTUCKETS whose principal seat was upon the Merrimack, near its mouth, extended south, until they met the territories of the Massachusetts. The MASSACHUSETTS were scattered about the bay, which bears their name. Their territories reached those of the Pawtuckets on the north, and the Pokanokets on the south. The authority of their chief sachem was acknowledged by several minor tribes, some of whom resided as far west as Deerfield. The principal person of this confederacy, as found by the English, was the squaw sachem, or "Massachusetts Queen." Her residence was beautifully located on a hill at Milton, eight miles south of Boston.

10. The NARRAGANSETTS held their chief seat and the residence of their grand sachem on the island of Canonicut, in the bay which still bears their name. Westerly they extended to within four or five miles

---

7. Learn from the Map what are the principal tribes of New England, and more particularly from the book, the location of the Pokanokets. What noted chiefs were there of this tribe? 8. What wicked act did an English captain do? To what Indians? Did any one taken away return?—9. What can you say of the Pawtuckets? Of the Massachusetts? Their principal person? Her residence!

of the Paucatuck river, where their territories met those of the Pequods. On the east they joined the Pokanokets. Their grand chief, CANONICUS, was, when the English arrived, an aged man; and he had associated with him in his government, his nephew, MI-ANTOÑOMOH. The commodious and pleasant location of the Narragansetts, appears, in their case, to have abated the natural ferocity of the savage character.

CHAP. II.

Indians  
of Nar-  
raganset  
Bay

11. The more barbarous PEQUODS occupied the eastern portion of Connecticut, their lands meeting those of the Narragansetts. The residence of their great sachem, SASSACUS, was on the heights of Groton, near the river then called the Pequod, since, the Thames. The Mohegans, under UNCAS, whose seat was where Norwich now stands, were subject to the haughty chief of the Pequods; but they bore his yoke with impatience, and when he made war upon the whites, Uncas took part against him. The Indians of northern New England had the general appellation of *Turanteens* or *Abenakis*.

Of east-  
ern Con-  
necticut.

12. The New England tribes had, a short time previous to the settlement of the English, suffered a plague of unexampled mortality. It was probably the yellow fever; for we are told that its victims, both before and after death, "were of the color of a yellow garment." Not less than nine-tenths of the inhabitants seem, in some parts of the country, to have been destroyed. Thus Divine Providence prepared the way for another and more civilized race.

Plague  
among  
the abo-  
riginals.

13. The Iroquois, Mengwe or Mingoes, were found by the earliest settlers in Canada, inhabiting the shores of the St. Lawrence. At first they appear to have been less warlike than the *Hurons* or *Wyandots*, by whom they were attacked. The Iroquois

10. Give an account of the location of the Narragansetts. Their grand chief. His associate. The effects of their position on their character. — 11. Describe the position of the Pequods. Their sachem's name and place of residence. That of the Mohegan sachem. — 12. What remarkable visitation of Providence occurred among the natives a short time before the English came? How great a proportion were destroyed? 13. How were the Iroquois found by the discoverers of Canada?

## CHAP. II.

The  
Five  
Nations  
in west-  
ern New  
York.

were driven by them, from the banks of the St. Lawrence; and dividing into five tribes, the *Senecas*, *Cayugas*, *Onondagas*, *Oneidas*, and *Mohawks*, they spread themselves by degrees, east of Lake Erie, and south of Ontario, along the romantic waters of northern New York, to which they have left their bold and harmonious names. The place of their grand general council, or congress of chiefs, was at Onondaga.

Become  
very  
powerful.

14. Here they made a stand, and became the most fearless, subtle, and powerful of savages. They conquered the Hurons, fought the Delawares, and put in fear all the surrounding tribes. Finally, in the contests between France and England, they were courted by both parties as allies, and dreaded by both as foes. Of the FIVE NATIONS,\* the Mohawks were the most warlike. Their chief seat was at Johnstown, on the beautiful river, which still bears their name.

Powerful  
southern  
confederacies.

15. Of the Mobilians, the most extensive and powerful confederacies were the CREEKS, situated mostly in Georgia; the CHEROKEES in the mountainous region north and west; and the CHOCTAWS and CHICKASAWS, nearer to the Mississippi.

16. The NATCHEZ have excited much interest on account of the difference of their language from that of the surrounding tribes. Natchez, on the Mississippi, marks their location. The SHAWANESE, the native tribe of TECUMSEH, once resided on the banks of the Suwaney river in Florida. From thence they migrated northward, first to Pennsylvania, and afterwards to Ohio.

\* When they were joined by the Tuscaroras, they became the SIX NATIONS.

---

13. To what place did they change their location? What were the names of each of the five nations? Where was their general council held?—14. What character did they now assume? What nations contend with? By what nations was their alliance courted? Which tribe was the most warlike? Where was its principal seat? 15. Learn from the Map the location of the Moblian tribes. Which were the most extensive and powerful? Which are the most northerly? Which are partly in Georgia?—16. Which near the Mississippi? Where are the Shawanese? Which tribe has a language by itself?

# PART I.

FROM 1492 TO 1643.



Return of Columbus.

## PERIOD I.

FROM

THE DISCOVERY OF **1492**, { AMERICA BY COLUMBUS,

TO

THE FIRST PATENT GRANTED **1578**. { LANDS IN AMERICA—GIVEN BY Q.  
BY AN ENGLISH SOVEREIGN TO { ELIZABETH TO SIR H. GILBERT.

## CHAPTER I.

First Discovery—Columbus, &c.

1. THOUSANDS of years had elapsed since the crea- PT. I.  
tion of the world, and as yet the inhabitants of the PD. I.  
eastern hemisphere were ignorant, that, on the face CH. I.  
of the planet which they inhabited, was another con- Former  
tinent of nearly equal extent. Nor did they become ages ig-  
acquainted with this fact by any fortunate accident; norant of  
but they owed its proof, to the penetration and per- geogra-  
severing efforts of a man, as extraordinary, as the phy.  
discovery which he made.

1. What did the people of the eastern hemisphere know about this continent three hundred and fifty years ago? Did they learn its existence by accident?

PT. I.

PD. I.

CH. I.

1447.

Birth  
and rare  
talents of  
Colum-  
bus.

2. This was CHRISTOPHER COLUMBUS, a native of Genoa, born in 1447. He possessed all those energetic impulses of the soul which lead to high achievement; and, with these he combined judgment the most grave and solid, prudence and patience the most steady and unoffending, piety the most devout, and, what insured his success, the most untiring perseverance ever manifested by man.

3. Columbus had married the daughter of one of the Portuguese discoverers, then deceased; whose widow, finding how eagerly her son-in-law sought such sources of information, gave to him all the maps and charts which had belonged to her husband. Marco Polo, a Venetian, had travelled to the east, and returned with wonderful accounts of the riches of Cathay and the island of Cipango, called, generally, the East Indies, and now known to be China and Japan.

Circum-  
stances  
favorable  
to his  
genius.

4. The idea that the earth was round, was ridiculed by most persons at that time; but it was fully believed by Columbus, on the evidence of its figure, exhibited in eclipses of the moon. Hence, he believed, that those rich countries described by Marco Polo might be found by sailing west; and he formed the design to lead the way, through unknown oceans.

Offers  
his ser-  
vices to  
reigning  
sov-  
ereigns.

5. Columbus believed that great advantages would accrue to the nation who should patronize his undertaking; and, with filial respect, he first offered his services to his native state, but had the mortification to find them rejected. He then applied to John II. of Portugal; to Henry VII. of England; and to Ferdinand and Isabella, king and queen of Spain.

2. Who was the discoverer? What was his character?—3. What woman gave him sources of information? What traveller had excited his mind about distant countries? What countries?—4. In what opinion was Columbus in advance of his contemporaries? Why did he believe in the true figure of the earth? How did he suppose he could reach those rich countries called the East Indies? 5. To whom did Columbus first offer his services? With what success? Whose patronage did he next solicit? What sovereign of England? What sovereigns in Spain?

But these monarchs could not comprehend his schemes, and would not encourage them.

6. At the court of Spain, he had spent two years in a succession of mortifying repulses; and at length, quite discouraged, he was preparing to go to England, when he was recalled by a mandate from Isabella. This woman alone of all the sovereigns of Europe, had the reach of mind to comprehend the character of Columbus, and the truth and grandeur of his views. Not knowing how to raise the sum of money requisite for defraying the expenses of the voyage, she determined to sacrifice her jewels; but this was prevented by the extraordinary exertions of her ministers.

P.T. I.  
P.D. I  
CH. I.  
They are  
accepted  
by Isa-  
bella.

7. Columbus made his first voyage, the most interesting of any in the annals of navigation, in 1492. He discovered the first found land of the New World, on the eleventh of October. It was an Island called by the natives Guanahani, but to which he piously gave the name of *San Salvador*, the Holy Saviour.

1492.  
Columbus  
discovers  
the New  
World.

8. In his third voyage he discovered the continent on the coast of South America, fourteen months after the Cabots had reached its shores in the north-east. By the ingratitude of Ferdinand, he was, like a condemned criminal, sent home in chains. AMERICA'S VESPUCCIUS, a native of Florence, having made a voyage to the New World, received from the public an honor which belonged to Columbus, that of giving a name to the continent. In 1502, the great discoverer made his fourth and last voyage,—when, having returned to Spain, his patroness, Isabella, being dead, his just claims disregarded, and himself neglected, he sunk beneath his sufferings, and died, in the 59th year of his age. When the good meet with calami-

Sent  
home in  
chains.

Deprived  
of nam-  
ing the  
country.

He dies  
in Val-  
adolid in  
Spain.  
1506

---

6. Who was the only one to understand his views or favor them? What sacrifice was she prepared to make?—7. When did Columbus make his first voyage? What land did he first discover? When? What name give?—8. What did he discover in his third voyage? Did any person discover the continent before him? How was he treated? After whom was the continent named? In what year did he make his last voyage? What occurred soon after?

P.T. I. ties in this world, it is pleasant to reflect, that there  
 P.D. I. is a future state, where they will be happy.  
 CH. II.

Welch  
 story of  
 Madoc. 9. Many attempts were now made to show that  
 the country had been previously discovered. The  
 Welsh brought forward the story of Madoc, son of  
 Owen Gwyneth, who, in the twelfth century, had  
 sailed west, discovered a country, and afterwards  
 conducted a colony thither, which was heard of no  
 more. If this story be true, there yet exists no proof,  
 that the region found was America.

Nor-  
 wegian  
 claims. 10. *The Norwegians discovered Iceland and  
 Greenland*, during the ninth century, and there estab-  
 lished colonies. BIORN, or Biron, an Icelfander, in a  
 voyage to Greenland, during the eleventh century,  
 was driven south-west in a storm, and found a region  
 which, from its great number of vines, he called Vine-  
 land, whose locality is supposed to have been on the  
 American coast. But at the time of Columbus, no  
 such accounts had reached Southern Europe. It is  
 since then, that they have been dug from the grave  
 of antiquity; and it remains true that, darkness  
 shrouded the western continent, until Columbus  
 lifted the veil.

Vine-  
 land.

## CHAPTER II.

English Discoveries—French.

America  
 is con-  
 nected  
 with four  
 nations  
 of Eu-  
 rope. 1. The principal European nations who first dis-  
 covered and colonized our country, are  
 I. The English,  
 II. The French,  
 III. The Spanish,  
 IV. The Dutch.

1496. 1. JOHN CABOT, a native of Venice, had, with his  
 family, settled in England. He and his more re-

9. From what story did the Welch claim to be the discoverers  
 of the western continent?—10. From what the Norwegians? The  
 Icelanders?

CHAPTER II.—1. What European nations discovered and settled  
 our continent?—2. Who was John Cabot?

nowned son, SEBASTIAN CABOT, were men of great learning, enterprise, and ability. By a commission of Henry VII., dated March 5th, 1496, (the oldest American state paper of England) they had authority to discover and colonize any heathen countries not before known to Christians.

P.T. I.  
P.D. I.  
CH. II.  
John and  
Sebas-  
tian Ca-  
bot.

3. They sailed from England in May, 1497, and in June, *discovered the Island of Newfoundland*, which they called *Prima Vista*. Steering northward, they *made the first discovery of the continent, on the coast of Labrador*, in latitude about  $55^{\circ}$ . On their return they pursued a southerly direction for an uncertain distance.

1497  
Discover  
the Con-  
tinent.

4. Sebastian Cabot sailed a second time ;—reached Labrador in latitude  $58^{\circ}$ , thence turning southerly, he became the discoverer of the coast of the United States ; along which he proceeded, as far as to the southern latitude of Maryland.

1498  
Sebas-  
tian Ca-  
bot dis-  
covers  
our coast

5. The French king, Francis I., in 1524, sent out JOHN VERRAZANI, a native of Florence, who reached the continent in the latitude of *Wilmington*, North Carolina. His crew looked with wonder upon the wild costume of the natives, made of the skins of animals, and set off by necklaces of coral and garlands of feathers. As they sailed northward along the coast, they thought the country very inviting, it being covered with green trees, among which were many fragrant flowers.

The  
French  
also em-  
ploy an  
Italian  
discover-  
er.

6. At a fine harbor, supposed to be that of *Newport* in Rhode Island, Verrazani remained fifteen days, and there found "the goodliest people he had seen." From thence he followed the north-eastern shore of New England, finding the inhabitants jealous and hostile. From Nova Scotia, he returned to France, and wrote a narrative of his voyage, which is still existing.

1524.

Verraza-  
ni in New  
England.

2. Who Sebastian ? Who gave them a commission, and at what time ?—3. What important discovery did they make ? At what place ?—4. Who discovered the coast of the United States ? and how far ?—5. What Italian did the king of France send out ? Where did he reach our shore ? What account did he give of the natives ?—6. What Indians do you suppose he encountered at Newport ?

- P.T. I.** 7. JAMES CARTIER was the discoverer to whom the  
**P.D. I.** French trace the extensive empire which they possess-  
**CH. II.** ed in North America. Cartier, after a prosperous voy-  
**1534.** age of twenty days, made Cape Bonavista, the most  
 easterly point of Newfoundland. Sailing around the  
 north-eastern extremity of the island, he encountered  
 severe weather and icy seas. Then stretching to the  
 south-west, he discovered, on *St. Lawrence's* day, the  
 noble *gulf* which bears the name of that saint.  
 James  
 Cartier  
 makes  
 great dis-  
 coveries.
8. In 1535, he sailed on a second voyage, entered  
 the gulf of St. Lawrence, proceeded up the river, to  
 which he gave the same name, and anchored at an isl-  
 and, which, abounding in grapes, he named Bacchus  
**1535.** Isle, now the Isle of Orleans. He continued his voyage  
 to the Island of Hochelega to which he gave the name  
 of *Mont Real*. After a severe winter he returned in  
 the spring with dreary accounts of the country. He,  
 however, named it *New France*, and it was also called  
*Canada*, but at what time, or whether from any signi-  
 ficancy in the word, is not known.  
 Cartier's  
 second  
 voyage.
9. France now possessed a country in the New  
 World, through which flowed a river, more majestic  
 than any in Europe. FRANCIS DE LA ROQUE, *lord*  
 of ROBERVAL, in Picardy, obtained from the king full  
**1540.** authority to rule, as viceroy, the vast territory around  
 the bay and river of St. Lawrence. Cartier was neces-  
 sary to him and received the title of chief pilot and  
 captain-general of the enterprise. The prisons were  
 thrown open, and with their inmates, Cartier sailed.  
 New  
 France.
10. He built a fort near the site of *Quebec*, and there  
 spent a winter, in which he had occasion to hang one  
 of his disorderly company, and put several in irons.  
 In the spring he took them back to France, just as  
 Roberval arrived with supplies and fresh emigrants.  
 His third  
 made un-  
 der Ro-  
 berval.
- May,  
**1541.** Cartier  
 founds  
 Quebec.  
**1542.**

---

7. Who was the greatest discoverer employed by the French?  
 Daring Cartier's first voyage, what great discoveries did he make?  
 8. Give an account of his second voyage? What can you say of  
 the name of the country?—9. Under whose authority did he  
 make this third voyage? What kind of people were brought  
 over as colonists?—10. Did any good result take place? What  
 can you say of Roberval?

By him, however, nothing permanent was effected; and after a year, he abandoned his viceroyalty.

11. COLIGNI, the distinguished high admiral of France was the friend of the Huguenots, a name given to the French Protestants. These were objects of such hatred and fear to the monarchs, that they were plotting their destruction, and when a project was formed by the admiral to plant with them a colony in America, it found ready favor. He therefore sent out, under the command of JOHN RIBAUT, distinguished as a brave and pious Protestant, two ships loaded with conscientious Huguenots, many of whom were of the best families in France.

12. They approached land in the delightful clime of *St. Augustine*; and, on the first of May, discovered the *St. John*, which they called the river of May. Sailing along the coast north-easterly, they chose as their home Port Royal. There they built a fort, and called it *Carolina*, a name which is preserved in that of two of our States. Ribault left there a colony, and returned to France.

13. The commander of the fort provoked a mutiny, and was slain. The colonists longed for home. They put to sea without suitable provisions, and being found in a famishing state by a British vessel, they were carried to England.

14. The persevering Coligni soon after sent out another colony under the worthy LAUDONNIERE. Upon the banks of the river of May, with psalms of thanksgiving, they made their dwelling-place, and erected another fort, called also Carolina. The next year Ribault arrived with vessels containing emigrants and supplies; and taking the command, the colony seemed happily planted.

P.T. I.  
P.D. 1.  
CH. II.

1562.  
Admiral  
Coligni  
sends out  
Ribault.

He builds  
Ft. Caro-  
lina in S.  
Carolina.  
1564.

Colonists  
abandon  
it.

1566.  
Ft. Caro-  
lina in  
Florida  
built.

---

11. Who was Coligni? Whose friend was he? What project did he contrive? Whom did he send as leader of the colony? 12 What country did they first reach? Where did they build a fort, and what name give it?—13. What happened after Ribault had departed?—14. By whom did Coligni send out another colony? Where did they build a fort, and what name give it? Who came and for what purpose?

## CHAPTER III.

Spanish Discoveries, Adventures, and Cruelties—St. Augustine.

**P. T. I.** 1. JOHN PONCE DE LEON, a Spanish soldier, who  
**P. D. I.** had once voyaged with Columbus, had received an im-  
**CH. III.** pression, common in those times, that there existed in  
 the New World a fountain, whose waters had power  
 to arrest disease, and give immortal youth ; and he set  
 forth to seek it. On Easter Sunday, called by the  
 Spaniards Pascua Florida, and a little north of the  
 latitude of St. Augustine, he discovered what he  
 deemed, from the blossoms of the forest trees, a land  
 of flowers. The fountain of life was not there ; but  
 Ponce took possession of the country in the name of  
 the Spanish king, and called it *Florida*.

Ponce de  
 Leon  
 seeks the  
 fountain  
 of life.

1512.

Discov-  
 ers  
 Florida.

1520.

Wicked-  
 ness of  
 Vasquez  
 de  
 Ayllon.

1528.

Unsuc-  
 cessful  
 attempt  
 of Nar-  
 vaz.

2. The part of South Carolina, in the vicinity of the Combahee river, was soon after visited by a Spaniard, named VASQUEZ DE AYLLON. The country was named *Chicora*, and the river, the Jordan. De Ayllon invited the natives to visit his ships, and when they stood in crowds upon his deck, he hoisted sail and carried them off. Thus, torn from their families, they were, as slaves, condemned to ceaseless toil. De Ayllon afterwards attempted to conquer the country ; but the hostility of the natives could not be overcome, and numbers of Spaniards perished in the fruitless attempt.

3. By another unsuccessful effort, under the adventurer NARVAEZ, to conquer Florida and the adjoining country, an army of three hundred Spaniards wasted away, till but four or five returned.

4. They however insisted that Florida was the richest country in the world ; and FERDINAND DE SOTO,

---

CHAPTER III.—1. Who was John Ponce de Leon ? What induced him to come to the New World ? What country did he discover ? Observe the dates, and tell which discovered Florida first, the French just mentioned, or this Spaniard. Tell the dates in each case.—2. Give an account of the expedition of Vasquez de Ayllon. What do you think of his conduct ?—3. What can you say of Narvaz ?

already famous as the companion of Pizarro, the cruel conqueror of Peru, obtained a commission from Charles V. to conquer the country. He sailed, with a considerable force, to Cuba, of which he had been made governor; and there adding to his army, he landed in 1539, at Espirito Santo, in Florida, with six hundred soldiers; an army greater, and better supplied, than that with which Cortez conquered Mexico.

P.T. I.  
P.D. I.  
CH. III.

Ferdinand de Soto.  
**1539.**  
Lands in Florida.

5. He expected to find mines and utensils of gold; and being from time to time deluded by the natives, he pursued these illusions, which ever fled as he approached. He went north, crossed the Alleghany mountains, then marched southerly to Mobile, where he fought a bloody battle with the people of a walled city. At Pensacola he met ships from Cuba, with supplies for his exhausted army; but too proud to be wise, he continued to pursue a shadow, rather than retrace a false step.

His object to find gold.

6. The hope of the precious metals still lured him on, and he now bent his course to the north-west, and in latitude  $34^{\circ}$  *he discovered the Mississippi*. He continued west until he reached the *Wachita*, when, becoming dispirited, he turned his course, and descended that stream to its junction with the Red river. Thence he went down its current; and where the Red mingles its waters with the Mississippi, he died. His body was inclosed in a hollow oak, and committed to the broad stream. The officer who succeeded him in command, conducted the poor remains of his army down the Mississippi.

April 25,  
**1541.**  
He discovers the Mississippi.

May 21,  
**1542.**  
He dies.

7. When the news reached Spain, that Florida had been colonized by French Huguenots, the cruel monarch, Philip II., gave to PEDRO MELENDEZ DE AVILES a commission, to take possession of that country, and to destroy the heretics. Five hundred persons ac-

Melendez sent from Spain

- 
4. What expedition did Ferdinand de Soto undertake? Give an account of his preparations—his numbers—his place of landing in America.—5. His objects. His route and return to the coast.—6. His second route and great discovery. Where did he die? How was his body disposed of? What became of his army? 7. What king sent to destroy the French colony?

P.T. I. accompanied Melendez, who were men with families,—  
 P.D. I. soldiers, mechanics, and priests. Coming upon the  
 CH. III. coast south of the French settlement, he discovered  
 the harbor of St. Augustine on the day of that saint,  
 Sept. 8. and here he laid the foundation of the city of *St.*  
**1565.** *Augustine*, the oldest by nearly thirty years, of any  
 He now within the limits of our republic.  
 founds St. Augustine

8. The French had received from Melendez the terrible notice, that he had come to destroy every person who was not a Catholic. Ribault, supposing that the Spaniards would attack by sea, embarked to meet them. A tremendous storm shipwrecked his whole fleet. The Spaniards, meantime, crossed the forest and attacked by land. Unprepared and surprised, the defenceless fort soon surrendered, when all, without distinction of age or sex, were murdered. The shipwrecked mariners were afterwards found, feeble and exhausted, upon the shore. Melendez invited them to come to him, and trust to his compassion. They came, and he slew them.

9. When the news of this massacre of nine hundred French subjects reached the French king, Charles IX., he took no notice of it; for so bigoted was he, that he wished the entire destruction of the Huguenots. Yet so deep was the feeling among the people of France, that three years afterwards, individuals headed by the gallant CHEVALIER GOUGES, made a descent on the settlement of Florida, and put to death two hundred Spaniards. The Spanish colony was thus checked, but it was not destroyed; and it proved to be the first permanent settlement, made by Europeans upon the shores of our republic.

Aug. 22.  
**1568.**  
 Gouges  
 kills 200  
 Spaniards.

First  
 colony  
 within  
 the U. S.

---

7. Whom did he send? What description of persons, and how many accompanied him? What is there remarkable about the city which he founded?—8. What notice did he give the French? Where was Ribault when Melendez attacked the French fort? How did he treat the people in the fort? How the shipwrecked? 9. Who took vengeance on the Spaniards? In what manner? Was the Spanish colony destroyed? What has it proved to be?

10. Large territories have lately been added to the United States from Mexico, which were originally colonized by Spain. In NEW MEXICO the first settlement was made at *Santa Fé*, in 1594, by a Spanish colony from Mexico, sent out by the viceroy of the king of Spain, the COUNT DE MONTEREY, under "the valiant" DON JUAN DE OÑATE of Zacatecas.

**1594.**  
First settled part of New Mexico

At *St. Diego*, the first settlement of AMERICAN CALIFORNIA was made, in 1603, by the Spaniards, on account of its harbor. In 1769 it became the first established station of the Jesuit missions.

**1603.**  
First settlement of American California

At *San Antonio de Bexar*, the first effectual settlement in TEXAS was made by Spaniards in 1692.

**1692.**  
First settlement in Texas

QUESTIONS.—10. Give an account of the first settlement of Santa Fé and its vicinity. Of the first discovered and first settled place of American California. What is the name of the first settled place in Texas? The date of the settlement? Point out on the chronographer the four dates of early settlements here mentioned.

#### EXERCISES ON THE TREE CHRONOGRAPHER.

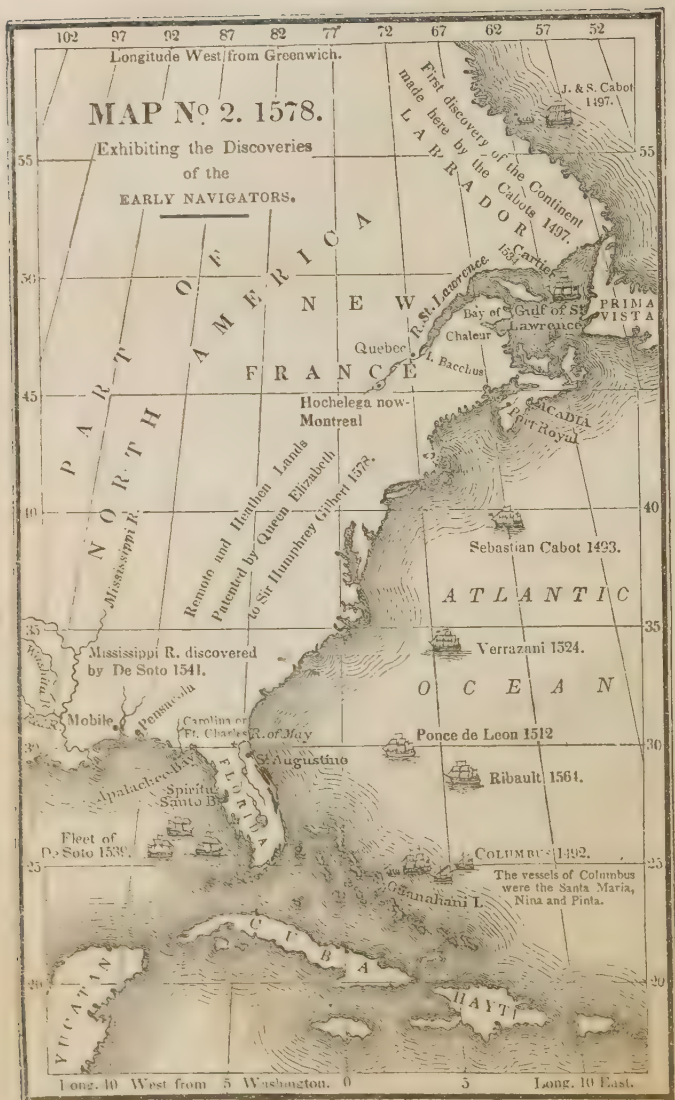
(Referring to events of Period I., Part I.)

Point out on the chronographer the epoch which marks the beginning of this period.

The Cabots discovered the continent in 1497. Verrazani sailed along the coast in 1524. Cartier made his two voyages in 1534–35. Point out these years. The time of Cartier's founding Quebec was 1541. Show the places of these dates. Also of the times of the founding of Santa Fé, St. Diego, and San Antonio de Bexar.

Ribault built Fort Carolina, in South Carolina, in 1564. Laudonnière built Fort Carolina, in Florida, in 1566. St. Augustine was founded in 1565. Where are these dates on the chronographer? At what epoch does this period terminate? Point to its place.

The teacher can select other dates, and require the pupils to locate them on the chronographer; but is advised not to oblige them to burden their minds by committing ordinary dates to memory,—but only a select few.





Elizabeth's Patent to Sir H. Gilbert.

## PERIOD II.

FROM  
 PATENT GRANTED BY QUEEN ELI- } **1578** { ZABETH TO SIR H. GILBERT  
 TO  
 LANDING OF THE PILGRIMS } **1620.** { AT NEW PLYMOUTH.

### CHAPTER I.

Unsuccessful attempts of Gilbert, Raleigh, and others.

1. QUEEN ELIZABETH, the reigning sovereign of England, gave to SIR HUMPHREY GILBERT, in 1578, by an open or patent letter, "all such remote, heathen, and barbarous lands," as he should discover in North America, and of which he should take possession; these lands not having been occupied before, by any other Christian power. She vested in him and his heirs the right of property, and guaranteed that all, who should settle there, should enjoy the privileges of free citizens and natives of England. The patentee

PT. I.  
 P.D. II.  
 CH. I.

**1578.**  
 Gilbert's  
 patent.

CHAPTER I.—1. From whom did Sir Humphrey Gilbert receive his patent? What lands did it give him? What rights vest in him and his heirs? What guarantee to those who should settle the country?

P.T. I. was to acknowledge the authority of the sovereign of  
 P.D. II. England, and pay one-fifth of all the gold and silver  
 CH. I. obtained.

2. In Gilbert's first attempt to plant a colony, he  
 put to sea, but was obliged to return. In his second,  
 1579 to he reached Newfoundland, where he took possession  
 1583. of the country for his sovereign, by raising a pillar  
 Gilbert's two inscribed with the British arms. From thence, he  
 voyages. sailed south-westerly, till he reached the latitude of  
 the mouth of the Kennebec. Here the largest of his  
 three vessels was wrecked, and all her crew perished.

3. Gilbert now finding it impossible to proceed, set  
 his face towards England, keeping in the smallest of  
 his remaining vessels, the Squirrel, a barge of only  
 ten tons; for his generous heart refused to put any  
 to a peril, he was himself unwilling to share. The  
 passage was stormy, but his pious mind found com-  
 fort in the reflection which, as he sat reading in the  
 stern of his barge, he uttered to his companions in  
 the larger vessel; "we are as near heaven at sea, as on  
 land." In the night, the lights of his little bark sud-  
 denly vanished, and he was heard of no more.

4. SIR WALTER RALEIGH, the brother-in-law of Gil-  
 bert, obtained from Queen Elizabeth, a transfer of his  
 patent. Raleigh had learned, from the unsuccessful  
 emigrants of France, the mildness and fertility of the  
 south; and thither he dispatched two vessels, under  
 PHILIP AMIDAS and ARTHUR BARLOW. They ap-  
 proached the shore at Pamlico Sound, and on landing  
 in Ocracock or Roanoke Island, they found grapes  
 abundant, and so near the coast, that the sea often  
 washed over them.

5. The natives were as kindly as their climate and  
 soil. The king's son, Granganimo, came with fifty of

His  
 disasters  
 and  
 death.  
 1583.  
 Sept. 22.

Sir W.  
 Raleigh  
 sends  
 Amidas  
 and  
 Barlow.

1. What was enjoined upon the person who received the  
 patent?—2. In Gilbert's first attempt what happened? In his  
 second how far did he proceed? In what manner take possession?  
 What disaster did he meet, and at what place?—3. What trait of  
 generosity did he exhibit? What were the last words he was  
 heard to utter?—4. Who obtained a similar patent? Whom did  
 Sir W. Raleigh send out? To what place did they go? What  
 account did they give of Roanoke Island?—5. What of the natives?

his people, and received them with distinguished courtesy. He invited them to his dwelling at twenty miles' distance on the coast; but when they went, it chanced he was not at home. His wife came out to meet them. She ordered some of her people to draw their boat ashore to preserve it, and others to bring the Englishmen on their backs through the surf. She then conducted her guests to her home, and had a fire kindled, that they might dry their clothes, which were wet with rain. In another room, she spread a plentiful repast of fish, venison, esculent roots, melons, and fruits. As they were eating, several Indians, armed with bows and arrows, entered. She chid them, and sent them away, lest her visitors should suffer from alarm.

P.T. I.  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.  
Beautiful example of native hospitality.

6. When the navigators returned to England, and made this report to Elizabeth, she was induced to call the country *Virginia*, as a memorial that the happy discovery had been made under a Virgin queen. This name soon became general throughout the coast.

Queen Elizabeth names Virginia.

7. Raleigh now found many adventurers ready to embark in his project; and in 1585, he fitted out a squadron of seven ships, under the command of SIR RICHARD GRENVILLE, who followed the course of Amidas and Barlow, and touched at the same islands. In one of these he cruelly burned a village, because he suspected an Indian of having stolen a silver cup. He then left a colony under CAPTAIN LANE, at the island of Roanoke. The colonists, reduced to great distress for want of provisions, were, the next year, carried to England by SIR FRANCIS DRAKE, who was returning from a successful expedition against the Spaniards in the West Indies.

1585.  
Seven ships under Grenville.

Colony at Roanoke under Lane.

8. Soon after their departure, they were sought by a ship, which had been sent by Raleigh with

---

5. How did an Indian lady behave?—6. Who gave a name to the country? What name?—7. Whom did Raleigh next send? When? What was done by Sir R. Grenville? What can you say of the colony which he left?

**P.T. I.** supplies; and afterwards by Sir Richard Grenville.

**P.D. II.** He not finding them, most unwisely left fifteen of

**CH. I.**

Fifteen  
men lost.

his crew to keep possession of the island, and then returned to England. Of this small number nothing was afterwards heard. Probably they were destroyed by the injured and revengeful savages.

**1587.**  
Second  
Roanoke  
colony.

9. In 1587, Raleigh again sent out a colony of one hundred and fifty adventurers to the same island, under **CAPTAIN WHITE**. He soon returned to England to solicit supplies for the colony. Before he departed, his daughter, Mrs. Dare, gave birth to a female infant, the first child of English parents born in America. The infant was baptized by the name of Virginia.

Raleigh's  
lost  
colony.

10. The attempts made by Raleigh for the relief of this colony were unremitted, but unsuccessful; and three years elapsed before he could procure the means of sending Captain White to their relief. It was then too late. Not one remained; nor, though repeatedly sought, has any clue to their fate ever been found. Appalled and in danger of perishing himself, White returned, without leaving one English settler on the shores of America.

**1602.**  
Gosnold  
visits N.  
England.

11. In 1602, **BARTHOLOMEW GOSNOLD**, with thirty-two men, sailed from Falmouth, and steering due west, he was the first English commander who reached the country by this shorter and more direct course. He approached the coast near Nahant, then bearing to the south he discovered and named *Cape Cod*, which was the first ground in New England ever trod by Englishmen.

12. From Cape Cod he sailed round *Nantucket*, and discovered *Martha's Vineyard*. He then entered Buzzard's Bay, and finding a fertile island, he gave it, in honor of the Queen, the name of Eliza-

---

8. What of another small colony?—9. What of Raleigh's second? What name was given to the first native-born English child?—10. Were attempts made to relieve this colony? Does any one know what became of Mrs. Dare, or her child, or any of the colony?—11. Give some account of Gosnold. Point out on the Map his course. Tell where he approached. What discoveries he made.

beth. Near its western shore, on a small island in a lake, he built a fort and store-house, and prepared to leave a small colony. But the natives became hostile, and his intended settlers would not remain. Having freighted his vessel with sassafras root, then much esteemed in medicine, he hoisted sail and reached England with all his men, after a passage of five weeks, the shortest then known.

PT. I.  
P.D. II  
CH. I.

Natives  
hostile.

13. Henry IV., of France, in 1603, granted to the Sieur de Monts, the country called *Acadia*, extending from the 40th to the 46th degree of north latitude. The next year DE MONTS sailed from France, taking SAMUEL CHAMPLAIN as his pilot. He entered an extensive bay, called it La Baye Française, [Bay of Fundy,] and on its eastern side, he founded Port Royal. He discovered and named the rivers St. John and St. Croix, and sailed along the coast as far as Cape Cod.

1603.  
Henry IV  
grants  
Acadia.

De Monts  
founds  
Port  
Royal.

14. LONDON AND PLYMOUTH COMPANIES.—The English becoming alarmed at this encroachment on territory which they claimed, James I., the successor of Elizabeth, *dividing the country into two districts nearly equal, granted the southern part, or first colony of Virginia*, included between the 34th and 41st degrees, to a company of merchants called THE LONDON COMPANY; and the northern or *second colony of Virginia*, included between the 38th and 45th degrees, to another corporation, called THE PLYMOUTH COMPANY. The king vested these companies with a right of land along the coast, fifty miles each way, and extending into the interior one hundred miles from the place of settlement.

1606.  
(From  
38° to  
41° the  
same  
granted  
to both  
compa-  
nies.

But  
wherever  
one made  
a settle-  
ment the  
other  
might not  
settle  
within 100  
miles.)

15. The Plymouth Company, in 1607, sent out

---

12. At what place did he prepare to colonize? Was he successful in planting a colony? What of his voyage in regard to time?—13. What was granted to De Monts? By whom? What voyage and discoveries did he make? Who accompanied him? 14. Between what two companies did the English now divide the country? What names give to each division? Trace the two divisions on Map III., unless you draw the Maps, and have one of your own to exhibit.

P'T. I. ADMIRAL RALEIGH GILBERT, with a hundred plant-  
 P'D. II. ers, under CAPTAIN GEORGE POPHAM, the president  
 CH. II. of the company. They landed at the mouth of Ken-  
 nebec river, where they built and fortified a store-  
 house. The sufferings of the colony, through the  
 winter, were severe. They lost their store-house by  
 fire, and their president by death, and the next year  
 returned to England, considering the country "a  
 cold, barren, mountainous desert," where, in the  
 quaint language of that period, they declared, "they  
 found nothing but extreme extremities."

Settle-  
 ment at  
 Kenne-  
 bec.

1607.

16. Thus, after a period of one hundred and ten years, from the time that Cabot discovered North America, and twenty-four years after Raleigh planted the first colony, there was not, until 1607, an Englishman settled in America.

## CHAPTER II.

### First Settlement of Virginia.

1. IN 1607, the London Company sent out CAPTAIN CHRISTOPHER NEWPORT, with three ships, and one hundred and five men; among whom was the navigator, GOSNOLD, and CAPTAIN JOHN SMITH, the Father of Virginia.

Chesa-  
 peake  
 discover-  
 ed.

1607.

2. The fleet sailed by the West Indies, and being driven north of Roanoke in a storm, an accidental discovery was thus made of the entrance of the *Chesapeake Bay*, the boundaries of which were now named Capes Charles and Henry, in honor of the king's sons.

3. The adventurers sailed at once into the bay, and up the Powhatan river, to which they gave the

15. Whom did the Plymouth company send out? What was the success of the settlement at Kennebec?—16. In 1607 what might be said of English colonization?

CHAPTER II.—1. Whom did the London company send out? 2. What discovery was accidentally made?—3. What course did the fleet take?

name of the James. Upon its banks, fifty miles from its mouth, they fixed their residence, and raised a few huts. The place was called JAMESTOWN, an appellation which it still retains, although nothing now remains but a few falling ruins.

P.T. I.

P.D. II.

OIL. II.

James-  
town,  
May 13.

4. The King of England, James I., had given the colonists *a charter*; that is a writing, made like a deed, which he signed, and to which the great seal of England was affixed. These written instruments when made for the settlers, in a wise and righteous manner, gave them privileges, which were of great value. But, in this case, the charter left with the king all the power to govern the country.

What a  
charter is.

5. To the colonists no assurance was given, but the vague promise, that they should continue to be Englishmen. Religion was established by law, according to the forms and doctrines of the church of England. There was, for the present, no division of property; and for five years, all labor was to be for the benefit of the joint stock.

No privi-  
leges to  
the set-  
tlers.

6. The government was to be administered by a council, nominated by the king, but to reside in the colony. As soon as the emigrants landed, the council was organized. They chose EDWARD WINGFIELD, their president. They were envious of Captain Smith. He was the proper person to be their head, because he had more talents and more zeal for the settlement, than any other man. But troubles gathered fast, and then they were glad to have Smith for a leader.

First  
president,  
Wing-  
field; 2d,  
Smith.

7. The neighboring Indians soon annoyed the colony by their petty hostilities. Their provisions failed, and the scanty allowance to which they were reduced, as well as the influence of a climate to which they were not accustomed, gave rise to disease; so that the number of the colonists rapidly diminished. Sometimes four or five died in a day, and

Disasters

3. Where did the emigrants settle?—4. What is a charter? Did these emigrants receive a favorable charter?—5. How was it about religion?—property?—6. What about the government? Who was chosen president?

P.T. I. there were not enough of the well, to give decent  
P.D. II. burial to the dead. Fifty perished before winter,  
CH. II. among whom was the excellent Gosnold.

Aug. 22.  
Death of  
Gosnold.

1607.

Excellent  
manage-  
ment of  
Smith.

8. The energy and cheerful activity of Smith, threw the only light, which glanced upon the dark picture. He so managed as to awe the natives, and at the same time to conciliate and obtain from them supplies of food; while, among the emigrants, he encouraged the faint hearted, and put in fear the rebellious. Winter at length came, and with it, relief from diseases of climate, and plentiful supplies of wild fowl and game.

Smith  
can obey  
as well as  
com-  
mand.

9. The London company, with an ignorance of geography, which even then was surprising, had given directions that some of the streams flowing from the north-west should be followed up, in order to find a passage to the South Sea. Smith was superior to the company in intelligence, but he knew the duties of a subordinate; and he therefore prepared to explore the head waters of the river Chickahominy, which answered as nearly as any one, to their description.

1607.

Powhatan  
and his  
brother.

10. POWHATAN, the chief of the savage confederacy, on the waters of the James and its tributaries, had been visited by the colonists early after their arrival. His imperial residence, called from its beautiful location, Nonesuch, consisted of twelve wigwams near the site of Richmond. Next to him in power was his brother, Opechacanough, who was chief of the Pamunkies on the Chickahominy. Smith embarked in a barge on that river, and when he had ascended as far as possible in this manner, he left it, with the order that his party should not land till his return; and, with four attendants, he pursued his objects twenty miles farther up the river.

---

7. What misfortunes befel the colony?—8. What can you say of the conduct of Captain Smith?—9. What directions had Smith received? From whom? What did he know, and what do! 10. Whom had the colonists visited? Where? Who was chief of the Indians on the Chickahominy? What was the beginning of Smith's adventures on that river?

11. The Indians who had watched his movements, fell upon his barge-men, took them prisoners, and obliged them to discover the track of their captain. He, in pursuit of game, soon found himself hunted by swarms of savage archers. In this extremity he bound to his breast, as a shield, an Indian youth, who was with him; and then he shot three Indians, wounded others, and kept the whole party at bay. Attempting to retreat to his canoe while yet watching his foe, suddenly he sank to his middle, in an oozy creek. The savages dared not even then touch him, till, perishing with cold, he laid down his arms and surrendered.

P.T. I.  
P.D. II.  
CH. II.

Indians  
capture  
Smith.

12. They carried him to a fire, near which, some of his men had been killed. By his Indian guide and interpreter, he then called for their chief. Opechacanough appeared, and Smith politely presented to him his pocket compass. The Indians were confounded at the motions of the fly-needle, which, on account of the mysterious glass, they could see, but could not touch. He told them wonderful stories of its virtues, and proceeded, as he himself relates, "by the globe-like figure of that jewel, to instruct them, concerning the roundness of the earth, and how the sun did chase the night round about the world continually," by which his auditors were filled with profound amazement.

His  
address.

13. Their minds seemed to labor with the greatness of the thought, that a being so superior was in their power; and they vacillated in their opinion whether or not it was best to put him to death; and as often changed their conduct. They took him to Powhatan, thence led him round from one wondering tribe to another; until, at the residence of Opechacanough, these superstitious dwellers of the forest, employed their sorcerers or powows, for three days, to practise incantations, in order to

His treat-  
ment by  
the  
savages.

---

11. Relate the circumstances of his capture.—12. Of the manner in which he gave the natives a great idea of his knowledge.  
13. Of their thoughts and behavior towards him

**P.T. I.** learn, from the invisible world, whether their pris-  
**P.D. II.** oner wished them well or ill.

**CH. II.**

His rescue  
by Pocahontas.

14. The decision of his fate was finally referred to Powhatan. At his residence, that majestic savage received him in state; but he condemned him to die. Two stones were brought and laid before the chief, and two savages stood with uplifted war-clubs. Smith was dragged to the spot, and his head placed upon the stones. **POCAHONTAS**, a young Indian girl, rushed forward, and with cries and tears begged of Powhatan, her father, to spare him. He refused. She then ran and knelt beside the victim, and laid her young head upon his. Then the stern savage relented,—and Smith was saved.

**1608.**

Good brought from evil.

15. Smith having now learned much of the Indians, their country, modes of warfare, dispositions and language, and having also by his great address and honorable bearing, won their affection and confidence, his captivity proved, under Divine Providence, a means of establishing the colony.

State of the colony.

16. During his absence, however, there had been disorder and misrule; and when he returned to Jamestown he found only thirty-eight persons remaining. The spirits of the people were broken; and all, filled with despondency, were anxious to leave a country so inhospitable. He prevailed upon them, however, partly by force and partly by persuasion, to remain till the next year; when Newport arriving from England, with some supplies and one hundred and twenty emigrants, hope again revived.

**1608.**

Smith explores the Chesapeake

17. During the year 1608, Captain Smith explored the Chesapeake bay to its head, discovered its fine streams, and gained new information concerning the native productions and inhabitants of the country. In an excursion which he made up the Rappahannock, he had a skirmish with the Mannahoacks, a tribe descended from the Delawares, and took pris-

14. Relate the circumstance of his sentence and deliverance.  
 15. What view may be taken of Smith's captivity?—16. What had happened during Smith's absence? What was the effect of his return?—17. What did Smith explore?

oner a brother of one of their chiefs. From him he first heard of the Iroquois, who, the Indian told him, "dwelt on a great water to the north, had a great many boats, and so many men, that they waged war with all the rest of the world."

18. Immediately on his return he was chosen president of the council. He found the recent emigrants "goldsmiths and gentlemen." But he promptly gave them their choice, to labor for six hours a day, or have nothing to eat. He represented to the council in England that they should send *laborers*; that the search of gold should be abandoned, and that "nothing should be expected except by labor."

P.T. I.  
P.D. II.  
CH. III.

His decision and wisdom.

### CHAPTER III.

Early settlement of Virginia—continued.

1. THE London Company had gradually become enlarged by accessions of men of influence, some of whom were of the nobility and gentry. Without at all consulting the wishes, and against the interests of the colony, they now obtained from the king a new charter, by which they were to hold the lands in fee; and all the powers of government formerly reserved to the crown, were hereafter to vest in the company. The council in England, chosen by the stockholders, was to appoint a governor, who was to rule the colonists with absolute sway.

Government made worse.

2. The company now collected five hundred adventurers, many of whom were men of desperate fortunes and abandoned characters. They appointed as governor for life the excellent LORD DELA-

Newport sent with five hundred

17. What learn from report?—18. What happened on his return? What course did he take? What was his advice—sent to England?

CHAPTER III.—1. What had been the progress of the London Company? What did they obtain? What was the character of the instrument obtained?—2. What was the number, and what was the description of the persons sent out?

P'T. I. WARE, and freighted with the emigrants nine ships,  
 P'D. II. of which Captain Newport was to take the com-  
 CH. III. mand.

Wrecked  
 at Bermu-  
 da  
 3. As Lord Delaware was not ready to embark with the fleet, the admiral, SIR THOMAS GATES, and SIR GEORGE SOMERS, were empowered to govern the colony until his arrival. Newport took into his own ship Gates and Somers. Arriving at the Bermudas, a terrible storm separated the fleet. The admiral's vessel was stranded on the rocky shores of Bermuda; a small ketch perished, and only seven of the vessels reached Jamestown.

1609.  
 Smith  
 yet at the  
 head.  
 4. Smith now found himself without authority; and the three persons who alone possessed it, were perhaps in the depths of the ocean. His genius, however, sustained him; and he compelled to submission the disorderly gallants who had just arrived.

Native  
 kindness.  
 5. Pocahontas repeatedly saved the life of Smith, and preserved this earliest English settlement from destruction. In the various fortunes of the colony, she was its unchanging friend, often coming with her attendants to bring baskets of provisions in times of scarcity, and sometimes giving notice of hostile designs.

Smith  
 leaves  
 Virginia.  
 6. At length, an accidental explosion of gunpowder so injured Smith, that no medical skill to be had, could properly manage his case; and delegating his authority to GEORGE PERCY, he returned to England. After his departure, all subordination and industry ceased among the colonists.

Great  
 scarcity  
 and  
 distress.  
 7. The Indians, no longer afraid, harassed them, and withheld their customary supplies. Their stores were soon exhausted. Their domestic animals were devoured; and, in two instances, the barbarous act was perpetrated, of feeding on human flesh. Smith

---

2 What office had Lord Delaware? What Capt. Newport?  
 3. What was the fate of Newport's ship? What persons had he on board?—4. As neither the governor, nor his substitutes were there, what was the position and conduct of Smith?—5. What is said of Pocahontas?—6. What now happened to Smith? What was the conduct of the colonists?

left four hundred and ninety persons. In six months, anarchy and vice had reduced the number to sixty; and these so feeble and forlorn, that in ten days more they must all have perished.

8. In the mean time, Sir Thomas Gates and his companions, who had been wrecked on the rocks of Bermuda, had found there the means to construct a vessel; and now approaching Jamestown, they anticipated a happy meeting with their friends. But, instead of this, but few remained, and they wasted to skeletons. Gates was obliged to yield to the universal cry, desert the settlement, and re-embark with the whole colony. They departed in the morning, and falling down the stream with the tide, they descried, at evening, near the river's mouth, three ships. Lord Delaware, their paternal governor, had arrived with supplies; and their hearts were cheered with the consoling thought that God had delivered them. And then the residue returned, a chastened, and a better people.

Departure  
of the  
colony.

June.  
**1610.**  
Its return.

9 The colony again became flourishing; but in March, 1611, the governor's health declined, and he was obliged to leave the country. On the departure of Lord Delaware, Percy was again at the head of affairs, until the arrival of Sir Thomas Dale, in May. Although good order and industry now prevailed, yet the state of the colony was not flourishing, and Dale immediately wrote to England for aid. In less than four months, Sir Thomas Gates arrived, with six ships and three hundred emigrants.

**1611.**  
May 10,  
Sir Thomas Dale  
arrives.

10. Pocahontas, after the departure of Captain Smith, received Christian baptism under the name of Rebecca; and then married JOHN ROLFE, a young Englishman of the colony. She went with her husband to England, where special attention

**1613.**  
Baptism  
and marriage of  
Pocahontas.

7. What consequences ensued?—8. Relate the circumstances of Sir Thomas Gates' arrival. What was he obliged to do? Where were the people, and what their feelings on Lord Delaware's arrival?—9. How long did Lord Delaware remain in the country? On what occasion did their numbers receive an accession?—10. With whom did Pocahontas go to England?

P.T. I. was paid her by the king and queen, at the instiga-  
 P.D. II. tion of Smith. She had been told that he was dead;  
 CH. IV. and when he came to see her, she turned away, and  
 for a time could not, or would not speak. He kindly  
 soothed her, and at length she addressed him as her  
 father, and recalled the scenes of their early ac-  
 quaintance. Having given birth to a son, she was  
 about to return, when she sickened and died, at the  
 age of twenty-two. Her son survived, and reared  
 an offspring, which is perpetuated in some of the  
 best families in Virginia.

Her  
death

## CHAPTER IV.

Virginia—Hudson River—Canada.

1. IN 1617, CAPTAIN ARGALL was made acting  
 governor of Virginia. Lord Delaware having at-  
 tempted to reach the settlement, died on the pas-  
 sage. Argall governed with so much rigor, as to  
 excite universal discontent. Not only did he play  
 the tyrant over the colonists, but he cheated the  
 company. The rumor of his oppression made emi-  
 gration unpopular. By the influence of the good Sir  
 EDWIN SANDYS, the benevolent YEARDLY was sent  
 over to take his place.

1617.  
Argall's  
mis-  
conduct.

2. *Governor Yeardly called the first general as-  
 sembly which was held in Virginia*, consisting of  
 representatives, chosen from among the people, who  
 were to act conjointly with the governor and coun-  
 cil appointed by the company, in all matters of im-  
 portance. The colonists, who, till then, had been  
 nothing more than the servants of the company,  
 were thus raised to the distinction and privileges of  
 freemen.

1619.  
The first  
general  
assembly.

10. What took place there? Whom did she meet, and how  
 has she left descendants?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What is here said of Argall? What effect  
 had the report of his bad conduct? Who was sent as governor?

2. What important privilege did the people obtain? Of whom  
 did the first assembly consist?

3. In this assembly, which met at Jamestown, eleven boroughs were each represented by two burgesses. For this cheering dawn of civil liberty, the colonists expressed to the company "the greatest possible thanks," and forthwith "fell to building houses and planting corn."

P.T. I.  
P.D. II.  
CH. IV.  
They  
meet at  
James-  
town.

4. In order to attach the colonists more entirely to their new settlements, there was, about this time, sent out, by the advice of Sandys, a considerable number of young women of humble birth, but of unexceptionable character, as wives for the young planters. The price paid for the passage of each, was at first one hundred, and afterwards, one hundred and fifty pounds of tobacco. To fail of discharging debts so incurred, was esteemed particularly dishonorable.

Young  
women  
sent as  
wives.

5. About this time were introduced also into the colony, by order of King James, many idle and dissolute persons, then in custody for their offences. They were dispersed throughout the colony, and employed as laborers.

1620.  
Convicts  
sent  
to the  
colony.

6. A Dutch ship from Africa arriving at Jamestown, a part of her cargo of negroes was purchased by the colony. *This was the commencement of negro slavery in the United States.*

Slavery  
commences.

7. In 1609, occurred the discovery of the *Hudson river*, which has proved the finest for navigation of any in republican America. HENRY HUDSON, the discoverer, was an Englishman by birth, but was in the service of the Dutch East India Company. The next year, the Dutch sent ships to this river, to open a trade with the natives; but the Court of England disowned their claim to the country. The Dutch, however, followed up their good fortune, and soon erected Forts Orange and Manhattan, near the sites of Albany and New York.

1609.  
Hudson  
River  
discover-  
ed.

3. Where did they meet? What did they express, and what do?—4. What was done to attach them to their new homes? What price was paid?—5. What unwholesome settlers were introduced?—6. When did slavery commence?—7. Who discovered the great river of New York? What was done by the Dutch? Were the English satisfied? What important cities were begun?

- P.T. I. 8. In 1608, CHAMPLAIN, under DE MONTS, conduct-  
 P.D. II. ed a colony to America, and founded *Quebec*. Wish-  
 OII. IV. ing to secure the friendship of the adjacent natives,  
 he consented the next year, to accompany them on  
 1608. an expedition against the Iroquois, with whom they  
 Chain- were at war. They entered upon the lake which now  
 plain founds bears, in honor of its discoverer, the name of Cham-  
 Quebec. plain, and traversed it until they approached its junc-  
 1609. tion with Lake St. Sacrament, now Lake George  
 Discovers Here, in the vicinity of Ticonderoga, a bloody en-  
 Lake gagement took place, in which Champlain and his  
 Chain- allies were victorious.  
 plain.

9. Captain Smith, after his return from Virginia,  
 explored the north-eastern coast of the United States  
 with a trading squadron of two ships. Smith sailed  
 1614. in the largest, and the other was commanded by  
 Smith in Captain Hunt, before mentioned as having kidnap-  
 N. Eng- ped twenty-seven of the subjects of Massasoit. Smith  
 land. accurately examined the shore, with its bays and riv-  
 With ers, from the mouth of the Penobscot to Cape Cod,  
 Captain and having drawn a map, he laid it, on his return,  
 Hunt. before Prince Charles,—with a hint, that so beautiful  
 and excellent a country deserved to bear an honor-  
 able name. The Prince listened to his suggestion,  
 and declared that it should thereafter be called NEW  
 ENGLAND.

10. The French having established themselves  
 within the limits of the northern colony of Virginia,  
 Capt. Argall was sent from Jamestown to dispossess  
 them. He destroyed Port Royal, and all the French  
 settlements in Acadia. On his return he visited the  
 Dutch at Manhattan, and demanded possession of the  
 country in the name of the British sovereign. The  
 Dutch traders made no scruple to acknowledge the  
 supremacy of King James, and, under him, that of  
 the governor of Virginia.

Argall  
 subdues  
 the  
 French  
 and  
 Dutch.

---

8. Relate what was done by Champlain at the North?—9. In what enterprise was Captain Smith now engaged? With whom? What was done on Smith's return?—10. Relate Captain Argall's expedition and its results?

## EXERCISES ON THE TREE CHRONOGRAPHER.

(Referring to events of Period II., Part I.)

What event marks the beginning of this period? Point out its date. Also the following dates: Sir Walter Raleigh obtained a transfer of Gilbert's patent in 1584. Raleigh sent out a squadron of seven ships under Sir Richard Grenville, in 1585; and again he sent out a colony in 1587, under Captain White. Gosnold discovered Cape Cod in 1602. De Monts discovered the bay of Fundy and founded Port Royal in 1604. The London and Plymouth Companies were established by James I., in 1606. Chesapeake Bay was discovered by Captain Christopher Newport, and Jamestown founded in 1607. The London Company obtained a new charter from James I. in 1606, and Lord Delaware was appointed governor. Governor Yeardley called the first General Assembly, in Virginia, in 1619. Henry Hudson discovered the Hudson river in 1609. In 1614, Captain Smith explored the northeastern coast of the United States, which Prince Charles named New England. At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.

---

(Referring to events of Period III., Part I., and to be used after the study of the next period is completed, p. 85.)

Point out the event which marks the beginning of this period, and tell its date. Also point out the following dates: Massasoit visits the pilgrims in 1621. James I. issued a charter to a company styled the "Grand Council of Plymouth," in 1620. John Endicott began the settlement of Salem in 1628. Roger Williams founded Providence in 1636. The Pequods were defeated and destroyed in 1637. The college at Cambridge was founded in 1630. It took the name of Harvard in 1638. Lord Baltimore obtained a patent of Maryland in 1631. What event marks the termination of this period? Point to its place on the chronographer.





The Cabin of the May-Flower.

## PERIOD III.

FROM  
 THE LANDING } **1620** { OF THE PILGRIMS,  
 TO  
 THE COMMENCEMENT OF } **1643.** { BY THE UNION OF THE  
 THE CONFEDERACY, } NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

### CHAPTER I.

Departure of the Pilgrims from England, and their sojourn in Holland.

1. IN 1592, a law was passed in England, requiring all persons to attend the established worship, under penalty of banishment, and if they returned, of death. Among those who could not conscientiously comply with these exactions, were JOHN ROBINSON and his congregation, who lived in the north of England. They belonged to that sect of the Puritans, or dissenters from the church of England, called Separatists.

P.T. I.  
 P.D. III.  
 CH. I.

**1592.**  
 Robinson  
 and his  
 people.

2. To enjoy their religion, the pastor, and his whole flock, determined to exile themselves to Holland. But

---

CHAPTER I.—1. Who were John Robinson and his congregation? What law could they not conscientiously obey?—2. What was their object in seeking to change their country?

**P.T. I** this was a difficult undertaking. Once they embark-  
**P.D. III.** ed with their families and goods at *Boston, in Lin-*  
**CH. I.** *colnshire*. But the treacherous captain had plotted  
 with English officers, who came on board the vessel,  
**1607.** took their effects, searched the persons of the whole  
 Attempt company for money, and then, in presence of a gaz-  
 to go to ing multitude, led them on shore, and to prison. They  
 Holland. were soon released, except seven of the principal men,  
 who were detained and brought to trial, but at length  
 freed.

**1608.** 3. Again they bargained with a Dutch ship-master  
 Second attempt. at Hull, who was to take them in, from a common hard  
 by. At the time appointed, the women and children  
 sailed to the place of rendezvous in a small bark, and  
 the men came by land. The bark had grounded; but  
 the Dutch captain sent his boat and took the men  
 from the strand. But, in the mean time, the authori-  
 ties of Hull had notice; and the Dutch commander,  
 at the sight of a large armed company, having a fair  
 wind, with oaths, hoisted anchor and sailed away;  
 although the pilgrims even wept, thus to leave their  
 wives and children.

**Distress of the women.** 4. Behold now these desolate women, the mothers  
 of a future nation, their husbands forcibly carried off  
 to sea, while on land an armed multitude are approach-  
 ing! They are taken, and dragged from one magis-  
 trate to another, while their children, cold, and hun-  
 gry, and affrighted, are weeping and clinging around  
 them. But their piteous condition and Christian  
 demeanor softened, at length, the hearts of their  
 persecutors, and even gained friends to their cause.

**Storm at sea.** 5. The men, in the mean time, were driven out to  
 sea, and encountered one of the most terrific sea  
 storms ever known,—continuing fourteen days—dur-  
 ing seven of which, they saw neither sun, moon, or  
 stars. At length they all arrived in Holland. They  
 settled at first in *Amsterdam*. They did not, however,

---

2. What happened on their first attempt?—3. What on their second?—4. What trouble did the women meet with?—5. What the men? When in Holland, where did they first settle?

find cause to be satisfied, and they removed to *Leyden*. Here, by hard labor and frugal honesty, they lived highly respected; but after a few years they experienced evils, which made them think of another removal.

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. I.  
Leyden.

6. Not only were their own toils constant and severe, but they were obliged to employ their children, so that they were necessarily deprived of education. And the health of the young, often fell a sacrifice to the length of time and confined positions, in which they labored. Some died, and some became deformed. Their morals also were likely to suffer from the habitual profanation of the sabbath, witnessed around them.

Reasons  
for  
removal.

7. The Pilgrims had heard of America; and in its wilderness, they believed that they might serve God unmolested, and found a church, where not only the oppressed in England, but unborn generations, might enjoy a pure worship. The Dutch wished them to colonize under their government. But they still loved their country; and they sent agents to England, to procure, by the influence of Sir Edwin Sandys, a patent under the Virginia Company.

Agents go  
to Eng-  
land.

8. For the encouragement of this company, disheartened by the failures at Chesapeake Bay, Robinson, and Brewster, the ruling elder of his church, wrote to Sir Edwin, showing, in five particulars, the difference of their motives, their circumstances, and characters, from those of ordinary adventurers. *First*, "We verily believe the Lord is with us, to whose service we have given ourselves, and that he will graciously prosper our endeavors, according to the simplicity of our hearts therein. *Second*, We are all well weaned from the delicate milk of our

Letter to  
Sir E.  
Sandys.

---

5. Where remove? In what estimation were they held?—6. What reasons had they for another removal?—7. What for thinking of America? What did the Dutch wish? What moved the Pilgrims to send agents to England?—8. Who wrote a letter? To whom? To show what? Mention the first particular.

P.T. I. mother country, and mured to a strange and hard  
P.D. III. land, wherein we have learned patience.

CH. I.

The  
Pilgrims a  
peculiar  
people.

9. "*Third*, Our people are as industrious and frugal as any in the world. *Fourth*, We are knit together in a sacred bond of the Lord, whereof we make great conscience, holding ourselves tied to all care of each other's good. *Fifth*, It is not with us as with other men, whom small discontentments can discourage, and cause to wish themselves at home again. We have nothing to hope for from England or Holland, and our lives are drawing towards their period."

Contract  
with  
London  
mer-  
chants.

10. By the aid of Sandys the petitioners obtained the patent. But they needed money. To provide this, their agents formed a *stock company*, jointly, with some men of business in London, of whom MR. THOMAS WESTON was the principal; they to furnish the capital, the emigrants to pledge their labor for seven years, at ten pounds per man; and the profits of the enterprise,—all houses, lands, gardens, and fields, to be divided at the end of that time among the stockholders, according to their respective shares.

Aug. 3d,  
1620.  
Prepara-  
tion.

11. They then prepared two small vessels, the *May-Flower* and the *Speedwell*; but these would hold only a part of the company, and it was decided that the youngest and most active should go, and the older, among whom was the pastor, should remain. If they were successful, they were to send for those behind; if unsuccessful, to return, though poor, to them.

Parting at  
Delft-  
Haven.

12. Previous to their separation, this memorable church worshipped together for the last time, on an appointed day, when they humbled themselves by fasting, and "sought of the Lord a right way for themselves and their children." When they must

---

8. The second.—9. The third—fourth—fifth.—10. What did they obtain? What did they then need? How contrive to procure it?—11. What did the agents then prepare? Could all go? Which part was to go? On what condition did the others remain?

no longer tarry, their brethren accompanied them P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. II. from Leyden to the shore at Delft-Haven. Here the venerable pastor knelt with his flock; and the wanderers, while tears flowed down their cheeks, heard for the last time, his beloved voice in exhortation, and in prayer for them. "But they knew they were PILGRIMS, and lifted up their eyes to heaven, their dearest country, and quieted their spirits."

## CHAPTER II.

Progress of the Pilgrims from Holland to America.

1. From Delft-Haven, the Pilgrims sailed to Southampton, in England. Among the leaders of the party was ELDER BREWSTER, who at this time was fifty six, but sound in body, as in spirit. JOHN CARVER was near his age, beloved and trusted, as he was good and wise. WILLIAM BRADFORD was strong, bold, and enduring; but withal, a meek and prudent Christian. Next these in honor, and superior in native endowments, was EDWARD WINSLOW. He was at this time twenty-six; Bradford was thirty-two. MILES STANDISH had been in the English army, and was a brave and resolute officer. Leading men.

2. After remaining in Southampton a fortnight, the party put to sea. But misfortunes befalling, Sept. 6,  
Final de  
parture. they returned, left the Speedwell, and finally, to the number of one hundred, they set sail from *Plymouth*, in the solitary *May-Flower*. On the 6th of September, they took their last, sad look, of their native shore. After a stormy and perilous passage, they made land, on the 9th of November, at *Cape Cod*.

12. Give an account of their parting.

CHAPTER II.—1. From Holland where did the Pilgrims next go? Name their leading men. What is said of the first named? The second? The third? The fourth? The fifth?—2. What happened when they first put out to sea? From what place did they last depart? In what vessel? How many persons? What was the length and character of the passage? What the first land made

P<sup>T</sup>. I. 3. The mouth of the Hudson had been selected  
 F<sup>D</sup>. III. as the place of their settlement, and they accordingly  
 CH. II. ly steered southerly; but soon falling in with dan-  
 Nov. 9. gerous breakers, and all, especially the women, be-  
 At Cape ing impatient to leave the ship, they determined to  
 Cod. return and settle on or near the Cape. The next  
 day they turned the point of that singular projec-  
 tion, and entered the harbor, now called Provincetown.

1620.

Nov. 11.  
 Compact  
 signed in  
 the cabin.

4. They fell on their knees to thank the kind Power who had preserved them amidst so many dangers; and then "they did," says Cotton Mather, "as the light of nature itself directed them, immediately, in the harbor, sign an instrument, as the foundation of their future and needful government;" *solemnly combining themselves into a civil body politic*, to enact all such ordinances, and frame all such constitutions and offices, as, from time to time, should be thought most meet and convenient for the general good; *all which they bound themselves to obey.*

An  
 important  
 trans-  
 action.

5. This simple, but august compact, was the first of a series, by which the fetters of a vast system of political oppression have been broken. Upon some parts of the old continent, that system still remains; building upon the fiction, that sovereigns own the world and its inhabitants, having derived all from God; and that the people are to have only such a measure of personal freedom, and such possessions, as kings may choose to bestow. Here was assumed for the first time the grand principle of a *voluntary confederacy of independent men; instituting government, for the good, not of the governors, but of the governed.*

6. There were the same number of persons on

---

3. On what place had they intended to settle? Why did they change their minds?—4. What was their first act on arriving? What their next step? For what did they combine into one body? To what did they bind themselves?—5. What may be said of this compact? Upon what fiction are some governments founded? What was here assumed?

board the May-Flower as had left England; but one, a servant, had died; and one, a male child, P.T. I. P.D. III. CH. II. PEREGRINE WHITE, was born on the passage. Carver was immediately chosen governor, and Standish, 100 of the Pilgrims. captain.

7. No comfortable home, or smiling friends, awaited the Pilgrims. They, who went on shore, waded through the cold surf, to a homeless desert. But a place to settle in must be found, and no time was to be lost. The shallop unfortunately needed repairs; and in the mean time a party set out to make discoveries by land. They found "a little corn, and many graves;" and in a second excursion they encountered the chilling blasts of a November snow storm, which laid in some the foundation of mortal disease. The country was wooded, and tolerably stocked with game. Nov. 1 They go on shore the same day in which they sign the compact.

8. When the shallop was finished, Carver, Bradford, and Winslow, with a party of eighteen, manned the feeble bark, and set forth. Steering along the western shore of Cape Cod, they made, in three days, the inner circuit of the bay. "It was," says one of the number, "very cold; for the water froze our clothes, and made them many times like coats of iron." They landed occasionally to explore; and at night, inclosed with only a slight barricade of boughs, they stretched themselves upon the hard ground. 1620. Dec. 6. A party set sail in the shallop.

9. On the second morning, as their devotions closed, they received a shower of Indian arrows; when, sallying out, they discharged their guns, and the savages fled. Again they offered prayers with thanksgiving; and proceeding on their way, their shallop was nearly wrecked by a wintry storm of Dec. 8. Attacked by the Nausets. Saturday Dec. 10.

---

6. What number of persons arrived? What officers were chosen?—7. What can you say of their first arrival? What had they to do? What excursion was made?—8. What party set sail in the shallop? What course did they take? What sufferings encounter?—9. What happened on the second morning? Recollect Capt. Hunt, and say if these Indians had any cause to dislike the English.

P.T. I terrible violence. After unspeakable dangers, they  
 P.D. III sheltered themselves under the lee of a small island,  
 CH. II. where, amidst darkness and rain, they landed, and  
 (At with difficulty, made a fire. In the morning, they  
 Clarke's found themselves at the entrance of the harbor.  
 Island just The next day was the Sabbath. They rested and  
 within kept it holy, though all that was dear to them de-  
 Plymouth pended on their promptness.  
 harbor.)  
 Sun., 11.

10. The next day, *the* PILGRIMS *landed on the*  
*rock of* PLYMOUTH. Finding the harbor good,  
 Monday, springs abundant, and the land promising for tillage,  
 12. Pilgrims land they decided to settle here, and named the place  
 on from that which they last left in England. In a few  
 Plymouth days they brought the May-Flower to the harbor;  
 Rock. and on the 25th of December they began building,  
 having first divided the whole company into nine-  
 teen families, and assigned them contiguous lots—  
 of size according to that of the family—about eight  
 feet front, and fifty deep, to each person. Each man  
 was to build his own house. Besides this, the com-  
 pany were to make a building of twenty feet square,  
 as a common receptacle. This was soonest com-  
 pleted, but was unfortunately destroyed by fire.

11. Their huts went up but slowly; for though  
 their hearts were strong, yet their hands had grown  
 feeble, through fatigue, hardship, and scanty fare.  
 Many were wasting with consumption. Daily some  
 yielded to sickness, and daily some sunk to the  
 grave. Before spring, half of their number, among  
 whom were the governor and his wife, lay buried on  
 the shore. Yet they never repined, or repented of  
 the step they had taken; and when, on the 5th of  
 April, the May-Flower left them, not one, so much  
 as spoke of returning to England. They rather  
 confessed the continual mercies of a “wonder-work-  
 ing God.”

They  
 suffer, but  
 repine  
 not.

April 5,  
 1621.

---

9. Relate what further happened, and where the Pilgrims landed. How did they spend the Sabbath?—10. On what day and year did the Pilgrims land on the rock of Plymouth? At what time commence building? How proceed with it? How divide the land?—11. What was their condition during this first winter? Did they repine and complain?

ing Providence," that had carried them through so many dangers, and was making them the honored instruments of so great a work.

P<sup>T</sup>. I.  
P<sup>D</sup>. III.  
CH. III.

NOTE.—The dates in this part of History are of course given according to Old Style, since New Style was not adopted by the English government until 1382 years after this period. For a clear explanation of this subject, see the word *Style*, in Webster's large dictionary.

### CHAPTER III.

The Savages—Massasoit's Alliance—Winslow's Visit to the Pokanokets.

1. THE Pilgrims had as yet seen but few of the natives, and those hostile, when Samoset, an Indian, who had learned a little English at Penobscot, boldly entered their village, with a cheerful "Welcome Englishmen." He soon came again, with four others, among whom was Tisquantum, who had spread favorable reports of the English among his countrymen, and was afterwards of great service as an interpreter.

March 16  
First  
visit.

2. They gave notice that MASSASOIT, the sachem of the POKANOKETS, was hard by. He appeared on a hill, with a body of attendants, armed, and painted with gaudy colors. The chief desired that some one should be sent to confer with him. Edward Winslow, famed for the sweetness of his disposition and behavior, as well as for his talents, courage, and efficiency, was wisely chosen. Captain Standish found means to make a martial show, with drums and trumpets; which gave the savages wonderful delight.

The  
reception

3. The sachem, on coming into the village, was so well pleased with the attentions paid him, that he acknowledged the authority of the king of England, and entered into an alliance, offensive and de-

Alliance  
with Mas-  
sasoit

---

CHAPTER III.—1. Who was Samoset? Tisquantum?—2. What notice did they give? Who was Massasoit? What did he do, and what desire? What was done, and who chosen by the Pilgrims?

**PART I.** fensive, with the colonists, which remained inviolate  
**PART III.** for more than fifty years.

**CH. III.** 4. In July, Edward Winslow and Stephen Hop-  
 kins went on an embassy to Massasoit at Montaup.  
**1621.** The sachem was much pleased with the present of a  
 red coat, from Governor Bradford, who had suc-  
**Embassy** ceeded Carver. The envoys obtained from him an  
 engagement, that the furs of the Pokanokets should  
 be sold to the colony.

**Narragansets** 5. Massasoit feared the Narragansetts; and was  
 doubtless, on that account, desirous of cultivating  
 the friendship of the English. **Caxons**, the old  
 hereditary chieftain of that confederacy, perhaps  
 offended at this intimacy, or regarding the whites  
 as intruders, meditated a war against them. This  
**1622.** he openly intimated, by sending to Governor Brad-  
 ford a bunch of arrows, tied with the skin of a rat-  
 tlesnake. Bradford stuffed the skin with powder  
 and ball, and sent it back; and nothing more was  
 heard, at that time, of war.

**Winslow** 6. The next year, news came to Plymouth, that  
 Massasoit was sick. Winslow, taking suitable arti-  
 cles, went to Montaup. He found the Indians be-  
 wailing, and practising their noisy powwows or in-  
 cantations, around the sightless chieftain. Affection-  
 ately he extended his hand and exclaimed, "Art  
 thou Winsnow?" (He could not articulate the  
 liquid *L*.) "Art thou Winsnow? But, O Win-  
 snow! I shall never see thee more." Winslow ad-  
 ministered cordials, and he recovered. He then  
 revealed a conspiracy which the Indians had formed  
 and requested him to join. "But now," said he,  
 "I know that the English love me."

**Winslow** 7. Agreeably to Massasoit's advice, that a bold  
 stroke should be struck, and the heads of the plot  
 taken off, the intrepid Standish, with a party of only

3. What alliance made?—4. What visit was afterwards made?—  
 What trade secured?—5. What Indians was Massasoit afraid of?  
 How did their chief threaten the Pilgrims? How did Governor  
 Bradford reply?—6. Give an account of Winslow's second visit  
 to Massasoit.

eight, went into the hostile country, attacked a house where the principal conspirators had met, and put them to death.

8. In justice to the Indians, it should be stated, that they were provoked to this conspiracy by "Master Weston's men." These were a colony of sixty Englishmen, sent over in June, 1622, by Thomas Weston. Though hospitably received at Plymouth, they stole the young corn from the stalk, and thus brought want and distress upon the settlers the ensuing winter and spring. They then made a short-lived and pernicious settlement, at Weymouth. Weston was a London merchant, once the friend of the Pilgrims.

9. Notwithstanding all the hardships, all the wisdom and constancy, of the colonists, the partners of the concern in London complained of small returns; and even had the meanness to send a vessel to rival them in their trade with the Indians. Winslow went to England, and negotiated a purchase for himself and seven of his associates in the colony, by which the property was vested in them; and they sold out to the colony at large, for the consideration of a monopoly of the trade with the Indians for six years.

10. New Plymouth now began to flourish. For the land being divided, each man labored for himself and his family. The government was a *pure democracy*, resembling that now exercised in a town meeting. Each male inhabitant had a vote; the governor had two.

11. Numbers of their brethren of the church at Leyden came over within the first few years to join the settlement. The people of Plymouth gave a thousand pounds to assist them to emigrate. But

P.T. I.  
F.D. III.  
Ch. III.

Master  
Weston's  
men.

1624  
to  
1626.

Winslow's  
negotia-  
tion.

Govern-  
ment.

---

7. In what respect did the Pilgrims follow the sachem's advice?  
8. By whom had the natives been provoked?—9. On what account did Winslow go to England? What bargain did he make? To whom did the eight first purchasers sell out? And for what consideration?—10. Why did New Plymouth now flourish? What was their government at first?—11. Did any of their brethren from Leyden come over?

PT. I. the good Robinson was not permitted to enter the  
 P.D. III. land of his hopes and affections. He died in Leyden,  
 CH. IV. 1625, to the great grief of the Pilgrims.

**1625.**

Death of  
 Robinson.

## CHAPTER IV.

The Plymouth Company superseded by THE GRAND COUNCIL OF  
 PLYMOUTH—New Hampshire—Massachusetts Bay.

**1620.** 1. IN November, 1620, the same month in which  
 Grand Council. the Pilgrims arrived on the American coast, JAMES  
 I. issued a charter, or patent, to the duke of Lenox,  
 the marquisses of Buckingham and Hamilton, the  
 earls of Arundel and Warwick, Sir Ferdinando  
 Gorges, and thirty-four associates; styling them the  
 "GRAND COUNCIL OF PLYMOUTH, for planting and  
 Sweeping governing New England, in America." This patent  
 patent. granted them the territory between the "fortieth  
 and forty-eighth degrees of north latitude, and ex-  
 tending throughout the main land from sea to sea."

2. This territory, *which had been previously call-  
 ed North Virginia, now received the name of New  
 England*, by royal authority. From this patent  
 North Virginia were derived all the subsequent grants, under which  
 called New Eng- the New England colonies were settled. But the  
 land. persons who transacted business for the company,  
 were unacquainted with geography, and avaricious.  
 They accordingly made their grants in an ignorant  
 or dishonest manner; so that much trouble ensued.

3. SIR FERDINANDO GORGES had been an officer in  
 the navy of Elizabeth, and a companion of Sir Wal-  
 ter Raleigh. He was ambitious, and perhaps thought  
 he should become the duke or prince of some large  
 territory. He was the prime mover in getting up

Gorges  
 and  
 Mason.

**11** Did the good Robinson ever come to America?

CHAPTER IV.—**1.** Of whom did the Grand Council of Plymouth  
 consist? Of whom receive a charter? When? What was the  
 territory granted them?—**2.** How was the name changed? What  
 was derived from this patent? How was the business of the com-  
 pany transacted?—**3.** Who was Sir F. Gorges?

the Grand Council of Plymouth, and was made its President. Similar motives actuated CAPTAIN MASON, and he became its Secretary.

4. Mason procured from the Grand Council the absurd grant of "all the land from the river of Naumkeag, (Salem,) round Cape Ann, to the mouth of the Merrimack, and all the country lying between the two rivers, and all islands within three miles of the coast." The district was to be called *Mariana*.

**1621.**  
March 9.  
Patent of  
Mariana.

5. The next year Gorges and Mason jointly obtained of the Council another patent of "all the lands between the Merrimack and Kennebec rivers, extending back to the great lakes, and river of Canada." This tract received the name of *Lacæonia*. Under this grant some feeble settlements were made at the mouth of the Piscataqua, and as far up the river as the present town of *Dover*.

**1622.**  
Charter of  
E. Maine  
and N. H.

**1623.**  
Settle-  
ments.

6. The persecution of the Puritans in England continued, and MR. WHITE, a minister of Dorchester, projected another colony to America. As early as 1624, a few persons were established on the site of Salem.

Mr. White,  
the  
patron  
of Mass.

7. Several gentlemen of Dorchester purchased of the Grand Council in 1628, a patent "of that part of New England which lies between three miles north of the Merrimack river, and three miles to the south of Charles river, and extending from the Atlantic to the South Sea." This tract was in part covered by Mason's patent.

**1628**  
Patent for  
N. Mass.

8. JOHN ENDICOT, a rugged puritan, began in *Salem*, the "wilderness-work for the colony of Massachusetts." He brought over his family, and other emigrants, to the number of one hundred. ROGER CONANT and two other persons from New Plymouth, had selected this spot, then called Naumkeag, for

The  
pioneers  
of Salem.

3 What person had similar objects?—4. What patent did Mason obtain?—5. What patent did Mason and Gorges obtain jointly?—6. Who projected another colony to America? Where was a settlement begun?—7. What patent was obtained?—8. Who was the pioneer for the Bay State? Where did he begin? How many bring over?

PT. I. their settlement; and Conant was there, to give, to  
 PD III. Endicot and his party, such welcome to the New  
 CH. V. World, as the desert forest could afford.

9. The next year, the proprietors in England, obtained of King Charles a charter, confirming the patent of the Council of Plymouth, and conveying to  
 1629. them powers of government. They were incorporated  
 Charter to the Bay Company. by the name of the "Governor and Company of Massachusetts Bay, in New England." The first general court of the company was held in England, when they fixed upon a form of government for the colony, and appointed Endicot governor.

10. About three hundred persons sailed for America during this year. A part of them joined Mr. Endicot at Salem, and the remainder, exploring the coast for a better station, laid the foundation of  
 Charles-town founded. *Charlestown.*

## CHAPTER V.

### The Colony of Massachusetts Bay.

1. A MORE extensive emigration was now thought of, than had been before attempted. But an objection arose; the colony was to be governed by a council residing in England. To obviate this hindrance, *the Company agreed to form a Council of those who should emigrate, and who might hold their sessions thereafter in the new settlement.*  
 The 'best' sent.

2. On the election, the excellent JOHN WINTHROP was chosen governor. "He was," said the colonists, "unto us as a mother; parent-like distributing his goods, and gladly bearing our infirmities; yet did he ever maintain the figure and honor of his place,

8. Who was on the spot to receive them?—9. What did the proprietors obtain? Where hold their first court? Whom make governor?—10. How many came over during 1629? Where did they settle?

CHAPTER V —1. What objections arose to an extensive emigration? What was done to obviate it?—2. Who was chosen to go over as governor?

with the spirit of a true gentleman." The company had determined to colonize only their "best." Eight hundred accompanied Winthrop; and, during the season, seventeen vessels were employed, bringing over in all, fifteen hundred persons.

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. V.  
**1630.**  
Fifteen  
hundred  
emigrate

3. Winthrop and his friends, found no luxurious table spread for them in the wilderness; but they freely gave of their own stores, to the famished and enfeebled sufferers, whom they met. Regarding Salem as sufficiently peopled, the newly-arrived, located themselves without delay, beyond its limits. Their first care, wherever they went, was to provide for the ministration of the gospel. Settlements were soon begun, and churches established at Charlestown, Dorchester, Boston, Roxbury, Lynn, and Watertown.

Arrive at  
Salem  
in June.

4. Unused, as many of these settlers were, to aught but plenty and ease, the hardships before them, though borne with a willing mind, were too much for the body,—especially in the case of women. Many died, though in the joy of believing. Among these, was the beloved ARBELLA JOHNSON, of the noble house of Lincoln. Her husband, ISAAC JOHNSON, the principal of the emigrants in respect to wealth, felt her loss so severely, that he soon followed her to the grave. He made a liberal bequest to the colony, and died "in sweet peace."

**1632.**  
Hardships  
endured.

5. Agreeably to the charter which the Company of Massachusetts Bay had received from the king, the voters agreed, that important regulations should be enacted in an assembly of all the freemen. A meeting was convened at Boston, in October; when Winthrop was re-elected governor, and THOMAS DUDLEY, who had been a faithful steward to the earl of Lincoln, was chosen deputy-governor.

**1637**  
Affairs of govern-  
ment.

2. What his character? What kind of persons and how many accompanied him?—3. What was the conduct of Winthrop and his friends? Where were the first villages and churches?—4. What can you say of the hardships endured? Who among others died?—5. When was an assembly held in Boston? Who was chosen to office?

**P'T. I.** 6. At the first, the freemen all went to Boston to  
**P'D. III.** vote, every man for himself. The government then  
**CH. VI.** was a *simple democracy*. But the settlements were  
soon so spread, that some would have to go many  
**Gov'tment** miles. They then concluded to choose certain of  
**charges.** their number, as is now done in our freeman's meet-  
ings, to go to the seat of government, and do their  
public business for them. This was changing the  
government to a *representative democracy*. The  
same change took place in the other colonies.

7. **CHARLES I.**, the son and successor of **JAMES I.**,  
was no less violent in his religious and political des-  
**1635.** potism; and emigrants continued to flock to New  
**3000 emi-** England. In the year 1635, not less than three  
**grate** thousand arrived; among whom, was the younger  
**to N. E.** **HENRY VANE**, afterwards much known in the history  
of England.

8. The high manner of Vane, his profound reli-  
**Vane** gious feeling, and his great knowledge, so wrought  
**governor.** in his favor, that, disregarding his youth, the people  
**1636.** rashly withdrew their suffrages from the good Win-  
throp, and chose him governor, the year after his  
arrival.

## CHAPTER VI.

### Rhode Island and its first Founder.

1. **ROGER WILLIAMS**, a puritan minister, had been  
driven from England by persecution. When he ar-  
**Feb 5,** rived in Massachusetts, he proclaimed, that the only  
**1631.** business of the human legislator is with the actions  
**Views of** of man as they affect his fellow-man; but as for the  
**toleration.** thoughts and feelings of his mind, and the acts or

6. What kind of government was first in use in the colonies  
generally? To what kind was it changed?—7. Who succeeded  
**James I.**, as king of England? Was he less violent in persecu-  
tion? What can you say respecting emigration and emigrants?  
8. What can you say of Henry Vane?

**CHAPTER VI.—1.** Who was Roger Williams? What new opin-  
ions did he proclaim?

omissions of his life, as respects religious worship, the only law-giver is God; and the only human tribunal, a man's own conscience.

PT. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VI.

2. The minds of the puritan fathers were troubled by these new and strange doctrines, which they believed would, unless checked, destroy all that they had suffered so much to establish. Williams, the eloquent young divine, frank and affectionate, had, however, won the hearts of the people of Salem; and they invited him to settle with them as their pastor. The general court forbade it. Williams withdrew to Plymouth, where he remained as pastor for two years; and then returned to Salem, where he was again gladly received by the people.

1635.  
Williams  
settled  
at Salem.

3. The court punished the town for this offence, by withholding a tract of land, to which they had a claim. Williams wrote to the churches, endeavoring to show the injustice of this proceeding; whereupon the court ordered, that, until ample apology was made for the letter, Salem should be disfranchised. Then all, even his wife, yielded to the clamor against him; but he declared to the court, before whom he was arraigned, that he was ready to be bound, or, if need were, to attest with his life, his devotion to his principles. The court, however, pronounced against him the sentence of exile.

Salem  
disfranchised.

Williams  
banished.

4. Winter was approaching, and he obtained permission to remain till spring. The affections of his people revived, and throngs collected to hear the beloved voice, soon to cease from among them. The authorities became alarmed, and sent a pinnace to convey him to England; but he had disappeared.

1636

5. Now a wanderer in the wilderness, he had not, upon many a stormy night, either "food, or fire, or company," or better lodging, than the hollow of a

2. How did they affect the minds of the Puritan settlers? Relate what happened respecting Williams.—3. What did the general court, after Salem had twice received Williams? What letter did Williams write? What was the consequence?—4. Was the sentence of Williams immediately executed?

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VI. tree. At last, a few followers having joined him, he selected Seckonk, since Rehoboth, within the limits of the colony of Plymouth. Winslow was now governor there; and he felt himself obliged to communicate to Williams, that his remaining would breed disturbance between the two colonies; and he added his advice to that privately conveyed to Williams by a letter from Winthrop, "to steer his course to Narragansett Bay."

He goes to  
the Nar-  
ragansetts.

6. Williams now threw himself upon the mercy of Canonicus. In a little time he so won upon him, that he extended his hospitality to him and his suffering company. He would not, he said, *sell* his land, but he freely *gave* to Williams, whose neighborhood he now coveted, and who was favored by his nephew MIANTONOMOH, all the neck of land between the Pawtucket and Moshasuck rivers, "that his people might sit down in peace and enjoy it forever." Thither they went; and, with pious thanksgiving, named the goodly place, *Providence*.

Receives a  
noble gift.

7. By means of this acquaintance with the Narragansetts, Williams learned that a conspiracy was forming to cut off the English, headed by SASSACUS, the powerful chief of the Pequods. The Narragansetts had been strongly moved by the eloquence of MONOXOTTO, associate chief with Sassacus, to join in the plot. They wavered; but Williams, by making a perilous journey to their country, persuaded them rather to unite with the English, against their ancient enemies.

The  
Narragan-  
setts  
favor the  
English.

8. Anxious to do good to his brethren, though they had persecuted him, Williams next wrote to Governor Winthrop; who, taking the alarm, invited Miantonomoh to visit him at Boston. The chieftain went, and there entered into a treaty of peace and

---

5. What happened now to Williams? What advice did he get, and from whom?—6. To whom did he apply for shelter? Could he buy land of the sachem? Who favored him? What noble gift did he receive?—7. What did Williams learn, and what do respecting the Narragansetts?—8. What letter did he write?

alliance with the English; engaging to them the assistance of the Narragansetts against the Pequods. Williams founded, at Providence, the first Baptist Church in America.

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VII.

## CHAPTER VII.

Connecticut and its Founders.

1. THE Dutch and English, both claimed to be the original discoverers of Connecticut river; but the former had probably the juster claim. The natives along its valley were kept in fear by the more warlike Pequods on the east, and the terrible Mohawks in the west; and hence they desired the presence of the English, as defenders.

The Dutch, the discoverers of Conn. River.

2. As early as 1631, WAHQUIMACUT, one of their sachems, being pressed by the Pequods, went to Boston, and afterwards to Plymouth, earnestly requesting that an English colony might be sent to his pleasant country. Governor Winthrop declined his proposal; but Edward Winslow, then governor of Plymouth, favored the project,—and visited and examined the valley.

An invitation.  
1631.

3. The Plymouth people had been, some time previous, advised by the Dutch to settle on Connecticut river; and they now determined to pursue the enterprise. They fixed on the site of Windsor, as the place to erect a trading-house. But the Dutch changed their minds, and were now determined to take the country themselves. They, therefore, erected a small trading fort, called the house of Good Hope, on a point of land in Sukeag, since *Hartford*, at the junction of the Little river with the Connecticut.

Dutch fix at Hartford.

8. What church did he found?

CHAPTER VII.—1. What can you say of the discovery of Connecticut river? What of the natives of its valley?—2. What request was made by one of the sachems? How was it received? 3. What did the Dutch advise, and what do? Where did the Plymouth people locate?

**P.T. I.** 4. The materials for the Plymouth trading-house  
**P.D. III.** being put on board a vessel, CAPTAIN HOLMES, who  
**CH. VII.** commanded, soon appeared, sailing up the river.  
 When opposite to the Dutch fort he was command-  
**October,** ed to stop, or he would be fired upon; but he reso-  
**1633.** lutely kept his course; and the Windsor house, the  
**Plymouth** first in Connecticut, was erected and fortified before  
**people at** winter  
**Windsor.**

**Patent of** 5. The *Grand Council*, first patented Connecticut  
**Conn.** to the earl of Warwick. That nobleman transferred  
 his patent to Lord Say-and-Seal, and Lord Brooke,  
**The** with others. JOHN WINTHROP, son of the worthy  
**younger** governor of Massachusetts, having been sent to  
**Win-** England on business for that colony, took an agency  
**throp** for the two Lords patentees, and was directed by  
 them to build a fort at the mouth of the Connect-  
 icut river.

**1631.** 6. The patent granted all that part of New Eng-  
**Extent of** land which extends "from Narragansett river one  
**the** hundred and twenty miles on a straight line, near  
**patent.** the shore, towards the south-west, as the coast lies  
 towards Virginia, and within that breadth, from the  
 Atlantic ocean to the South Sea." These bounds  
 show how little was known by the Grand Council of  
 the geography of the country.

**1633,** 7. Before Mr. Winthrop's commission was known,  
**to** THOMAS HOOKER and his church had determined to  
**1635.** leave Newtown, since called Cambridge, and plant  
 themselves upon Connecticut river, in accordance  
**Hooker** with the invitation given by the sachem. They  
**at New-** obtained, for that object, a reluctant permission  
**town.** from the general court of Massachusetts.

**Windsor** 8. Other parties around the Bay were also in mo-  
**and** tion. In August, a few pioneers from Dorchester  
**Wethers-** selected a place at Windsor, near the Plymouth.  
**field.**

4. How proceed in respect to building? What can be said of the house they built?—5. Who gave the patent of Connecticut? Who was the first patentee? To whom did he transfer? What agent did they appoint? What directions give?—6. What territory did the patent include?—7. Where were Thomas Hooker and his church first settled? Where did they determine to go? What Indian sachem had invited the whites to settle there?

trading-house ; and others, from Watertown, fixed on Pyquag, now Wethersfield.

P<sup>T</sup>. I.  
P<sup>D</sup>. III.  
CH. VII.

9. Having made such preparations as they were able, a party, intending to be in advance of Hooker, set out in October, with their families, amounting in all to sixty persons, men, women, and children. To proceed rapidly across a trackless wilderness, through swamps and over mountains, was impossible ; and when the tedious journey was accomplished, winter was at hand ; and it set in earlier than usual, and was uncommonly severe.

Hardships  
endured.

10. After enduring such hardships as human nature shudders to contemplate, most of the party, to save life, got on board a vessel, and at length reached Massachusetts. A few remained, who lived on malt and acorns. These resolute puritans were not, however, discouraged ; but most of those, who left the settlement in the winter, returned in the spring with Hooker and his company.

Return to  
the Bay.

11. Winthrop, in the mean time, commenced building the projected fort. A few days afterwards, a Dutch vessel, which was sent from New Netherlands, appeared off the harbor to take possession of its entrance. The English having by this time mounted two pieces of cannon, prevented their landing. They proceeded to complete the fort, which was named after the two Lords patentees, Say-Brook.

Fort at  
Saybrook

Attack  
and  
repulse.

12. The Pilgrims, in the exercise of their wonted virtues, now sold their claim to lands in Windsor, to the people of Dorchester ; and the patentees were content that the Massachusetts settlement should proceed.

13. Thomas Hooker is regarded as the principal founder of Connecticut. In him a natural "grandeur of mind" was cultivated by education, and chastened

---

9. What other parties had similar designs ?—9. Give an account of the party who went in advance of Hooker.—10. Were they discouraged ?—11. What happened at the mouth of Connecticut river ?—12. What peaceable compromise was made among the various settlers ?

**P.T. I.** by religion and adversity. He was commanding  
**P.D. III.** and dignified in his ministerial office; yet, in private  
**CH. VII.** life he was generous, compassionate, and tender. So  
 Hooker in attractive was his pulpit eloquence, that in England  
 England. he drew crowds, often from great distances, of noble as well as plebeian hearers.

**1633.** 14. His congregation in England esteemed his  
 Meets his church at Boston. ministry as so great a blessing, that, when persecution drove him from his native land, they desired still to be with him, although in these "ends of the earth." A portion of his people had preceded him, and were already settled at Newtown—since Cambridge. As he landed, they met him on the shore. With tears of affection, he exclaimed, "Now I live! if ye stand fast in the Lord!"

**A governor.** 15. Associated with Hooker, both in council and action, was JOHN HAYNES, a gentleman of excellent endowments, of unaffected meekness, and possessed of a very considerable estate. So desirous were the people of Massachusetts to detain him, that they made him their governor; but he would not separate himself from his friend and pastor.

**June, 1636.** 16. Warned by the calamities of the preceding autumn, Hooker would not delay, although his wife was so ill, as to be carried on a litter. The company departed from Newtown early in June, driving their flocks and herds. Many of them were accustomed to affluence; but now, they all,—men, women, and children,—travelled on foot, through thickets, across streams and over mountains,—lodging at night upon the unsheltered ground. But they put their cheerful trust in God; and we doubt not the ancient forest was, night and morning, made vocal with His praise.

17. At length they reached their destined location, which they named Hartford. The excellent

---

**13.** Describe the principal founder of Connecticut.—**14.** What showed the affection of his people in England? Did the church come to America together?—**15.** Give an account of John Haynes.—**16.** Describe the journey of Hooker and his people  
**17.** Where was their location?

Haynes was chosen chief magistrate; and the soil was purchased of the natives. The succeeding summer was one of the utmost exertion. Houses were to be built, lands cleared, food provided for the coming winter, roads made, the cunning and terrible savage to be guarded against, and, chiefly, a church and state to be organized. All was to be done,—and all was accomplished, by wisdom, union, and labor.

PT. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VIII.

Good  
conduct  
and  
success.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### The Pequod War.

1. THE Pequods were endeavoring to unite the Indian tribes in a plot to exterminate the English, especially those of the colony, named from its river, CONNECTICUT. They had sought, as we have seen, the alliance of their former enemies, the Narragansetts; but through the influence of Roger Williams, Miantonomoh, the war-chief of that nation, remained true to the whites. UNCAS, the Mohegan sagamore, formerly a vassal, and of the same family with Sassacus, was now his inveterate foe.

1636.  
The  
Pequods  
hostile.

2. The Pequods murdered Captain John Oldham, near Black Island. They made other attacks, and carried away some prisoners. They cut off stragglers from Saybrook, and had become so bold as to assault the fort, and use impudent and threatening language. Everywhere they were, or seemed to be, lurking, with purposes of murder. The whole settlement, thus constantly excited, was in the feverish condition of intense and continual fear. The people neither ate, slept, or labored,—or even worshipped God in the sanctuary, without arms and ammunition at hand.

July.  
Distress  
of the  
settlers.

17. Who was made governor? How did they get the right of soil? What had they to do? By what means did they accomplish their undertakings?

CHAPTER VIII.—1 & 2. What causes had the Pequod Indians given to the Connecticut people, to declare war against them? What was the condition of the people?

P.T. I. 3. A general court was called on the last of May,  
 P.D. III. at Hartford Thirty persons had already been killed,  
 CH. VIII. and the evidence was conclusive that the savages  
 designed a general massacre. The court, therefore,  
**1637.** righteously declared war.

May.  
 The court  
 declare  
 war.  
 4. The quota of troops from the three towns now  
 settled, shows the rapid progress of the settlement  
 Hartford was to furnish ninety men, Windsor forty  
 two, and Wethersfield eighteen, making one hun-  
 dred and fifty. JOHN MASON was chosen captain.  
 The troops, embarking at Hartford, sailed down  
 the river and along the coast to Narragansett  
 Bay. Miantonomoh furnished them two hundred  
 warriors, Uncas sixty. There were actually em-  
 bodied of the English, only seventy-seven, of whom  
 twenty, commanded by CAPTAIN UNDERHILL, were  
 from Massachusetts. Guided by a Pequot deserter,  
 they reached Mystic, one of the two forts of Sassacus,  
 at dawn of day.

Mason's  
 route.

5. Their Indian allies showed signs of fear, and  
 Mason arranging them at a distance around the fort,  
 advanced with his own little army. If they fell,  
 there was no second force to defend their state, their  
 wives and helpless children. As they approach, a  
 dog barks, and an Indian sentinel cries out, "Owan-  
 nox, Owannox!" the English! the English! They  
 leap within the fort. The Indians fight desperately,  
 and victory is doubtful. Mason then seizes and  
 throws a flaming brand, shouting, "We must burn  
 them." The light materials of their wigwams were  
 instantly in a blaze. Hemmed in, as the Indians now  
 were, escape was impossible: and six hundred,—  
 all who were within the fort,—of every sex and age,  
 in one hour perished.

May 26.  
 Mystic  
 destroyed.

k. 600.

6. The subjects of Sassacus, now reproached him

---

3. When and where did the general court meet? What did they do?—4. What troops were to be raised, and how apportioned? Give a particular account of the armament, their number, commander, and route. What assistance was received?—5. Describe Mason's arrangements—his approach—and the fate of the Pequods within the fort.

as the author of their misfortunes, and to escape destruction, he, with his chief captains, fled to the Mo-hawks; but he was afterwards slain by a revengeful subject. Three hundred\* of his warriors, having burned his remaining fort, fled along the sea-coast. Mason, aided by fresh troops from Massachusetts, pursued the fugitive savages; traced them to a swamp in Fairfield, and there fought and defeated them.

PT. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VII.

1637.  
Fair-  
field.  
Indian I.  
1000.

7. Nearly one thousand of the Pequods were destroyed; many fled, and two hundred, beside women and children, remained as captives. Of these, some, we are grieved to relate, were sent to the West Indies and sold into slavery. The remainder were divided between the Narragansetts and the Mohegans. The two Sachems, Uncas and Miantonomoh, between whom was mutual hatred, now engaged to live in peace. The lands of the Pequods were regarded as conquered territory, and the name of the tribe was declared extinct.

The  
Pequod  
extinct.

8. The prowess of the English had thus put the natives in fear, and a long peace ensued. All the churches in New England commemorated this deliverance, by keeping a day of common and devout thanksgiving.

First  
thanks  
giving.

9. The war had fallen heavily upon the colony. Their farming and their finances were deranged; but order and industry restored them. In 1639, they formally conjoined themselves, to be one state or commonwealth, and adopted a constitution. This ordained two annual general courts, at one of which, to be held in May, the whole body of freemen should choose a governor, deputy-governor, six magistrates, and other necessary officers.

1639.  
Civil  
govern-  
ment.

Its  
arrange-  
ments.

10. THEOPHILUS EATON and JOHN DAVENPORT, puritans of much distinction in England, were re-

6 Of those remaining?—7. How many were destroyed? What was done with the residue? With their lands? What two sachems engaged to live in peace?—8. On what occasion was the first New England thanksgiving?—9. When did they adopt a constitution? What can you say of the court held in May?

**P.T. I.** regarded as the founders of the colony of *New Haven*.  
**P.D. III.** These two friends collected their associates, and  
**CH. VIII.** arrived at Boston, July 26th, 1637. Massachusetts  
**1637.** was desirous of securing such settlers, but they pre-  
**Founders**ferred a separate establishment; and seeking a com-  
**of New**mercial station, they explored the coast; and, in  
**Haven.** 1638, they moored their vessels in Quinnipiac har-  
**Arrival at**bor.  
**Boston.**

11. The company had made some little prepara-  
tion for the settlement the preceding summer, yet  
many sufferings were to be endured. The spring  
was uncommonly backward; their planted corn per-  
ished repeatedly in the ground, and they dreaded  
the utter failure of the crop; but at length they  
were cheered by warm weather, and surprised by  
the rapid progress of vegetation.

**April 18,**  
**1638.** 12. The first Sunday after they arrived, they met  
and worshipped under a large tree, when Mr. Da-  
venport preached to them concerning the tempta-  
tions of the wilderness. Not long after, the free  
planters subscribed, what, in distinction from a  
church union, they termed a *plantation-covenant*.\*

**1639.** 13. Under this covenant they continued until the  
next year, when they assembled in a large barn be-  
longing to Mr. Newman, formed themselves into a  
body politic, and established a form of government.  
**Government.** The governor and magistrates were to hold annu-  
ally a general court, to regulate the affairs of the  
colony. Eaton was chosen governor. They pur-  
**Mr. Eaton,**chased their lands from the natives, and gave to the  
**governor.** place the name of **NEW HAVEN**.

\* In New Haven were published the famous *Blue Laws*, so called from  
the color of the book in which they were printed.

---

**10.** Who were the founders of New Haven? Describe their  
first operations.—**11.** What was the weather, and their prospects  
for a crop?—**12.** Where did they worship on the first Sunday?  
Where enter into the plantation-covenant?—**13.** What political  
arrangements did they make the next year?

## CHAPTER IX.

Intolerance of the times—Harvard College founded—R. Island—  
N. Hampshire—Delaware.

1. ANNE HUTCHINSON, a resident of Boston, at this time advanced religious opinions, so entirely at variance with those of the Puritan settlers, that a "great disturbance" arose in the Bay colony. Gov. Vane considered, that whether her opinions were true or false, she had a right to enjoy them herself, and explain them to others. Mr. CORRON, the minister of Boston, and the most celebrated of all the clergy of Massachusetts, was also, at first, inclined to defend Mrs. Hutchinson: but the ministers, generally, regarded her doctrines, not only as false, but, as dangerous—to such a degree, that, if let alone, they would overthrow both church and state.

P.T. I.  
P.D. III  
CH. IX.

The theo-  
logical  
disturb-  
ance.

2. In this extremity, a synod of ministers was assembled at Boston. Mr. Davenport had opportunely arrived from London, and Mr. Hooker, "desirous to prepare minds for political as well as religious union," recrossed the wilderness from Hartford. Mrs. Hutchinson's opinions were unanimously condemned by the synod; and herself and the most determined of her adherents were banished.

Mrs. H.  
banished.

3. The unfortunate woman, excommunicated from the church, became an outcast from a society which had but now followed and flattered her. She went first to Rhode Island, to join a settlement, which her followers had there made. From thence, she removed with her family to the State of New York, where she met death in its most appalling form; that of an Indian midnight massacre.

1638  
to  
1643.

Mrs. H.  
destroyed.

4. One of the earliest cares of the Puritan fathers, was to provide the means of instruction for their children. At the general court in September, 1630,

1630.  
Mass.  
begins a  
college.

CHAPTER IX.—1. What caused a disturbance in the colony? What was Gov. Vane's view of the case? What that of the clergy generally?—2. What assemblage was held at Boston? What was done in regard to Mrs. Hutchinson?—3. What became of her?

**1636.** the sum of four hundred pounds was voted to com-  
 plete a college building, at Newtown, now called  
 Cambridge. In 1635, Mr. JOHN HARVARD, a pious  
 divine from England, dying at Charlestown, left to  
 the college a bequest of nearly eight hundred  
 pounds; and gratitude perpetuated his name in that  
 of the institution. All the several colonies cherished  
 the infant seminary, by contributions; regarding it  
 as a nursery, from which the church and state were  
 to be replenished with qualified leaders.

**1638.** 5. RHODE ISLAND. The most respectable of the  
 banished followers of Mrs. Hutchinson went south,  
 headed by WILLIAM CODDINGTON and JOHN CLARK.  
 The latter had been persecuted as a baptist. By  
 the influence of Roger Williams, they obtained from  
 Mantonumh, the noble gift of the island of Aquet-  
 neck,—called *Muddy Island*, on account of its beauty  
 and fertility. Here they established a government,  
 on the principles of political equality and religious  
 toleration. Coddington was made chief magistrate.

**1629.** 6. NEW HAMPSHIRE. Another portion of the dis-  
 ciples of Mrs. Hutchinson, headed by her brother-in-  
 law, Mr. WHEELWRIGHT, went north; and, in the val-  
 ley of the Piscataqua, founded Exeter. It was  
 within a tract of country lying between that river  
 and the Merrimack, which Wheelwright claimed by  
 virtue of a purchase made of the Indians. This  
 claim interfered with that conveyed by patent to  
 Mason and Georges, and was accordingly disputed.

**1611.** 7. In the mean time, small, independent settle-  
 ments, were made along the water courses, by emi-  
 grants from Massachusetts and the other colonies;  
 but they did not flourish, for they imprudently neg-  
 lected the culture of their lands,—present necessi-  
 ties being scantily supplied by fish and game. In

4. What was done in regard to the education of the young?  
 Who was John Harvard? For what is he remembered? 5. Who  
 gave away the island of Aquetneck? To whom? What was  
 given to it? On what principles was government established?  
 6. Who founded Exeter? Where is it? What was the name of  
 Wheelwright to the land? Who disputed his claim? 7. What  
 further may be said of New Hampshire at this early day?

1641, these settlements, induced by a sense of their weakness, petitioned Massachusetts to receive them under its jurisdiction. The general court granted their request, and they were incorporated with that colony.

2. **DELAWARE.** Governor Arundel, the hero of his age, projected, in 1627, a colony of his subjects from Sweden and Finland. About ten years afterwards they came over headed by Peter Minnerts, and settled at *Christina Creek*, on the west side of the Delaware, calling that river *Swedeland-stream*, and the country, *New Sweden*. 1627.  
1638.

3. Though this was the first effected settlement, yet the Dutch had, in 1629, purchased of the natives a tract of land extending from Cape Henlopen to the mouth of the Delaware river. A small colony conducted by Dr. Vries, came from Holland, and settled near Lewistown. They perished by the savages: but the Dutch continuing to claim the country, dissensions arose between them, and the Swedish emigrants. 1629.

## CHAPTER X.

### Maryland—Virginia.

1. **MARYLAND.** In 1631, **WILLIAM CLAYBORNE** obtained from Charles I. a license to traffic in those parts of America, for which there was not already a patent granted. Clayborne planted a small colony, on Kent island, in Chesapeake bay. 1631.

2. **George Calvert**, afterwards **LORD BALTIMORE**, was of the Roman Catholic faith. To enjoy his religion unmolested, he wished to emigrate to some vacant tract in America. He explored the country.

8. What eminent person projected a colony to America? Where did he settle?—9. Had there been a settlement there before? What became of the Dutch colony?

CHAPTER X. 1. What was done by William Clayborne?—2. Why did Lord Baltimore wish to leave England?

P.T. I. and then returned to England. The Queen, Henri-  
 P.D. III. etta Maria,\* daughter of Henry IV. of France,  
 CH. X. gave to the territory which he had selected, the  
 (\* Maine name of MARYLAND, and Lord Baltimore obtained  
 was so called it, by a royal patent.  
 from an estate of this queen, situated in Maine, France.)

3. He died at London in 1632, before his patent passed to a legal form; but his son, CECIL CALVERT, the second Lord Baltimore, by the influence of Sir Robert Cecil, obtained the grant intended for his father. By this patent he held the country from the Potomac to the 40th degree of north latitude; and thus, by a mere act of the crown, what had long before been granted to Virginia, was now taken away; as, what was now granted, was subsequently given to Penn, to the extent of a degree. Hence very troublesome disputes arose.

4. Lord Baltimore appointed as governor, his brother, LEONARD CALVERT, who, with two hundred emigrants, sailed near the close of 1633, and arrived at the Potomac early in 1634. Here they purchased of the natives, Yamaco, one of their settlements, to which was given the name of *St. Mary*. Calvert secured by this pacific course, comfortable habitations, some improved lands, and the friendship of the natives.

Calvert  
sails, Nov.  
1633.  
Arrives,  
Feb.  
1634.

5. The country was pleasant,—great religious freedom existed, and a liberal charter had been granted. This allowed the proprietor, aided by the freemen, to pass laws, without reserving to the crown the right of rejecting them. Emigrants accordingly soon flocked to the province, from the other colonies, and from England.

Generos-  
ity and  
gratitude.

6. Thus had the earliest settlers of this beautiful portion of our country established themselves, without the sufferings endured by the pioneers of former settlements. The proprietary government, gener-

---

2. Who named his territory after herself?—3. Did the first Lord Baltimore receive the patent? What did his son obtain? What country did this patent include?—4. Who conducted the first colony to Maryland? What judicious course did he pursue? 5. What inviting circumstances drew emigrants.

ally so detrimental, proved here a nursing mother. Lord Baltimore expended for the colonists, within a few years, forty thousand pounds; and they, "out of desire to return some testimony of gratitude," voted in their assembly, "such a subsidy, as the low and poor estate of the colony could bear."

7. Lord Baltimore invited the puritans of Massachusetts to emigrate to Maryland, offering them "free liberty of religion." They rejected this, as they did a similar proposition from Cromwell, to remove to the West Indies.

8. The restless, intriguing Clayborne, called the evil genius of Maryland, had been constantly on the alert to establish, by agents in England, a claim to the country, and thus to subvert the government of the good proprietary. In his traffic with the natives, he had learned their dispositions, and wrought them to jealousy. In England, the authority of the Long Parliament now superseded that of the king. Of this, Clayborne, and other disorderly subjects of Lord Baltimore, took advantage. Thus the fair dawn of this rising settlement was early overcast.

9. VIRGINIA. In 1621, SIR FRANCIS WYATT arrived as governor, bringing from the company in England a more perfect constitution for the colony. It contained some seeming concessions to the people, which not only gratified the settlers, but encouraged emigrants; and a large number accordingly accompanied Governor Wyatt to the province.

10. *This year cotton was first planted in Virginia*, and "the plentiful coming up of the seeds," was regarded by the planters with curiosity and interest.

11. Opechacanough, the brother and successor of Powhatan, had determined to extirpate the whites, and regain the country. For this purpose he

6. What may be said of the proprietary government? How much did Lord Baltimore expend for the colony? Did they testify any gratitude?—7. What did Lord Baltimore offer the Puritans?—8. What was Clayborne called? What were some of his plans to injure the proprietor?—9. Who arrived in Virginia? What did he bring? What effect had these concessions?—10. When was cotton first planted in Virginia?

PT. I. formed a conspiracy to massacre all the English;  
 P.D. III. and during four years, he was, secretly, concerting  
 CH. X. his plan. To each tribe its station was allotted, and  
 A con- the part it was to act, prescribed.  
 spiracy

12. On the 22d of March, 1622, at mid-day, they rushed upon the English, in all their settlements, and butchered men, women, and children, without pity or remorse. In one hour, nearly a fourth part of the whole colony was cut off. The slaughter  
 1622. Indians  
 massacre  
 300.  
 of duty, had not moved a converted Indian, to whom the secret was communicated, to reveal to his master, on the night before the massacre. This was done in time to save Jamestown and the adjacent settlements.

13. A bloody war ensued. The English, by their arms and discipline, were more than a match for the Indians; and they retaliated in such a manner, as left the colonies for a long time free from savage molestation. They also received a considerable accession of territory, by appropriating those of the conquered natives.  
 The whites  
 retaliate.

14. In 1624 the London company, which had settled Virginia, was dissolved by King James, and its rights and privileges returned to the crown. Gov-  
 1624. L. Com.  
 dissolved  
 and Va. a  
 royal  
 province.  
 ernors were sent over by Charles I. the successor of James, who were oppressive; and the Virginians resisted their authority. SIR WILLIAM BERKELEY was sent over in 1641. The colonists were, under him, confirmed in their enjoyment of the elective franchise. Great harmony prevailed, notwithstanding the assembly took a high tone in respect to their political rights; boldly declaring "*that they expected no taxes or impositions, except such as should be freely voted, for their own wants.*"

---

11 & 2 Give an account of the Indian Massacre.—13. What was done in retaliation?—14. What became of the London company? Under whom was Virginia then? What can you say of the royal governors? Under what governor did harmony prevail? What did the assembly declare?

## CHAPTER XI.

Massachusetts threatened—The Puritans in England—Vane—  
UNION.

1. THE English court began to be jealous, that their colonies, especially that of the Bay, did not intend to be governed by the parent country. By some, who returned dissatisfied from Massachusetts, they learned the fact, that not only was their own religion established by law, but the use of the English liturgy was prohibited. Various other charges were made against the province,—showing that it was casting off dependence upon the English crown, and assuming sovereign powers to itself.\*

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. XI.

The court  
displeased  
with  
Mass.

(\* Mass.  
coined  
money )  
**1634.**

2. Much displeased, the king determined that the colonies should be brought to submersion, both in church and state; and he made Archbishop Laud, famed for his persecuting spirit, chief of a council, which was appointed, with full powers to govern the colony in all cases whatever.

Appoint  
commis-  
sioners.

3. The Grand Council of Plymouth, as it had its beginning and course, so also it had its end, in little better than knavery. We have seen that its own members, Gorges, Mason, and others, had been its patentees. These persons now wishing to make good, certain claims to territory in Massachusetts, gave up their patent to the crown; petitioning for redress against that colony, which they asserted had forfeited its charter, by exceeding its powers and territorial limits.

Mass.  
arraigned

4. Willing to humble their "unbridled spirits," the court of king's bench, issued a writ against the individuals of the corporation of Massachusetts Bay, accusing them with certain acts, by which they had

Dec.  
**1634.**  
Mass.  
charter  
annulled

CHAPTER XI.—1. Of what were the British government jealous? What reports concerning Massachusetts were true?—2. What did the king determine? Who was made chief of a council? With what powers?—3. On what occasion was the Grand Council of Plymouth dissolved? What evil did some of their number do to Massachusetts?—4. What was done in the king's court respecting the charter of Massachusetts?

**P.T. I.** forfeited their charter, and requiring them to show  
**P.D. III.** warrant for their proceedings. At a subsequent  
**CH. XI.** term, the court pronounced sentence against them, and declared that their charter was forfeited.

5. The rapid emigration to the colonies had attracted the attention of the council, and they had passed laws, prohibiting any person above the rank of a servant from leaving the kingdom, without express permission; and vessels already freighted with emigrants had been detained. But these prohibitions were in vain; for persecution, conducted by the merciless Laud, grew more and more cruel; and in one year, three thousand persons left England for America.

8000 come  
to New  
England  
in  
**1638.**

6. Oppression, and perhaps the successful escape and resistance of their brethren in America, had so wrought upon the public mind in England, that matters had now come to open opposition to the government. In Scotland, Charles had attempted to enforce the use of the English liturgy. Riots had followed, and the *Solemn League and Covenant* been made, by which the Scottish people bound themselves to oppose all similar attempts. Popular opinion became resistless. Laud's party was ruined, and himself imprisoned; while the king was engaged, in a bloody civil war, with his revolted subjects.

**1640.**  
Charles  
engaged  
in civil  
war.

7. Puritanism now reigned in England, and its disciples had no inducement to emigrate. Nay, some returned, among whom was Governor Vane. The Long Parliament had begun to rule; and its leaders were desirous to honor, rather than humble New England. Cotton, Hooker, and Davenport, were invited to go to London to attend the celebrated assembly of divines at Westminster. They, however, saw no sufficient cause "to leave their flocks in the wilderness." England was no longer

The Long  
Parliament.

**1642.**

5. What laws were made respecting emigration? What effect had they? -6. What was now the state of things in Great Britain? 7. How did the rule of Puritanism in England affect emigration to America? What honor was paid to three of the New England clergy? How was it received?

their country; but that for which they had suffered, though recent, was already as dear to these noble patriots, as the infant to the mother.

P.T. I.  
P.D. III.  
CH. XI.

8. A UNION was now meditated. Both internal peace, and external safety were to be secured. An essential part of the compact made, was the solemn promise of the framers to yield obedience to the powers thus created.

Safety and  
peace in  
Union.

9. Two commissioners having been appointed by each of the four colonies, Plymouth, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and New Haven, they met at Boston, May, 1643, where they drew up and signed the *Articles of Confederation*. Rhode Island was not permitted to be a member of the confederacy, unless it became an appendage to Plymouth. This, that colony very properly refused.

1643.

Articles of  
confed-  
eracy  
signed at  
Boston.

10. The style adopted was that of the "United Colonies of New England." Their little congress, the first of the New World, was to be composed of eight members, two from each colony. They were to assemble yearly in the different colonies by rotation, Massachusetts having, on account of superior numbers, a double privilege.

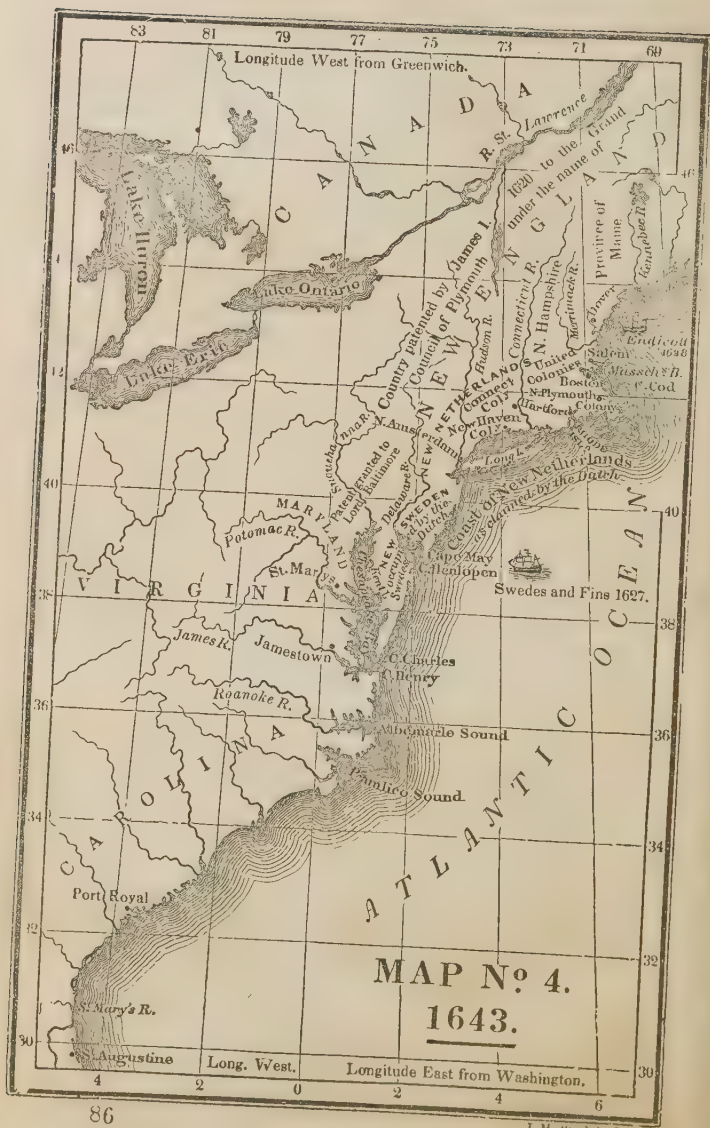
Commis-  
sioners to  
meet  
annually.

11. Although this confederacy was nominally discontinued after about forty years, yet its spirit remained. The colonies had learned to act together, and when common injuries and common dangers again required united action, modes and precedents were at hand. Hence, we regard the Confederacy of the four New England provinces, as THE GERM OF THE FEDERAL UNION.\*

(\* For the  
instruc-  
tions on  
the chro-  
nographer  
connected  
with the  
period  
here com-  
pleted,  
turn back  
to page  
49.)

8. What objects were to be secured by Union?—9. What four colonies sent commissioners to Boston? What important work did they perform? What hard condition was exacted of Rhode Island? 10. What was the style adopted? Where was the little congress of commissioners to meet?—11. How long did this confederacy last? Why is it regarded as the germ of the Federal Union?

Compare the third Map with the second, and tell the principal changes which have taken place in the geography in the course of the third period of the First Part of the history. What are the principal patents which have been given? Compare the different Maps with the history, and tell when the name of Virginia was first given, and to what extent of country it has, at different times, been applied.



# PART II.

FROM 1643 TO 1763.



Meeting of Winthrop and the Commissioners.—The first Congress of America.

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
THE CONFEDERACY OF } **1643** { THE FOUR N. E. COLONIES,  
TO  
THE NEW CHARTER } **1692.** { OF MASSACHUSETTS.

### CHAPTER I.

Virginia—Second Indian Massacre—Bacon's Rebellion..

1. IN 1644, the aged Opechacauough once more attempted to cut off the scattered white population. As soon as resistance was made, the Indians were struck with panic, and fled. The Virginians pursued them vigorously, and killed three hundred. The chief was taken prisoner. He was then inhumanly wounded, and kept as a public spectacle, until he was relieved by death.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
OIL. I.

**1644.**  
Second  
Indian  
massacre

CHAPTER I.—I. What attempt was made by an Indian chief? Which, in this case, suffered most, the Indians, or the Virginians? How many Indians were killed? How was the chief treated?

**P.T. II.** 2. Charles I. was beheaded; and CROMWELL directed the affairs of England. *He perfected a system of oppression, in respect to trade, by the celebrated "Navigation Acts."* By these, the colonies were not allowed to find a market for themselves, and sell their produce to the highest bidder; but were obliged to carry it direct to the mother country. The English merchants bought it at their own price; and thus, they, and not the colonist, made the profit on the fruits of his industry.

**P.D. I.**  
**CH. I.**

**1649.**  
Charles I.  
beheaded

Cromwell.

**1651.**  
The "nav-  
igation  
acts."

**1660.**  
Charles II.

Aristo-  
crats and  
plebeians.

3. At the same time, these laws prohibited any, but English vessels, from conveying merchandise to the colonies; thus compelling them, to obtain their supplies of the English merchant; of course, at such prices as he chose to fix upon his goods. Even free traffic among the colonists was prohibited.

4. Charles II. was restored to his father's throne in 1660. BERKELEY, after various changes, was exercising, in Virginia, the office of governor. But prospects grew dark. Notwithstanding the loyalty of Virginia, to none of the colonists had the suppression of the English monarchy wrought more good; and on none did the restoration operate more disastrously.

5. The Virginians were divided into two classes. The first comprised the few persons who were highly educated, and possessed of extensive domains. The second, and more numerous class, was composed of servants and laborers; among whom were some, that for crimes in England, had been sent to America. A blind admiration of English usages was now shown, in the regulations made by Berkeley and his aristocratical advisers.

---

**2.** In what year was Charles I. beheaded? Who then directed the affairs in England? By what were the colonies oppressed? What were they not allowed to do? What were they obliged to do? How did English merchants make the profit on the produce of the colonists?—**3.** Of whom were the colonists obliged to purchase their supplies? Who would fix the prices? Could the different colonies trade freely with each other?—**4.** What happened in 1660? Who was governor of Virginia? What were the prospects of Virginia? **5.** Describe the two classes into which the Virginians were divided? What can you say of Berkeley and his advisers?

6. The rights of the people were on all hands restricted. The affairs of the church were placed in the hands of vestries,—corporations who held, and often severely used, the right to tax the whole community. *The assembly, composed of aristocrats, made themselves permanent*, and their salaries large. The right of suffrage was unrestrained, but the power of electing the burgesses being taken away, the meetings of the freemen were of little avail; for their only remaining right, was that of petition.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.

The  
people  
stripped of  
their  
rights

7. A shock was now given, by which even the aristocracy were aroused. Charles, with his wonted profligacy, gave away Virginia for the space of thirty-one years. He had, immediately on his accession, granted to Sir William Berkeley, Lord Culpepper, and others, that portion of the colony lying between the Rappahannock and Potomac; and now, to the covetous Lord Culpepper, and to Lord Arlington, another needy favorite, he gave the whole province.

Charles  
gives  
away  
Virginia  
for 31  
years.  
**1673.**

8. On the north, the Susquehannah Indians, driven by the Senecas, from the head of the Chesapeake, had come down, and having had provocation, were committing depredations upon the banks of the Potomac. JOHN WASHINGTON, the great grandfather of the hero of the revolution, with a brother, LAWRENCE WASHINGTON, had emigrated from England, and both were living in the county of Westmoreland.

**1675.**  
John  
Washington.  
ton.

9. Six of the Indian chiefs came to John Washington, to treat of peace, he being colonel. He wrongfully put them to death. "They came in peace," said Berkeley, "and I would have sent them in peace, though they had killed my father and mother." Revenge inflamed the minds of the

Kills six  
Indian  
chiefs.

6. How was it with the rights of the people? How in church matters? What was done by the assembly? What was now the right of suffrage?—7. What did king Charles give away? What portion had he granted before? To whom? To whom was the whole province now given?—8. Who was John Washington? What Indians were troublesome?—9. What provocation had Colonel Washington given them? What said Berkeley?

P.T. II. savages, and the midnight war-whoop, often summoned to speedy death the defenceless families of the frontier.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.

1676. 10. The people desired to organize for self-defence; and in a peremptory manner, demanded for their leader, NATHANIEL BACON, a popular young lawyer. Berkeley refused. New murders occurred; Bacon assumed command, and with his followers, departed for the Indian war. Berkeley declared him and his adherents rebels.

Popular liberty prevails. 11. Bacon returned successful from his expedition, and was elected a member for Henrico county. Popular liberty prevailed, and laws were passed, with which Berkeley was highly displeased. Bacon, fearing treachery, withdrew to the country. The people rallied around him, and he returned to Jamestown, at the head of five hundred armed men.

Berkeley and Bacon. 12. Berkeley met them, and baring his breast, exclaimed, "A fair mark, shoot!" Bacon declared that he came only for a commission, their lives being in danger from the savages. The commission was issued,—and Bacon again departed for the Indian warfare. Berkeley, in the mean time, withdrew to the sea-shore, and there collected numbers of seamen and royalists. He came up the river with a fleet, landed his army at Jamestown, and again proclaimed Bacon and his party, rebels and traitors.

James-town burnt by Bacon's party. 13. Bacon having quelled the Indians, only a small band of his followers remained in arms. With these he hastened to Jamestown, and Berkeley fled at his approach. In order that its few dwellings should no more shelter their oppressors, the inhabitants set them on fire. Then leaving that endeared and now desolated spot, they pursued the royalists to the Rappahannock, where the Virginians, hitherto of Berkeley's party, deserted, and

---

10. What leader did the people choose? Give some account of the first steps in the contention between the people's leader and the governor.—11. Proceed with the account.—12. Continue the relation.—13. Relate the remaining events till the time of Bacon's death.

joined Bacon's standard. His enemies were at his mercy; but his exposure to the night air had induced disease, and he died. .

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.  
Oct. 1.  
Bacon  
dies.

14. The party, without a leader, broke into fragments. As the principal adherents of Bacon, hunted and made prisoners, were one by one, brought before Berkeley, he adjudged them, with insulting taunts, to instant death. Thus perished twenty of the best citizens of Virginia. "The old fool," said Charles II., who sent him orders to desist, "has shed more blood than I did, for the murder of my father."

15. "Bacon's rebellion" was extremely injurious to the affairs of the colony in England. A new charter, which was sent over, was not favorable to the Virginians. LORD CULPEPPER was made governor for life. He cared not what he made the people suffer, provided he could gain money for himself. LORD HOWARD, the next governor, was of the same stamp.

1677.  
Lord Cul  
pepper.

1683.  
Lord  
Howard.

16. It was at this period, that the Five Nations became very powerful. They had overcome all the surrounding Indians, and menaced the whites. This produced a *grand council at Albany*, in which Lord Howard, and COLONEL DONGAN, the governor of New York, together with delegates from the northern provinces, met the sachems of the Five Nations. The negotiations were friendly; and, in the figurative language of the Indians, "a great tree of peace was planted."

Peace  
with the  
Five  
Nations.

17. MARYLAND. Clayborne, in 1645, returned to Maryland, raised an insurrection, and compelled Governor Calvert to fly to Virginia for safety. The rebellion was, however, quelled. The next year, Calvert returned, and quiet was restored.

1645.  
Insurrec-  
tion in  
Maryland

18. The reign of Puritanism in England was dis-

---

14. What then happened to his party and principal followers?  
15. How did Bacon's rebellion affect the colony in England?  
What governors were sent over?—16. What Indians became  
powerful? What council was held?—17 Who made trouble in  
Maryland?

**P.T. II.** astrous to Maryland. Calvert, the governor ap-  
**P.D. I.** pointed by the proprietor, was obliged to surrender  
**CH. II.** the government; and the Catholics, after having set-  
**1652.** tled the country, were shamefully persecuted in it,  
 Catholics by the English authorities. Clayborne took advan-  
 persecuted tage of this, and with JOSIAS FENDALL, made a fa-  
 in their own mous "disturbance," of which little is now known,  
 province. except that it involved the province in much ex-  
 pense.

**1675.** 19. Lord Baltimore was restored to his rights, by  
 Death of Charles II., but he died soon after. His son and  
 Lord Bal- successor, soon found himself in trouble; for the  
 timore. English would not allow the Catholics of Maryland  
 to enjoy any political rights. At the same time the  
 people in the province, wished for a greater share in  
 the government, than the proprietor would grant.

**1688.** 20. JAMES II., who succeeded Charles, was a Cath-  
 William and Mary. olic, and he was a tyrant. He declared that there  
 should be no charter governments, but that he  
 should rule, according to his own sovereign will.  
 His oppressions were such, that his people in Eng-  
 land, and even his own family, joined against him.  
 They placed upon the throne, his daughter MARY,  
 with her husband, WILLIAM, prince of Orange, one  
 of the ablest statesmen of Europe.

---

## CHAPTER II.

New York settled by the Dutch—Taken by the English.

**1614.** 1. WE here commence with the early coloni-  
 Dutch emigrants found N York. zation of a State, which ranks first in the Union, in  
 respect to wealth and population. In 1614, a com-  
 pany of merchants in Holland, fitted out a squadron

**18.** What did he take advantage of? Who was with him?  
 What is known of "Fendall's disturbance?"—**19.** Who restored  
 Lord Baltimore? What gave trouble to his son?—**20.** Who suc-  
 ceeded King Charles II.? What did he declare? How did the  
 English people bear his tyranny? Who succeeded him?

**CHAPTER II.—1.** In what respects is New York the first State in  
 the Union?

of several ships, and sent them to trade to the country which Hudson had discovered. They constructed a rude fort on *Manhattan Island*. One of the captains, ADRIAN BLOK, sailed through the East river, and ascertained the position of Long Island. *He probably discovered Connecticut river.*

2. The next year the adventurers sailed up the Hudson, and on a little island, just below the present position of Albany, they built a small fort, naming it *Fort Orange*. Afterwards they changed their location, and fixed where Albany now stands.

3. Holland was distressed by internal troubles; and families wishing to settle in the new world, were now sent over. Cottages clustered around Manhattan fort, which was now called *New Amsterdam*, and the country, New Netherlands. PETER MINUETS was made its first governor.

In 1627, an envoy was sent from *New Netherlands* to New Plymouth; friendly civilities were interchanged; and a treaty of peace and commerce was made between the Dutch and the Pilgrims.

4. A new company was made in Holland, styled "the College of Nineteen." They decreed, that, whoever should conduct fifty families to New Netherlands, the name now given by the Dutch to the whole country between Cape Cod and Cape May, should become the patroon, or lord of the manor; with absolute property in the lands he should colonize, to the extent of eight miles on each side of the river on which he should settle.

5. DE VRIES conducted from Holland, a colony which settled *Lewistown*, near the Delaware; a small fort called Nassau, having been previously erected by the Dutch. In consequence of disagreements

PT II.  
P.D. I.  
ON II.

1615.  
Fort  
Orange,  
i. e.  
Albany,  
founded.

1619  
to  
1621.

Treaty  
with the  
Pilgrims.

1629.  
College of  
Nineteen  
dispose of  
lands.

1631.  
The  
Dutch or  
the  
Delaware

1. Did the Dutch first go there as traders, or as settlers? By whom were they sent? What fort did they first build? What discoveries make?—2. What was their second fort?—3. Why were families now willing to leave Holland? Where did they settle? What name give to the fort? To the country? Who was the first governor? Where did they send an envoy?—4. What new company was formed in Holland? What did they decree?—5. What colony was led by De Vries?

P.T. II. among the company in Holland, Peter Minuets re-  
 P.D. I. turned, having been superseded by WALTER VAN  
 CH. II. TWILLER. Minuets became the leader of a colony  
 of Swedes.

6. GOVERNOR KEIFT, who had succeeded Van  
 Twiller, had an inconsiderable quarrel with the  
 Manhattan Indians. Yet, when the Mohawks came  
 down upon them, they collected in groups, and beg-  
 ged him to shelter and assist them. The barbarous  
 Keift sent his troops; and at night murdered them  
 all,—men, women, and helpless babes,—to the num-  
 ber of a hundred.

**1613.**  
 Keift's  
 barbarity  
 to the  
 natives.

7. Indian vengeance awoke. No English family  
 within reach of the Algonquins was safe. The Dutch  
 villages were in flames around, and the people flee-  
 ing to Holland. In New England, all was jeopardy  
 and alarm. The Dutch troops defended themselves,  
 having placed at their head, Captain Underhill, who  
 had been expelled from Massachusetts. At this time,  
 it is supposed, occurred a bloody battle at Strick-  
 land's plain, in Greenwich, Connecticut.—The Mo-  
 hawks were friendly to the Dutch, and, at length,  
 peace was made by their interference.

Ven-  
 geance of  
 the  
 Indians.

**1645.**  
 Peace.

8. Keift, execrated by all the colonies, was re-  
 manded to Holland; and, in returning, perished by  
 shipwreck on the coast of Wales. STUYVESANT, who

**1618.**  
 Death of  
 Keift.

succeeded to his office, went to Hartford; and there  
 entered into negotiations, by which the Dutch claims  
 to Connecticut were relinquished.

**1650.**  
 Stuyve-  
 sant.

9. The Dutch had built Fort Casimir on the site  
 of New Castle, in Delaware. The Swedes conceiving  
 this to be an encroachment on their territory, Rising,  
 their governor, by an unworthy stratagem, made  
 himself its master. In 1655, Stuyvesant, acting by  
 orders received from Holland, embarked at New  
 Amsterdam, with six hundred men, and sailing up

**1664.**  
 Swedes  
 conquered  
 by the  
 Dutch.

5. What account can you give of Peter Minuets? Who was the  
 next governor?—6 Who the next? How did he treat the In-  
 dians?—7. What was the consequence of his cruelty? What oc-  
 curred in Connecticut?—8. What happened to Keift? Who was  
 his successor? What did he do?

the Delaware, he subjugated the Swedes. New Sweden was heard of no more; but the settlers were secured in their rights of private property; and their descendants are among the best of our citizens.

10. Many emigrants now came to New Netherlands, from among the oppressed, the discontented, and the enterprising of other colonies, and of European nations. At length the inhabitants sought a share of political power. They assembled, and by their delegates, demanded that no laws should be passed, except with the consent of the people. Stuyvesant treated the request rudely, and dissolved the assembly.

**1654.**

The people claim civil rights.

11. But popular liberty, though checked here, prevailed in the adjoining provinces; and they consequently grew more rapidly, and crowded upon the Dutch. The Indians made war upon some of their villages, especially Esopus, now Kingston; and New Netherlands could not obtain aid from Holland. The States General had given the whole concern into the hands of "the Nineteen," and they refused to make needful advances.

New Netherlands troubled.

12. Charles II. having granted to his brother James, then Duke of York and Albany, the territory from the banks of the Connecticut to those of the Delaware, SIR ROBERT NICHOLS was dispatched with a fleet to take possession. He sailed to New Amsterdam, and suddenly demanded of the astonished Stuyvesant, to give up the place. He would have defended his post if he could. But the body of the people, preferred the English rule to that of the Dutch; the privileges of Englishmen, having been promised them. Nichols, therefore, entered,

N. Amsterdam surrendered to the English. Sept. 3d, 1664.

9. Give an account of the contest between the Swedes and Dutch.—10. By what persons were their numbers in New Netherlands increased? What did the people now seek? How did the governor treat them?—11. Which prospered most, the places where the people's rights were respected, or those where they were not? What troubles were made by the Indians?—12. What territory was granted? To whom? Whom did he send to take the country? What were the circumstances of the surrender?

**PT. II.** took possession in the name of his master, and called  
**P'D. I.** the place *New York*.

**CH. III.**

The  
Dutch  
forts are  
surren-  
dered.

13. A part of the English fleet, under SIR GEORGE CARTERET, sailed up the Hudson to Fort Orange, which surrendered and was named *Albany*. The Dutch fort on the Delaware was also taken by the English. The rights of property were respected, and a treaty was made with the Five Nations. *The whole line of coast, from Acadia to Florida, was now in possession of the English.*

## CHAPTER III.

Pennsylvania and its Founder.

**1644.** 1. WILLIAM PENN, the great and good man, to whom Pennsylvania owes its origin, was the son of Vice Admiral Sir William Penn; and was born in London, in 1644. To provide a place for his persecuted brethren, of the denomination of Friends, or Quakers, was the leading object in his mind, when he planned a new emigration to America.

William  
Penn's  
birth, &c.

**1681.**  
March 4.  
Patent of  
Pennsyl-  
vania.

2. His father had left claims to the amount of sixteen thousand pounds against the crown; and Penn, finding that there was a tract yet ungranted, north of Lord Baltimore's patent, solicited and obtained of Charles II. a charter of the country. It was bounded east by the Delaware, extending westward through five degrees of Longitude, and stretching from twelve miles north of New Castle, to the 42d degree of latitude. It was limited on the south by a circle of twelve miles, drawn around New Castle, to the beginning of the fortieth degree of north latitude. The king gave to the country the name of **PENNSYLVANIA.**

**13.** What other places were taken by the English?

**CHAPTER III.—1.** What kind of person was William Penn? Of which of the States is he the founder? Give an account of his birth and parentage. What was his motive in planting a new colony?  
**2.** Of whom did Penn obtain a grant? What claim had he against the crown? What was the extent of Penn's first patent?

3. Soon after the date of this grant, two other conveyances were made to Penn, by the Duke of York; one of which embraced the present State of Delaware, and was called the "Territories;" the other released all claims to Pennsylvania.

P.T. II.

P.D. II.

CH. III.

Obtains Delaware.

4. Penn prepared a liberal constitution of civil government; for those who should become his colonists. Having sent out three ships, loaded with emigrants, and consigned to the care of his nephew, COLONEL MARKHAM, he left Chester on board the *Welcome*, and with one hundred settlers, sailed for his province,—his benevolent heart full of hope and courage.

Sept. 9. 1682.

Penn sails from Chester in England.

5. He landed at New Castle, and was joyfully received by the Swedes and Dutch, now amounting to two or three thousand. The next day, at their courthouse, he received from the agent of the Duke of York, the surrender of the "Territories." He then, with blended dignity and affection, assured the delighted throngs, that their rights should be respected, and their happiness regarded.

Arrives at New Castle, Oct. 23

6. In honor of his friend, the duke, he next visited New York; but immediately returning, he went to Upland, which he named *Chester*. Here a part of the pioneers, with Markham, had begun a settlement; and here Penn called the first assembly. It consisted of an equal number from the province and the "Territories." By its first act, all the inhabitants, of whatever extraction, were naturalized.

Names Chester. 1682.

Dec. 4. The first assembly at Chester.

7. Penn was the first legislator, whose criminal code admitted the humane principle, that the object of punishment is not merely to prevent crime, but to reform the offender. Hence, his code seldom punished with death. The assembly sat three days, and passed fifty-nine laws; an evidence, that the time

Pass in three days 59 laws.

3. What other conveyances were made to him?—4. How did Penn propose to treat his settlers in respect to government? Whom did he send from England before he sailed? From what place did he sail? In what vessel? With how many?—5. What were the circumstances of his first arrival?—6. What place did he next visit? Where go on his return? What was done in Chester? 7. What principle in legislation was Penn the first to teach?

**P<sup>T</sup>. II.** which belonged to the public, was not here consumed, either in personal abuse, or pompous declamation.  
**P<sup>D</sup>. I.**  
**CH. III.**

Penn  
visits  
Lord Bal-  
timore.

8. Penn next paid a visit of friendship and business to Lord Baltimore, at West River. Though they differed on the question of boundaries, yet friendly feeling pervaded the interview.

Penn  
meets the  
Indian  
chiefs.

9. Penn had given to Colonel Markham, who preceded him, directions, that the natives should be treated kindly, and fairly; and accordingly no and had been entered upon, but by their consent. They had also been notified that Penn, to whom they gave the name of Onas, was to meet, and establish with them, a treaty of perpetual peace. On the morning of the appointed day, under a huge elm at Shackamaxon, now a suburb of Philadelphia, the Indian chiefs gathered from every direction, to see Penn, and to hear his words; which they regarded as those of an angel.

**1682.**  
Makes a  
treaty  
of peace.

10. Penn gave them wise instructions, and solemnly appealed to the Almighty, that it was the ardent desire of his heart to do them good. "He would not call them brothers or children, but they should be to him and his, as half of the same body." The chiefs then gave their pledge for themselves, and for their tribes, "to live in love with him and his children, as long as the sun and moon should endure." The treaty was then executed, the chiefs putting down the emblems of their several tribes. The purchases of Markham were confirmed, and others made.

Penn lays  
out and  
names  
Philadel-  
phia.

11. After this, Penn went to a villa, which his nephew had built for his residence, opposite the site of Burlington, and called Pennsbury. Here he gave directions for laying out towns and counties; and in conjunction with the surveyor, HOLME, drew the plan of his capital; and in the spirit of "brotherly love," named it PHILADELPHIA.

---

7. What can you say of the labors done by the assembly? Of what was this an evidence?—8. Whom did Penn visit?—9. How did he direct that the natives should be treated? Of what had they been notified? Give an account of the meeting.—10. What did Penn say to the chiefs? How did the chiefs respond? Was a treaty made?—11. What did Penn after this?

12. Vessels came fast with new settlers, until twenty-two, bearing two thousand persons, had arrived. Some came so late in the fall, that they could not be provided with house-room in the rude dwellings of the new city: and "the caves" were dug in the banks of the river to receive them. Providence fed them,—by flocks of pigeons, and the fish of the rivers; and the Indians, regarding them as the children of Onas, hunted to bring them game. The season was unusually mild.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. IV.

Throngs  
of settlers

13. Penn had left beyond the ocean his beloved family. Letters from England spoke of the sufferings of his quaker brethren, and he believed that he might exercise an influence there, to check persecution. He embarked on the fourth of August; and wrote on board the ship an affectionate adieu to his province, which he sent on shore before he sailed. He said, "And thou, Philadelphia, virgin of the province! my soul prays for thee; that, faithful to the God of thy mercies, in the life of righteousness, thou mayest be preserved unto the end!"

Aug. 4,  
1684  
Penn  
embarks  
for  
England

## CHAPTER IV.

New Jersey—its settlement, and various claimants.

1. PREVIOUS to the surrender of the Dutch, the Duke of York made a grant, of that part of his patent lying between the Hudson and Delaware, to LORD BERKELEY and SIR GEORGE CARTERET. This tract was called *New Jersey*, in compliment to Sir George, who had been governor of the isle of Jersey.

1664.

2. In 1664, before the grant to Berkeley and Carteret was known, three persons from Long Island purchased of the natives a tract of the country,

Elizabeth  
town  
previously  
settled.

12. What can you say of new settlers?—13. Why did Penn return? When did he embark? What send on shore?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What grant was made? By whom? To whom? What was the country called?—2. Who had made a previous settlement?

P.T. II. which was called *Elizabethtown*, where a settlement  
 P.D. I. was commenced. Other towns were soon settled by  
 CH. IV. emigrants from the colonies, and from Europe. Thus,  
**1665.** opposite claims were created, which caused much  
 discord between the proprietors and inhabitants. In  
 1665, Berkeley and Carteret formed a constitution  
 for the colony, and appointed PHILIP CARTERET gov-  
 ernor. He made Elizabethtown the seat of govern-  
 ment.

3. Berkeley and Carteret, at first, held the prov-  
**1669.** ince as joint property; but the former, becoming  
 Lord weary with the care of an estate, which yielded him  
 Berkeley neither honor nor profit, sold his share to EDWARD  
 sells his BILLINGE. That gentleman, on being involved in  
 right debt, found it necessary to assign his property for  
 the benefit of his creditors; and William Penn was  
 one of his assignees.

4. New Jersey was now jointly held by Sir George  
 Carteret, and Penn as agent for the assignees of Bil-  
 linge. But Penn perceiving the inconvenience of  
 Penn holding joint property, it was mutually agreed to  
 causes New Jer- separate the country into East and West Jersey;  
 sey to be divided. Carteret receiving the sole proprietorship of East Jer-  
 sey, and Penn and his associates, that of West Jersey.

5. Penn divided West Jersey into one hundred  
 shares, which were separately disposed of; and then,  
 in that spirit of righteousness, whereby he won the  
 confidence of all, he drew up the articles called "the  
 concessions." By these, the proprietors ceded to the  
 The "con- planters, the privileges of free civil government; ex-  
 cessions." pressly declaring, "we put the power in the people."  
 Religion was left free, and imprisonment for debt  
 prohibited. In two years, eight hundred new settlers  
 came over, mostly quakers; persons of excellent  
 character, and good condition.

---

2. From whence were other towns soon settled? Did they all  
 agree? What was done in 1665?—3. Which of the two proprie-  
 tors sold his share? To whom? How came William Penn to  
 have a hand in Jersey affairs?—4. How was New Jersey now  
 held? How and why was it divided?—5. How did Penn proceed  
 in regard to West Jersey?

6. In 1682, East Jersey, the property of Carteret, being exposed to sale, Penn, as agent for twelve quakers, purchased it. In 1683, these twelve proprietors doubled their number, and obtained a new patent from the Duke of York.

PT. II.

P.D. I.  
CH. IV.**1683.**24 Qua-  
kers buy  
East  
Jersey.

7. East Jersey was now free from religious intolerance. This was the era of those civil wars of Great Britain, in which the English royal officers hunted the Cameronian Scots like wild beasts. Hundreds of the sufferers now came to East Jersey, and there, bringing their industrious and frugal habits, they were blessed with security, abundance, and content.

8. SIR EDMUND ANDROS, when governor of New York, under pretence of the claims of the Duke of York, usurped the government both in East and West Jersey. He laid a tax upon all goods imported, and upon the property of all who came to settle in the country.

**1678.**  
Andros in  
the  
Jerseys

9. Penn received complaints of these abuses, and with such strength of argument opposed the claims of the duke, that the commissioners, to whom the case was referred, adjudged the duties to be illegal and oppressive: in consequence of which, in 1680 they were removed, and the proprietors reinstated in the government.

**1680.**Penn is  
there also.

10. EDWARD BILLINGE was appointed by the proprietors, governor; and in the next year, 1681, *he summoned the first general assembly held in West Jersey*. In 1682, the people, by the advice of Penn, amended their government. Contrary to the wishes of the proprietors, the next year, they proceeded to elect their own governor.

**1681.**First  
general  
assembly

---

6. How did Penn come to have any thing to do with East Jersey? How did East Jersey proprietors now proceed?—7. What was the state of this colony? Who came to it?—8. What did Sir Edmund Andros?—9. What did William Penn?—10. Whom did the proprietors appoint? What did Billinge in 1681? What did the people the next year? The next after this?

## CHAPTER V.

Miantonomoh—Rhode Island and Connecticut obtain Charters—  
Elliot, the Apostle of the Indians.

PT II.  
PD I.  
OIL. V.

1. DURING the reign of Puritanism in England, the New England Colonies enjoyed a happy season of liberty and peace. This was occasionally interrupted by fears of the savages, who sometimes manifested their warlike propensities. Sometimes they attacked and destroyed each other.

1643.  
Mianto-  
nomoh  
seeks the  
life of  
Uncas.

2. Miantonomoh sought the life of Uncas, because he was aware, that he could not make him unite in a conspiracy, which he was exciting against the whites. A Pequod whom he hired, wounded the Mohegan chief, and then fled to him for protection. He refused to surrender the assassin to the demand of the court at Hartford, but dispatched him with his own hand.

But loses  
his own.

3. Miantonomoh drew out his warriors openly against Uncas, in violation of a treaty, to which the authorities of Connecticut were a party. Uncas met and vanquished him by a stratagem, and took him prisoner; but he resigned him to the court. They deliberated—and then returned the noble savage to his captor. Uncas killed him,—without torture, but with circumstances of cannibal barbarity.

1651.  
R. Island  
first in  
religious  
freedom.

4. Roger Williams was now the Father of Rhode Island, as he had formerly been the Founder. He twice crossed the ocean, and at length *succeeded in obtaining a charter, including the islands, and confirming the limits of the State; as they now exist.* Rhode Island, if not great in territory, is rich, in the fame of having been the first to set the example, since followed by the nation at large, of entire “soul-liberty” in matters of religion.

---

CHAPTER V.—1. How did the reign of Puritanism in England affect New England?—2. Give an account of the beginning of the war between Miantonomoh and Uncas.—3. Of the close of the contest.—4. What charter was obtained for Rhode Island? For what is Rhode Island distinguished?

5. When CHARLES II. was restored, his power was acknowledged in New England; but the colonies had melancholy forebodings. Yet the authorities of Connecticut, by the eminent JOHN WINTHROP, son of the first governor of Massachusetts, even at this difficult period, successfully applied to the court of England for a charter. They plead, that they had obtained their lands, by purchase, from the natives, and by conquest from the Pequods, who made on them a war of extermination; and they had mingled both their blood and their labor with the soil.

PT. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. V.

1662.  
The younger Winthrop obtains a charter for Conn.

6. Winthrop appeared before the king with such a gentle dignity of carriage, and such appropriate conversation, as won the royal favor. It is said he brought to the mind of Charles some interesting recollections, by the present of a ring, which had been given to his grandfather as a pledge, by an ancestor of the monarch.

Winthrop and the ring.

7. The king granted a liberal charter, which included New Haven. That province, however, had not been consulted, and justly felt aggrieved; as a relinquishment of its separate existence was thereby required. But at length, the great expediency of the measure becoming fully apparent, the union of New Haven with Connecticut was completed. Winthrop was chosen governor. He received seventeen annual elections.

1665.  
New Haven united with Conn.

8. Colonel Nichols, who was sent over to command the expedition against New Netherlands, was one of four commissioners, who had been appointed by the king, not only for conquering the Dutch, but for humbling the colonies. The people felt much aggrieved. Massachusetts resisted every exercise of their power, and two of their number, Carr and Cartwright, left the country in high displeasure.

Nichols, Maverick Carr, and Cartwright.

---

5. By whom did the people of Connecticut apply for a charter? What reasons did they plead?—6. How did Winthrop behave? 7. What kind of a charter was obtained? How was it with respect to New Haven? Who was chosen governor?—8. What can you say of Colonel Nichols? How did the people feel? Which colony resisted? What did two of the commissioners?

**P.T. II.** 9. This was the period of the labors of JOHN EL-  
**P.D. I.** LIOT, called the apostle of the Indians. He beheld  
**CH. V.** with pity the ignorance and spiritual darkness of the  
 savages, and determined to devote himself to their  
**J. Elliot.** conversion. He first spent some years in the study  
 of their language. The General Court of the prov-  
 ince passed an order, requesting the clergy to report  
 the best means of spreading the Gospel among the  
**1646.** natives; and Elliot took this occasion to meet with  
**Elliot's** the Indians at Nonantum, a few miles west of Boston.  
**first meet-** His meetings for religious worship and discourse  
**ing with** were held, whenever favorable opportunities could  
**the** be found or made.  
**Indians.**

10. His efforts to teach the natives the arts and  
 usages of civilized life, were also unremitted and  
 arduous; "for civility," it was said, "must go hand  
 in hand with Christianity." These efforts and their  
**Indians** effects, exhibit the children of the forest in a most  
**converted.** interesting point of view, and show the transform-  
 ing power of the Gospel. Their dispositions and  
 lives underwent a real change. Some of their num-  
 bers became teachers, and aided in the conversion  
 of others.

11. In 1655, Elliot had completed his translation  
 of the New Testament into the Indian language,  
 and in two years more the Old was added. Thus  
 the mighty labor of learning the difficult tongue of  
 the Indians, of making from its oral elements, a writ-  
 ten language, and that of translating the whole Bi-  
**1657.** ble, was, by zeal and persevering labor, accomplished.  
**Elliot** It was the first Bible printed in America. But both  
**completes** the Indian and his language are now extinct, and  
**his trans-** Elliot's Bible is a mere literary curiosity.  
**lation**  
**of the**  
**Bible.**

**1674.** 12. In 1674, there were fourteen towns of "pray-  
**Number** ing Indians," and six gathered churches. The Indian  
**f praying** converts had much to encounter. Their great chiefs  
**Indians.**

---

9. What was John Elliot called? Give an account of the be-  
 ginning of his labors.—10. Did Elliot teach the natives any thing  
 but religion? What success had he?—11. What great labor did  
 Elliot perform in respect to the Bible?—12. How many towns  
 were there of the "Praying Indians?"

hated Christianity. Although it made their subjects willing to do the right, yet it set them to reflect,—and, thus to find out, that there was a right for them *to have*, as well as *to do*. This tended to subvert the absolute arbitrary sway, which the sachem, however he might allow it to slumber, did actually possess; and which he naturally felt unwilling to relinquish. Of these chiefs, PHILIP of Pokanoket, was peculiarly the foe of the Christian religion.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
OUL. V\*

## CHAPTER VI.

King Philip's War — Destruction of the Narragansetts and Pokanokets.

1. PHILIP was the younger of the two sons of Massasoit. He had become embittered against the English, by the death of his brother, which he ascribed to them; and though he was thus left sole chieftain of the Pokanokets, yet he deeply felt his loss, and bitterly resented it.

Philip's  
resent-  
ment.

2. The extension of the English had alarmed the savage nations. The new race, whom their fathers received, when a poor and feeble band, were now gradually spreading themselves over the land, and assuming to be its sovereigns. But the natives were yet numerous, and, by union, they might extirpate the whites, and regain the country. Thus thought Philip, as he secretly plotted, to bring to pass, his cruel designs.

Indians  
jealous  
and  
hostile.

3. The Narragansetts, so long friendly, were now under the rule of CONANCHEET, the son of Miantonomoh; and doubtless he remembered the benefits which his father had bestowed upon the whites, and their refusal to hear his last plea for mercy.

12. What feelings and opinions had the great chiefs? Who in particular was hostile?

CHAPTER VI.—1. Why was Philip embittered against the English?—2. What alarmed the savages? What did Philip think and do?—3. Who was Conanchet? What was his disposition towards the English?

PT. II.

P.D. I.

CH. VI.

Sausa-  
man's dis-  
closure  
and  
death.

4. SAUSAMAN, one of the natives whom Elliot had instructed in Christianity, gave to the English intimations of Philip's designs. Sausaman was soon after murdered. On investigation, the Plymouth court found that the murder was committed by three of Philip's most intimate friends; and forthwith they caused them to be executed.

1675.

June 24.  
Swansey  
attacked.

5. On the 20th of June, Philip's exasperated warriors attacked *Swansey*, in New Plymouth. The colonists appeared in defence of the place, and the Indians fled. The English force marched into the Indian towns, which, on their approach, were deserted. But the route of the savages was marked by the ruins of buildings, which had been burned, and by the heads and hands of the English, which were fixed upon poles by the wayside. The troops, finding that they could not overtake them, returned to *Swansey*.

July 5.  
The Con-  
gre s  
raise an  
army.

6. The little congress of the colonies, meeting at Boston, were unanimous in deciding that the war must be prosecuted with vigor; and each colony furnish means, according to its ability. Of the thousand men which they determined to send immediately into the field, Massachusetts was to furnish five hundred and twenty-seven, Connecticut three hundred and fifteen, and Plymouth one hundred and fifty-eight. Subsequently the commissioners voted to raise double this number.

Compel  
the Nar.  
to make  
peace

7. The army was sent from *Swansey* into the country of the Narragansetts, and negotiating, sword in hand, with that confederacy, on the 15th of July, a treaty of peace was concluded. It was stipulated among other things, to give forty coats to any one of the Narragansetts, who should bring Philip alive,—twenty for his head, and two for each of his subjects delivered as prisoners.

---

4. How did the English become acquainted with Philip's designs? What did the Plymouth court?—5. When and where did Philip begin the war? What measures did the colonists pursue? 6. What ground did the commissioners take? How was the number of men, to be raised, apportioned?—7. Where was the army sent? What treaty was made? What was stipulated?

8. The Indian king retreated, with his warriors, to a swamp at *Pocasset*, near Montaup. There, on the 18th, the colonists attacked them, but gained no decisive advantage. Philip then went to the vicinity of Connecticut river; but to the inhabitants, everywhere in danger, and in fear, he seemed to be everywhere present. Captain Hutchinson, with a company of horse, was drawn into an ambush, near Brookfield, where he was mortally wounded, and sixteen of his company were killed. The Indians then burned the town.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. VI.

1675.  
Philip at-  
tacked at  
*POCAS-*  
*SET.*

*BROOK-*  
*FIELD*  
in Mass.

9. Intending to collect a magazine and garrison at Hadley, Captain Lathrop, with a corps of the choicest young men, selected from the vicinity of Boston, was sent to transport a quantity of corn from Deerfield, to that place. They were suddenly attacked by the Indians, and though they fought with great bravery, they were almost all cut off. The brook, by which they fought, flowed red,—and to this day is called “Bloody Brook.”

Sept. 18.  
*BLOODY*  
*BROOK.*

10. In October, the Springfield Indians, who had previously been friendly, concerted with the hostile tribes, and set fire to that town. While its flames were raging, they attacked Hadley, but were repulsed.\*

Oct. 1.  
(\* Hadley  
was saved  
by Goffe.  
See the  
next  
chapter.)

11. Conanchet now violated the treaty, and not only received Philip's warriors, but aided their operations against the English. On the 18th of December, one thousand troops were collected from the different colonies, under the command of JOSIAH WINSLOW, of Plymouth. After a stormy night passed in the open air, they waded through the snow sixteen miles; and about one o'clock, on the afternoon of the 19th, they arrived near the enemy's fortress.

Conan-  
chet  
violates  
the treaty

8. Give an account of King Philip's movements. What was the condition of the inhabitants? What befel Capt. Hutchinson?

9 Give an account of Capt. Lathrop and his company.—10. What treachery was practised by the Springfield Indians?—11. What was now the conduct of Conanchet? What number of troops went to attack him? At what time, and under what circumstances did they march?

**P.T. II.** 12. It was on a rising ground, in the midst of a  
**P.D. I.** swamp; and was so fortified with palisades, and  
**CH. VI.** thick hedges, that only by crossing a log, which lay  
over a ravine, could it be approached. The officers  
**1675.** led the men directly across the narrow and danger-  
**Dec. 19.** ous bridge. The first were killed, but others press-  
**THE** ed on, and the fort was entered. Conanchet and  
**SWAMP.** his warriors at first forced the English to retire; but  
they resumed the fight, defeated the savages, and  
again entering the fort, they set fire to the Indian  
**Ind. k.** dwellings. One thousand warriors were killed;  
**1000.** three hundred, and as many women and children,  
were made prisoners. About six hundred of their  
wigwams were burnt, and many helpless sufferers  
perished in the flames.

**Famine** 13. The wretched remains of the tribe took shel-  
**and cold.** ter in the recesses of a cedar swamp,—covering  
themselves with boughs, or burrowing in the ground,  
and feeding on acorns or nuts, dug out with their  
hands from the snow. Many who escaped a sudden,  
—thus died a lingering death. Conanchet was  
**Conan-** made prisoner in April, and was offered his freedom  
**chet's** if he would enter into a treaty of peace. The chief-  
**death.** tain indignantly refused, and was put to death.

**1676.** 14. In the spring of 1676, the colonial troops  
**Philip** were almost universally victorious. Jealousies arose  
**attempts** among the different tribes of savages, and while  
**to gain the** great numbers were slain, many deserted the com-  
**Mohawks.** mon cause. Philip had attempted to rouse the  
Mohawks against the English; and had, for this pur-  
pose, killed a number of the tribe, and attributed  
their death to the whites. His perfidy was detected,  
and he fled to Montaup, whither he was pursued.

15. In the midst of these reverses, Philip remain-  
ed unshaken in his enmity. His chief men, as also  
his wife and family, were either killed or made pris-

---

**12.** Describe the fort—the approach of the troops—the second  
attack—the destruction of the Indians.—**13.** What happened to  
the remains of the tribe? To Conanchet?—**14.** How did the  
colonial troops succeed in 1676? Where was Philip?—**15.** How  
did he bear his adversity?

oners; and, while he wept bitterly, for these domestic bereavements, he shot one of his men who proposed submission. After being driven from swamp to swamp, he was at last shot near Montaup, by the brother of the Indian whom he had thus killed.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. VII.  
**1676.**  
Philip is  
killed.

16. Of the scattered parties which remained, many were captured. Some sought refuge at the north. These afterwards served as guides, to those parties of hostile French and Indians, who came down and desolated the provinces. In this dreadful contest, New England lost six hundred inhabitants, and a great amount of property. Fourteen towns had been destroyed, and a heavy debt incurred. Yet the colonies received no assistance from England;—and they asked none. The humane Irish sent the sufferers some relief.

In Philip's  
war N.  
England  
loses 600.

17. If Philip's war was to the whites disastrous, to the savage tribes it was ruinous. The Pokanokets and the Narragansetts henceforth disappear from history. The “praying Indians” were mostly of the Massachusetts confederacy; and although they suffered much, being suspected by the red men because they were Christians, and by the whites because they were Indians, they yet had a remnant left. Elliot watched his scattered flocks, and exposed himself to many dangers on their account. The wreck of four towns remained from the fourteen which the converts numbered before the war.

The  
Indian  
Nations  
destroyed.

## CHAPTER VII.

The regicides—New Hampshire and Maine—Charter of Massachusetts annulled.

1. THE regicides, a term which, in English and American history, refers especially to those men

15. How did he come to his end?—16. What became of his followers? How many inhabitants of New England were destroyed during this bloody war? Who sent relief?—17. What were the consequences of the war to the Indians? How did it affect the praying Indians?

**P.T. II.** who signed the death-warrant of Charles I., were, after the restoration of his son, proscribed. Three of their number, **Goffe, Whalley, and Dixwell**, came to America. They were at Boston and Cambridge, and under romantic circumstances were shielded from their pursuers at New Haven. At length, Whalley and Goffe found refuge in the house of Mr. Russel, minister of Hadley, where they lived in profound concealment.

**P.D. I.**  
**CH. VII.**

The three  
regicides.

2. Goffe had been a military commander. Looking from the window of his hiding-place, he saw, on a Sabbath day, as the people were collecting for public worship, a body of ambushed Indians stealing upon them. Suddenly he left his confinement, and appeared among the gathering worshippers, his white hair and beard and loose garments streaming to the winds. He gives the alarm, and the word of command; and the men, already armed, are at once formed, and bearing down upon the foe. When they had conquered, they looked around for their preserver. He had vanished during the fray; and they fully believed that he had been an angel, sent from heaven for their deliverance.

**1675.**

Oct. 1.  
**HAD-**  
**LEY**  
saved by  
Goffe.

The  
regicides  
not  
betrayed.

3. Of the three judges, who cast themselves upon the Americans, not one was betrayed. The meanest of the people could not be induced, by the price set upon their heads, to give them up; and they now rest, in peaceful graves, upon our soil.

**1677.**

Mass. buys  
Maine  
of the  
heirs of  
Gorges.

4. **MAINE.** In 1677, a controversy, which had existed for some time, between the government of Massachusetts and the heirs of Sir Ferdinando Gorges, relative to the district of Maine, was settled in England, and the territory assigned to the latter. Upon this, *Massachusetts purchased the title, and Maine became a province of that colony.*

5. **NEW HAMPSHIRE.** In 1679, a commission was

---

**CHAPTER VII.—1.** Who were the regicides? Which of them came to America? Where were they?—**2.** During King Philip's war what were the circumstances of Goffe's appearing at Hadley?—**3.** Were either of the three judges betrayed?—**4.** How did Massachusetts acquire a title to Maine?

made out by order of Charles II., *for the separation of New Hampshire from the jurisdiction of Massachusetts*, and its erection into a royal province.

The assembly was to be chosen by the people, the president and council to be appointed by the crown. This colony henceforth manifested that stability of character, for which, no less, than for its sublime piles of mountains, it is called "the Granite State."

The people first thanked Massachusetts for the care she had taken of their infant condition; and next determined "that no law should be valid, unless made by the assembly, and approved by the people."

6. EDWARD CRANFIELD, a needy speculator, was selected by Mason, and sent from England, to be the governor of New Hampshire. But he could neither outwit nor overawe the rugged patriots; nor with all the advantages of law, eject them from their lands; though, for many years, he gave them great annoyance.

7. Charles II. made additional navigation acts, by which he would have entirely destroyed the commerce of the colonies, had they been observed. But they were evaded, and opposed, especially in Massachusetts; and Edward Randolph was sent over by the king, to see that these oppressive laws were executed.

8. James II., who declared, that there should be no free governments in his dominions, issued writs against the charters of Connecticut and Rhode Island. These colonies presented letters and addresses, which contained expressions of humble duty. The king construed them into an actual surrender of their charters; and proceeded to establish a temporary government over New England. SIR EDMUND ANDROS was appointed governor-general.

P.T. II.

P.D. I.  
CH. VII.

1679.

N. H. a  
royal  
province.N. H.  
shows a  
free spirit.

1682.

Mason  
sends  
Cranfield  
to rule.

1679.

Randolph.

Charles II.  
succeed-  
ed by  
James II.

1685.

5. What happened to New Hampshire in 1679? Why is New Hampshire called the Granite State?—6. Who was selected by Mason as governor? What was beyond his power to do?—7. How did King Charles proceed in regard to navigation laws? How did the colonists? Whom did the king send over? For what purpose?—8. What writs did James II. issue? What did R. I. and Conn.? How did the king next proceed? Who did he send over as governor-general?

PT. II.

P.D. I.  
CH. VII.Sir E. Andros in  
New Eng-  
land.

1687.

Charter  
hid in the  
Charter  
Oak,  
on Wyllis'  
Hill.  
(The old  
oak was  
blown  
down,  
1856.)

1687

to  
1689.

1688.

"The  
Revolu-  
tion" in  
England.

9. Sir Edmund began his career with the most flattering professions of his regard to the public safety and happiness. It was, however, well observed, that "Nero concealed his tyrannical dispositions more years than Sir Edmund did months." Soon after his arrival in the country, he sent to Connecticut, demanding the surrender of the charter. This being refused, in 1687, he came with a guard to Hartford, during the session of the general assembly, and in person required its delivery.

10. After debating until evening, the charter was produced and laid on the table, where the assembly were sitting. Suddenly the lights were extinguished, and one of the members privately conveyed it away, and hid it in the cavity of a large oak-tree. The candles were officiously relighted, but the charter was gone; and no discovery could be made of it, or, at that time, of the person who carried it away. The government of the colony was, however, surrendered to Andros.

11. Massachusetts, where Sir Edmund resided, was the principal seat of despotism and suffering. In 1688, New York and New Jersey were added to his jurisdiction; and for more than two years, there was a general suppression of charter governments throughout the colonies, and a perpetual series of tyrannical exactions.

12. But the king had made himself as much detested at home, as his governor had abroad. The British nation, putting aside the fiction of the divine right of legitimate sovereigns, asserted that of human nature, by declaring that an oppressed people may change their rulers. They forced the king to abdicate, and completed what is called the English "Revolution," by placing William and Mary on the throne.

---

9. How did Sir Edmund begin? Why did he go to Hartford?  
10. What happened during his visit?—11. What took place from 1687 to 1689?—12. What fiction or false principle did the English put aside? What right did they assert? What is this event called?

13. Great was the joy of New England. Even PT. II.  
PT. I.  
CH. VIII. on the first rumor of the British Revolution, the authorities of Boston seized and imprisoned Andros and Randolph. As a temporary government, they organized a committee of safety, of which the aged Andros and Randolph in prison. GOVERNOR BRADSTREET, accepted the presidency; though he knew that, if the intelligence proved false, it might cost him his life.

14. The change of government produced by the removal of Andros, left New Hampshire in an unsettled state. Mason had died in 1685, leaving his two sons heirs to his claims. The people earnestly petitioned to be again united with Massachusetts, but their wishes were frustrated by SAMUEL ALLEN, who had purchased of the heirs of Mason, their title to New Hampshire. Allen received a commission as governor of the colony, and assumed the government in 1692. N. H.  
1685.  
Mason dies.  
Allen buys his title.

15. When the intelligence was confirmed, that William and Mary were seated on the throne, Rhode Island and Connecticut resumed their charters; but Conn. and R. I. resumed their charters King William resolutely refused to restore to Massachusetts her former system of government. Andros, Randolph, and others, were ordered to England for trial.

## CHAPTER VIII.

N. York—Its Governors—Leisler—Quakers in Massachusetts.

1. AFTER the surrender of the Dutch, COLONEL NICHOLS entered upon the administration of the government of New York, which he conducted with Lovelace 1667. great prudence, integrity, and moderation. The people, however, continued without civil rights, all authority being vested in the royal governor and

13. What was done in Boston?—14. What took place in New Hampshire?—15. What happened in the other New England provinces? Who were sent to England?

CHAPTER VIII.—1. How did Colonel Nichols govern in New York.

**P.T. II.** council. Nichols returned to England, and was suc-  
**P.D. I.** ceeded by **LORD LOVELACE**.

**CH. VIII.** 2. In 1673, England and Holland were again in-  
 volved in war, and Holland sent over a small fleet  
 to regain her American possessions. This force ar-  
**1673.** rived at New York, and demanded a surrender,  
 Dutch which was made without resistance. The Dutch  
 take New took immediate possession of the fort and city, and  
 York. soon after of the whole province.

3. The next year, 1674, the war terminated, and  
**1674.** New York was restored to the English. The Duke  
 N. York of York, to prevent controversy about his title to  
 restored. the territory, took out a new patent, and the same  
 year appointed **SIR EDMUND ANDROS**, governor.

4. Andros claimed jurisdiction over that part of  
 Connecticut west of the river, it having been includ-  
 ed in the grant to the Duke of York. To seize it,  
 he arrived off the fort, at Saybrook, with an armed  
**1675.** force. The governor and council, being apprised of  
 Andros his design, sent a few troops under Captain Bull,  
 repulsed at who conducted himself with such spirit, that Andros,  
 Saybrook. jocosely declaring that his "horns should be tipped  
 with gold," made no further attempt.

5. In 1682, Andros was removed from the govern-  
 ment of New York. The succeeding year was a  
**1682.** happy era in the history of this colony. The excel-  
 Dongan. lent **COLONEL DONGAN** arrived as governor, and the  
 desires of the people, for a popular government,  
**1683.** were gratified. *The first general assembly was*  
 First convoked, consisting of a council and eighteen rep-  
 general resentatives. Governor Dongan surpassed all his  
 assembly. predecessors in attention to affairs with the Indians,  
 by whom he was highly esteemed.

6. The news from Europe, that the inhabitants of  
 England had resolved to dethrone James, and offer  
**1688.** the crown to William and Mary, raised the hopes of  
 Leisler. the disaffected. Among these, was **JACOB LEISLER**,

---

2. What happened in 1673?—3. What took place in 1674?—4. Give an account of Andros's attempt to take Connecticut.—5. What happened in 1682? What the next year?—6. What happened in New York when news came of the expulsion of King James.

an active militia captain, and a favorite of the people. He was not, however, a man of talents, but received the guiding impulses of his conduct from the superior energies of his son-in-law, JACOB MILBORNE.

PT. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. VII.

7. By his counsel, Leisler, at the head of a few men, declared for William and Mary, and took possession of the fort of New York. His party increased to more than five hundred. The governor left the province, and Leisler assumed to administer the government. Milborne went to Albany, and made himself master of the place. The regular authorities were against these lawless proceedings.

Leisler as  
sumes to  
act as  
King Wil-  
liam's  
agent.

8. King William now commissioned HENRY SLOUGHTER, as governor of New York. Never was a governor more needed, and never was one more destitute of every qualification for the office. He refused to treat with Leisler; but put him, and several of his adherents to prison. Finally, that unfortunate man, together with his son-in-law, perished upon the gallows. Their execution was disapproved by the people; and their property, which was confiscated, was afterwards restored to their descendants.

1691.  
Sloughter  
governs  
N. York.

Leisler ex-  
ecuted.

9. Motives derived from pure religion, are the best, and most effective, of all which influence human conduct. But when the religious feeling of men becomes perverted, all history shows, that it then produces the very worst effects. Under the influence of this feeling, in its right operation, our Puritan forefathers resisted oppression in England, suffered hardship, and braved death, to enjoy their religion unmolested.

Religious  
feeling.

10. But they were not free from the common error of their age, which was, that all in the same community, must, on religious subjects, think very much alike. The Puritans believed their way was

May  
become  
perverted.

6. Who was Jacob Leisler?—7. Give an account of his and Milborne's operations.—8. Who was Henry Sloughter? How did he proceed in regard to Leisler?—9. What may be said of motives derived from true religion? When the religious feeling of bodies of men become perverted, how is it then? What did our Puritan forefathers, under the impulse of right religious feeling?—10. What was the common error of their age?

**P.T. II.** certainly right, and they were utterly unwilling, that  
**P.D. I.** any should be among them, who should teach any  
**CH. IX.** thing different. This produced uncharitableness to-  
 wards others, and the bad effects of the religious  
 sentiment perverted.

**T. 8**  
**Friends or**  
**Quakers.** 11. The denomination of Friends or Quakers, had  
 arisen in England. They had heard that the Puritans  
 exercised a persecuting spirit, as in the cases of Mrs.  
 Hutchinson and Roger Williams. They also thought  
 the Puritan religion consisted too much in outward  
 form, and too little in inward sanctity. The Quakers  
 believed, that they were called by a voice from a  
 divine inward monitor, to go to New England, par-  
 ticularly to Boston, and there warn the people of  
 their errors.

**1660.** 12. The Puritans, when they came, imprisoned  
**4 executed** them, and sent them away. The Quakers came  
**in Mass.** again, and boldly denounced that, which the Puri-  
 tans held dearer than life. Laws were made to ban-  
 ish them, prohibiting return, on pain of death. The  
 Quakers came back, and four were actually hanged.  
**28** The Puritans then became convinced of their error;  
**released.** opened their prison doors, and released twenty-eight  
 persons.

## CHAPTER IX.

Jesuit Missionaries of France—Their Discoveries.

**Religious**  
**devotion**  
**a natural**  
**principle.** 1. FROM the devotion of the Puritans, and the  
 Quakers, we turn to that of the *Jesuit Missionaries*  
*of France*; and in all, we perceive “the operation  
 of that common law of our nature, which binds the  
 heart of man to the Author of his being.” The  
 Jesuit missionaries desired to extend the benefits of  
 Christian redemption to the heathen; yet they un-

**10.** Were the Puritans free from it?—**11.** What induced the  
 Quakers to come to Massachusetts?—**12.** How were they treated?

**CHAPTER IX.—1.** When we see that different sects are willing  
 to suffer death, in the service of God, what do we perceive?

fortunately united worldly policy with religious enthusiasm; and sought, not only to win souls to Christ, but subjects to the king of France and the papal dominion.

2. The Catholics, already in Canada, seconded their efforts; and in 1640, Montreal was founded, to give the missionaries a starting point, nearer the scene of their operations. Within thirteen years, the wilderness of the Hurons was visited by sixty missionaries, mostly Jesuits. Making the Huron settlements of St. Louis and St. Ignatius, their central station, they carried the gospel to the surrounding tribes; and thus visited and became the first European explorers of the southern portion of Upper Canada, of which they took possession for the French king.

3. One of these missionaries, ISAAC JOGUES, undaunted by the terrors of the Mohawk name, went among these savages, and was imprisoned. He escaped, but afterwards attempted a permanent mission. Arriving at the Mohawk castle, at Johnstown, he was accused of blighting the corn of the Indians, by spells of sorcery. Being condemned, he received his death blow with composure. His head was hung on the palisades of the fort, and his body thrown into the placid stream.

4. Circumstances changed. The missionaries were received among each tribe of the Five Nations. Rude chapels were constructed, where the natives chanted the services of the Romish church. But when the missionaries sought to bring their lives under the influence of Christian principles as regards war and the treatment of prisoners, the fierceness of their character prevailed. They returned to their former customs, gave up their religion, and expelled the

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. IX.

1634  
to  
1649.  
60 mis-  
sionaries.

1646.  
Father  
Jogues.  
k. by Ind.  
His body  
thrown  
into the  
Mohawk.

French  
attempts  
to colo-  
nize N. Y.

1. What two principles of conduct did the Jesuits unite?—2. When was Montreal founded? For what object? Learn from the Map of this period, in connection with the book, the central station of the missionaries. What part of the country did the missionaries take possession of for the French king?—3. Give an account of Father Jogues.—4. Of the farther attempts to convert the Indians of New York.

PT. II. missionaries. Thus ended the attempts of the French  
P.D. I. to colonize New York.

CH. IX.

665.  
Allouez at  
Lake  
Superior

5. FATHER ALLOUEZ, bent on a voyage of discovery, early in September, passed *Moultrie*, into Lake Superior. Sailing along the high banks and pictured rocks of its southern shore, he rested, beyond the bay of Keweenaw, on that of *Chippewas*. Here was the great village of the Chippewas.

Indian  
council.

6. A grand council of ten or twelve tribes was, at the moment, assembled, to prevent the young braves of the Chippewas and Sioux, from taking up the tomahawk against each other. In this assembly came forward the missionary, and stood, and commanded, in the name of his heavenly and of his earthly master, that there should be peace.

St. Joseph  
founded.

7. The Indians listened with reverence. They had never before seen a white man. Soon they built a chapel; and there they devoutly chanted their vesper and matin hymns; and the mission of St. Joseph was founded. The scattered Hurons and Ottawas here collected around the missionary; and he preached to the Pottawotamies, the Sacs and Foxes, the Illinois, and the Sioux.

Pre-  
sident  
Huron  
Board of

8. From each of these tribes, he gained descriptions of their country, their lakes and rivers, of which he made reports to his government. He especially dwelt on what he had heard of the great river "Missipi." He urged the sending of small colonies of French emigrants, to make permanent settlements in the west.

1668.  
St. Mary's  
founded.

9. A small company, headed by two missionaries, CLAUDE DABLOU, and JAMES MARQUETTE, founded the first French settlement within the limits of the United States. It is at St. Mary's, on the falls between the Lakes Superior and Huron.

1669.  
Green  
Bay.

Allouez founded a mission at *Green Bay*.

5. Give an account of Father Allouez's route to the village of the Chippewas, and show it on the Map.—6. What was the mission Allouez at this village?—7. How was it with the Indians?—8. What was the mission called?—9. What information was gained?—10. Where did Allouez found a mission?

10. Marquette selected a young Illinois as his companion, and learned from him the language of his nation. The Hurons heard with astonishment, that he had formed the bold design of exploring the great river of the west;—notwithstanding their assertions, that its monsters devoured men and canoes, its warriors never spared the stranger, and its climate was rife with death.

PT. II.  
PD. I.  
CH. IX.

Mar-  
quette's  
boldness.

11. Marquette walked from Green Bay,—following the Fox river, and crossed the Portage from its head waters to those of the *Wisconsin*; when, with no companion but his countryman JOLIET, he embarked upon its bosom, and pursued its course, unknowing whither it would lead. Solitary they floated along, till, in seven days, they entered, with inexpressible joy, the broad *MISSISSIPPI*. They continued to float with its lonely current, until, near the mouth of the *Moingona*, they perceived marks of population.

1673.  
Follows  
the  
*Wisconsin*  
to the  
*Miss.*

12. Disembarking, they found, at fourteen miles from the river, a village of the natives. Old men met them with the calumet,—told them they were expected, and bade them enter their dwellings in peace. The missionaries declared, by the council-fire, the claims of the Christian religion, and the right of the king of France, to their territory. The Indians feasted them, and sent them away with the gift of a peace-pipe, embellished with the various colored heads and necks of bright and beautiful birds.

Indian  
courtesy.

13. Sailing on their solitary way, the discoverers saw that most remarkable confluence of rivers—the vast *Missouri*, coming from the west and spreading its clay-colored and fiercer current, like clouds, over the pure dark waters of the more sluggish *Mississippi*. They saw, and passed the mouth of the *Ohio*; nor stopped till they had sailed beyond that of the *Arkansas*. There they

Discovers  
the  
*Missouri*.

10. What was said by the Indians to deter Marquette from executing his design?—11. Give an account of his route, and trace it on the Map.—12. What happened at an Indian village?—13. Describe, and trace Marquette's route, to its farthest extent.

P.T. II. found savages, who spoke a new tongue. They  
 P.D. I. were armed with guns; a proof that they had traf-  
 CH. IX. ficked with the Spaniards, or with the English, in  
 Virginia. They showed hostile dispositions, but  
 respected the peace-pipe, the "white flag of the  
 desert."

**1674.** 14. Marquette now retraced his course to the Illi-  
 Returns no Green Bay. nois,—entered and ascended that river, and beheld  
 the beautiful fertility of its summer prairies, abound-  
 ing in game. He visited *Chicago*, and in September  
 was again at Green Bay.

15. The next year, on the banks of the little stream  
**1675.** now called by his name, Marquette retired from the  
 Marquette dies near Lake Michigan. company with which he was journeying—to pray,  
 by a rude altar of stones, beneath the silent shade.  
 There, half an hour afterwards, his dead body was  
 found. He was buried on the shore of the lake;  
 and the Indian fancies that his spirit still controls  
 its storms.

16. As Joliet, the companion of Marquette, was  
 returning from the west, to carry the tidings of their  
 discovery, he met at *Frontenac*, now Kingston, the  
**1679.** governor of the place, the energetic and highly gifted  
 La Salle. LA SALLE,—whose genius kindling, at the descrip-  
 tion of the missionary, he went to France, and was  
 commissioned to complete the survey of the great  
 river.

17. He returned to Frontenac, built a wooden  
 Builds the first sailing vessel on Lake Erie. canoe, of ten tons, and carrying a part of his com-  
 pany to the mouth of Tonnewanta Creek, he there  
 built the first sailing vessel which ever navigated  
 Lake Erie. On his way across the lakes, he marked  
 Finds Mackinaw. *Detroit* as a suitable place for a colony, gave name  
 to Lake St. Clair, planted a trading-house at Mack-  
 inaw, and finally cast anchor at Green Bay.

18. Here, he collected a rich cargo of furs, and

---

13. What inhabitants did he find?—14. Describe, and trace  
 his return.—15. Give an account of the death of Marquette.  
 16. Who was La Salle? How did he become interested, and  
 what did he do?—17. Trace, and describe his route to Green  
 Bay.—18. What steps did he here take?

sent back his brig to carry them to Niagara. Then, in bark canoes, he moved his party south, to the head of lake Michigan. There he constructed the Fort of the Miamis. His brig was unfortunately lost; but, with a small company, he steered resolutely west, accompanied by the Jesuit Hennepin.

19. They reached, through many discouragements, by disaster, treachery, and climate, the great Illinois; and following its waters four days' journey below Lake Peoria, La Salle there built a fort, which, in the bitterness of his spirit, he named Crève-cœur. Here he sent out a party under Hennepin, to explore the sources of the Mississippi, and himself set forth on foot to return to Frontenac.

20. Hennepin followed the Illinois to its junction with the parent stream; then ascended that river above the falls to which he gave the name of St. Anthony. He afterwards reported, though falsely, that he had discovered the sources of the Mississippi.

La Salle returned to his fort on the Illinois, built a small vessel, and the next year, *he sailed down the Mississippi, till he reached its mouth.* To the country he gave the name of *Louisiana*, in honor of his sovereign, Louis XIV.

21. Returning to France, the government sent him to colonize the country which he had visited; but his fleet took a wrong direction, and he was carried, with his party, to *Texas*, where he made the settlement of *St. Louis*. Attempting to go to Louisiana on foot, a discontented soldier of his party, gave him his death-shot. Texas was regarded as an appendage to Louisiana.

19. Where did he go from thence? Whom did he send out to explore?—20. What was done by Hennepin? What next by La Salle?—21. What happened on his last return to America?

P.T. II.

P.D. I.  
ON. IX.

1679

Hennepi  
with  
La Salle.

1680.

He ex-  
plores to  
St. Antho-  
ny's Falls.

1687

La Salle  
killed.

## CHAPTER X.

North and South Carolina—The Great Patent—Mr. Locke's Constitution.

PT. II.

P.D. I.

CH. X.

Patent of  
Carolina.

1663.

The grant  
extended.

1665.

Settle-  
ment at  
Albe-  
marle, the  
nucleus  
of N. C.

1. AFTER Charles II. was restored, the people about him, took advantage of his improvident good nature, and want of conscientious scruples. They thus gained large tracts of American territory—and, neither he who gave, nor they who received, considered, whether or not it was his to give. In 1663, the king gave Carolina, which more justly belonged to Spain, to Lord Clarendon the historian, Lord Ashley Cooper, earl of Shaftsbury, General Monk, afterwards duke of Albemarle, Lord Craven, the two Berkeleys, Sir John Colleton, and Sir George Carteret.

2. These noblemen next aspired to the glory of founding a sovereignty, which should not only yield them money, but the fame of legislators; and in 1667, Charles granted them the whole of the country, from the mouth of the river St. Johns to  $36^{\circ} 33'$  north latitude; and from the Atlantic to the Pacific ocean. To frame a government for the future empire, they secured the services of the well-known philosopher, JOHN LOCKE. In the mean time the younger Berkeley, who was governor of Virginia, was to extend his rule over the whole territory.

3. But settlers were wanted; and to procure these, various inducements were held out by the company. Two settlements had already been formed within their precincts. One of these, near Albemarle Sound, was begun, at an early day, by enterprising planters from Virginia; and enjoying entire liberty, it had been augmented from that and other colonies, when-

---

CHAPTER X.—1. What traits of Charles II. are here mentioned? What advantage was taken of them? What grant did he make in 1663? To whom?—2. What grant did he make in 1667? Shew its extent on the Map? Who was to frame a constitution for this large country? Who to be governor?—3. What settlement was formed in the northern part of the tract? Of what did it prove to be the nucleus?

ever religious or political oppression had scattered their people. Among them were a large portion of Quakers. This settlement had so increased, as to form, for convenience, a simple democratic government.

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. X.

**1663.**  
Forms a  
democ-  
racy.

4. The other colony was near the mouth of Cape Fear, or Clarendon river; and had been originally made by a little band of adventurers from New England. They, as well as the former colony, from which they were divided by impassable swamps and dangerous navigation, had purchased their land of the natives; they had occupied it and they claimed, as a law of nature, the right of self-government.

[Settlers  
at Cape  
Fear  
united  
to those of  
Charles-  
ton be-  
gin S. C.]

5. In the mean time, a number of planters from Barbadoes purchased lands of the sachems, and settled on Cape Fear river, near the territory of the New Englanders. The two parties united. In 1667, they were in danger of famine, and Massachusetts sent them relief. They requested of the proprietors a confirmation of the purchase they had made of the Indians, and of the power which they had assumed to govern themselves. As a state must have inhabitants, their request was partially granted; and one of their number, SIR JOHN YEAMANS, was appointed their governor. The settlement, in 1666, contained eight hundred persons.

[Sir J.  
Yeamans  
was the  
leading  
man of the  
Barbadoes  
party]

6. Thus, the germs of liberty had, in the Carolinas, begun to vegetate strongly. And when the great aristocratical constitution, making three orders of nobility, was sent over, in 1670, the ground was already preoccupied. These dwellers in scattered log-cabins in the woods, could not be noblemen, and would not be serfs. Eventually, the interest of the proprietors prevailed over their pride. The inhabitants took their own way in regard to government, and in 1693, the constitution of Locke was formally abrogated.

**1693.**  
The con-  
stitution  
of Locke  
abro-  
gated.

4. Describe the settlement which proved to be the nucleus of South Carolina.—5. What union of inhabitants took place? Who was their first governor? What was their number in 1666?—6. How was it in respect to Mr. Locke's constitution?

**P.T. II.** 7. **WILLIAM SAYLE**, the first proprietary governor  
**P.D. I.** of Carolina, brought over a colony, with which he  
**CH. XI.** founded old Charlestown. Dying in 1671, his colony  
**1670.** was annexed to that of Governor Yeamans, which  
 Gov. had migrated south. In 1680, the city was removed  
 Sayle. to the point of land between the two rivers, which  
**1680** received the names of Ashley and Cooper. The  
 Charles- foundation of the present capital of the south was  
 ton. laid, and the name of the king perpetuated in that  
 founded. of Charleston.

8. During the year 1690, King William sent out  
**1690.** a large body of French Protestants, who had been  
 French compelled to leave their country by the arbitrary  
 protes- measures of Louis XIV. To a part of these, lands  
 tants. were allotted in Virginia, on James river. Others  
 settled in Carolina, on the banks of the Santee, and  
 in Charleston. They introduced the culture of the  
 vine, and were among the most useful settlers of the  
 province.

[In 1729  
 was made  
 the  
 division of  
 N. and S.  
 Car. as  
 now  
 existing.]

The Cape Fear colony under Governor Yeamans  
 having removed south, the unfruitful country which  
 they first occupied mostly reverted to the natives.

## CHAPTER XI.

### A French and Indian War.

1. IN consequence of the English Revolution, a  
 King Wil- war ensued between England and France, which  
 liam's affected the American colonies of both; and is  
 war known in our annals, as "King William's war."

2. The fisheries on the Atlantic coast were re-  
 garded as of prime importance; and, on this account,  
 Acadia was highly valued. To protect it, the two  
 French Jesuits, Vincent and Bigot, collected a vil-

7. Describe the founding of Charleston.—8. Whom did King  
 William send over in 1690? Where did they settle?

CHAPTER XI.—1. What war occurred in consequence of the  
 English Revolution?—2. Why was Acadia valued?

lage of the savage Abenakies, on the Penobscot; and the BARON DE ST. CASTINE, a bigoted French nobleman, established there a trading fort. In 1696, the fort built at *Pemiquid*, was taken by Castine; and thus the French claimed, as Acadia, all Maine east of the Kennebec; and they artfully obtained great ascendancy over the natives.

3. The tribe of Pennicook, in New Hampshire, had lost several of their number, by the treachery of the whites, who had taken and sold them into slavery. At Dover, in that State, the venerable MAJOR WALDRON, a magistrate, and a trader among the Indians, hospitably admitted two squaws to sleep by his fire. At dead of night, they let in a war party from without. They placed Major Waldron upon a long table, and then mocked him with a jeering call, to "judge Indians." Those indebted to him for goods, drew gashes on his breast, saying, "here I cross out my account." Twenty-three were killed, twenty-nine made prisoners, and the town burnt.

4. GOVERNOR FRONTENAC, at Quebec, planned to send, through the snow, three parties. The first arrived at Schenectady, the night of the 18th of February, and, separating into small parties, they invested every house at the same moment. The people slept until their doors were broken open, and themselves dragged from their beds. Their dwellings were set on fire, and sixty of the inhabitants butchered. Twenty-seven were carried captive, and most of the small number which escaped, lost their limbs in attempting to flee naked, through a deep snow, to Albany.

5. The second party of French and of Indians, leagued for murder, were sent against the pleasant

PT II.  
P.D. I  
CH. XI.

1686.  
Baron  
Castine.

1689.  
Penni-  
cooks  
attack  
DOVER.  
k. 23,  
including  
Maj. W.

Feb. 18,  
1690.  
SCHE-  
NECTA-  
DY.  
Ind. k. 60

---

2. What was done by Frenchmen to keep it from the English? What fort was taken by Castine? How far did the French claim in Maine?—3. What provocation did the Pennicooks receive? What shocking cruelty did they exercise?—5. What three parties were sent out? By whom? Trace, and describe the route of the first party. Describe the massacre of Schenectady.

**PT II.** settlement at Salmon Falls, on the Piscataqua. At  
**P.D. I.** break of day—a day which, for fifty of their num-  
**CH. XL** ber, had no morrow, the peaceful inhabitants were  
 waked to experience the horrors of Indian warfare,  
 aided and directed by French ingenuity. The third  
 party from Quebec, in like manner, destroyed the  
 settlement at Casco Bay, in Maine.

March 18.  
**SALMON**  
**FALLS.**  
 K. 50.

6. Fear and terror were on every side. The sev-  
 eral governors of the provinces, convened at New  
 York. **GENERAL WINTHROP**, with a body of troops,  
 and **SIR WILLIAM PHIPPS**, with a large fleet, were  
 sent against the French. A part of the fleet was  
 wrecked in returning, and both expeditions failed.

May 1,  
**1691.**  
 Congress  
 at N. Y.

7. Great expenses were, by these means, incurred  
 by Massachusetts, and the general court authorized,  
 for *the first time, the emission of paper money, or*  
*notes of credit*; making them, in all payments, a  
 legal tender.

The  
 "credit  
 system."

8. The Revolution in England produced a dis-  
 agreeable change in the affairs of Massachusetts.  
 King William, refusing to restore its former gov-  
 ernment, granted a new *charter, which extended its*  
*limits, but restricted its privileges.* Massachusetts  
 now embraced, besides her former territory and the  
 adjacent islands,—Plymouth, Maine, and Nova Sco-  
 tia; extending north to the river St. Lawrence, and  
 west to the South Sea, excepting New Hampshire  
 and New York.

**1692.**  
 New  
 charter of  
 Mass.

9. Almost the only privilege which the new char-  
 ter allowed the people, was that of choosing their  
 representatives. The king reserved to himself the  
 right of appointing the governor, lieutenant-gov-  
 ernor, and secretary; and of repealing all laws

---

5. Trace and describe the route of the second party. Of the  
 third.—6. What measures were taken in the congress of gov-  
 ernors? What expeditions were undertaken?—7. What means did  
 Massachusetts take to procure money?—8. How did the English  
 Revolution affect Massachusetts? What course did King William  
 take? How did the new charter affect Massachusetts in regard to  
 territory? What did that province now embrace?—9. How did  
 the new charter affect the liberties of the people? What power  
 had now the king of England?

within three years after their passage. As Plymouth, the oldest, and Massachusetts, the principal member of the New England confederacy, were now placed under a royal governor, *the union was nominally at an end. But it was already firmly cemented in the hearts and habits of the people.*

P.T. II.  
P.D. I.  
CH. XI.  
Union in heart.

9. Why could not the confederacy remain as it had been? In what respects had the union become already cemented?

### EXERCISES ON THE TREE CHRONOGRAPHER.

(For Period I, Part II.)

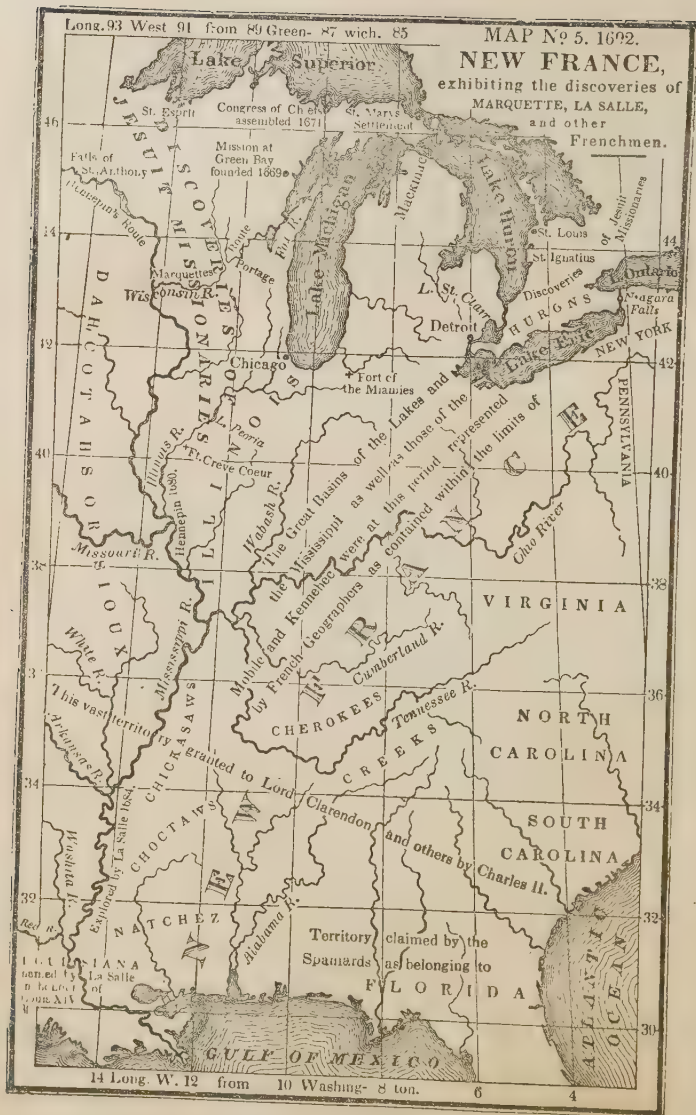
What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer. Show the places, in time, of the following events: The Navigation Acts were passed in 1651. "Bacon's Rebellion," in 1676. The founding of New York, in 1614—Albany, in 1615. New York surrendered to the English, in 1664. William Penn's celebrated treaty with the Indians, in 1682. New Jersey first settled, in 1664. Connecticut, including New Haven, obtains a liberal charter in 1662—Rhode Island, in 1651. Elliot completed his translation of the Bible in 1657. King Philip was killed and his war terminated in 1676. Sir Edmund Andros was made governor of New England in 1686. The charter of Connecticut was hid in the charter-oak, 1687. The first General Assembly of New York met in 1683. The great patent of Carolina was granted in 1663, and the grant extended in 1667. Charleston was founded in 1680. Schenectady was destroyed in 1690. At what epoch does this period terminate? What is its date? What is its place on the chronographer?

Long. 93 West 91 from 89 Green- 87 wich. 85

MAP N<sup>o</sup> 5. 1692.

# NEW FRANCE,

exhibiting the discoveries of  
MARQUETTE, LA SALLE,  
and other  
Frenchmen.





Landing of Sir William Phipps, with the New Charter of Massachusetts.

## PERIOD II.

FROM  
**THE NEW CHARTER OF MASSACHUSETTS,** } **1692** { **WHICH NOMINALLY PUTS AN END TO THE CONFEDERACY,**  
 TO  
**THE FIRST SETTLEMENT** } **1733.** { **OF GEORGIA BY OGLETHORPE.**

### CHAPTER I.

Sir William Phipps—Cotton Mather—Salem Witchcraft—  
 Schools—Yale College.

1. THE new charter was received at Boston, May 14th, 1692. It was brought over by SIR WILLIAM PHIPPS, who brought also his commission, as royal governor. He was nominated by the influence of his pastor, COTTON MATHER, who received him with great joy. Phipps was a native of Pemaquid, in Maine. He was apprenticed to a trade; but being active and enterprising, he went to England; and, at length, acquired riches and a title, by recovering, with a diving-bell, the treasures of a Spanish wreck.

P.T. II.  
 P.D. II.  
 CH. I.

May 14.  
**1692.**  
 New  
 charter.  
 Sir Wm  
 Phipps.

CHAPTER I.—1. Where was the new charter received? By whom brought over? By whose influence was he nominated for governor?

**P.T. II.** 2. The delusion, with respect to witchcraft, was  
**P.D. II.** now at its height. The first settlers brought it with  
**CH. I.** them from the mother country. Laws, making  
 Delusion witchcraft a capital crime, existed in England, and  
 respecting were early enacted in Massachusetts. In Spring-  
 witch field in 1645, some individuals were accused and  
 craft. tried, but acquitted. Persons at Boston, Charles-  
 town, Dorchester, and Cambridge, were tried, and  
 some actually executed for the supposed offence.  
 But it was at Salem, where this delusion produced  
 its most fatal effects.

**Convictions on insufficient grounds.** 3. At first it was old women only, who were sus-  
 pected of having leagued with the devil, to inflict  
 upon the persons who complained, the various tor-  
 ments, which they asserted, that they felt. The  
 magistrates of the people's choice, had, with BRAD-  
 STREET, their governor, previous to the arrival of  
 Phipps, discountenanced these persecutions; but  
 the new authorities, under the influence of Cotton  
 Mather, pursued a course which placed the accused  
 in situations, where "they had need to be magicians,  
 not to be convicted of magic."

**And by incompetent witnesses.** 4. The unhappy persons were confronted with  
 those who accused them, and asked, "Why do you  
 afflict these children?" If they denied the fact,  
 they were commanded to look upon the children,  
 who would instantly fall into fits, and afterwards  
 declare that they were thus troubled by the persons  
 apprehended. On evidence no better than this,  
 were twenty persons executed.

**October. The general court against the special court.** 5. The general court, on assembling, took ground  
 against these proceedings, and abolished the special  
 court, by which these persons had been condemned.  
 This court was organized by Phipps, and presided  
 over by Stoughton, the lieutenant-governor. The  
 public were addressed on the subject, through the

2. What delusion existed? Give some account of this delusion.  
 3. Who were first accused? How was it with the people's magis-  
 trates, in respect to prosecutions for witchcraft? By whom were  
 they upheld?—4. How did the prosecutions proceed? How many  
 persons suffered death?—5. By what court had these persons been  
 condemned?

press, by the independent CALEF, of Boston; and the eyes of men were at length opened. Those who had been imprisoned were set free, and the memory of the transaction soon became, what it still continues to be, a source of national sorrow and humiliation.

6. Not one of the colonies enjoyed a repose so uninterrupted as Connecticut; and therefore none had, in this respect, such advantages for showing the bent of the Puritan mind, in regard to the improvement of the human race, by the right training of the young.

7. As early as 1646, the general court took the matter in hand. "To the end," say they, "that learning be not buried in the graves of our forefathers, the Lord assisting our endeavors, it is ordered, that all the townships with fifty householders shall keep a school, and pay for the same in such way as they see fit. And further, that if any town has one hundred householders, they shall keep and maintain a grammar school, where young men can be fitted for a university."

8. New Haven had also provided by law for common schools; and in 1654, Mr. Davenport proposed the institution of a college, and the town gave lands for the object. GOVERNOR HOPKINS, of Connecticut, who for several years was, alternately with Haynes, the chief magistrate of that colony, dying in London, bequeathed, for such an institution, four or five hundred pounds. The school was located at Saybrook.

9. The clergy of Connecticut, feeling the need of a college, nearer than at Cambridge, to furnish learned men as ministers, ten of their number obtained from the general assembly a charter of incorporation, together with an annual grant of £120. Thus

PT. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. L

"The  
land of  
steady  
habits."

**1646.**  
Gen. Ct.  
of Conn.

50  
families.

100  
families.

**1654.**  
Yale  
College.

**1701.**  
Charter  
and  
endow-  
ments

---

5. How was shown the power of the press to do good?—6. How was it with Connecticut in respect to education?—7. What did the general court order in 1646?—8. What did Mr. Davenport propose in 1654? What can you say of Governor Hopkins? Where was the school first located?—9. What was obtained for it? By whom?

**PT. II.** constituted as trustees, they held their first meeting  
**PD. II.** at Saybrook,—chose officers, and made laws for the  
**CH. I.** infant university.

**1717.**  
 College  
 removed  
 to New  
 Haven.

10. The location was inconvenient, and more money being subscribed, to fix the college at New Haven than at rival places, it was removed thither, and received at the same time, accessions of books for its library already begun, and in its funds. The most liberal of the donors was **ELIHU YALE**, a native of New Haven, who had made a fortune in India. His name is preserved, in grateful remembrance, by that of the college.

Gov.  
 Fletcher's  
 attempt.

11. **COLONEL FLETCHER**, governor of New York, was empowered to take command of the militia of Connecticut. The colony, alarmed, immediately dispatched **GENERAL WINTHROP** to England, as an agent, to remonstrate with the king and council. Colonel Fletcher, however, went to Hartford, in 1693; and, in his majesty's name, demanded the surrender of the militia to his command.

**1693.**  
 Oct. 26.  
 Foiled by  
 Captain  
 Wadsworth

12. **CAPTAIN WILLIAM WADSWORTH**, the man by whom the charter was hid, paraded his company; but as an attendant of Fletcher began to read his commission, the captain gave command to "drum;" and when Fletcher called out "silence!" the captain raised his voice higher in a second order, "drum, drum, I say." At length Fletcher gave up in despair; perhaps fearing, if he persisted, that Wadsworth would, in good earnest, fulfil his threat, and "make daylight shine through him."

---

9. Where did the ten trustees hold their first meeting? What did they do?—10. Why was the college removed? Why placed at New Haven? From whom receive its name?—11. How was Connecticut now alarmed? What measures were taken by Fletcher?—12. What by Captain Wadsworth? What was the result?

## CHAPTER II.

European Politics—Peace of Ryswick, which closes King William's War—Queen Anne's War soon begins.

1. KING William's war had been feebly pursued. Settlements on Oyster river were, however, destroyed by the French and Indians, and the fort at Pemiquid, which Sir William Phipps had rebuilt by the special direction of the sovereigns, had been taken. In 1697, peace was made at *Ryswick*, in Germany, by which it was stipulated that all places captured during the war should be restored. Thus had the barbarous appeal to arms been to no other purpose but that of multiplying human woes. But the parties profited little by the lesson. In May, 1702, the contest began, which is known in American history, as "Queen Anne's war."

PT. II.  
P'D. II.  
CH. II.

1697.  
Peace of  
Ryswick

1702.

2. The eastern Indians now devastated Maine from Casco to Wells. Deerfield, in Massachusetts, was surprised at midnight, February, 1704, by a party of French and Indians, under HURTEL DE ROUVILLE. The sentinel of the fort being asleep, and the snow of such a depth as to allow them to pass over the palisades, they silently entered, and scalped and murdered, or secured as prisoners, the wretched inhabitants. Only a small number escaped by flight. Forty-seven were killed, and one hundred and twenty carried captive to Canada.

1704.  
DEER-  
FIELD.  
surprised  
by French  
and  
Indians.  
k. 47.  
pr. 120

3. Early in the assault, the house of the REV. JOHN WILLIAMS, the minister of the place, was attacked by about twenty Indians, who, after the murder of two of his children, secured as prisoners, himself, his wife, and his remaining children. Mrs. Williams, on the second day, faltered in the march,

The Wil-  
liams  
family.

CHAPTER II.—1. What settlements had been destroyed? What fort taken? What was done in 1697? What was stipulated? What object had been answered by the war? Was war soon made again? What war?—2. What can you say of the eastern Indians? Describe the assault upon Deerfield.—3. What happened to Mr Williams and his family?

**P.T. II.** and, according to the Indian custom, was cruelly  
**P.D. II.** put to death.

**CH. II.**

**1704.**

Indian  
set-  
tlements  
destroyed.

4. Roused by these inhumanities, the veteran warrior, BENJAMIN CHURCH, mounted on horseback and rode seventy miles to offer his services to DUDLEY, now governor of Massachusetts, in behalf of his distressed fellow-citizens. He was sent with five hundred soldiers to the eastern coast of New England, to attack the enemy in their own settlements; and, ascending the Penobscot and St. Croix rivers, he destroyed several of their towns, and took a considerable number of prisoners.

**1705.**

Prisoners  
ex-  
changed.

5. In 1705, VAUDREUIL, now governor of Canada, proposed to Governor Dudley, a treaty of neutrality. Arrangements were accordingly made for an exchange of prisoners; and thus a large proportion of those taken at Deerfield, were finally released. Among the number were Mr. Williams, and some of his children. One young daughter remained, married, and raised a family in the tribe which

**1710.**

English  
take Port  
Royal.

adopted her. . . In 1710, Port Royal was taken from the French, and its name, in honor of the queen, was changed to *Annapolis*.

**1713.**

Peace of  
Utrecht.

6. Queen Anne's war was closed by the treaty of Utrecht, by which Acadia was ceded to the English. For more than ten years, this war had exposed the frontiers to continued attacks from a savage foe. Agriculture was necessarily neglected, a heavy public debt incurred, and a state of general depression ensued.

**1710.**

Palatines  
(\* Inhabi-  
tants of  
the Palati-  
nate--E.  
bank of  
the Rhine;  
capital,  
Spire)  
settle in  
the  
province.

7. Some Palatines, of Germany, having been reduced to great indigence, by the wars in that country, went to England to solicit charity of Queen Anne. This princess having obtained for them grants of land in America, about six or seven thousand arrived, during the year 1710, and planted

---

4. Who went against the Indians?—5. What was done in 1705? What place was taken in 1710?—6. When was Queen Anne's war closed? What were some of its bad effects?—7. What persons were sent over? By whom? At what time? To what place? From what place did they come? (See margin.)

themselves in the provinces of New York, Penn- P.T. II.  
sylvania, Virginia, and Carolina. In 1714, Queen P.D. II.  
Anne dying, GEORGE I. ascended the throne of CH. II.  
England. **1714.**  
George I.

8. After the treaty of Utrecht, by which France ceded to England the whole of Acadia, the general court of Massachusetts extended its jurisdiction to the utmost bounds of the province of Maine; and enterprising fishermen and traders, not only revived the desolated villages, but on the eastern bank of the Kennebec erected new forts, and planted new settlements around them. Mass. takes in all Maine.

9. FATHER RASLES, a Jesuit missionary of France, had for many years ministered, in a rude chapel at Norridgewock, on the Kennebec, among his savage converts of the Abenakies. The Indians under his charge began hostilities against the English, by burning Brunswick. The authorities of Massachusetts had ascertained, by getting possession of the papers of Father Rasles, that both he and the governor of Canada were in the counsel of the savages, and were the instigators of their depredations. Father Rasles' war.  
**1717**  
to  
**1724.**  
Rasles and his party destroyed.

A party from New England, in August, 1724, destroyed Norridgewock, and put to death the aged Jesuit. He was the last of that devoted order, who, in the wilds of America, had labored to gain, at the same time, a spiritual kingdom for a heavenly Master, and a temporal one for an earthly sovereign.

10. The Indians now found, that, though instigated by the French, they were not supported by them; and their sachems, at St. John's, concluded a peace with the colonists; which, as French missions were now at an end, proved durable. English trading-houses flourished, and the eastern boundary of New England remained undisputed. **1726.**  
Aug. 6.  
**Indian Peace.**

---

7. Who succeeded Queen Anne?—8. What was the condition and prospects of Maine?—9. Give an account of Father Rasles. Where did the Indians, acting under his directions, begin their warfare? How did the colonists proceed?—10. What made the Indians willing to conclude a peace? What followed this peace?

## CHAPTER III.

Fletcher—Piracy—The Jerseys united, and joined with New York.

- P.T. II.** 1. GOVERNOR SLOUGHTER, of New York, dying  
**P.D. II.** in 1691, COLONEL FLETCHER received the commis-  
**CH. III.** sion of governor. Fletcher was a good soldier, and  
 having fortunately secured the friendship of MAJOR  
**1692.** SCHUYLER, he was, by his advice, enabled to con-  
 Colonel duct the Indian affairs of the colony, to the accept-  
 Fletcher. ance of the people. . . Episcopalian ministers were,  
**1693.** by the influence of the governor, settled in several  
 Introdu- parishes, and a religious order was thus introduced,  
 ces Epis- which, at this day, forms so respectable a portion of  
 copacy. the population of the State.
- 1698.** 2. In 1698, the EARL OF BELLAMONT, succeeded  
 Bella- Governor Fletcher. During the late wars, the seas  
 mont. were infested with English pirates. Bellamont was  
 particularly instructed "to put a stop to the growth  
 of piracy." As no appropriation of money had been  
 made by government, a private adventure against the  
 pirates was agreed on, and one WILLIAM KIDD, un-  
 dertook the expedition, and sailed from New York.  
 He soon turned pirate himself. After some time, he  
 burnt his ship, and returned to the colonies. There  
 is a vague tradition still existing, that he brought  
 large quantities of money, which he caused to be  
 concealed in the earth. He was apprehended at  
**1699.** Boston, sent to England for his trial, and there con-  
 demned and executed.
- 1702.** 3. Such disagreements arose in West Jersey, that  
 The Jer- the *proprietors surrendered the right of government*  
 seys uni- *to the crown.* Queen Anne united it with the east  
 ted, and province; and NEW JERSEY, as the whole was now  
 joined to  
 N. Y.

Sends out  
to stop  
piracy.  
Kidd, who  
turns  
pirate.

CHAPTER III.—1. Whom did Fletcher succeed? At what time? What enabled him to conduct well the Indian affairs? What was done by his influence in respect to religion?—2. Who succeeded him? How did he happen to employ Kidd? Give an account of William Kidd.—3. What happened in West Jersey? What was the whole now called?

called, was to be ruled jointly with New York, by a royal governor, having a separate council and assembly of representatives. The queen appointed, as governor of the two provinces, the worthless LORD CORNBURY. In 1708, she removed him and appointed LORD LOVELACE.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. IV.  
**1698.**  
Lord  
Cornbury  
**1708.**  
Lovelace

4. After a short administration, Lovelace was succeeded by SIR ROBERT HUNTER, and he, in 1719, by PETER SCHUYLER, who so often acted as the mediator between the whites and Indians. Commissioners were, at this time, appointed to draw the line of partition between the provinces of New York, New Jersey, and Connecticut.

**1710.**  
Hunter.  
**1719.**  
Scuyler.

5. In 1720, MR. BURNET succeeded Schuyler. He instituted measures to stop the trade between New York and Canada; and by this means displeased the merchants. A trading-house was built at *Oswego*, which was, in 1727, converted into a fortress. Burnet was superseded in the government by COLONEL MONTGOMERY.

**1720.**  
Burnet.  
Oswego  
built.  
**1722.**  
Fortified.  
**1727.**  
Mont-  
gomery.

6. On his death, the command devolved on RIP VAN DAM, an eminent merchant. During his administration, the French erected a fort at *Crown Point*, which commanded Lake Champlain, and which was within the acknowledged limits of New York. . . George I. died in 1727, and was succeeded by his son, GEORGE II.

Van Dam  
**1727.**  
George II

## CHAPTER IV.

Pennsylvania—Penn's second visit—Maryland.

1. AFTER William Penn's arrival in England, he became one of the most influential persons in the

3. How was it to be governed? Whom did Queen Anne make governor? What did she do in 1708?—4. Who were the successors of Lovelace?—5. How did Governor Burnet incur the displeasure of the merchants? What did they do?—6. Who was Burnet's successor? What did he permit? What happened in England in 1727?

CHAPTER IV.—1. How was it with Penn after his return to England?

**P.T. II.** kingdom. The influence, which he possessed with  
**P.D. II.** King James, was never used for selfish purposes;  
**CH. IV.** but mainly to obtain benefits for distressed Quakers,  
 Penn and laws in favor of general toleration.  
 influential  
 at court.

**1692.** 2. When James became an exile in France, Penn  
 Deprived of the govern-  
 ment of  
 Pa. was suspected, by his successor, of holding with  
 him a treasonable correspondence; and, upon vague  
 charges like this, he was a number of times impris-  
 oned. In 1692, the government of Pennsylvania  
 was taken from him; and Fletcher, of New York,  
 appointed by the crown, to be its governor.

3. After strict scrutiny, the conduct of Penn was  
 found to be irreproachable; and in 1694, he was re-  
 stored to the favor of the king, and reinstated in  
 his government: but not immediately returning to  
 Pennsylvania, he appointed the worthy THOMAS  
 LLOYD, his deputy governor.

**1699.** 4. In 1699, Penn visited his colony. Finding  
 His sec-  
 ond visit. great complaint and disaffection respecting the  
 government, he granted, in 1701, a new and liberal  
 charter. To the assembly, it gave the right of  
 originating bills; to the governor the right of re-  
 jecting laws passed by the assembly,—of appointing  
**1701.** his own council,—and of exercising the whole exe-  
 Grants  
 new  
 privileges. cutive power. This charter was accepted by the  
 assembly; although it did not satisfy the discontents  
 of the people.

5. The Territories, afterwards called DELAWARE,  
**1703** rejected the charter altogether; and in 1703, they  
 The Ter-  
 ritories  
 a separate  
 province. were allowed to form a separate assembly; Penn  
 still appointing the same governor over both prov-  
 inces. Having settled a government, which has  
 given him the glory of being one of the greatest of  
 lawgivers, Penn went to England, no more to visit  
 his beloved province. The executive authority was

---

1. Was William Penn a selfish man?—2. After the English  
 Revolution, by which James was made an exile, what happened  
 to Penn? What became, at this time, of Pennsylvania?—3. Was  
 Penn found guilty? What happened in 1694?—4. What in 1699?  
 What in 1701? What powers were given by the charter?—5.  
 What is said of the Territories? What did Penn then do?

administered by deputy governors, appointed by himself. PT. II.  
P'D. II.  
CH. V.

6. In the year 1716, the government of Maryland, which since the accession of William and Mary, had been held by the crown, was restored to Lord Baltimore, the proprietor. It continued in his hands, and those of his successors, until the American Revolution. 1716.  
Lord Baltimore reinstated.

## CHAPTER V.

The Huguenots — War with the Spaniards — Tuscaroras and Yamassees.

1. THE English settlers in Carolina, treated with harshness and intolerance the French Huguenots. They, on their part, bore this ill usage with meekness and forbearance; so that after a few years, they were admitted to the privileges of citizens. . . JOHN ARCHDALE, one of the proprietors, was sent, in 1695, as governor of North and South Carolina, with power to redress alleged grievances. Having restored order, he left the country the next year. French ill treated.

2. About this time a vessel from Madagascar, touching at Carolina, the captain presented Governor Archdale with a bag of seed rice, giving him, at the same time, instructions as to the manner of its culture. The seed was divided among several planters. From this accident arose the cultivation of this staple commodity of Carolina. 1695.  
Rice introduced from Africa.

3. The proprietary governor, invested with arbitrary powers, resided in the southern province, and governed the northern by his deputy. But the deputy governor, though his powers were ample, could never execute them, beyond the limits of the people's will. Much liberty in N. C.

6. What happened in 1716?

CHAPTER V.—1. Who were ill treated? By whom? How was their ill usage borne? What was done by the proprietors?—2. How was the culture of rice introduced?—3. Where did the governor of the Carolinas reside? How did his deputy succeed in governing North Carolina?

**P.T. II.** 4. On the breaking out of Queen Anne's war, an  
**P.D. II.** attempt was made by GOVERNOR MOORE, of South  
 ch. v. Carolina, against the Spanish province of St. Augus-  
**1702.** time. The expedition was unsuccessful, and so heavy  
 The first paper cur- was the expense, that, to pay the debt incurred, the  
 rency of S. C. assembly, *for the first time resorted to the expedient  
 of a paper currency.*

**1706.** 5. The Spaniards, aided by the French, and com-  
 Spanish Invasion repelled. manded by Le Feboure, in a fleet of five ships, next  
 invaded Charleston. Their attack was met with  
 such spirit, that they retired with loss.

**1712.** 6. In 1712, the *Tuscaroras*, and other Indians of  
 War with the Tus- North Carolina, formed a horrible plot for exter-  
 caroras. minating the entire white population. They entered,  
 by surprise, the houses of the poor Palatines of  
 Germany, who had recently settled on the Roanoke,  
 and murdered many families. The remaining in-  
 habitants, collecting into a camp, kept guard night  
 and day, until aid could be received from South  
 Carolina.

**TUSCA-** 7. That colony sent to their relief, six hundred  
**RORAS.** militia, under CAPTAIN BARNWELL. He penetrated  
 k. 300. the wilderness, attacked the Indians, killed three  
 p. 100. hundred, and took one hundred prisoners. Those  
 who survived, fled to the chief town of the Tusca-  
 roras; but here Barnwell's troops surrounded them.  
 After great losses, they sued for peace. The Tus-  
 caroras soon after left their country, and united with  
 the Iroquois; making the sixth nation of that con-  
 federacy.

**1715.** 8. In 1715, the *Yamassees*, instigated a combi-  
 War with th. Ya- nation of all the Indians from Florida to Cape Fear  
 mussees in S. C. against South Carolina. The warriors of the Creeks,  
 Appalachians, Cherokees, and other tribes engaged,  
 exceeded six thousand. The southern Indians fell

---

4. What account can you give of the expedition against St. Augustine? What was done to defray the expense?—5. Give an account of the Spanish invasion.—6. What happened now to the northern province of Carolina?—7. Did the southern province make exertions? What did Capt. Barnwell? What became of the Tuscaroras?—8. What formidable combination was formed? Who were the instigators? What was their force?

suddenly on the traders settled among them, and, in a few hours, ninety persons were massacred. Some of the inhabitants fled precipitately to Charleston, and gave the alarm.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. V.

9. Formidable parties were also penetrating the northern frontier, and approaching Charleston. These were repulsed by the militia, but their route was marked by devastation. GOVERNOR CRAVEN, at the head of twelve hundred men, marched towards the southern frontier, and overtook the strongest body of the enemy, at a place called Saltcatchers, where a bloody battle was fought, the Indians were totally defeated, and driven from their territory. They were received by the Spaniards, and settled in Florida. Nearly four hundred of the Carolinians were slain in this war.

SALT-  
CATCH-  
ERS.  
Indians  
defeated.

The Ya-  
massees  
settle in  
Florida.

10. The legislature, in the distressed condition of the colony, applied to the company for aid and protection, which was denied. For temporary relief, they next made large emissions of paper money. Directions were given, by the proprietors, to the governor, to reduce the quantity in circulation. The assembly then resolved to appropriate the lands, from which the Indians had been driven; but the proprietors refused to sanction this necessary proceeding. They also encouraged their officers in oppressive measures.

Evils of  
proprietari-  
an govern-  
ment.

11. The people were determined no longer to submit to such tyranny. The governor, JOHNSON, was informed, that if he would rule under the king, he could retain his office, but not otherwise. Johnson refused, and endeavored to suppress the spirit of revolt; but it had diffused itself beyond his control; and, at last, *the people elected* MOORE, governor of the province.

1719.  
Carolinian  
revolt  
and  
choose a  
governor

8. What was their first outbreak?—9. How did they proceed? Where were they defeated? By whom? How many Carolinians were destroyed by these Indians?—10. What was done in the distress of the colony? How did the company of proprietors treat the people?—11. What were the people now resolved on? What did they let Gov. Johnson know? What reply receive? Whom did they elect?

PR. II. 12. The colonists stated their situation by agents  
 PP. II. in England, when it was decided, that the propri-  
 CH. VI. etors had forfeited their charter: and that both the  
**1720.** Carolinas should be taken under the royal protection.  
 The crown. NICHOLSON, was appointed governor; and, early  
 summons. the following year, he arrived at Charleston, where  
 Nichol- he was received with every demonstration of joy.

13. Peace was made between Great Britain and  
 His good Spain. Treaties were held with the Cherokees and  
 adminis- Creeks, in which boundaries were settled. Governor  
 tration. Nicholson encouraged literary institutions.

14. The revolution was completed, by an agree-  
 ment between the crown and seven of the propri-  
 etors; whereby, for a valuable consideration, they  
**1729.** surrendered their right and interest, not only in the  
 N. and S. government of these provinces, but also in the soil.  
 Carolinas separated. North and South Carolina were, at the same time,  
 erected into separate governments.\*

\* Although the southern boundary of North Carolina was now (1729) made to include the locality of the Cape Fear colony, yet those settlers having previously migrated south, and become an integral part of South Carolina, they cannot properly be regarded as ever having belonged to North Carolina.

## CHAPTER VI.

### Extension of the French Empire—New France.

1. PENSACOLA was settled by three hundred Span-  
**1699.** iards from Vera Cruz. Scarcely were they estab-  
 Pensacola lished, when a fleet, under LE MOINE D'IBERVILLE,  
 settled. a Canadian Frenchman, who had been distinguished  
 as a discoverer and a warrior, appeared along their  
 coast, carrying several hundred persons, mostly from  
 Canada.

2. The company at first erected their huts on *Ship Island*, near the entrance of *Lake Borgne*. After

12. What decision was made in England? Who was sent as governor?—13. How did he administer the government?—14. How was this revolution in Carolina completed?

CHAPTER VI.—1. What was Pensacola settled? What fleet soon appeared?—2. Where did the company first stop?

three weeks, d'Iberville proceeded with forty men, entered the mouth of the Mississippi, and sailed up the stream, probably to Red River. On his return, he passed through the bay, which bears his name, and the lakes which he called *Maurepas*, and *Pontchartrain*, to the bay of *St. Louis*. On the small bay of *Biloxi* he erected a fort, and around it his few emigrants were planted.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VI.

Feb. 3.  
D'Iber-  
ville  
enters the  
Miss.

3. Leaving them under the command of his brother, BIENVILLE, he went to France. The climate proved fatal to numbers, and in 1702, the chief fortress was transferred to the western bank of the Mobile, where was made the first European settlement in Alabama.

1702.  
Mobile  
founded.

4. In 1716, Bienville went up the Mississippi, and built *Fort Rosalie*, on the site of *Natchez*,—the oldest European settlement of the grand valley, south of the Illinois. False ideas of the wealth of Louisiana had been spread in France, for purposes of land speculation; and in 1718, three ships came over, bearing eight hundred emigrants, who founded a city, and in honor of the regent of France, named it NEW ORLEANS. By this occupancy, as well as by discovery, France laid claim to Louisiana.

1716.  
Natchez  
founded.

1718.  
New  
Orleans  
founded.

5. The French built a fort at *Niagara*. A colony of one hundred was led to *Detroit*, as early as 1701, by DE LA MOTTE CADILLAC, and another in 1712, by ANTHONY CROZAT, who had obtained from Louis XIV. a patent for the exclusive trade of Louisiana. Since the discoveries of the Jesuits, the French had been in possession of the various western routes from the St. Lawrence to the Mississippi. *Chicago*, *Vincennes*, and *Kaskaskia*, were, at the close of this period, growing settlements.

1713.

New  
France.

---

2. Where did d'Iberville then go? Describe, and trace on the Map, his route and return. Where were his emigrants planted? 3. With whom did he leave the command? To what place was the settlement transferred?—4. What was done in 1716? To what cause was the settlement of New Orleans owing? On what did France found her great claims?—5. What other places were founded by the French soon after?

## CHAPTER VII.

Controversy in Massachusetts, respecting a fixed salary for the royal governor.

PT. II.

P.D. II.

CH. VII.

1702.

Mass. a  
trouble-  
some  
subject.

1. THE free institutions of the colonies, again alarmed the English government. Massachusetts was ever the least submissive to the royal will. A controversy between that colony and the parent state now began, which led to the war of the Revolution. The main subject was a *fixed salary for the royal governor*, which the English sovereign directed that officer to require; but which, this colony, for a series of years, resolutely refused to pay.

Embar-  
rassments.

Public  
bank.

2. Massachusetts, to defray the expenses of the war, had made such large emissions of paper money, that gold and silver were banished from the province. The paper depreciated, and the usual commercial evils ensued. The attention of the colony being directed to remedy these evils, a *public bank was instituted*; in which the faith of the government was pledged for the value of the notes; and the profits accruing from the bank, were to be applied for its support. Fifty thousand pounds, in bills of credit, were issued.

1706.

Gov.  
Shute  
makes bad  
worse.

3. The bank, however, failed of its desired effect. GOVERNOR SHUTE now succeeded GOVERNOR DUDLEY; and by his recommendation, another emission of bills of credit was made, to the amount of one hundred thousand pounds. The consequence of this was, rather to heighten, than allay the existing difficulties; as it was found, that the greater the quantity of this factitious substitute for money, the less was its value.

---

CHAPTER VII.—1. Which of the colonies was most prone to dispute the royal will? What did the English government instruct their governors to require? How did the colony resist this demand?—2. Give an account of the institution of a public bank 3. What was the effect of emitting so much paper money?

4. In 1728, GOVERNOR BURNET, who had been removed from the magistracy of New York, was appointed to that of Massachusetts and New Hampshire. He was instructed by his sovereign to insist on a fixed salary. The general court resisted, and postponed a decisive answer. They voted Governor Burnet the unusual sum of one thousand seven hundred pounds; three hundred for his travelling expenses, and fourteen hundred for his salary. He accepted the appropriation for his expenses, but rejected that for his salary.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VII.

**1728.**  
Burnet  
made gov-  
ernor of  
Mass. and  
N. H.

5. The people of Boston took a lively interest in the dispute; and the governor, believing that the general court were thus unduly influenced, removed them to Salem. Continuing firm to their purpose, he kept the court in session several months beyond the usual time, and refused to sign a warrant on the treasurer for the amount due to the members.

Removes  
the court  
from Bos-  
ton  
to Salem.

6. In April, 1729, after a recess of about three months, the general court again convened at Salem, but proving refractory on the subject of the salary, the governor adjourned them, and they met at Cambridge in August. Unable to make any impression, Burnet felt so severely the difficulties of his position, that he sickened with a fever, and died on the 17th of September.

**1729.**  
Burnet  
dies.

7. His successor, GOVERNOR BELCHER, who arrived at Boston in August, 1730, renewed the controversy; but the court after two or three sessions, succeeded with him (and by the consent of the crown), in a policy which they had vainly attempted with Burnet, that of paying him a liberal sum for present use, without binding themselves for the future.

**1730**

8. In 1719, more than one hundred families emigrated from the north of Ireland, and settled in the

---

4. Who was made governor of Massachusetts in 1723? What was done by the governor, and the court, in reference to a fixed salary?—5. What removal did the governor make?—6. What was done respecting the salary in 1729? What effect had these troubles on the governor?—7. How was the controversy settled?

P.T. II. town of Londonderry, in New Hampshire. They  
 P.D. II. introduced the foot spinning-wheel, the manufacture  
 CH. VII. of linen, and the culture of potatoes.

**1719.** 9. A phenomenon, singular at the time, and not  
 London- yet satisfactorily explained, alarmed the people of  
 derry settled. New England in 1719. This was the *Aurora Bore-  
 Dec. 17. alis*, first noticed in the country, on the night of the  
 Aurora 17th of December. Its appearance, according to  
 Borealis. the writers of the day, was more calculated to ex-  
 cite terror than later appearances of the same kind.

10. In 1723, a fort was built on the Connecticut  
 river, in the present town of Brattleborough, under  
 the direction of LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR DUMMER, of  
**1723.** Massachusetts, and hence it was called *Fort Dummer*.  
 First set- Around this fort was commenced the first settle-  
 tlement in Vermont. ment in VERMONT.

11. About this period a new colony was projected  
 in England, to settle between the Savannah and  
 Altamaha rivers. This tract was within the limits  
 of the Carolina grant, but unoccupied by Euro-  
 pean settlers. The patriotic deemed it important,  
 that this region should be planted by a British col-  
 ony, otherwise it might be seized by the Spaniards  
 from Florida, or the French from the Mississippi.  
 At the same time, a spirit of philanthropy was  
 abroad in England, to notice the distresses of the  
 poor, especially those shut up in prisons, and to  
 provide for their relief.

12. Actuated by these generous motives, a number  
 of gentlemen in England, of whom JAMES OGLE-  
 Ogle- THORPE was the most zealous, formed a project to  
 thorpe. settle this tract, by such of the suffering poor, as  
 might be willing to seek, in the new world, the means  
 of subsistence.

13. To this company, *the territory between the*

---

8. What emigrants settled in New Hampshire? What did they  
 introduce?—9. What can you say of the *Aurora Borealis* of that  
 day?—10. When and where was the first settlement made in  
 Vermont?—11. What new colony was projected in England?  
 Why did the patriotic in England favor the project? What be-  
 nevolent spirit was abroad?—12. Who was to be the leader of the  
 enterprise?

*Savannah and Altamaha*, now, in honor of the king, denominated GEORGIA, was granted; and, with its settlement, was completed that of the thirteen veteran colonies, which fought the war of the Revolution; and whose thirteen emblematic stripes, still decorate the banner of American Independence; while the stars (adding one for every new State), have well nigh trebled their original number.

P.T. II.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VII.

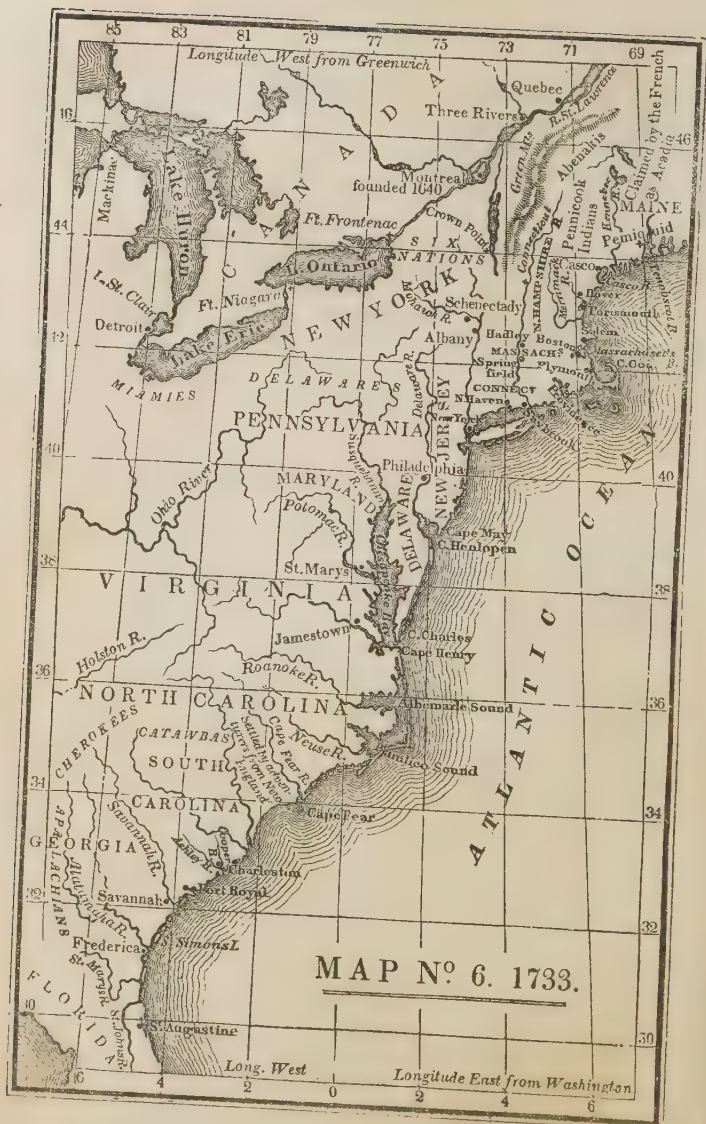
1732.  
Georgia  
granted.

13. What may be said of the colony which Oglethorpe and his company settled? What can you say of the flag or banner of the Republic of America?

#### EXERCISES ON THE TREE CHRONOGRAPHER

(For Period II., Part II.)

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer. Also the following dates: Queen Anne's war began in 1702. Massachusetts extended its jurisdiction over Maine in 1714. New York and New Jersey were ruled by one governor in 1698. Penn granted a new charter to Pennsylvania in 1701. The cultivation of rice was begun in Carolina, in 1695. Paper money was first made in South Carolina, in 1702. In 1729, North and South Carolina were erected into separate governments. Mobile was founded by the French in 1702, Natchez in 1706, and New Orleans in 1718. Vermont was first settled in 1723. What event terminates this period? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer.





Oglethorpe's Council with the Indian Chiefs.

## PERIOD III.

FROM

THE FIRST SETTLEMENT OF } **1733** { GEORGIA BY OGLETHORPE,

TO

THE PEACE OF PARIS, WHICH } **1763.** { CLOSES THE FRENCH WAR.

### CHAPTER I.

Georgia and Carolina engaged in war with the Spaniards of Florida—The Slave Trade—War of the French with the Chickasaws.

1. OGLETHORPE prepared for the settlement of Georgia, by the assistance of a corporation, consisting of twenty-one persons, who were called "Trustees for settling and establishing the Colony of Georgia." He embarked in November, 1732, with one hundred and sixteen emigrants for America.

P.T. II.

P.T. III.  
CH. I.

**1732.**

21  
trustees

2. Large sums of money had been subscribed, which were applied to the purchase of clothing, food, arms, agricultural utensils, and also for the transportation of such indigent persons as should be willing to cross the Atlantic, and begin a new settlement.

Supplies,  
and how  
furnished

3. The company arrived at Yamacraw Bluff, after-

CHAPTER I.—1. Whose assistance had Oglethorpe? At what time did he embark? With how many?—2. For what purposes was money raised?

**P.T. II.** wards *Savannah*, on the first of February, 1733  
**P.D. III.** Here Oglethorpe built a fort. His next care was  
 CH. I. to have a good understanding with his neighbors,  
 Feb 1, the powerful chiefs of the Creeks, Cherokees, Choctaws,  
**1733.** and Chickasaws. Oglethorpe invited them to  
 Ogle- meet him in a general council at Savannah. By means  
 thorpe of an interpreter, he made them the most friendly  
 arrives. professions, which they reciprocated; and these  
**Treaty** amicable dispositions passed into a solemn treaty.  
**with the**  
**Chiefs.**

4. Georgia was soon increased by five or six hundred emigrants; but most were idle, and many vicious. In order to procure a more efficient population, eleven townships of 20,000 acres each, were laid out on the Savannah, Ogeechee, and Altamaha rivers, and divided into lots of fifty acres each. One of these was to be given to every actual settler.

50 acres  
given  
to each  
settler.

Scotch  
and  
Germans.

5. This arrangement proved so attractive, that a large number of emigrants soon arrived. Highlanders from Scotland, build the town of Inverness, afterwards *Darien*, on the Altamaha; and Germans, a town which they called *Ebenezer*, on the Savannah.

6. The charter granted to the trustees of Georgia, vested in them powers of legislation for twenty-one years; and they now proceeded to establish regulations for the government of the province, in which the interests of humanity were regarded, more than those of trade.

**1736.**  
Civil  
govern-  
ment.

7. In 1736, Oglethorpe erected three forts: one on the Savannah, at *Augusta*; another called *Frederica*, in the vicinity of the Scotch settlement on the island of St. Simons; and a third, named *Fort William*, on Cumberland island. The Spaniards remonstrated, and insisted on the evacuation of the

Og. builds  
8 forts.

---

3. Where and when did the company arrive? What was first done? What was Oglethorpe's next care? What powerful nations sent their chiefs to the council? What was done at the council?—4. How was the settlement increased? What was done to procure a more efficient population?—5. What effect had this arrangement? What town was built by Scotch Highlanders? What by Germans?—6. What was done in relation to government?—7. What three forts did Oglethorpe next build? What did the Spaniards?

country, as far as the thirty-third degree of north latitude. P.T. II.

8. Oglethorpe about this time returned to England. He was appointed commander-in-chief of the British forces in Carolina and Georgia, and sent back with a regiment of six hundred men. P.D. III.  
CH. I.  
1740.

9. England having declared war against Spain, Oglethorpe twice invaded Florida. His second expedition proved wholly unsuccessful, and produced the unfortunate results of an increase of the public debt, and a temporary distrust between the people and their general. The same year, Charleston, in South Carolina, was destroyed by fire. To relieve the sufferers, the British parliament generously voted £20,000. Og. is un-  
successful.  
  
Charles-  
ton  
burned.

10. In May, 1742, a fleet was sent from Havana, from which debarked a Spanish army at St. Simons. Oglethorpe had collected troops and posted himself at Frederica. He was not in sufficient force openly to attack the enemy; but was himself attacked by a party of Spaniards. His troops, particularly the Highlanders, under CAPTAIN MCINTOSH, fought bravely—repulsed, and slew two hundred of the enemy at “the Bloody Marsh.” 1742.  
June.  
Georgia  
invaded  
by the  
Spaniards.  
  
BLOODY  
MARSH.  
Sp. l. 200.

11. Oglethorpe next attempted to surprise the invaders, by marching to attack their camp in the night. A traitor, who discharged his gun, and then ran into the Spanish lines, defeated his plan. But Oglethorpe made the Spaniards believe, by a stratagem, that the soldier was sent to them by him, to advise them to remain. Some ships from South Carolina appearing in sight, the Spaniards thought they were going to fall into a trap; and they embarked in such haste that their artillery, provisions, and military stores, fell into the hands of the Georgians. A strata-  
gem  
makes  
the  
Spaniard  
retire.

12. Georgia, in its early settlement was distin-

8. What appointment had Oglethorpe?—9. What two expeditions did he undertake? What bad results occurred? What misfortune happened to Charleston? What generous act is recorded here?—10. Give an account of the Spanish invasion. Who repulsed the Spaniards?—11. By what stratagem were they induced to retire?

P.T. II. guished by the peculiar humanity in which it was  
 P.D. III. founded. Oglethorpe, "sought not himself, but oth-  
 CH. II. ers;" and for ten years, he gave his disinterested ser-  
 Character of Oglethorpe. vices, without claiming so much as a cottage or a farm.

13. The eloquent WHITEFIELD, with the two  
 Wesley- Wesleys, the three founders of the sect of Metho-  
 field and dists, sympathized with Oglethorpe in his benevo-  
 the two lence; and each spent some time in America, assist-  
 Wesleys. ing him in his enterprise. Whitefield founded near  
 Savannah, a house for orphans. . . . In 1752, the trus-  
 Trustees tees, wearied with a troublesome and profitless charge,  
 of resigned their office, and Georgia became a royal  
 Georgia. province.

14. Louisiana, after having been for fourteen years,  
 under a company of avaricious speculators formed  
 at Paris, reverted to the French monarch; and  
 Bienville was appointed governor. He found the  
 Chickasaws very troublesome, as they favored the  
 English, rather than the French. The Natchez,  
 under their influence, had committed murders, for  
 1732. which the whites had wholly destroyed them. Bien-  
 The ville ascended the Tombecbee to attack the Chicka-  
 Natchez saws. He was to have been aided by a French army  
 destroyed. from the Illinois, but the Chickasaws had waylaid and  
 The destroyed them. When Bienville arrived he found  
 Chicka- the Indians more than a match for his force; and  
 saws destroy a he immediately retired down the stream.  
 French army.

## CHAPTER II.

Old French War—Capture of Louisburg—French and English claims to the Basin of the Mississippi.

1. IN 1744, war was again proclaimed between England and France. *Louisburg*, the capital of the

12. What was the conduct of Oglethorpe?—13. What eminent ministers of the gospel were with him? What change was made in 1752?—14. Under whom had Louisiana been? To whom did it revert? Whom did he appoint? Give an account of the attack upon the Chickasaws, and its result.

CHAPTER II.—1. In what year was the "Old French War?"

island of Cape Breton, had been fortified with great care and expense, and was called, from its strength, the Dunkirk of America; while, from its position, it commanded the navigation of the St. Lawrence, and the fisheries of the adjoining seas.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. II.

2. GOVERNOR SHIRLEY, of Massachusetts, now meditated an attack on this fortress. He laid open his designs to the general court of the colony, under an oath of secrecy. The plan being thought too great, too hazardous, and too expensive, it was apparently abandoned; but an honest member, who performed the family devotions at his lodgings, inadvertently discovered the secret, by praying for the divine blessing on the attempt.

A secret betrayed.

3. The people approving the project, with which they became thus accidentally acquainted, were clamorous in its support. It was revived by the court, and after a long deliberation, the vote in its favor was carried by a single voice. Troops were immediately raised by Connecticut, Rhode Island, and New Hampshire, to aid those of Massachusetts. The command of these forces was given to COLONEL WILLIAM PEPPERELL, a merchant of Maine, who sailed on the 25th of March, and arrived at Casco on the 4th of April.

1745.

Forces  
com-  
manded  
by Col.  
Pepperell.

4. A British naval force, under ADMIRAL WARREN, having been applied to, joined the armament; and the whole arrived at Chapeau Rouge Bay, on the 30th of April. By a series of the most unprecedented good luck, and by almost incredible exertions, *the fortress was taken*, and with it the whole island of Cape Breton.

LOUIS-  
BURG.  
From

April 30 to  
June 16—

A great  
feat.

5. Peace was proclaimed in 1748, and a treaty signed at *Aix la Chapelle*, by commissioners from England, France, and Spain, the basis of which was

1748.

Peace of  
Aix la  
Chapelle.

1. What can you say of Louisburg?—2. What plan was formed by Governor Shirley? What did he in reference to it? How did the general court receive it? How did it come to the knowledge of the people?—3. What did they think of it? What was finally done by the court? From what States was an army raised? Who commanded?—4. What naval force joined them? What was the result of the combined effort?

P.T. II. the mutual restoration of all places taken during the  
 P.D. III. war: and Louisburg, to the grief and mortification  
 CH. II. of the colonies, reverted to the French. Its capture,  
 had, however, done credit to their military prowess;  
 as it had been, by far, the most brilliant exploit of  
 the entire war.

6. The blood and treasure of the many, had again  
 been spent without result, and peace was concluded  
 without a proper settlement of differences. This was  
 especially the case in regard to the American claims  
 of the contracting powers.

7. The French laid claim to all the lands watered  
 by streams flowing into the St. Lawrence and the  
 Lakes; and all watered by the Mississippi, the Mo-  
 bile, and their branches; and, in the west, and on  
 the north, they were erecting fortresses, with an in-  
 tent to unite and command the whole of this vast  
 territory.

8. The British, on the other hand, asserted a right  
 to the entire country, as may be seen by their early  
 patents, to which they gave an extension from the  
 Atlantic to the Pacific. These conflicting claims,  
 it was clearly foreseen, must soon lead to another  
 war.

9. A number of gentlemen, mostly in Virginia, of  
 whom LAWRENCE WASHINGTON was one, procured  
 in 1750, an act of the British parliament, constituting  
 them "the Ohio Company," and granting them six  
 hundred thousand acres of land, on, or near, the  
 Ohio river. They caused the tract to be surveyed,  
 and opened a trade with the Indians in the vicinity.

10. This becoming known to the French, the gov-  
 ernor of Canada complained to the authorities of  
 New York and Pennsylvania, threatening to seize

5. On what basis was peace made at Aix la Chapelle?—6. Were  
 subjects of difference properly settled?—7. What part of America  
 was claimed by France? What were they doing to unite and  
 command this territory?—8. What was claimed by the British?  
 Was there any prospect of a peaceable settlement of these differ-  
 ences?—9. Who were the Ohio Company? What grant had they?  
 What did they do in reference to it?—10. What course did the  
 French take?

their traders, if they did not quit the territory. Several of their number were accordingly taken, and carried to the French fort at *Presque Isle*. P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. III.

11. DINWIDDIE, the governor of Virginia, alarmed at these movements on the part of the French, had sent a trader among them as a spy, who returning, increased his fears, by vague accounts of the French posts near Lake Erie, without gratifying his curiosity as to the number or object of their forces. Gov. Dinwiddie alarmed.

12. Dinwiddie determined, although the season was advanced, to send immediately a trusty person, to require the French commandant to quit the territory; and also to bring such an account of his strength and position, that if he refused peaceably to retreat, some feasible method of ejection by force might be adopted. A young man of twenty-two, an officer of the militia, was chosen. His figure was commanding, his air inspired respect and confidence. His name was GEORGE WASHINGTON. 1752.  
He selects Washington for a difficult duty.

### CHAPTER III.

George Washington—His birth, parentage, and education—His conduct in places of trust, private, and public.

1. LAWRENCE WASHINGTON, the grandfather of George, and AUGUSTINE WASHINGTON his father, had continued the family residence in Westmoreland county, Virginia, where his great grandfather John, already mentioned, had fixed his seat; and there he who is now regarded as the father of his country, was born on the 22d of February, 1732. In 1734, his father removed to Stafford county, opposite to Fredericksburg on the Rappahannock; little think- John, Lawrence, Augustine, and GEORGE WASHINGTON. 1732.

11. Who was governor of Virginia? What report was brought to him?—12. What plan did he adopt? Who was chosen?

CHAPTER III.—1. What was the name of George Washington's father? His grandfather? His great-grandfather? When and where was he born?

**P.T. II.** ing that his playful boy, then but two years old, was  
**P.D. III.** marked by Providence for a career so elevated.

**CH. III.** 2. In 1743, Augustine Washington died, and left  
 to each of his sons valuable landed estates. To **LAW-**  
**1743.** **RENCE** his eldest, he bequeathed the beautiful tract on  
**Lawrence** the bank of the Potomac; and to George, the lands  
**obtains** and mansion where he died. George was the oldest  
**Mt.** offspring of a second marriage; and his excellent  
**Vernon.** mother, **MARY WASHINGTON** was, by his father's will,  
 his sole guardian. It was under her maternal guid-  
 ance, and in the common school, that Washington  
 developed those physical, intellectual, and moral ele-  
 ments, which formed his greatness.

3. When in school he was pains-taking, and exact  
 in the performance of his exercises; and he was, at  
 the same time, so true in his words, so righteous in  
 his actions, and so just in his judgments, that his  
 school-mates were wont to bring their differences be-  
 fore him for decision. Superior also in bodily health  
 and vigor, he excelled in athletic sports, and adven-  
 turous exploits. He loved the military; and tradi-  
 tion reports, that the first battles in which he com-  
 manded, were the mimic engagements which he  
 taught to his school-fellows.

4. He learned to read and write well; and he tho-  
 roughly mastered arithmetic. This was all which  
 the school helped him to acquire. Of himself he prac-  
 tised composition; and he happily formed a style  
 suited to the lofty tone of his moral sentiments, and  
 the directness and energy of his character. The  
 higher mathematics, he learned with pleasure and  
 mental profit, his object being to prepare himself for  
 the occupation of surveyor. He set carefully down in  
 his books, his diagrams, his observations on man-

His early  
moral  
character.

His  
activity.

Limited  
advan-  
tages  
over-  
balanced  
by self-  
exertion.

- 
1. How old was he when his father removed to Stafford county?
  2. What occurred on the death of his father? How old was George? Who was his guardian? What were his advantages?
  3. What was his character as a school-boy?—4. What did he learn in school? What important exercise did he practise by himself? Did he early fix upon something which he could follow, to obtain an honorable support? What did he learn, in order to prepare himself for his chosen occupation?

ners, and his rules of behavior. Nothing was too laborious, or too tedious for his determined mind. P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. III.

5. To survey the great estates of LORD FAIRFAX, then residing in Virginia, he first began his career of active life. Though a boy of just sixteen, he was intrusted with what would have been an arduous and difficult duty to a sound and able man. Among the forest wilds of the Alleghanies, the young surveyor frequently ranged alone; but on the summits he rejoiced in the beauty of the earth and sky; and in the valleys he examined well, all rare and curious things. 1748.  
A survey-  
or among  
the moun-  
tains.

6. He had often no bed to lodge in, and no roof to shelter him. With his own hands he dressed the game, which his musket had procured. Sometimes, however, he shared the wigwam, and the unpalatable fare of the native. But these hardships were an important preparation for the severe services he had afterwards to encounter. His employment also was lucrative; and he discharged its duties in a manner, that made men regard him as a youth of extraordinary promise.

He gains  
property  
and  
honor.

7. *He was only nineteen, when he was made adjutant-general of the Virginia militia*, with the rank of major. About this time he accompanied to the West Indies, his brother Lawrence, now declining with a pulmonary disease. His voyage was advantageous to himself, from his great observation and industry; but his brother's disease remained, and he died during the next year. By his will he left George his executor; and gave him the Mount Vernon estate. 1751.  
Made Ad-  
jutant  
with title  
of Major.  
  
Mount  
Vernon  
estate.

8. Maj. Washington was next placed over one of the four divisions into which Dinwiddie had portion-

4. What did he do, that he might retain, and be the wiser for what he had learned? Did he not find such labor too tedious?

5. Was he trusted with important business when young? By whom? What business was it? Where did he practise his profession? Through what scenes did it lead him? -6. What hardships did he encounter? Were these on the whole to his advantage? In what way? -7. What promotion had he at the age of nineteen? What happened in reference to his brother?

PT. II. ed the militia of "the Dominion," the style then  
 P.D. III. given to Virginia. It was at this period, that he  
 CH. III. was chosen by the governor, as his envoy to the  
 French. The seat of government for Virginia was  
 He sets *Williamsburg*. Thither Washington repaired, and  
 out to was furnished with a letter from Dinwiddie, to St.  
 cross the wilder- Pierre, the French commandant, requiring him with  
 ness. threats, to withdraw from the territory belonging to  
 Oct 31. the French sovereign.  
**1753.**

9. Washington departed on the 31st of October to  
 traverse more than five hundred miles, much of the  
 way, a pathless, as well as a wintry desert. His route  
 lay through Fredericksburg, Alexandria, and Win-  
 Nov. 14. Chester, to Will's creek, since Cumberland. Here,  
 Cumber- taking leave of every vestige of civilization, and  
 land. having procured Mr. GIST, agent of the Ohio com-  
 pany, as interpreter and guide, his party of eight  
 plunged into the recesses of the wilderness.

10. They passed through snow and storms, over  
 mountains, and then down among thickets, into  
 flooded valleys. Coming upon the Youghiogeny  
 From they followed it to the Monongahela, and that to its  
 Cumber- junction with the Alleghany. "The Fork," as the  
 land to the Fork. site of Pittsburg was called, was then a desert; but  
 Washington noticed, and afterwards reported it, as  
 a suitable place for a fort.

11. From the Fork, he went down the river  
 twenty miles, to Logstown, where he was to deliver  
 Nov. 24. friendly greetings from Dinwiddie, to the great chief  
 At Logs- of the southern Hurons, TANACHARISON, or the Half-  
 town he king; whose friendship was courted both by French  
 meets the and English. The chief asserted that the land in  
 Half-king. question belonged neither to the English nor the

---

\* 8. What was Virginia called at that time? Into how many divisions was it portioned in regard to the military? What was Washington's public position, when Dinwiddie selected him as envoy? What his first step after accepting the appointment? What was the purport of the governor's letter?—9. What time in the year did Washington set out? To go how far? Trace and describe the first part of his route.—10. Describe his journey to the "Fork."—11. Describe his progress and adventures, till he reached the French camp.

French; but the Great Spirit had given it to the Indians, and allowed them to make it their residence. After a friendly council, Tanacharison and three of his principal men, accompanied Washington a hundred miles, to the encampment at French Creek.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. III.

12. Here ST. PIERRE, who had been but a few days in command of the post, received him with the courteous bearing and hospitable attentions of the French gentleman. But to Dinwiddie's request, that he would leave the territory which belonged to the British, he replied, that it did not become him to discuss treaties; such questions should rather be addressed to the governor-general of Canada, the MARQUIS DU QUESNE; he acted under his orders, and those he should be careful to obey.

His reception at the French camp.

13. The return of Washington in the dead of winter, was full of startling and perilous adventure. Once a treacherous guide aimed his musket at him, but it missed fire; and once, on the Alleghany river, he and his guide, having made in a day, with one poor hatchet, a miserable raft, they, at sunset, trusted themselves upon it, to cross the swollen river, amidst large masses of floating ice, which came down upon them, and threw them from their raft into ten feet of water. But they saved themselves by swimming to an island.

The peril of Washington's return

14. Major Washington arrived at Williamsburg, on the 16th of January, having been absent only eleven weeks. The energy and prudence, with which he had met and overcome dangers, and the ability which he had manifested in the discharge of his trust, sunk deep into the minds of his countrymen. His written reports were published with applause, not only through the colonies, but in England.

Returns Jan. 16, 1754. Absent 11 weeks

15. Troops were now raised in Virginia; and Washington was made lieutenant-colonel, and in-

---

12. How was he received by St. Pierre? What reply was given to the governor's letter?—13. What adventures did Washington meet with on his return?—14. How long was he absent? What qualities had he manifested, which made a deep impression? What was thought of his written reports?

**PT. II.** trusted with the command. In April, 1754, he  
**PD III.** marched into the disputed territory, and encamped  
**CH IV.** at the Great Meadows. He there learned that the  
**1754.** French had dispossessed the Virginians of a fort,  
 He is which, in consequence of his recommendation, they  
 again sent with a were erecting at the Fork, and which the French  
 force. finished, and named *Fort du Quesne*.  
 French build Fort du  
 Quesne.

16. He was also informed that a detachment of French troops, had been sent against him, and were encamped but a few miles west of the Great Meadows. Surrounding their encampment, he surprised, and defeated them. The commander **DE JUMONVILLE** was killed, with ten of his party. On his return to the Great Meadows, he erected a small stockade, called fort Necessity.

May 28.  
 W. defeats  
 a party.  
 10 killed,  
 22 prisoners

French  
 reinforced

17. With less than four hundred men, Washington marched to dislodge the enemy from Fort du Quesne; but after proceeding thirteen miles he learned that they had been reinforced from Canada, when he retired. Unable to continue his retreat, from a failure of expected munitions, he intrenched his little army within Fort Necessity. A party of fifteen hundred French, soon followed and assaulted the intrenchments. After a brave resistance, Washington surrendered the fort; receiving for himself and the garrison the honors of war.

**1754.**  
 July 3.

## CHAPTER IV.

CONGRESS AT ALBANY—Convention of Governors in Virginia—Braddock.

Attempt  
 to unite.

1. *The British government, in prospect of war, proposed to their American colonies, to form a*

15. Under what circumstances did he march into the same country again? Where encamp? What did he hear?—16. Give an account of a French party, headed by De Jumonville. What did Washington build at Great Meadows?—17. What did he set out to do? Why did he desist, and turn back? Why did he stop at Fort Necessity? What happened at the fort?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What proposal was made by the British government?

*Union.* Delegates from each of the New England provinces, New York, Pennsylvania, and Maryland, accordingly met at *Albany*. After deliberating, they accepted a plan of confederation, which was drawn up by BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, on the 4th of July, 1754. This was just twenty-two years before that great statesman signed the Declaration of Independence.

2. But the plan was disliked in England, because it gave too much power to the people; and in America, because it gave too much power to the king. Thus was shown how widely different, even at that period, were the views of the British and the Americans. It was this difference of opinion, which finally led to the American Revolution.

3. General Braddock was dispatched from England with 1500 men. On his arrival in America, he requested a convention of the colonial governors to assemble in Virginia, to concert with him a plan of military operations. *Four expeditions* were here resolved upon, the first, against Nova Scotia, the second, against Fort du Quesne, the third, against Crown Point, and the fourth, against Niagara.

4. The expedition against Nova Scotia was commanded by generals MONCKTON and WINSLOW. The fleet which conveyed the troops, sailed from Boston. The army distinguished themselves by bravery and good conduct, and with the loss of only three men, put the British in full possession of Nova Scotia.

5. GENERAL BRADDOCK commanded the expedition against Fort du Quesne. On his arrival, he engaged Washington, now a colonel, to become his aid. By his advice, Braddock, in marching his army across

P'T. II.  
P'D. III.  
CH. IV.

July 4,  
1754.

Plan suits  
neither  
party.

Braddock  
assem-  
bles the  
governors.

1755.  
June 10.  
Brad-  
dock's  
army be-  
gin their  
march.

1. What was done in consequence? What plan did the delegates accept?—2. How was it received in England? How in America? What did this show? What did it lead to?—3. How many men were now sent over? Under whom? What did he request? What expeditions did this convention agree on?—4. Give an account of that against Nova Scotia.—5. Who commanded the second expedition? In what capacity did Washington accompany him? What measures did he take by Washington's advice?

P'T. II. the wilderness, left his heavy baggage behind, under  
 P'D. III. the care of Colonel Dunbar, with an escort of six  
 CH. IV. hundred men; and at the head of twelve hundred  
 select troops the general proceeded by more rapid  
 marches, towards Fort du Quesne.

Braddock  
contemns  
and dis-  
regards  
advice.

6. Braddock was not deficient in courage, or military skill; but he was wholly ignorant of the mode of conducting warfare in American woods; and he held the opinions of the colonial officers in contempt. Washington had, however, ventured to suggest the expediency of employing the Indians, —who, under the Half-king had offered their services, as scouting, and advanced parties. Braddock not only disdained the advice, but offended the Indians by the rudeness of his manner. Thus he rashly pushed on, without knowing the dangers near.

July 9.  
Fine ap-  
pearance  
of Brad-  
dock's  
army.

7. It was noon, on the 9th of July, when from the height above the right bank of the Monongahela, Washington looked back upon the ascending army, which, ten miles from Fort du Quesne, had just crossed the stream for the second time. Every thing looked more bright and beautiful than aught he had witnessed before. The companies, in their crimson uniform, with burnished arms and floating banners, were marching gayly to cheerful music, as they entered the forest.

They fall  
into an  
Indian  
ambus-  
cade.

8. Suddenly there burst upon them the Indian war-whoop, and a deadly fire, from opposite quarters, and from unseen foes. Many fell. Panic-stricken, their ranks broke, and they would have fled, but Braddock rallied them; and, a bigot to the rules of European warfare, he constantly sought to preserve a regular order of battle. Thus he kept his men, like sheep penned in a fold, fair marks for a foe, beyond their reach, and, in the only spot, where the Indians, far inferior in numbers, could have destroyed them.

---

6. What can you say of Braddock? What wholesome advice had he, which he despised?—7. How did Braddock's army appear to Washington, on the morning of July 9th?—8. How was the scene reversed? What was Braddock's conduct?

They lay on each side of the way, concealed in two ravines. P'T. II.  
P'D. III.  
CH. IV.

9. The Indians, singling out the officers, shot down every one on horseback—Washington alone excepted. He, as the sole remaining aid of the general, rode by turns over every part of the field, to carry his orders. The Indians afterwards asserted, that they had specially noticed his bearing, and conspicuous figure, and repeatedly shot at him; but at length they became convinced that he was protected by an Invisible Power, and that no bullet could harm him. After the battle was over, four balls were found lodged in his coat, and two horses had been killed under him; but the appointed guardian of his country, escaped without a wound. Washing-  
ton's  
wonderful  
preserva-  
tion.

10. Braddock, who had been undismayed amidst continued showers of bullets, at length received a mortal wound. Upon his fall, the regular troops fled in confusion. Washington formed, and covered their retreat with the provincials, whom Braddock, in his contempt, had kept in the rear. The defeat was total; sixty-four officers out of eighty-five, and nearly half the privates, were killed or wounded. BRAD-  
DOCK'S  
FIELD  
Br. loss  
k. 664.

11. The army made no halt till it met the division under Dunbar, forty miles in the rear. There Braddock died. The whole army continued to retreat till it reached Fort Cumberland, one hundred and twenty miles from the place of action. Colonel Dunbar, withdrew the regulars to Philadelphia, leaving the whole frontier of Virginia open to the depredations of the French and Indians. Dunbar in  
command.

---

8. Where were the Indians concealed?—9. What is very remarkable concerning Washington during this battle?—10. What was the fate of Braddock? What was the condition of the army? What the loss?—11. Describe the retreat of the army.

## CHAPTER V.

Remainder of the Campaign of 1755—Campaign of 1756.

PT. II.

PD. III.

CIL. V.

June,

1755.

Johnson

and

Lyman.

Erect Ft.

Edward.

S. end of

LAKE

GEORGE

Fr. under

Dieskau

defeated.

Johnson's

honors

tarnish his

character.

The re-

mains

of the

French

destroyed.

1. THE troops destined for the expedition against Crown Point, amounted to more than four thousand. They arrived at Albany the last of June, under the command of GENERAL WILLIAM JOHNSON, and GENERAL LYMAN. Here they were joined by a body of Mohawks, under their sachem, HENDRICK.

2. Lyman advanced with the main body of the army, and erected *Fort Edward*, on the Hudson, for the security of the batteaux, provisions, and artillery; which were forwarded from Albany, by Johnson. Towards the last of August, Johnson removed his force, and encamped at the south end of Lake George. Here he was engaged in preparing to cross the lakes.

3. In the mean time, the BARON DIESKAU led against this force, an army from Montreal. He encountered the Americans near their camp, and was at first successful; but the fortune of the day changed. His army was defeated and fled; and himself, pale, and bleeding with mortal wounds, was found, sitting against a tree in the woods.

4. Johnson, in representing this affair to the British, made no mention of General Lyman; but obtained for himself £5,000, and a baronetcy. The public impression was, that the reward belonged, at least, equally to Lyman.

5. The poor dispirited remains of Dieskau's army halted at French mountain, where they were, the next day, cut off by a detachment from Fort Edward. Their dead bodies were thrown into a small

CHAPTER V.—1. What was the third expedition of the campaign? How many troops? Where were they on the last of June? Under whose command? Who joined them?—2. In what direction did the two divisions of the army move?—3. Who commanded the French army? Give an account of his operations.—4. Who gained money and a title, but lost character? 5. What became of the remains of the French army?

lake, since called "the Bloody Pond." May the time P.T. II.  
soon come, when the pure waters of our mother P.D. III.  
earth, shall no longer be dyed by the blood of her CH. VI.  
children, barbarously shed by each other's hands!

6. The success at Lake George revived the spirits of the colonists. Sir William Johnson, however, did not follow up his success, by proceeding to reduce Crown Point; but he erected at the scene of his exploit, on the southern shore of Lake George, a fort, which he called, *William Henry*. Leaving six hundred men, to garrison the forts, the remainder of the troops returned to their respective colonies. Sir Wm. Johnson wastes the campaign.

7. The enterprise against Niagara was undertaken by Governor Shirley in person. He did not arrive at Oswego until the 21st of August, and he there waited for supplies, until the season was too far advanced for crossing Lake Ontario. Leaving seven hundred men, under COLONEL MERCER, to garrison the fort, he returned to Albany; and so ended the fourth expedition. 1755. Aug. 21. Shirley loses the campaign

8. By the destruction of Braddock's army, the frontiers of Pennsylvania and Virginia, were left to the mercy of the savages. Washington, at the head of his regiment, did his utmost to defend them; and he strenuously urged that offensive measures should be again adopted, and especially against Fort du Quesne, which he knew was the place of gathering for the Indians. 1756 Indians ravage Va. and Pa.

## CHAPTER VI.

Campaigns of 1757 and 1758.

1. THUS in the campaign of 1756, little was done. That of 1757 is only memorable in our annals, for the dreadful massacre at Fort William Henry.

6. Did Sir William Johnson follow up his success? What disposition was made of the army?—7. What happened in regard to the fourth expedition?—8. What, after these failures, was the condition of the frontier States?

CHAPTER VI.—1. For what is the campaign of 1757 memorable?

**I<sup>st</sup> II.** MONTCALM, who succeeded Dieskau, had early concentrated his forces, amounting to 9000 regulars, Canadians, and Indians, on the shores of the Champlain, at Ticonderoga. Passing up Lake George, he laid siege to Fort William Henry, which was commanded by COLONEL MONROE, a British officer. GENERAL WEBB was at the time lying at Fort Edward, with the main British army, four or five thousand strong.

**P.D. III.**  
**CH. VI.**

**1757.**  
Montcalm  
besieges  
Ft. Wm  
Henry.

**Aug. 2.**  
Monroe  
capitu-  
lates.

**Aug. 3.**  
The mas-  
sacre of  
**FT. WM.**  
**HENRY.**

2. Monroe, being vigorously pressed, while he defended himself with spirit, earnestly entreated General Webb for aid. But he entreated in vain, and necessity compelled him, on the 2d of August, to surrender. By the articles of capitulation, Montcalm engaged that the English should be allowed to leave the fort with the honors of war; and, in order to protect them from the Indians, that an escort should be provided to conduct them to Fort Edward.

3. But the Indians, who served for plunder, attacked the British in the camp; and the French commander either could not, or would not, protect them. They rushed forth, and were pursued. They threw all their money and clothes to the Indians. Not satisfied, the savages pursued them, naked and flying, with tomahawk and scalping-knife. A few reached the camp of Webb, and some were found bleeding in the woods. But of these, many in their agony, had lost their reason.

**The elder**  
**Wm. Pitt.**

4. The manner in which the war had been conducted, dissatisfied the people both of England and America; and brought forward as prime minister, the greatest statesman of the British annals, WILLIAM PITT, afterwards Earl of Chatham. So powerful was his eloquence and so austere his patriotism, that he

---

1. Give an account of Montcalm, and his army. What was the condition of the British forces, and who were commanders?... 2. What was the situation and conduct of Monroe? What of Webb? What was stipulated by Montcalm?—3. Did he keep his engagement? Mention some of the circumstances of the massacre.—4. What was the state of the public mind in regard to the war? What statesman was brought forward? What was his character?

controlled at length the energies of the government, and the spirit of the people. P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VI.

5. In a circular letter, which he addressed to the governors of the provinces, he promised them, that an effectual force should be sent against the French, and he exhorted them to use their utmost exertions to raise men in their respective colonies. Animated by this call, the colonists renewed their efforts, and increased their army to twenty thousand. A large force was also sent from England; so that there was now on foot, an army far greater than had ever before existed in America. These troops, amounting in all to 50,000 men, were in readiness for action early in the spring. Three expeditions were resolved on, against Louisburg, Crown Point, and Fort du Quesne. 1758.  
Pitt calls  
on the  
colonies.  
  
An army  
of 50,000  
in  
America.

6. A regular siege, the best conducted of any which had ever been laid in America, placed, on the 26th of July, the fortress of Louisburg again in the hands of the British. It was by gallant conduct, during this siege, that JAMES WOLFE began his career of military renown. With Louisburg, the whole island of Cape Breton, and that of St. John's, fell under the power of the British. July 26.  
Louisburg  
surren-  
ders.  
  
(6000  
prisoners  
sent  
across the  
Atlantic.)

7. GENERAL ABERCROMBIE, at the head of sixteen thousand men, proceeded against Ticonderoga and Crown Point. He crossed Lake George, and debarking at its northern extremity, he attempted with unskilful guides, to pass the three miles of dense woods, which lay between his army and Ticonderoga. As he approached that fort, a detachment of the French fell upon him, and an engagement ensued, in which the assailants lost three hundred men, and among others the amiable LORD HOWE. July 6.  
Aber-  
crombie  
proceeds  
against  
Ticon-  
deroga.  
  
LAKE  
GEORGE.  
Br. L. K.  
300.

8. Abercrombie, learning that reinforcements were

---

5. What circular did he send to America? What was done in consequence? What was the number of the army? What expeditions were resolved on?—6. How did the attack on Louisburg succeed? What can you say of James Wolfe?—7. Describe the movements of General Abercrombie. What was the fate of Lord Howe?

**P.T. II** daily expected by the French, without waiting for  
**P.D. III.** his artillery, made a brave but imprudent assault  
**CH. VI.** upon the fort, and was repulsed with the heavy loss  
**TICON-** of nearly two thousand killed and wounded. He then  
**DERO-** retired to his former quarters, on the south side of  
**G.A.** Lake George.  
**Br. loss**  
**2000.**

**Aug. 27.** 9. Here he consented, at the solicitation of Colo-  
**Colonel** **BRADSTREET**, to detach him with 3000 men  
**Brad-** against Fort Frontenac. With these troops, who  
**street** were mostly provincials, he marched to Oswego,  
**takes Ft.** embarked on Lake Ontario, and landed on the 25th  
**Fronte-** of August, within a mile of the fort; and in two  
**nac.** days forced the important fortress of Frontenac, to  
 surrender. As this fort, afterwards named *Kings-*  
*ton*, contained the military stores which were in-  
 tended for the Indians, and for the supply of the  
 southwestern troops, its destruction contributed to  
 the success of the expedition against Fort du Quesne.

**General** 10. To **GENERAL FORBES**, with eight thousand  
**Forbes** men, was assigned the capture of Fort du Quesne.  
**makes a** He committed a great error. Against the expostu-  
**new road** lations and entreaties of Washington, he made a new  
**by Rays-** road by Raystown, instead of taking that already  
**town.** made by Cumberland. The consequence of this was,  
 that it was so late before the army arrived near du  
 Quesne, that the men suffered incredible hardships.  
 The fort was, however, reached, and found deserted.  
 General Forbes died, on his return, in consequence  
 of fatigue and exposure. The fort was repaired, and  
 named *Fort Pitt*. The neighboring Indians were  
 now glad to make peace.

**Ft. du**  
**Quesne**  
**named Ft.**  
**Pitt.**

---

8. What was the result of Abercrombie's operations?—9. What detachment was sent out? Trace and describe Bradstreet's route. What did he effect?—10. What army had General Forbes? What was his destination? What error did he commit? What was the consequence? What can you say respecting the fort? What respecting General Forbes? What of the Indians?

## CHAPTER VII.

## The Campaign of 1759.

1. THE successes of the preceding campaign emboldened Mr. Pitt to form for this, the great design of dispossessing the French of their American territory. The campaign of 1759, had for its object, nothing less than the entire reduction of Canada. The army was divided into three parts. The first division, under WOLFE, was to make a direct attempt upon Quebec. The second under AMHERST, was ordered to take Ticonderoga and Crown Point, and then proceed northerly; and the third, under PRIDEAUX, consisting of Provincials and Indians, was to reduce Niagara, then to go down the St. Lawrence, and, with the second detachment, conquer Montreal; then join, and aid Wolfe, at Quebec.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III  
CH. VII.

1759  
Pitt's plan  
embraces  
three  
objects.

July 6.  
Niagara  
taken.

2. Prideaux besieged Niagara on the 6th of July. He was killed by the bursting of a shell, and the command devolved upon Sir William Johnson, who took the fort with six hundred prisoners. All communication between the northern and southern possessions of the French was thus barred, and the quiet behavior of the Indians secured.

3. Pitt had discerned the extraordinary qualities of Wolfe, while he was yet obscure; and to him he now confided the command against Quebec. His subordinate officers were carefully chosen. He was provided with a choice army of 8000 men, and a heavy train of artillery.

Pitt  
sustains  
Wolfe.

Provides  
him a  
choice  
army.

4. His army debarked, late in June, upon the island of Orleans. Here Wolfe reconnoitered the position of his enemy, and saw the difficulties which sur-

June.  
He lands  
on the  
Isle  
of Orleans

CHAPTER VII.—1. What bold design had Mr. Pitt formed? How was the army divided, and what was each division expected to do?—2. What was the fate of General Prideaux? Who effected Prideaux's part of the great plan?—3. What preparations did Pitt make to insure Wolfe's success?—4. Where did Wolfe's army debark?

**P.T. II.** rounded him. Quebec rose before him, upon the north  
**P.D. III.** side of the St. Lawrence. Its upper town and strong  
**CH. VII.** fortifications were situated on a rock, whose bold  
**1759.** and steep front continued far westward, parallel with  
 the river, and presented a wall, which it seemed  
 impossible to scale.

**5.** From the northwest came down the river St.  
 Charles—entering the St. Lawrence just below the  
 town, its banks, high and uneven, and cut by deep  
 ravines. Armed vessels were borne upon its waters,  
 and floating batteries obstructed its entrance. A few  
 miles below, the Montmorenci leaped down its cat-  
 aract into the St. Lawrence. Strongly posted along  
 the sloping bank of that majestic river, and between  
 its two tributaries, the French army, commanded by  
 Montcalm, displayed its formidable lines.

Difficul-  
 ties of his  
 position.

**6.** Wolfe took possession of Point Levi, erected  
**July 9.** and opened heavy batteries, which swept the lower  
 town; but the fortifications of Quebec remained un-  
 injured.

**7.** The English general next landed his army be-  
 low the Montmorenci; but **MONTCALM** would not  
 leave his intrenchments. Wolfe then crossed that  
 stream, and attacked him in his camp. But he was  
 obliged to retire with the loss of four hundred of his  
 men. He then recrossed the Montmorenci.

**MONT-  
 MOREN-  
 CI.**  
 Br. loss k.  
 and w.  
 400.

**8.** Here he was informed that the expected succors  
 were likely to fail. Amherst had found Ticonde-  
 roga and Crown Point vacated, and was preparing  
 to attack the French forces, on the Isle au Noix.  
 Prideaux having lost his life, his plans had been car-  
 ried out by Sir William Johnson. But the enemy  
 were in full force at Montreal; and from neither di-  
 vision of the British army, could the commander at  
 Quebec, now hope for any assistance.

French at  
 Montreal  
 stop his  
 succors.

**9.** Wolfe was severely tried. His mind was un-

---

**4.** What was the appearance of Quebec from this place?—**5.**  
 Where was the French army posted?—**6.** From what place did  
 Wolfe open batteries upon Quebec? With what effect?—**7.** Where  
 did Wolfe attack Montcalm? What was he forced to do?—**8.**  
 What intelligence did he now obtain?

broken, but his bodily health, for a time, failed. When, however, he was again able to mingle with the army, every eye was raised to him with affection and hope; and he formed yet another and a bolder plan.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VII.

1759.

10. Pursuant to this, Wolfe broke up his camp at Montmorenci, and returned to Orleans. Then embarking with his army, he sailed up the river several miles higher than his intended point of debarkation. By this movement he deceived his enemy, and gained the advantage of the current and tide, to float his boats silently down to the foot of the rock, which he intended to scale.

Sept.  
He re-  
turns to  
Orleans.

11. Wolfe was the first man who leaped on shore. The rapidity of the stream was hurrying along their boats, and some had already gone beyond the narrow landing-place. The shore was so shelving, that it was almost impossible to ascend; and it was lined with French sentinels.

He gains  
the plain  
of Abra-  
ham,  
Sept. 13.

12. Escaping these dangers at the water's edge, they proceeded to scale the precipice. The first party who reached the heights, secured a small battery, which crowned them; and thus the remainder of the army ascended in safety; and there, on this lofty plain, which commands one of the most magnificent prospects which nature has formed,—the British army, drawn up in a highly advantageous position, were, in the morning, discovered by the French.

H.TS  
OF  
AB.M.  
Fr. k. and  
w. 1000  
Br. k. and  
w. 600.

13. Montcalm, learning with surprise and deep regret, the advantage gained by his opponent, left his strong position, crossed the St. Charles, and intrepidly led on the attack. Being on the left of the French, he was opposed to Wolfe, who was on the right of the British. In the heat of the engagement, both commanders were mortally wounded.

Order of  
battle.

9. How did it affect him?—10. What were his first movements in reference to his new plan?—11. Who was first on shore? What difficulties were there met?—12. What others occurred in scaling the heights?—13. What were the arrangements of Montcalm? Describe the condition of Wolfe.

**P.T. II.** 14. The wound, with which Wolfe fell, was the  
**P.D. III.** third, which he had received in the battle. He was  
**CH. VII.** removed from the field; but he watched it with  
 intense anxiety, as faint with the loss of blood, he  
 reclined his languid head upon the supporting arm  
 of an officer. A cry was heard, "they fly, they fly!"  
 "Who fly?" he exclaimed. "The enemy," was the  
 reply. "Then," said he, "I die content," and ex-  
 pired. Not less heroic was the death of Montcalm.  
 He rejoiced when told that his wound was mortal;  
 "For," said he, "I shall not live to see the surrender  
 of Quebec!"

Death of  
Wolfe.

Death of  
Mont-  
calm.

**1759.** 15. After the battle, the affairs of the English  
 were conducted with great discretion by **GENERAL**  
**TOWNSHEND**; whereas, the French, appear to have  
 yielded at once to their panic. The capitulation of  
 Quebec was signed September 18th, 1759, five days  
 after the battle.

**1759.**  
Sept. 18.  
*Quebec*  
*surren-*  
*ders.*

**1760.** 16. General Townshend returning to England,  
**GENERAL MURRAY** was left in command with a gar-  
 rison of 5000 men. The French army retired to  
 Montreal; and **M. DE LEVI**, who had succeeded  
 Montcalm, being, in the course of the winter, rein-  
 forced by Canadians and Indians, returned the fol-  
 lowing spring, with a force of 6000 to Quebec.  
 General Murray left the fortress, and the Heights of  
 Abraham became the scene of another battle more  
 bloody, though not equally important in its conse-  
 quences with the first.

**1760.**  
French  
attempt to  
regain  
Quebec.

Second  
battle of  
*H.T.S*  
*OF*  
*AB.M.*  
L. of each  
side 1000.

17. The armies on each side sustained the loss of  
 1000 men. The battle was not decisive, but the  
 advantage was on the side of the French, who main-  
 tained their ground, while the English retired within  
 the fortress. Here they were closely invested until  
 they received reinforcements, when **M. de Levi**, aban-

14. How was it with Wolfe, when he was told of the flight of  
 his enemy? How was it at the same time with Montcalm?—15.  
 Did the French give up Quebec immediately after the battle?  
 16. What was the position of the contending armies during the  
 winter? What was done in the spring?—17. What was the loss  
 in the second battle of the Heights of Abraham? What military  
 operations followed it?

doing all thoughts of obtaining possession of Quebec, returned to Montreal, where VAUDREUIL, the governor, assembled all the force of Canada. P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VIII.

18. In the mean time, General Amherst had made arrangements for assembling before this place all the British forces, from Lake Ontario, Lake Champlain, and Quebec. Here they fortunately arrived within two days of each other, and immediately invested the place. Vaudreuil found the force too strong to be resisted; and on the 8th of September, he surrendered Montreal, Detroit, Mackinaw, and all the French possessions in Canada. Sept. 8  
Canada  
surrenders.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### Wars with the Indians.

1. THE French had stirred up the *Cherokees* to war, COLONEL MONTGOMERY, at the head of an army, went to their country to chastise them. He was at first successful; but the Indians afterwards attacked him in a thicket near Etchoc, and so cut up his army, that he was obliged to return. The next year, an army under COLONEL GRANT, fought and conquered the Cherokees on the same spot. He pursued them to Etchoc, burned their huts and laid waste their country. The Indians, thus put in fear, ceased their midnight fires and murders, and made peace. 1760.  
ETCHOC  
Cherokees  
defeated.  
Grant  
burns  
their  
towns.

2. Interesting events, closely connected with the cession of the French territory, were already in progress among the savages of the northwest. The missionaries, and traders of that nation, had wisely won the hearts of the Indians. Said one of their orators, "when the French arrived, they came and kissed us. They called us their children, and we English  
less popu-  
lar with  
the  
Indians  
than the  
French.

18. How and when did the capture of Montreal take place? What other posts were surrendered?

CHAPTER VIII.—1. Give an account of the war with the Cherokees.

P'T. II. found them fathers." When the more haughty, and  
 P'D. III. less attentive English, were preparing to take pos-  
 CH. VIII. session of the western ports, PONTIAC, the highly  
 gifted chief of the *Ottawas*, who sought, like Philip,  
 to regain the primitive independence of his race,  
 made use of the attachment of the red men to  
 the French, to unite them in a general conspiracy  
 against their conquerors.

1762.

Pontiac  
 contrives  
 a daring  
 scheme.

1763.

July 7.  
 Nine of  
 the Brit-  
 ish posts  
 captured.

Pontiac's  
 stratagem  
 fails at  
 Detroit.

3. Pontiac thought that, as the English had expelled the French, if the Indians could expel them before they were fully established, they would again be lords of the forest. The plan of Pontiac was not inferior in boldness to that formed by Pitt for the final conquest of Canada. It was no less than a simultaneous attack upon all the British posts near the lakes. Pontiac, by his inventive genius, his eloquence, and his energy, had acquired such power over the northwestern tribes, that all was arranged without discovery. *On the 7th of July, 1763, nine of the British forts were actually surprised and captured by the Indians.*

4. Maumee and Mackinaw were among the places which were thus taken, and the garrisons surprised and slaughtered. Detroit was attempted, but the stratagem of Pontiac was there betrayed by a compassionate squaw. For some time, however, he held the place in siege. But his allies grew weary of the war, and peace was concluded.

5. During this period, pious *Moravians* having been expelled from Germany, came over to America, with the design of devoting themselves to the conversion of the native Indians. Their principal seat was in Pennsylvania; and their most important villages were Bethlehem and Nazareth. Their mis-

---

2. What difference did the Indians find between the manners of the French and the English? Who was Pontiac?—3. What were his views? What his plan of operation? How far did he succeed?—4. What two places are mentioned, which were taken by surprise? Where was Pontiac's plan revealed, by the compassion of a woman?—5. What was the object of the Moravians, in coming to this country? Where was their principal seat? Their villages?

sionaries, male and female, went forth to the western part of Connecticut, to central New York, and through Pennsylvania to Ohio. They lived among the savages, calling them their brethren and sisters. Thus they won their confidence, and several hundreds of them, manifested the transforming power of the gospel, by the change of their barbarous dispositions and practices, for such as were pious, kind, and gentle.

P.T. II.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VIII.  
**1746.**  
The Moravians among the most faithful of missionaries.

6. GEORGE III. succeeded to the throne of England soon after the capture of Quebec; and Mr. Pitt, resigning in October, 1761, the EARL OF BUTE was the following year made prime minister. The first object of the new administration was to restore peace. Scarcely was this accomplished, when Lord Bute resigned his place, which was given to MR. GEORGE GRENVILLE.

October,  
**1761.**  
Pitt resigns.

Lord  
Bute.

7. The definitive treaty was signed at Paris, in February, 1763, by which England obtained from France all her possessions in America, east of the Mississippi, excepting the island of New Orleans; the navigation of that river being left open to both nations. From Spain she obtained Florida, in exchange for Havana, which had been captured during the war. *France, at the same time, gave to Spain the territory of Louisiana. In 1800, Spain reconveyed it to France.*

**1763.**  
Peace of  
Paris.

**1800**

5. Where did their missionaries go? How did they treat the natives? How was it with those Indians who received the gospel?—6. Who became king of England? What can you say of Mr. Pitt? Who succeeded him? Who next was prime minister? 7. When was the treaty of peace signed? What did England obtain from France? What from Spain? Which party received Louisiana?

#### EXERCISES ON THE TREE CHRONOGRAPHER.

(For Period III., Part II.)

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point it out on the chronographer. Also the places of the following dates: Georgia was invaded by the Spaniards in 1742. The Ohio Company was formed in 1750. Governor Dinwiddie sent George Washington on an embassy to the French commandant in 1753. Braddock was defeated in 1755. The massacre at Fort William Henry, 1757. In 1758, Louisburg, Fort Frontenac, and Fort Du Quesne, were taken from the French. General Wolfe took Quebec in 1759. Canada surrendered in 1760. Show the epoch at which this period terminates.

## OFFICERS IN THE FRENCH WAR.

ON account of the liability of young persons to become confused in the history of wars, concerning the side to which officers mentioned belong, we shall, in the principal wars, viz., the French, the Revolutionary, and the War of 1812, give separate lists of the most distinguished officers of each belligerent.

## FRENCH WAR FROM 1754 TO 1763.\*

<i>American Officers.</i>	<i>British Officers.</i>	<i>French Officer</i>
GEORGE WASHINGTON, Winslow, Sir William Johnson, <sup>†</sup> Lyman, Shirley, Mercer, Bradstreet, Forbes.	BRADDOCK, Monckton, Dunbar, Monroe, WOLFE, ABERCROMBIE, Lord Howe, AMHERST, Prideaux, TOWNSHEND, Murray.	MARQUIS DU QUESNE, St. Pierre, De Jumonville, DIESKAU, MONTCALM, De Levi, Vaudreuil.

\* The British and Americans were in this war united, and both against the French.

† Sir William Johnson was born in Ireland, but came to America in early life.





Note.—Places marked thus \* represent Moravian Missionary Stations

# PART III.

FROM 1763 TO 1789.



Death of General Wolfe

## PERIOD I.

FROM  
THE PEACE { **1763** } OF PARIS,  
TO  
THE DECLARATION { **1776.** } OF INDEPENDENCE.

### CHAPTER I.

Causes of the Revolutionary War.

1. **WE** come now to trace the causes by which P.T. III  
England lost her colonies, and America gained her P.D. I.  
independence. We should always remember that CH. I.  
there is a **GREAT FIRST CAUSE**,—even God our Cre-  
ator and Ruler. We should observe with thankful-  
ness, by what steps He led our forefathers,—and  
how He made them a way across the deep, and gave  
them a place wherein to plant a great nation. In The Great  
First  
Cause.

**CHAPTER I.—1.** In tracing the causes of things, what should we always remember? What should we observe with thankfulness?

P<sup>T</sup>. III. His providence, the time was approaching, when the  
 P<sup>D</sup>. I. bonds were to be severed which bound this country  
 CH. I. to the parent land.

2. But the First Cause uses, as His agents, the opinions and wills of men, which guide their conduct. The men in Great Britain, who took at this time the lead in the government, had haughty and wrong ideas of the power which England had a right to exercise over her distant colonies. They forgot that the American people were children of the same forefathers with themselves, and heirs of the same political rights. They held the Americans in comparative contempt, as those whose labors and money must, if *they* demanded, be given to them, without, or against, their owner's consent.

Second  
causes.

Pride and  
foolish-  
ness on  
one side.

On the  
other,  
manly de-  
termina-  
tion.

3. Had the rulers in England undertaken to oppress the people there in the same manner, *they* would have rebelled; much more the Americans,—who, as we have seen, had grown up in their new settlements, with a deep sense of the rights of the people. Toil and danger had made them strong and brave. When they saw, that the rulers in Great Britain had determined on making them submit to their unrighteous will, they became alarmed. They resolved, that they would first endeavor, by petitions, to bring them to a better mind; but if after that, they persisted in their oppressions, they would refuse to submit; and if force was employed against them, repel it by force;—trusting, that a righteous God would aid their cause.

4. During the French war, the English wanted the services of the Americans; and, besides, those were then in power, who opposed the high govern-

---

1. What in reference to the Great First Cause, can we say of the separation of our country from England?—2. What does the First Cause use as his agents, or as second causes? What opinions were held by the leading men in Great Britain? What did they forget? What did they hold concerning the Americans? 3. Of what had the Americans a deep sense? What had made them strong and brave? When did they become alarmed? What did they resolve?—4. Why did the British oppress the Americans less, during the French war?

ment party. But the war was no sooner at an end, than this party again took the lead, with LORD GRENVILLE at its head.

P.T. III.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.

5. In 1764, Lord Grenville gave notice to the American agents in London, that it was his intention to draw a revenue from the colonies; and that he should, in the ensuing session of parliament, propose a duty on stamps.

Lord Grenville.  
**1764.**  
Proposes the compact.

6. The colonial agents in London, informed their respective colonies of the intended system of taxation. Massachusetts instructed her agents, to deny the right of parliament to impose taxes upon those who were not represented in the house of commons. The house of burgesses, in Virginia, appointed a committee, who prepared an able address to the king and parliament. The assembly of New York also sent petitions, which, in a spirit more bold and decided than those from any other colony, asserted their own rights, and the limitations of British power.

Mass., Va., and N. Y. take bold ground.

7. Associations were formed in all the colonies to encourage home manufactures, and prohibit, as much as possible, the use of British goods. The tendency of this judicious measure, was to make the colonists less dependent, and, by operating injuriously on the British merchants, to make them a party against the ministry.

Societies injure the British trade.

8. Notwithstanding the opposition, which, in truth, was not unexpected, *Lord Grenville introduced into the British parliament his plan for taxing America, to commence with duties on stamps.* In the house of commons, the project, though ably supported, met with ardent and animated opposition.

**1765.**  
Stamp Act opposed.

9. "Children, planted by your care!" exclaimed COLONEL BARRE, in answer to one who spoke against

4. What happened as soon as it was ended?—5. What notice was given by Lord Grenville?—6. What was done by Massachusetts, on being informed of the intention of Lord Grenville? What by Virginia? What by New York?—7. What were formed? What was the tendency of the measure?—8. How, in the first place, was Lord Grenville's project received?—9. Repeat a part of Col. Barre's speech.

P.T. III. the Americans. "No! Your oppressions planted  
 P.D. I. them in America! They fled from your tyranny to  
 CH. I. an uncultivated land, where they were exposed to  
 Colonel all the hardships to which human nature is liable.  
 Barre's 10. "They nourished by your indulgence! No!  
 defence of They grew by your neglect! When you began to  
 the Amer- care about them, that care was exercised in sending  
 icans. persons to rule over them, whose character and con-  
 duct has caused the blood of these sons of liberty to  
 Recoil their recoil within them. They protected by your arms!  
 services They have nobly taken up arms in your defence!  
 and suffer- The people of America are loyal—but a people  
 ings. jealous of their liberties, and they will vindicate  
 them."

11. Neither the eloquence of Colonel Barre and  
 others, nor the remonstrances of the colonists, could  
 1765. prevent the passage of the stamp act. Of three  
 March 22. hundred, who voted in the house of commons, only  
 Stamp fifty were against it; in the house of lords, there was  
 & ct. not a single dissenting voice; and the royal assent  
 passed. was readily obtained.

12. By this act, no written instrument could be  
 All law legal, unless the paper was stamped on which it was  
 papers drawn; and this stamped paper was to be purchased  
 must be by the Americans, at an exorbitant price, of the  
 stamped. agents of the British government.

13. Provision was made for the recovery of pen-  
 alties for the breach of this act, as of all others re-  
 Courts of lating to trade and revenue, in any admiralty, or  
 admiralty. king's marine court, *throughout the colonies*; and  
 these courts proceeded in trials, without the inter-  
 Trial by vention of a jury. This act, suspending trial by jury,  
 Jury sus- and making the colonists liable to be called to trial,  
 pending. for real or supposed offences, to distant provinces,  
 was highly displeasing to the Americans.

---

10. Relate the succeeding part.—11. Did the Stamp Act pass?  
 At what time? With what majority?—12. What was this  
 stamped paper to be used for? Of whom was it to be bought by  
 the Americans? At what kind of price?—13. If the law was  
 violated, before what courts were offenders to be tried? How  
 did these courts proceed in trials? Why were these laws offen-  
 sive to the people?

14. Anticipating opposition to these measures, parliament passed laws for sending troops to America, and obliging the inhabitants of those colonies to which they should be sent, to furnish them with quarters, and all necessary supplies.

P<sup>T</sup>. III.  
P<sup>D</sup>. I.  
CH. II.  
Act for  
quartering  
troops.

15. Great was the grief and indignation caused in America by the news of the stamp act. The Virginia legislature,—the house of burgesses, was in session. The eloquent PATRICK HENRY introduced the five celebrated resolutions, which constituted the first public opposition to the odious act. The last of these declared in express terms that they were not bound to obey any law imposing taxes, unless made by their representatives.

Patrick  
Henry's  
resolu-  
tions.

## CHAPTER II.

FIRST GENERAL CONGRESS at New York—called the Continental Congress.—Repeal of the Stamp Act.

1. BEFORE the proceedings in Virginia had become known in Massachusetts, the general court of that colony had assembled, and adopted measures to produce a combined opposition to the oppressive measures of parliament. Letters were addressed to assemblies of the other colonies, proposing that a congress, composed of deputies from each, should meet to consult on their common interest. Delegates were accordingly elected from Massachusetts, Rhode Island, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, and South Carolina.

1765.

Delegates  
from nine  
colonies.

2. On the first Tuesday in October, the delegates met at New York. They drew up a "Bill of Rights," in which they asserted that the colonists were en-

Oct. 7.  
First con-  
tinental  
congress

14. What other act offensive to them was passed?—15. What legislature was in session when news of the Stamp Act arrived? What was the first public opposition to the Stamp Act?

CHAPTER II.—1. What was proposed in the legislature of Massachusetts? What letters sent? What colonies elected delegates?

2. When and where did the first continental congress meet?

**P.T. III.** titled to all the rights and privileges of natural-born  
**P.D. I.** subjects of Great Britain; especially that of an ex-  
**CH. II.** clusive right to tax themselves,—and to the privilege of trial by jury; and that the late acts of parliament had a manifest tendency to subvert these rights and liberties. The congress then prepared petitions to the king, and to both houses of parliament.

**1765.**  
 Petition  
 to the  
 king and  
 parliament.

Odious  
 features  
 of the  
 stamp act.

3. As the day approached on which the stamp act was to take effect, the popular feeling against it increased. This law was so framed, that the evil intended as a penalty for disobedience, was no less than the suspension of the whole machinery of the social order, and the creation of a state of anarchy. Neither trade nor navigation could proceed; no contract could be legally made; no process against an offender could be instituted; no apprentice could be indented; no student could receive a diploma, nor even could the estates of the dead be legally settled,—until the stamp duty was paid.

August.  
 Impossible for any  
 officer to  
 distribute  
 stamps.

4. Measures were taken to make the situation of all concerned in its collection, so unpleasant, that no one might be found hardy enough to engage as an officer. At Boston, the populace broke the windows and destroyed the furniture of **ANDREW OLIVER**, the proposed distributor of stamps, who then formally pledged himself to have no concern in the execution of the obnoxious statute. In New Haven, **MR. INGERSOLL** was obliged to declare the same resolution, not to become a distributor. Similar scenes occurred in other places. **GOVERNOR HUTCHINSON**, of Boston, suffered heavy losses by the violence of the mob.

Nov. 1.  
 A method  
 to prevent their  
 use.

5. The first of November, the day on which the act was to take effect, was ushered in by the tolling of bells, as for a funeral procession, and signs of

---

2. What account can you give of the “Bill of Rights?” What petitions did the congress prepare?—3. What evils did the British intend to bring upon the country, if the people refused to buy the stamped paper?—4. What measures were taken to prevent the law from going into operation?—5. How was the day observed on which it was to take effect?

mourning and sorrow appeared in all the colonies. The proceedings of the courts of justice were suspended, in order that no stamps might be used; and those engaged in disputes, were earnestly and effectually exhorted, by the leading men, to terminate them by reference.

P.T. III.  
P.P. I.  
CH. II.

6. The authorities in England were at a loss how to proceed; for they saw that measures must be taken, either to repeal the obnoxious statute, or oblige the Americans to submit to it, by force of arms. In January, 1766, the petitions of congress, were laid before the house of commons. After their examination, a resolution was introduced by GENERAL CONWAY, now prime minister, declaring that parliament "had full power to bind the colonies, and people of America, in all cases whatsoever," which, after an animated debate, was adopted.

1766  
January  
Parliament's  
declaration.

7. The next day, the new ministry bent on a repeal of the stamp act, examined Dr. Franklin before the house of commons. He gave it as his opinion, that the acts of parliament for taxing America, had alienated the affections of the people from the mother country, and that they would never submit to the stamp duty, unless compelled.

1766  
Feb. 16  
Dr.  
Franklin's  
examination.

8. The resolution to repeal that act, was opposed by Lord Grenville and his adherents, who were answered by Mr. Pitt, now LORD CHATHAM. That great statesman maintained, that taxation was no part of the governing or legislative power, which parliament had a right to exert over the colonies and concluded with a motion, "that the Stamp Act be repealed, totally, absolutely, and immediately."

Repeal  
advocated  
by Mr.  
Pitt.

9. The bill for its repeal, at length passed the commons, and was sent to the house of lords, where it met with much opposition. But the cause of

Passes the  
commons

---

5. What was done in respect to courts and disputes?—6. What did the British authorities now perceive? What resolution was adopted?—7. Who was examined before the house of commons? What opinion did he give?—8. Who opposed the repeal of the Stamp Act? Who advocated it? What motion did he make? 9. Was the repeal opposed in the house of lords?

**P.T. III.** the colonies was ably advocated by **LORD CAM-**  
**P.D. I.** **DEN.** "Taxation and representation," he said, "are  
**CH. III.** inseparable—it is an eternal law of nature; for what-  
**1766.** ever is a man's own, is absolutely his own; no man  
**Lord** has a right to take it from him without his consent.  
**Camden.** Whoever attempts to do it, attempts an injury;  
**March 18.** whoever does it, commits a robbery." The bill for  
**Passes the** repeal at length passed the house of lords,—but  
**house of** with it, was another, in which the declaration was  
**for ls.** repeated, that "parliament had a right to bind the  
 colonies *in all cases whatsoever*."

### CHAPTER III.

Second Attempt to Tax America.—Opposition.

**1766.** 1. **ALTHOUGH** the repeal of the Stamp Act gave  
**Colonies** joy to the colonists, yet, while a principle was at the  
**jealous** same time asserted, upon which any future ministry,  
**and** with the sanction of parliamentary authority, might  
**watchful.** oppress them, they continued a jealous watch over  
 the British government.

2. General Conway recommended to the colonies  
**March 31.** to make compensation to those who had suffered in  
**Mass.** attempting to enforce the Stamp Act. This referred  
**pays for** particularly to the Boston affair. The assembly of  
**the riot,** Massachusetts at first refused to make any compen-  
**but par-** sation to the sufferers; but they finally consented,  
**don's the** though in a manner highly displeasing to the British  
**rioters.** government; for the same act which made the ap-  
 propriation for the damage, gave a pardon to those  
 by whom it was done.

**July.**  
**Pitt in**  
**power**

3. In July, another change took place in the Brit-

9. Who advocated it? On what principle? What was finally  
 done in the house of lords?

**CHAPTER III.—1.** How did the news from England affect the  
 colonies?—**2.** What did General Conway recommend? What  
 was done in Massachusetts?—**3.** What change occurred in the  
 British ministry?

ish ministry; and a cabinet was formed under the direction of Mr. Pitt, now **EARL OF CHATHAM**. The proceedings of the Americans had given great offence to the British; and they were condemned by many, who had heretofore espoused their cause.

**P.T. III.**  
**P.D. I.**  
**OR. III.**

4. In May, 1767, Charles Townshend, then chancellor of the exchequer, influenced by Lord Grenville, brought into parliament a second plan for taxing America, by imposing duties on all tea, glass, paper, and painters' colors, which should be imported into the colonies. This bill passed both houses of parliament without much opposition. Another was passed, appointing the officers of the navy, as custom-house officers, to enforce the acts of trade and navigation.

**1767.**  
Parliament im-  
pose new  
taxes.

5. These acts revived the feelings which the Stamp Act had produced. In Massachusetts, the assembly sent a petition to the king. They also addressed circulars to the other colonial assemblies, entreating their co-operation, in obtaining the redress of their common grievances.

**1768.**

6. The British ministry viewed this measure as an attempt to convene another congress; and they had always dreaded the effects of voluntary colonial union, independent of the crown. Governor Bernard required the assembly to rescind the vote by which the circulars were sent to the other colonies. The assembly refused to rescind, and the governor dissolved it. But, instead of intimidating, this measure did but exasperate the people.

The royal  
governor  
dissolves  
the  
assembly

7. In June, the custom-house officers seized a sloop belonging to **JOHN HANCOCK**, a merchant of eminence, and a patriot much beloved by the people of Boston. They assembled in crowds, insulted and

June 10  
Seizure of  
Hancock's  
sloop.

---

4. What new plan was proposed for taxing America? What was done in parliament in reference to it? What other act passed?—5. What measures were taken in Massachusetts?—6. What was the view of the British concerning the Union? What did Governor Bernard require? What ground was taken by the assembly? What was the consequence?—7. Where, and on what occasion, were the custom-house officers insulted and beaten?

P.T. III. beat the officers, and compelled them to leave the town.

P.D. I.  
CH. III.

1768.

The  
governor  
refuses  
to call an  
assembly.

Sept. 22.  
A conven-  
tion.

Sept. 28.  
Two regi-  
ments  
come from  
Halifax to  
Boston.

1769.

Threaten-  
ing atti-  
tude of  
Great  
Britain.

8. The assembly of Massachusetts had not convened since its dissolution by Governor Bernard. A report was circulated that troops were ordered to march into Boston. A town-meeting was called, and the governor was earnestly entreated to convoke the assembly. His reply was, "that he could not call another assembly this year, without further commands from the king." *A convention of the people was then proposed, and accordingly held, on the 22d of September.* The members again petitioned the governor, that an assembly might be convened; but he refused—calling them rebels.—They transmitted to the king a respectful account of their proceedings, and dissolved, after a session of five days.

9. Orders were sent to GENERAL GAGE, the commander-in-chief of the British troops in the colonies, *to station a force in Boston, to overawe the citizens, and protect the custom-house officers* in the discharge of their duty. Two regiments were accordingly ordered from Halifax, and escorted by seven armed vessels; they arrived at Boston on the 28th of September, and took a station which commanded the town. The troops then marched into Boston. The select-men refusing to provide them with quarters, the governor commanded the state-house to be opened for their reception. Though outward violence was restrained by this measure, yet hostile dispositions were increased.

10. The proceedings in Massachusetts were declared by the British parliament to be "illegal, unconstitutional, and derogatory to the rights of the crown and to parliament." Both houses, in a joint address to the king, recommended vigorous measures, and besought him to direct the governor of

---

8. What did a town-meeting in Boston request of the governor? What was his reply? What was then proposed and done?—9. What orders were given to General Gage? What forces were brought to Boston, and where placed?—10. What news was received from England?

Massachusetts Bay, to make strict inquiries as to all treasons committed in that province since the year 1767, in order that the persons most active in committing them, *might be sent to England for trial.*

P<sup>T</sup>. III.  
P<sup>D</sup>. I.  
CH. III.

11. The house of burgesses in Virginia met a few days after this address was received in the colonies. They passed resolutions, in which they boldly denied the right of the king to remove an offender out of the colony for trial. When the intelligence of these proceedings reached the governor, he suddenly dissolved the assembly. The members assembled at a private house; elected their speaker, PEYTON RANDOLPH, moderator, and proceeded to pass some decided resolutions, against importing British goods. These were introduced by COLONEL WASHINGTON, who had been a member of the house since his resignation. The example was extensively followed.

Met with spirit in Virginia

The burgesses make themselves independent by non-importation.

12. The assembly of Massachusetts was convened. They refused to proceed with business while the state-house was surrounded by an armed force. The governor would not remove it, but adjourned them to Cambridge. Considering the establishment of a standing army in time of peace, as an invasion of their natural rights, they refused to make any of the appropriations of money which the governor proposed; and he again prorogued them. In August, Governor Bernard was recalled, and the government left in the hands of Lieutenant-governor HUTCHINSON.

1770.  
May.  
Assembly of Mass. adjourned to Cambridge.

13. Some of the inhabitants of Boston insulted the military, while under arms; and an affray took place, in which four persons were killed. The bells were instantly rung; the people rushed from the country to the aid of the citizens; and the soldiers were obliged to retire to Castle William, in order to avoid the fury of the enraged multitude. The

March 5.  
Affray with the British troops.

11. What was done by the legislature of Virginia? Had Washington been in any public capacity since his resignation? What was now done by him?—12. Were the British able, by their armed force, to frighten the assembly of Massachusetts, to make laws to please them? Why did they refuse to make appropriations of money? What change occurred respecting governors? 13. Give some account of the affray with the military.

**P.T. III.** soldiers were tried, and their just cause was nobly  
**P.D. I.** plead by the leading patriots—**JOHN ADAMS** and  
**CH. IV.** **JOSIAH QUINCY**. However wrong were their mas-  
 ters, the soldiers were not in this case to blame;  
 and they were acquitted.

**1771.** 14. In England **LORD NORTH** was appointed to  
**January.** the ministry. He introduced a bill into parliament,  
 which passed on the 12th of April, removing the  
**Lord** duties which had been laid in 1767, excepting those  
**North** on tea. But they still claimed the *right* of taxing  
**tempo-** the colonies. In Rhode Island the people rose and  
**rizes.** destroyed the *Gaspee*, an armed British schooner,  
**1772.** which had been stationed in that colony for the pur-  
**June.** pose of enforcing the acts of trade.  
**The**  
**Gaspee**  
**destroyed.**

## CHAPTER IV.

Seizure of Tea.—Boston Port Bill.—Arrival of British Troops.

**1773.** 1. **THE** non-importation agreements which had  
**May.** been made and rigidly observed, in respect to the  
**Law made** article of tea, now began to affect the commercial  
**in Eng-** interest of Great Britain. Parliament passed an act,  
**land** allowing the East India Company to export to  
**respecting** America its teas, free of all duties in England; thus  
**tea.** enabling them to reduce its price in the colonies.  
 Tea was accordingly shipped from England in large  
 quantities. Resolutions were extensively adopted  
 that the tea should not be received on shore, but  
 sent back to England.

**Boston** 2. In Boston, several men disguised as Indians,  
**"tea** went on board the ships during the night, and threw  
**party."** their cargoes into the water. Three hundred and

**14.** What now occurred in England? Did the Americans re-  
 fuse to obey the British, to save the money to be paid in these  
 taxes, or to maintain their rights? What vessel was destroyed?

**CHAPTER IV.—1.** What agreements had been made in regard to  
 tea? Were they observed? What did they affect? What act  
 did parliament pass? What was accordingly sent from England?  
 What resolutions adopted?—**2.** What daring exploit was per-  
 formed at Boston?

forty-two chests of tea were thus broken open, and their contents thrown overboard.

P'T. III.  
P'D L.  
CH. IV.

3. The parliament of England, in order to punish the inhabitants of Boston, and oblige them to restore the value of the tea, passed a bill in March, 1774, "*interdicting all commercial intercourse with the port of Boston*, and prohibiting the landing and shipping of any goods to that place," until these ends should be accomplished.

1774.  
The  
Boston  
PORT BILL.

4. GENERAL GAGE was made governor of Massachusetts, in the place of Hutchinson, who had been removed from his office in consequence of unpopularity occasioned by the exposure of letters, which had been written by him, during the years 1767 and 1768, to the leading men of Great Britain, and which had tended greatly to increase the prejudice of parliament against the colonies.

Exposure  
of Hutch-  
inson's  
letters.

5. On the arrival of the *port bill* in Boston, a meeting of the inhabitants was held, who declared that the "impolicy, injustice, and inhumanity of the act exceeded their powers of expression!" The assembly convened at this place, but was removed by the governor to Salem. *It was here resolved that a congress, composed of delegates from all the colonies, ought to be elected*, to take their affairs into the most serious consideration. They nominated five eminent men, as their representatives to such a congress, and directed the speaker of the house to inform the other colonies of their resolution.

May 10.  
Boston  
port bill  
causes  
excite-  
ment.

A general  
congress.

6. The governor sent an officer to dissolve the assembly, in the king's name, but as the members would not permit him to enter the hall, he read the order aloud on the staircase; but it was not obeyed until the members had finished their most important business.

Assembly  
disobeys  
the royal  
authority

7. Governor Gage had believed that the advanta-

---

3. What was done by the British to retaliate?—4. What change was made in Massachusetts?—5. What was done on the arrival of the port bill? What important resolution was passed at Salem; and what consequent measures taken?—6. In what manner did the assembly treat the royal authority?

PT III ges arising to the trade of Salem, from shutting up  
 PD I the port of Boston, would render its inhabitants  
 OH V. more favorable to the royal government; but the  
 people of that town declared, "that nature, in form-  
 ing their harbor, had prevented their becoming ri-  
 vals in trade; and that even if it were otherwise,  
 they should regard themselves lost to every idea of  
 justice, and all feelings of humanity, could they  
 indulge one thought of raising their fortunes upon  
 the ruins of their countrymen."

8. The cause of the people of Boston was espoused  
 by all the colonies, and their wants were supplied by  
 contributions. The people of Marblehead gener-  
 ously offered them the use of their harbor, their  
 wharves and warehouses.

9. When, in May, 1774, the house of burgesses  
 in Virginia, received the news of the Boston port  
 bill, they proclaimed a fast. LORD DUNMORE, the  
 governor, at once prorogued them. They, how-  
 ever, formed an association, and voted to recom-  
 mend to the colonies a general congress. The first  
 of June, the day on which the port bill was to take  
 effect, was devoutly observed, in Virginia, as a day  
 of fasting, humiliation, and prayer, to implore that  
 God would avert the evils which threatened them,  
 and "give them one heart and one mind, firmly to  
 oppose, by all just and proper means, every injury to  
 the American rights."

## CHAPTER V.

CONGRESS at Philadelphia.

1774.

Sept. 4.

First con-  
 tinental  
 congress.

1. ON the 4th of September, 1774, the proposed  
 congress convened at Philadelphia. In this body,

7. What generous part did the inhabitants of Salem take?—8.  
 What those of Marblehead?—9. What was done by the Virgin-  
 ians respecting the troubles in Boston? What petition did they  
 offer to the Almighty?

CHAPTER V.—1. When and where did the continental congress  
 convene?

*the most august and important which had ever assembled upon the American shores*, all the colonies, except Georgia, were represented; and all parties, struck with its array of splendid talents and stern patriotism, looked forward to results with deep interest and great expectation.

P.T. III.

P.D. I.  
CH. V.

12 colonies represented.

2. Their first measure was to choose, by a unanimous vote, PEYTON RANDOLPH, Esq., of Virginia, as president. They decided that each colony should have one vote. They chose a committee of two from each province, to draw up a "Bill of Rights." They approved of the conduct of Massachusetts, and exhorted all to perseverance in the cause of freedom. They addressed a letter to General Gage, entreating him to desist from military operations; lest a difference, altogether irreconcilable, should arise between the colonies and the parent state.

Randolph president.

Approve the conduct of Mass.

3. *By a non-importation compact they agreed*, and associated for themselves and their constituents, "under the sacred ties of virtue, honor, and love of liberty," *not to import, or use any British goods after the first of December, 1774*. They resolved to encourage agriculture, arts, and manufactures in America. Committees were to be appointed in every place, to see that this agreement was observed.

1774.  
Sanction non-importation acts.

4. *Finally they determined to continue the congressional union, until the repeal by parliament, of oppressive duties*—of the laws restricting their rights of trial by jury, and of the acts against the people of Massachusetts.

Resolve to continue the colonial union.

5. In the several addresses which were drawn up by their committees and accepted, congress fully met the high expectations which were entertained of that body of men, of whom Lord Chatham declared, "that though he had studied and admired the free states of antiquity, the master spirits of the world,

High character of this congress.

---

1. How many colonies were represented?—2. What was their first measure? What did they decide? Whom choose? What approve? What exhort? What entreat?—3. What was agreed in the non-importation compact?—4. They determined to continue the union till the repeal of what acts?

P<sup>T</sup>. III. yet, for solidity of reasoning, force of sagacity, and  
 P<sup>D</sup>. I. wisdom of conclusion, NO BODY OF MEN COULD STAND  
 CH. V. IN PREFERENCE TO THIS CONGRESS."

**1774.** 6. The petition to the king entreated him, in language the most respectful and affectionate, to restore their violated rights. Their grievances, they said, were the more intolerable, as they were born heirs of freedom, and had enjoyed it under the auspices of his royal ancestors. "The apprehension," say they, "of being degraded into a state of servitude, from the pre-eminent rank of English freemen, while our minds retain the strongest love of liberty, and clearly foresee the miseries preparing for us and our posterity, excites emotions in our breasts which we cannot describe."

(This petition draughted by Mr. Dickenson.) 7. They express a hope, that the royal indignation will fall upon those designing and dangerous men, who, by their misrepresentations of his American subjects, had, at length, compelled them, by the force of accumulated injuries, too severe to be longer borne, thus to disturb his majesty's repose; a conduct extorted from those "who would much more willingly bleed in his service."

**1774.** 8. Not less moving was the appeal to their fellow-subjects of England. "Can any reason," they ask, "be given, why English subjects, who live three thousand miles from the royal palace, should enjoy less liberty than those who are three hundred miles from it?"

A reasonable appeal. 9. In the memorial to their constituents, they presented an account of the oppressive measures of parliament, since 1763. They applaud the spirit which they had shown in defence of their rights, and encourage them to persevere, and be prepared for all contingencies;—hinting that those might occur, which would put their constancy severely to the test.

---

5. What was Lord Chatlam's opinion of this congress?—6. Give some account of their petition to the king.—7. With what language did this petition close?—8. What question did they put to their fellow-subjects in England?—9. What was their memorial to their constituents?

10. The congress rose on the 6th of October. Although *their powers were merely advisory, yet their decisions* received the approbation of the colonial assemblies, and *carried with them the force of laws.*

P-T. III.  
P.D. I.  
CH. VI.  
Congress  
rose,  
Oct. 6.  
Their pro-  
ceedings  
approved.

## CHAPTER VI.

War approaches.—Massachusetts.—British Parliament.

1. THERE were, however, a few persons who favored the cause of Great Britain. They were called *tories*, and were regarded as traitors by the great body of the people; who, in opposition to *tories*, were called *whigs*. These party names were derived from England.

Whigs  
and *tories*

2. The magazines of gunpowder and other military stores at Charlestown and Cambridge, were seized by order of Gen. Gage. . . . An assembly was called in Massachusetts; but its sittings were countermanded by the governor. The representatives then met at Salem, resolved themselves into "a provincial congress," adjourned to Concord, and chose John Hancock their president.

Military  
stores  
seized.

1774.  
October.  
The  
assembly  
of Mass.

3. They then resolved, that, for the defence of the province, a number of the inhabitants should be enlisted, to stand ready to march at a minute's warning. In November, they sent persons to New Hampshire, Rhode Island, and Connecticut, to request their co-operation, in order to raise an army of 20,000 men, to act in any emergency.

Minute  
men.

4. The British parliament convened. The king, in his speech, informed the members, that a most daring resistance to the laws still prevailed in Massachusetts, which was encouraged by unlawful combinations in the other colonies; and finally, he ex-

Nov. 20.  
The king  
and par-  
liament  
inflexible

10. When did Congress rise? What were their powers? What weight had their decisions?

CHAPTER VI.—1. What description of persons favored the cause of Great Britain?—2. What was done by the assembly of Massachusetts?—3. What did they resolve? To what States send?

P.T. III. pressed his firm determination to withstand any  
 P.D. I. attempt to weaken or impair the royal authority;  
 CH. VI. and in these sentiments the two houses expressed, in  
 their answer, a decided concurrence.

1774. 5. When the British ministry brought the American papers before parliament, Lord Chatham rose. "The way," he said, "must be immediately opened for reconciliation. It will soon be too late. They say you have no right to tax them, without their consent. They say truly. Representation and taxation must go together—they are inseparable. This wise people speak out. They do not hold the language of slaves. They do not ask you to repeal your laws, as a favor; they claim it as a right. They tell you, they will not submit to them; and I tell you, the acts must be repealed, and you must go through the work; you must declare you have no right to tax—then they may trust you."

Lord  
 Chatham  
 in favor of  
 America.

Measures  
 proposed  
 by  
 Chatham  
 rejected.

Colonies  
 refused a  
 hearing.

6. But his plan for conciliatory measures, was negatived by a large majority. Petitions from the merchants of London, and other commercial places, in favor of America, were referred, not to the regular committee, but to one, called by the friends of the colonies, "the committee of oblivion." Dr. Franklin, and the other colonial agents were refused a hearing before parliament, on the plea that they were appointed by an illegal assembly; *and thus was put to silence, the voice of three millions of people, yet in the attitude of humble suppliants.*

Blindness  
 of the  
 rulers.

7. Both houses of parliament concurred, by a large majority, in an address to the king, in which they declare, "that the Americans had long wished to become independent, and only waited for ability and opportunity, to accomplish their design. To prevent this," they said, "and to crush the monster

---

4. What was the tone of the king's speech? What of parliament's reply?—5. Give some account of Lord Chatham's speech. 6. Did his speech produce any effect? What petitions were offered? How treated? Who was refused a hearing? What may be said of all this?—7. What address was made by parliament?

in its birth, was the duty of every Englishman; and that this must be done, at any price, and at every hazard."

PT III.  
P'D. I  
CH. VII.

8. On the 10th of February, a bill was passed, by which the colonies of Massachusetts, Connecticut, New Hampshire, and Rhode Island, were restricted in their trade to Great Britain and its West India possessions, and were also prohibited from fishing on the banks of Newfoundland. The same restrictions were soon after extended to all the colonies, excepting New York and North Carolina. It was expected that these prohibitions would prove particularly distressing to the inhabitants of New England, as an idea prevailed, that they depended on the fisheries for their subsistence, and must, if deprived of them, be starved into obedience.

1775.  
Feb. 10.  
Parliament  
attempt to  
divide the  
colonies.

## CHAPTER VII.

### Battle of Lexington.

1. A SECOND "*provincial congress*,"\* having assembled in Massachusetts, ordered military stores to be collected, and encouraged the militia and minutemen to improve themselves in the use of arms.

(\* i. e.,  
colonial  
legis-  
lature.)

2. General Gage, having learned that a number of field-pieces were collected at Salem, dispatched a party of soldiers to take possession of them in the name of the king. The people of Salem assembled in great numbers, and, by pulling up a drawbridge, prevented their entering the town, and thus defeated their object.

1775.  
Feb. 26.  
Attempt  
to destroy  
stores at  
Salem.

3. A large quantity of ammunition and stores was also deposited at *Concord*, about twenty miles from Boston. These General Gage resolved to seize or

April 18.  
800 men  
sent to  
Concord

8. What acts did they pass? What was expected from these acts?

CHAPTER VII.—1. What did the legislature of Massachusetts order to be collected?—2. Where and for what did Gen. Gage send out a party of soldiers? Did they succeed?

**P.T. III.** destroy; and, with that view, he sent a detachment  
**P.D. I.** of 800 men, under the command of COLONEL SMITH  
**CH. VII.** and MAJOR PITCAIRN.

**1775.** 4. When the British troops arrived at *Lexington*, within five miles of Concord, the militia of the place were drawn up. The advanced body of the regulars approached within musket-shot, when Major Pitcairn, riding forward, exclaimed, "Disperse, you rebels!—throw down your arms and disperse." Not being obeyed, he discharged his pistol, and ordered his men to fire. They fired, and killed eight men. The militia dispersed, but the firing continued. The detachment then proceeded to Concord, and destroyed or took possession of a part of the stores.

April 18.  
**LEX-**  
**INGTON**  
 Am. L. 8.

**The**  
 retreat.  
 Br. L. 273.  
 Am. L. 88.

5. They then began their retreat. The colonists pressed upon them on all sides. They went to Lexington, where they met Lord Percy, with a reinforcement of 900 men. They, however, continued their retreat; but from every place of concealment—a stone fence, a cluster of bushes, or a barn—the concealed provincials poured upon them a destructive fire. At sunset, the regulars, almost overcome with fatigue, passed Charlestown Neck, and found, on Bunker's Hill, a resting place for the night; and the next morning, under the protection of a man-of-war, they entered Boston.

**Great ex-**  
**citement.**

**Special**  
**couriers**  
**spread the**  
**news.**

6. Blood had now flowed, and no language can portray the feelings which the event excited. Couriers were dispatched in every direction, who gave, as they rode at full speed, their news, to be taken up and carried in like manner to other places; and thus, in an increasing circle, it spread like electric fluid throughout the land. The messenger, if he arrived on Sunday, at once entered the church, and proclaimed to the breathless assembly—war has be-

---

**3.** To what other place did he send a detachment? For what purpose?—**4.** How did the battle of Lexington commence? Did the British take the stores?—**5.** Describe their retreat. What numbers were killed of each side? (See the margin.)—**6.** Describe the state of the public mind, and the manner of spreading the news.

gun! Everywhere the cry was repeated, "War has begun!" and the universal response was, "To arms, then—liberty or death!"

P.T. III.  
P.D. I.  
CH. VII.

7. The legislatures of the several colonies convened, appointed officers, and gave orders to raise troops. Everywhere fathers were leaving their children, and mothers sending their sons to the field; and an army of 20,000 men was soon collected in the neighborhood of Boston. . . General Gage was now so closely besieged in Boston, that although the British had the command of the sea, his provisions became scarce.

1775.

May.  
British  
besieged  
in Boston.

8. To gain possession of Ticonderoga and Crown Point, individuals in Connecticut borrowed of the legislature of that colony eighteen hundred dollars. They then proceeded to Bennington, to secure the co-operation of "the Green Mountain Boys."

Plans for  
taking Ti-  
conderoga  
and  
Crown  
Point.

9. This was an appellation given to the hardy free-men who had settled in that vicinity by the authority of New Hampshire, and who had manifested their resolution in defence of their lands from the sheriffs of New York; that State claiming over them a jurisdiction, which they would not allow. At the head of this determined band, were COLONELS ETHAN ALLEN, and SETH WARNER. They gladly engaged in the enterprise. Troops were soon raised, and the command was entrusted to Allen.

Green  
Mountain  
Boys.

Ethan  
Allen and  
Seth  
Warner.

10. In the mean time, BENEDICT ARNOLD, with the intrepid boldness of his character, had, in Boston, formed and matured the same design, and was on the march to execute it, when he was surprised to find that he had been anticipated. Becoming second in command to Allen, they marched together from Castleton at the head of three hundred men, and

Benedict  
Arnold.

May 10.  
TICON-  
DERO-  
GA.  
Br. L.  
8 officers,  
44 priv'ts,  
prisoners.

7. What was done in the several States? What was the situation of Gen. Gage?—8. What enterprise was set on foot in Connecticut? What steps taken?—9. Who were the Green Mountain Boys? Where had they settled? Under what State? What other State claimed jurisdiction over them? Would they allow it? Whom did they defend their lands against? Who was the commander of the force sent against Ticonderoga?—10. What other person had formed the same design?

**P.T. III.** reached Ticonderoga on the 10th of May. They  
**P.D. I.** surprised and captured that fortress, and took peace-  
**CH. VII.** able possession of Crown Point.

**1775.** 11. Arnold having manned and armed a small  
 schooner found in South Bay, captured a sloop-of-war lying at St. Johns. The pass of Skeensborough, now Whitehall, was seized at the same time, by a detachment of volunteers from Connecticut. One hundred pieces of cannon, and other munitions of war, were obtained in this fortunate expedition.

**May 10.** 12. *The continental congress again assembled at*  
**Congress** *Philadelphia on the 10th of May*, and JOHN HAN-  
**issue** cock was chosen President. Bills of credit to the  
**paper** amount of three millions of dollars were issued for  
**money.** defraying the expenses of the war; and the faith of the "Twelve United Colonies" pledged for their redemption.

**Lord** 13. LORD DUNMORE, the governor of Virginia,  
**Dunmore** showed his distrust of the people by seizing and con-  
**and other** veying to an armed vessel in James' River, some  
**governors** powder belonging to the colony. Patrick Henry  
**retire.** attempting to retake it, Lord Dunmore paid him its value in money. He then proclaimed Henry and his party rebels. Letters of Lord Dunmore to England, were intercepted. The people became so incensed, that Dunmore, fearing for his safety, fled to a man-of-war named the Fowey, lying at Yorktown. The governors of North and South Carolina, also abandoned their provinces. In N. Carolina, the people of Mecklenburgh county, having on the 20th of May, assembled at Charlotte, passed resolutions, embodying THE BOLD DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE—the FIRST made in America.

---

10. Did they capture the forts? At what time?—11. What other feat was performed by Arnold?—12. When and where did congress next assemble? What bills of credit issue?—13. What was the affair in Virginia respecting the powder? How did Lord Dunmore dispose of himself? How was it with other royal governors?

## CHAPTER VIII.

Battle of Bunker Hill.—Washington.

1. IN May the British army in Boston received a powerful reinforcement from England, under Generals HOWE, CLINTON, and BURGOYNE. General Gage now proclaimed martial law throughout Massachusetts. He however offered pardon to all rebels who would return to their allegiance, except SAMUEL ADAMS and JOHN HANCOCK. He agreed to permit the people of Boston to depart; but after a portion had gone, he changed his policy and kept the remainder.

P.T. III  
P.D. I.  
CH. VIII.  
1775.  
May 25.  
Howe,  
Clinton,  
and  
Burgoyne  
June 12.  
Gage's  
proclama-  
tion.

2. Learning that the British threatened to penetrate into the country, congress recommended to the council of war to take such measures as would put them on the defensive, and for this purpose, a detachment of one thousand men, under COLONEL PRESCOTT, was ordered, on the night of the 16th of June, to throw up a breastwork on Bunker's Hill, near Charlestown. By some mistake, the troops entrenched themselves on Breed's Hill, nearer to Boston. They labored with such silence and activity, that by return of light they had nearly completed a strong redoubt, without being observed.

Night of  
June 16.  
Ameri-  
cans  
fortify  
Breed's  
Hill.

3. At dawn, however, the British, discovering the advance of the Americans, commenced a severe cannonade from the ships in the river; but this not interrupting them, General Gage sent a body of three thousand men, under Generals HOWE and PIGOT. They left Boston in boats, and landed under the protection of the shipping in Charlestown, at the ex-

June 17.  
British  
cross from  
Boston.

CHAPTER VIII.—1. What arrival was there in Boston? What did Gen. Gage now proclaim? What agree to do? How violate his promise?—2. What did congress recommend? What was accordingly ordered? What was done in regard to entrenchments?—3. What measures were taken by the British to dislodge the Americans?

P.T. III. treme point of the peninsula, then advanced against  
P.D. I. the Americans.

CH VIII.

1775.

Br. burn  
Charlestown.

BUNKER  
HILL.

Br. loss  
1054.  
Am. loss  
453.

4. They set fire to Charlestown, and amidst the glare of its flames glittering upon their burnished arms, advanced to the attack. The Americans await their approach in silence, until they are within ten rods of the redoubt—then, taking a steady aim, and having advantage of the ground, they pour upon the British a deadly fire. They are thrown into confusion, and many of their officers fall. They are thus twice repulsed. Clinton now arrives;—his men again rally,—advance toward the fortifications, and attack the redoubt on three sides at once.

5. The ammunition of the colonists failed. Courage was no longer of any avail, and Colonel Prescott, who commanded, ordered a retreat. The Americans were obliged to pass Charlestown Neck, where they were exposed to a galling fire from the ships in the harbor. Here fell GENERAL JOSEPH WARREN, whose death was a severe blow to his mourning country.

June 15.  
Washington  
elected  
commander-in-  
chief.

Washington's  
modesty.

His disinterested-  
ness.

6. On the fifteenth of June, congress elected, by a unanimous vote, GEORGE WASHINGTON, who was present, and who had, from their first meeting at Philadelphia, been a delegate from Virginia,—to the high office of *general and commander-in-chief of the army of the United Colonies*. When his appointment was signified to him by the president of congress, he was deeply penetrated with a mingled sense of the high honor which he had received, and the responsibility of the station to which he was raised.

7. He declined all compensation for his services; for as money could not buy him from his endeared home, and as he served his country for justice and the love he bore to her cause, he would not allow his

---

4. Give some further description of the battle of Bunker's Hill.  
5. Give some account of the retreat of the Americans. What general was killed? Learn from the side note the number of killed and wounded on each side.—6. What important office was now created? How was it filled?—7. How was it respecting compensation for his services?

motives to be misconstrued. He stated that he should keep an exact account of his expenses; and those, congress, he doubted not, would discharge.

P.T. III.

P.T. I.  
OIL. IX.

8. Soon after his election, Washington set out for the camp at Cambridge. He found the British army strongly posted on Bunker's and Breed's hill, and Boston Neck. The American, consisting of 14,000 men, were entrenched on the heights around Boston, forming a line which extended from Roxbury on the right, to the river Mystic on the left, a distance of twelve miles.

1775.  
He joins  
the army  
at Cambridge

9. Washington perceived, that although the people were ardent in the cause of liberty, and ready to engage in the most desperate enterprises, yet there was a total want of discipline and military subordination among the troops. The army was scantily supplied with arms and ammunition, and their operations retarded, by a want of skilful engineers. He set himself, with astonishing energy and judgment, to the labor of bringing order out of confusion.

His great  
exertions

10. During this session of congress, *the first line of posts* for the communication of intelligence through the United States, was established. BENJAMIN FRANKLIN was appointed, by a unanimous vote, postmaster-general, with power to appoint as many deputies as he might deem proper and necessary, for the conveyance of the mail *from Falmouth, in Maine, to Savannah, in Georgia.*

Dr.  
Franklin  
the first  
post-  
master-  
general.

## CHAPTER IX.

Invasion of Canada.—Death of Montgomery.

1. WHILE the British army was closely blockaded in Boston, congress conceived the design of sending

8. Where did Washington join the army? What was its number?—9. What was the condition of the army?—10. What was the beginning of our present post-office system? Who was the first postmaster-general? Between what places was the mail to be conveyed?

P.T. III. a force into Canada; as the movements of SIR GUY  
 P.D. I. CARLETON, the governor of that province, seemed to  
 CH. IX. threaten an invasion of the northern frontier. Two  
 1775. expeditions were accordingly organized and dis-  
 Americans patched, one by the way of Champlain, under Gen-  
 send two erals Schuyler and Montgomery, the other by the  
 parties way of the river Kennebec, under the command of  
 against Arnold.  
 Canada.

2. Gen. Schuyler, though he rendered faithful service, did not on account of his health go to Canada. Montgomery showed himself an able officer. On the 3d of November he took *St. Johns*, and proceeding to Montreal, Sir Guy Carleton abandoned the place. About this time Col. Ethan Allen, who was an officer in the army, was, in a rash adventure, made prisoner. He was loaded with irons and sent to England.

Nov. 3.  
 St. Johns  
 taken.

3. Arnold, with 1000 men, had, with incredible perseverance, penetrated the wilderness of Maine. He arrived at Point Levi on the 9th of November. On the 13th he crossed and occupied the heights of Abraham, but his army was reduced to 700 men, and Carleton was now in Quebec with 1500. He retired to Point aux Trembles, to await the other division of the army.

Nov. 9.  
 Arnold  
 before  
 Quebec.

4. Montgomery's arrival was on the first of December. He found himself in a situation far more critical and embarrassing than that of Wolfe, sixteen years before. His army was wasted, so that the united force was less than a thousand; and these were enfeebled by fatigue, amidst the rigors of a Canadian winter, which had already set in with uncommon severity.

Bad posi-  
 tion of  
 Mont-  
 gomery.

5. He attempted to batter the walls of Quebec. He made piles of ice on which to mount his cannon; but the strong walls remained uninjured. With the

---

CHAPTER IX.—1. Who was governor of Canada? What two expeditions were set on foot?—2. How did the western division under Montgomery proceed?—3. How did the eastern under Arnold?—4. What time did Montgomery join Arnold? What was his situation?—5. What attempts did he make?

advice of all his officers, he took then the desperate resolution of storming the city. As the day dawned, and in a snow-storm, the army in four divisions, made the attempt. Two were to make feigned movements, in order to divide the attention of the troops in the city; while Montgomery and Arnold, at the head of the other two, made real attacks in opposite points, intending to meet. Arnold had forced his way. Montgomery was cheering on his men, when he received his death-shot. Arnold was wounded and retired. The enterprise failed, with the loss of 400 men killed or made prisoners.

P.T. III.  
P.D. I.  
Ch. IX.

1775.

Dec. 31  
QUEBEC  
Am. loss  
400.

6. The treatment of Carleton to his prisoners, did honor to his humanity. Arnold, wounded as he was, retired with the remainder of his army, to the distance of three miles below Quebec; where, though inferior in numbers to the garrison, they kept the place in a state of blockade, and in the course of the winter, reduced it to distress for want of provisions.

Arnold  
blockades  
Quebec.

7. Orders were given to the British naval commanders to lay waste and destroy all such sea-ports as had taken part against Great Britain. In consequence, *Falmouth, now Portland, was burned* by the orders of Captain Mowatt of the British navy. This so exasperated the people, that they put forth new efforts. They collected military stores; they purchased powder in all foreign ports where it was practicable, and in many colonies, commenced its manufacture. They also began more seriously to turn their attention to their armed vessels.

1775.

Oct. 18.  
Falmouth  
burned.

Efforts of  
an exas-  
perated  
people.

8. Congress resolved to fit out thirteen ships, and raise two battalions of marines. They framed articles of war for the government of the little navy, and established regular courts of admiralty, for the adjudication of prizes. The American privateers

Dec. 18.  
Congress  
fit out  
13 ships

5. What desperate assault? At what time? What are some of the circumstances? What the final result?—6. Where was Arnold during the winter?—7. What orders were given to the British naval commanders? What place was burnt? What effect had this on the people?—8. How did Congress now make a beginning with regard to a public navy?

**P.T. III.** swarmed forth. Alert and bold, they visited every  
**P.D. I.** sea, and annoyed the British commerce, even in the  
**CH. IX.** very waters of their own island.

**1775.** 9. In Virginia, Lord Dunmore, still on board the king's ship, issued a proclamation declaring martial law, and promising freedom to such slaves, as would leave their masters and join his party. Several hundred negroes and royalists obeyed the call, when, leaving his ships, he occupied a strong position near Norfolk. The assembly sent 800 militia to oppose his movements. On the 7th of December they were attacked by the royalists and negroes, but they repelled the assailants, and gained a decisive victory; after which they occupied the town of Norfolk.

**Dec. 7.**  
**Lord**  
**Dunmore**  
**defeated**  
**at Nor-**  
**folk.**

**1776.** 10. Lord Dunmore, with his remaining forces, again repaired to the ships, where, in consequence of the many royalists who joined him, he became reduced to great distress for want of provisions. In this situation he sent a flag to Norfolk, demanding a supply. The commander of the provincials refusing to comply, he set fire to the town and destroyed it. This availed him little. Assailed at once by tempest, famine, and disease, he with his followers, sought refuge in the West Indies.

**Jan. 1.**  
**Burns**  
**Norfolk**  
**and aban-**  
**dons**  
**"the do-**  
**minion."**

11. The last hope of the colonies for reconciliation, rested in a petition of congress to the king, which had been emphatically styled "The Olive Branch." It was sent over by **MR. PENN**, a descendant of the proprietor of Pennsylvania, and a former governor of that colony. The king, instead of responding to its affectionate language, accused the Americans, in his speech, of rebellion, and declared that they took up arms to establish an independent empire.

**1775.**  
**Mr. Penn**  
**carries**  
**over the**  
**"Olive**  
**Branch."**

12. He recommended that vigorous measures should be taken to subdue them, and such also as

---

8. How was it with the American privateers?—9. What were Lord Dunmore's movements in Virginia? How was he opposed? 10. What was his last act in the dominion? Did it avail him? 11. What was the last petition of congress to the king called? By whom was it sent? How was it received?—12. What did the king recommend?

were likely *to weaken them by division*. Large majorities in both houses answered the king's speech, by the same accusations against the colonies, and the same determination to reduce them to obedience, by measures of coercion and distress. Thus, with a folly, which English patriots now deplore, was the "Olive Branch" contemptuously rejected; and thus the last hope of honorable peace was crushed.

13. An act was soon passed, prohibiting all trade and commerce with the colonies; and authorizing the capture and condemnation of all American vessels with their cargoes,—and all others found trading in any port or place in the colonies, as if the same were the vessels and effects of open enemies; and the vessels and property thus taken were vested in their captors; and the farther barbarous item was added, that *the crews were to be treated, not as prisoners, but as slaves*.

14. About the same time, England made treaties with the landgrave of Hesse Cassel, and other German princes, *hiring of them 17,000 men to be employed against the Americans*; and it was determined to send over, in addition to these, 25,000 English troops. By the hiring of foreign mercenaries, and the rejection of this last petition, Great Britain filled up the measure of her wrongs to America, and sealed her final separation from her colonies.

12. How did parliament reply? What is now thought of the conduct of these rulers by wise men and patriots of their own nation?—13. What severe law was passed?—14. What number of men did England hire of the German princes? Do you think the slaveholders in the United States would for money set their negroes to kill people, that neither they or their nation had any quarrel with?

P.T. III.

P.D. I.  
CH. IX.

The king  
and the  
parliament  
hostile.

American  
prisoners  
to be  
treated as  
slaves.

England  
hires mer-  
cenaries.

The last  
wrongs.

## CHAPTER X.

Washington enters Boston.—Disasters in Canada.

**P.T. III.** 1. **ALTHOUGH** Britain was preparing so formidable  
**1<sup>st</sup> D. L.** a force, yet the American army, was not only re-  
**CH. X.** duced in numbers, but at the close of the year 1775,  
 was almost destitute of necessary supplies. The  
**1775.** terms of enlistment of all the troops had expired in  
**The army** December; and although measures had been taken  
**small** for recruiting the army, yet on the last day of De-  
**and ill-** cember, there were but 9,650 men enlisted for the  
**appointed** ensuing year.

2. Gen. Washington, finding how slowly the army  
 was recruited, proposed to congress to try the influ-  
**A bounty** ence of a bounty; but his proposal was not acceded  
**given.** to, until late in January, and it was not until the  
 middle of February that the regular army amounted  
 to 14,000. In addition to these, the commander-in-  
**Militia** chief (being vested by congress with the power to  
**called out.** call out the militia), made a requisition on the au-  
 thorities of Massachusetts, for 6000 men.

3. Washington had continued the blockade of  
 Boston during the winter of 1775-6, and at last re-  
**1776.** solved to bring the enemy to action, or drive them  
**March 4.** from the town. On the night of the 4th of March,  
**Dorches-** a detachment silently reached Dorchester Heights,  
**ter** and there constructed, in a single night, a redoubt  
**fortified.** which menaced the British shipping with destruc-  
**March 17.** tion. On the morning of the 17th, the whole Brit-  
**The** ish force, with such of the royalists as chose to follow  
**British** their fortunes, set sail for Halifax. As the rear of  
**evacuate** the British troops were embarking, Washington en-  
**Boston.** tered the town in triumph.

4. The plans of the British cabinet embraced, for  
**British** the campaign of 1776, the recovery of Canada, the  
**have 3**  
**objects**  
**for the**  
**campaign.**

CHAPTER X.—1. What was the condition of the American army at the close of '75?—2. What did Washington recommend? What was done?—3. What took place at Boston in March, '76? 4. What did the British mean to do in the course of the year?

reduction of the southern colonies, and the possession of New York. This last service was entrusted to ADMIRAL HOWE, and his brother GENERAL HOWE; the latter of whom succeeded General Gage in the command of the British troops.

5. Arnold had continued the siege of Quebec, and had greatly annoyed the garrison; but his army had suffered extremely from the inclemency of the season, and from the breaking out of the small-pox. Notwithstanding the garrison of Montreal had been sent to reinforce him, he had scarcely 1000 effective men.

Arnold  
before  
Quebec.

Is badly  
situated.

6. GENERAL THOMAS now arrived and superseded Arnold. He made several attempts to reduce Quebec, but the sudden appearance of the British fleet obliged him to flee with such precipitation, that he left his baggage and military stores. Many of the sick also fell into the hands of Carleton, by whom they were treated with honorable humanity.

**1776.**  
A disas-  
trous  
retreat,  
May 5.

7. One after another, the posts which had been conquered by the Americans, fell into the hands of the British, and before the close of June, they had recovered all Canada. The Americans lost in this unfortunate retreat about 1000 men, who were mostly taken prisoners.

June.  
Ameri-  
cans  
evacuate  
Canada.

8. The British fleet, destined to the reduction of the southern colonies, sailed, under SIR PETER PARKER, to attack Charleston, where they arrived early in June. The marines were commanded by General Clinton.

Sir Peter  
Parker  
sails  
to attack  
Charles-  
ton.

9. An intercepted official letter had given the alarm to the Carolinians. On Sullivan's Island, at the entrance of Charleston harbor, they had constructed a fort of the palmetto-tree, which resembles the cork. This fort was garrisoned by about 400 men, commanded by COLONEL MOULTRIE. On the

Sullivan's  
island-  
fortified.

June 28.  
British are  
repulsed.

5. How was Arnold situated in the spring?—6. Who was his successor? What was he forced to do?—7. Mention some of the circumstances of the unfortunate close of the invasion of Canada.—8. What fleet went to attack Charleston?—9. How was Charleston defended?

**P<sup>T</sup>. III.** morning of the 28th of June, the British ships opened  
**P<sup>D</sup>. I.** their several broadsides upon it, but their balls were  
**CU. X.** received by the palmetto wood, and buried as in  
**1776.** earth. Moultrie defended the fortification with such  
 spirit, that it has ever since been called by his name.

10. Once during the day, after a thundering discharge from the British cannon, the flag of the fort was no longer seen to wave; and the Americans, who watched the battle from the opposite shore, were, every moment, expecting to see the British troops mount the parapets in triumph. But none appeared; and, in a few moments, the striped banner of America was once more unfurled to their view. The staff had been carried away by a shot, and the flag had fallen upon the outside of the fort. A sergeant, by the name of JASPER, had jumped over the wall, and, amidst a shower of bullets, had recovered and fastened it in its place. At evening, the British, completely foiled, drew off their ships, with the loss of two hundred men.

(British  
sail for N.  
York.)

Washing-  
ton's  
headquar-  
ters at  
N. York.

June 7.  
Indepen-  
dence  
proposed  
in  
congress.

11. Washington had early apprehended that the enemy would endeavor to get possession of New York. He had, therefore, detached GENERAL LEE, from Cambridge, to put Long Island and New York in a posture of defence. Soon after the evacuation of Boston, the commander-in-chief followed, and, with the greater part of his army, fixed his headquarters in the city of New York.

12. On the 7th of June, RICHARD HENRY LEE, of Virginia, made a motion in congress, for declaring the colonies FREE AND INDEPENDENT. While the proposition was pending, individuals, public presses, and legislatures, sent from every quarter of the country to Philadelphia, a voice approving such a measure.

13. On the 14th of June, the legislature of Connecticut passed resolutions, instructing their dele-

---

10. Mention Sergeant Jasper's exploit. What was the British loss?—11. What did Washington apprehend? What arrangements make?—12. What proposal was made in Congress?

gates in congress, to propose to that body to declare the American colonies free and independent States, absolved from all allegiance to the king of Great Britain. The reasons, they state to be—the taking away their just rights—the contemptuous refusal to listen to their “humble, decent, and dutiful petitions”—the endeavor to reduce them to abject submission, by war and bloodshed, subjecting their persons to slavery, and hiring foreign mercenaries to destroy them;—so that no alternative was left, but either to submit to what must end in the extreme of wretchedness, or, appealing to God, to declare a total separation.

14. The sentiments which Connecticut had thus embodied, pervaded the whole country. Congress, therefore, on the 4th of July, 1776, declared to the world, that “these United Colonies are, and of right ought to be, FREE AND INDEPENDENT STATES.”

P.T. III  
P.D. I.  
CH. X.

1776.  
June 14.  
The feeling of ali  
expressed  
by Con-  
necticut.

July 4.

Independence.

13. How had the Connecticut legislature expressed the sentiments of the nation?—14. What was done on the 4th of July?

#### EXERCISES ON THE TREE CHRONOGRAPHER.

(For Period I., Part III.)

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point to it on the chronographer. Also the following dates: The Stamp Act, passed in 1765. The first Continental Congress assembled in 1774. The battle of Lexington, fought April 18, 1775, and the battle of Bunker Hill, June 17. Congress assembled at Philadelphia, May 10, and Washington appointed commander-in-chief, June 15, 1775. The British evacuated Boston, March 17, 1776. When does this period terminate? What event marks its termination? Point out its place on the chronographer.

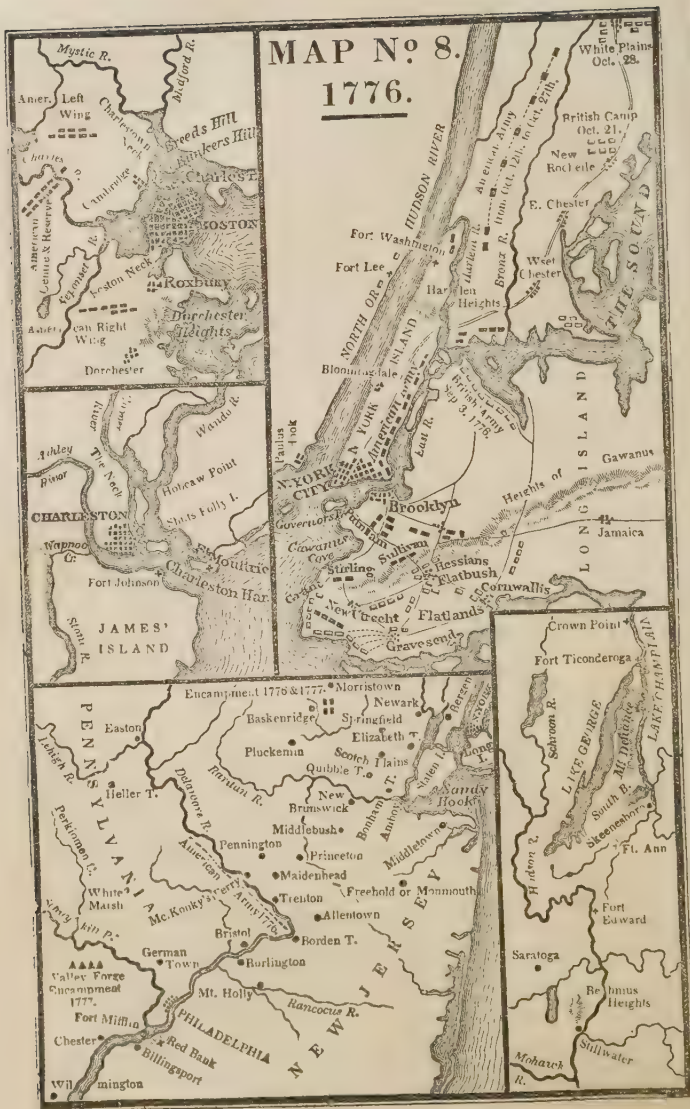
## OFFICERS IN THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.

<i>American Officers.</i>		<i>British Officers.</i>
Citizens of the United States.	Not citizens of the U. S. at the opening of the war.	
WASHINGTON,	<i>French.</i>	GAGE,
ALLEN,	LA FAYETTE,	Pitcairn,
WARNER,	D'Estaing,	Smith,
ARNOLD,	ROCHAMBEAU,	Lord Percy,
PRESCOTT,	DE GRASSE,	Lord Dunmore,
WARREN,	Viomesnil.	Gen. Howe
PUTNAM,	—	(Sir William),
SCHUYLER,	—	Gen. CLINTON
MONTGOMERY,	<i>English.</i>	(Sir Henry),
Thomas,	Lee.	BURGOYNE,
MOULTRIE,	—	Pigot,
Hale,	—	CARLETON
SULLIVAN,	<i>Polanders.</i>	(Sir Guy),
STIRLING,	KOSCIUSKO,	Lord Howe
Mifflin,	PULASKI.	(Admiral),*
Wooster,	—	De Heister
Herkimer,	<i>Prussian.</i>	(German),
Gansevoort,	STEUBEN.	Tryon,
St. Clair,	—	Frazer,
GATES,	<i>German.</i>	St. Leger,
MORGAN,	DE KALB.	Baum,
STARK,	—	CORNWALLIS,
LINCOLN,	<i>Irish.</i>	Donop,
GREENE,	Conway.	Campbell,
James Clinton,	—	PREVOST,
Boyd,	<i>Scotch.</i>	TARLETON,
PICKENS,	PAUL JONES.	Arnold,
Ashe,	—	Lord RAWDON,
Buford,	—	André,
Huger,	—	Leslie,
SUMPTER,	—	Balfour,
MARION,	—	Stuart,
WAYNE,	—	Arbuthnot,
Lee,	—	Philips.
Hayne,	—	
Ledyard,	—	
Hamilton.	—	

\* Adm'l Lord Howe (Earl Richard) and General Sir William Howe, were brothers to each other, and also to that Lord Howe who was killed in the French war near Ticonderoga.



White Plains  
Oct. 28.





Washington taking command.

## PERIOD II.

FROM  
 THE DECLARATION } 1776 { OF INDEPENDENCE,  
 TO  
 THE COMMENCEMENT OF } 1789. { THE FEDERAL GOVERNMENT.

### CHAPTER I.

Lord Howe attempts pacification.--American disaster at Long Island.

1. CONSIDERED as a step in the great march of human society, no one can be fixed upon of more importance, than the solemn promulgation of the writing, which contained the grievances of America, and declared her independence. It embodied the universal wrongs of the oppressed; sent forth a warning voice to the oppressor; and declared the common rights of all mankind.

P.T. III.  
 P.D. II.  
 CH. I.

July 6.  
**1776.**  
 The Declaration important to the world.

2. The signing of this declaration, by the members of the American Congress, who were the leading men of the nation, was doing that, which, if Great Britain should prevail, would subject every

With America the final decision

CHAPTER I.—1. Why may the Declaration of Independence be properly regarded as an era in the history of mankind?

P.T. III. signer to the penalty of death. As these patriots  
 P.D. II. had thus exposed themselves for the sake of their  
 CH. I. country, all now regarded the grand decision as un-  
 alterably made.

**1776.** 3. The British troops from Halifax, under the  
 July 2 to command of General Howe, took possession of Stat-  
 July 12. en Island on the 2d of July; and those from Eng-  
 British in land, commanded by Admiral Howe, joined them at  
 great force that island on the 12th. These, with other English,  
 at Staten and several Hessian regiments, would make up an  
 Island. army of 35,000 of the best troops of Europe.

Lord Howe attempts peaceable expedients too late. 4. Lord Howe, who was a man of kind disposi-  
 tion, hoped that the Americans would be so much  
 afraid of this great force, that they would submit,  
 without his employing it against them. He took  
 various measures to appeal to the people, against the  
 decision of Congress, but without success. Perceiv-  
 ing Washington's great influence, he wrote him a  
 letter, directing it to Mr. Washington. The Gen-  
 eral sent it back unopened; for, he said, that he  
 was not addressed in his public capacity, and as an  
 individual, he would hold no intercourse with the  
 enemies of his country.

Grand plan of the British. 5. General and Admiral Howe now determined to  
 attack New York. From this point they might, they  
 hoped, proceed with their grand scheme, which was  
 to divide New England from the south. Carleton,  
 with 13,000 men, was to make a descent from Can-  
 ada, by the way of Lake Champlain, and form a  
 junction with Howe, who was to ascend the Hudson.

Washington's army. 6. Thirteen thousand of the militia were ordered  
 to join the army of Washington, which thus increas-  
 ed, amounted to 27,000; but a fourth of these were  
 invalids, and another fourth were poorly provided

---

2. Why did the people of the United States consider the sign-  
 ing of the declaration as their final decision?—3. How large a  
 British army was in or near the United States?—4. What hopes  
 had Lord Howe? What measures did he take? What occurred  
 between him and Washington?—5. What appears to have been  
 the grand scheme of the English? What city did they wish to  
 make their headquarters?—6. What was the number and condi-  
 tion of Washington's army.

with arms. From these and other causes, the force fit for duty did not exceed 10,000; and of this number the greater part was without order or discipline.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II  
CH. I.

7. These inconveniences proceeded, in part, from want of money, which prevented Congress from paying regular troops, and providing for their equipments; and partly from parsimonious habits, contracted during peace, which withheld them from incurring, with promptitude, the expenses necessary to a state of war; while their jealousy of standing armies inspired the hope, that they could, each year, organize for the occasion, an army sufficient to resist the enemy.

1776.  
Its inferiority to the British.

8. On the 22d of August, the English landed without opposition on Long Island, between the villages of New Utrecht and Gravesend. They extended themselves to Flatlands, distant four miles from the Americans, and separated from them by a range of wood-covered hills, called the heights of Gowanus—running from east to west.

Aug. 22.  
British land on L. Island.

9. Washington had made the best disposition of his forces in his power, to guard the city of New York. The main army was on the island of New York, with detachments sent out to the most exposed points. Of these the largest was on Long Island, extending from Wallabout Bay westward, and under command of Generals Putnam, Sullivan, and Stirling. They were opposed to the vastly superior force of the British, under the experienced Generals Clinton, Percy, Cornwallis, and Grant, and the Hessian commander, De Heister.

The two armies are opposed.

10. Over the wooded heights of Gowanus, there were but three roads. With such a force opposed to them, how could the American generals neglect to guard these passes, and watch them closely? Yet one of these roads, the most easterly, or Jamaica

- 
7. From what did this unhappy state of things proceed?—8. Where did the English army land? How were they arranged? 9. What disposition of his troops was made by Washington?

PT. III. road, was left so carelessly guarded, that while a  
 P.D. II part of the British army was taking up the atten-  
 CH. I. tion of the Americans with a great noise and show  
 of attack, another portion, stealing a night-march,  
 Aug. 27. passed the heights through that road, and thus  
 BROOK placed the Americans between two fires. They  
 L.V.V. Am. loss could not then win the battle, though they fought  
 2000. bravely. It proved the most bloody, and the most  
 Br. L. 400. disastrous defeat of the whole war.

11. In the height of the engagement, General  
 Washington crossed to Brooklyn from New York.  
 Washing- He saw with anguish that his best troops were  
 ton's slaughtered or taken prisoners. Had his object  
 anguish. been his own glory, he would probably have drawn  
 all his men from the encampment; and also called  
 over all the forces from New York, to take part in  
 His pru- the conflict: but victory having declared in favor of  
 dence and self-pos- the English, his judgment decided, that the courage  
 session. with which it inspired them, and the superiority of  
 their discipline, destroyed all just hope of recover-  
 ing the battle. And, with true heroism, he pre-  
 served himself and his army for a happier future.

12. On the night of the 28th, Washington, having  
 Aug. 29. consulted his officers, cautiously withdrew the re-  
 He re- mainder of his troops from Brooklyn to New York;  
 moves the troops to which place the detachment from Governor's  
 Island also retired. Finding, however, a disposi-  
 tion in the British to attack the city, and knowing  
 that it would be impossible to defend it, he removed  
 his forces to the heights of Harlaem.

---

10. What carelessness were some of the American officers guilty of? What disaster was the consequence? What was the loss on both sides in the battle of Brooklyn? \* At what time, year, month, and day did the Americans meet this dreadful reverse? Show the position of the armies by the Map.—11. What was Washington's conduct?—12. What changes in the position of his army did he now make?

\* N. B.—The questions sometimes refer to the side notes.

## CHAPTER II.

Disasters following the defeat on Long Island.

1. ABOUT this time, CAPTAIN HALE, a highly interesting young officer from Connecticut, learning that Washington wished to ascertain the state of the British army on Long Island, volunteered for the dangerous service of a spy. He entered the British army in disguise, and obtained the desired information; but being apprehended on his attempt to return, he was carried before Sir William Howe, now in New York. By his orders Hale was executed the next morning; exclaiming, "I lament that I have but one life to lay down for my country!"

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CIL. II.

1776.  
Sept. 22.  
Captain  
Hale.

2. On the 15th of September, the British army took possession of the city of New York. Gen. Howe again attempted to negotiate; but he could not promise the Americans independence, and they would listen to no other terms, although the prospects of the country were most alarming. Until the check at Brooklyn, the Americans had flattered themselves, that Heaven would constantly favor their arms. They now almost despaired of Divine protection. The militia abandoned their colors by hundreds, and entire regiments deserted and returned to their homes. In the regular army, desertions were common. Their engagements were but for a year, or for a few weeks; and the hope of soon returning to their families, induced them to avoid dangers. Every thing appeared to threaten a total dissolution of the army.

Sept 15.  
British  
enter New  
York.

Ameri-  
cans  
dispirited  
by defeat.

1776.  
Militia  
desert.

The regu-  
lar army  
insubordi-  
nate.

3. Washington strove earnestly, with exhortations, persuasions, and promises, to arrest this spirit of dis-

---

CHAPTER II.—1. Who was Captain Hale? On what service was he sent? Where? What was his fate?—2. When did the British enter New York? Would the Americans submit after their defeat at Brooklyn? What effect, however, had it on their minds? What on the army?

P.T. III. organization. If he did not succeed according to  
 P.D. II his desires, he obtained more than his hopes. To  
 CH. II Congress he addressed an energetic picture of the  
 1776. deplorable state of the forces, and assured them that  
 he must despair of success, unless furnished with an  
 army that should stand by him until the conclusion  
 of the struggle. To effect this, a *bounty of twenty  
 dollars* was offered at the time of engagement, and  
 Congress offer a *portions of unoccupied lands* were promised to the  
 offer a bounty officers and soldiers.  
 in money and land

4. But although Washington hoped ultimately to  
 reap the benefit of these arrangements, yet time  
 must intervene; and his present prospect, was that  
 of a handful of dispirited and ill-found troops, to  
 contend against a large and victorious army. In  
 this situation he adopted the policy to harass and  
 wear out his enemy, without risking any general  
 engagement. By this policy, Fabius Maximus had,  
 two thousand years before, preserved Italy, when  
 invaded by Hannibal. Washington has, therefore,  
 been called "the American Fabius."

5. A skirmish occurred on the 16th of September,  
 between a British and American detachment, in  
 which the Americans had the advantage. The Brit-  
 ish sought to get possession of the two roads leading  
 east, from which direction Washington received his  
 supplies. To keep one of these roads open, Wash-  
 ington removed his camp to White Plains. Here  
 the British attacked him, but though there was  
 bloodshed on both sides, the enemy failed of their  
 object. Washington remained, till on the night of  
 the 30th, when he withdrew to North Castle. Leav-  
 ing here 7500 men under Gen. Lee, he crossed the  
 Hudson, and took post near Fort Lee.

6. On the 16th of November, occurred the disas-  
 trous loss of Fort Washington, with the 2000 Amer-  
 ican loss 2000.

3. What was the conduct of the commander? What did he  
 represent to Congress? What did they do?—4. What policy did  
 Washington adopt?—5. What occurred on the 16th of Sept.?  
 What on the 28th of Oct.? What on the 30th?—6. What forts  
 were taken by the British? What number of American prisoners?

ican troops, which composed its garrison. The gar-  
rison of Fort Lee on the opposite bank of the Hud-  
son, under the guidance of GEN. GREENE, evacuated  
the fort and joined Washington, who, with the main  
army, had removed to Newark in New Jersey.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. II.

Ft. Lee  
evacuated.

7. Washington retreated across New Jersey, and  
was leisurely followed by a British army under  
Lord Cornwallis. They entered Newark the day  
on which Washington left it; and pursued him as  
he passed on through New Brunswick, Princeton,  
and Trenton. Here, at the Delaware, the British  
expected to seize their prey; but with a diligence  
and energy far exceeding theirs, the Americans had  
just crossed over,—the last boats with the baggage,  
being still on the river when the enemy appeared  
on the opposite bank.

Disastrous  
retreat  
through  
the  
Jerseys.

8. Cornwallis had no boats in which to cross the  
river. He arranged his army along the eastern  
bank, from Mount Holly to Trenton, and waited for  
the Delaware to freeze. The British commanders  
had an army of at least six-fold numerical strength  
to that of Washington; and nothing but their own  
inertness, and his great and skilful exertions, hin-  
dered their overtaking him. This seems one of  
those cases, in which we can see clearly an inter-  
posing Providence.

Inefficien-  
cy of the  
British.

9. Feeble as was the American army, when Wash-  
ington commenced his retreat, it had hourly dimin-  
ished. His troops were unfed amidst fatigue; un-  
shod, while their bleeding feet were forced rapidly  
over the sharp projections of frozen ground; and  
they endured the keen December air, almost with-  
out clothes or tents. Washington, with the firm-  
ness of the commander, united the tenderness of the  
father;—he visited the sick,—paid every attention

1776.  
Dec.  
Distress of  
Wash-  
ington's  
army.

He  
becomes  
truly the  
"Father  
of his  
country."

6. Where was Washington? Who joined him?—7. Give an  
account of Washington's memorable retreat through New Jersey.  
Show the scene of operations on the Map.—8. What arrangements  
did Lord Cornwallis make? What was the difference in the  
strength of the armies? What in the energy and diligence of the  
commanders?—9. What was the condition of the American army?  
What the course of Washington?

P<sup>T</sup>. III. in his power to the wants of the army,—praised  
 P<sup>D</sup>. II. their constancy,—represented their sufferings to  
 CH. III. Congress,—and encouraged their despairing minds  
 by holding out the prospects of a better future.

1776. 10. The distress of the Americans was increased  
 by the desertion of many of the supposed friends of  
 their cause. Howe, taking advantage of what he  
 considered their vanquished and hopeless condition,  
 offered free pardon to all who should now declare  
 for the royal authority. Of the extremes of society,  
 the very rich and the very poor, numbers sued for  
 the royal clemency; but few of the middle classes  
 deserted their country in its hour of peril.

The time  
 that  
 "tried  
 men's  
 souls."

## CHAPTER III.

American successes at Trenton and Princeton.

1. WASHINGTON, in this emergency, called in  
 the distant detachments of the army; and 1500  
 militia, under Gen. Mifflin, joined him. He had or-  
 dered Gen. Lee to go north, for certain important  
 objects; but Lee thought that better uses might be  
 made of the army under his command; and disobey-  
 ing his orders, he had lingered among the mountains  
 of New Jersey. Here a party of British cavalry  
 surprised and took him prisoner. GEN. SULLIVAN  
 conducted his forces to Washington's camp.

Gen. Lee  
 insubordi-  
 nate.

Made  
 prisoner.

2. With these reinforcements, the American army  
 amounted to about 7000 effective men. A few days,  
 however, would close the year; and the period of  
 enlistment, for a considerable portion of the soldiers,  
 would expire with it. The cause of America de-  
 manded, that important use should be made of the  
 short space which intervened. At this critical mo-

1776.  
 A critical  
 moment  
 improved.

10. How were the distresses of the army increased?

CHAPTER III.—1. What measure did Gen. Washington take to  
 increase the exhausted army? What did Lee? What became of  
 his forces?—2. What was now the number and condition of the  
 American army?

ment, Washington, perceiving the inactivity of his enemy, struck a capital blow for his country.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CIL. III.

3. He determined to recross the Delaware, and attack the British posts at Trenton and Burlington. The main body of the army, commanded by Washington in person, effected the passage, though with suffering and danger; for the night was intensely cold, and the river filled with floating ice. The troops marched in two divisions, but both arrived at Trenton at the same moment. The Hessians, under COLONEL RAHL, were surprised, and their commander slain. Prisoners, to the number of 1,000, were taken by the Americans, who immediately recrossed the Delaware. Two days after the action, Washington crossed his whole army over the Delaware, and took quarters at Trenton.

1776.

Dec. 26  
and 27.  
TREN-  
TON.  
Am. L. 12  
2 frozen.  
Br. L.  
1000.

4. Howe was thunderstruck at this astonishing reverse. Cornwallis, leaving a part of his troops at Princeton, immediately proceeded towards Trenton, with the intention of giving battle to the Americans, and arrived, with his vanguard, on the first of January.

1777.

Jan. 1.  
British in  
motion.

5. Washington knew the inferiority of his force, and was sensible, too, that flight would be almost as fatal to the republicans as defeat. About midnight, leaving his fires burning briskly, that his army should not be missed, he silently decamped, and gained, by a circuitous route, the rear of the enemy. At sunrise, the van of the American forces met, unexpectedly, two British regiments, which were on the march to join Cornwallis. A conflict ensued: the Americans gave way:—all was at stake. Washington himself, at this decisive moment, led on the main body. The enemy were routed, and fled. Washington pressed forward towards Princeton, where one regiment of the enemy yet remained. A part of these saved themselves by flight; the re-

Jan. 3.  
PRINCE  
TON.  
Br. L. k.  
100, p. 300.  
Am. L. 70

2. What did Washington perceive, and the cause of the country demand?—3. Give an account of the affair at Trenton?—4. What movement was made by the British?—5. What second bold stroke was struck by Washington?

P.T. III. mainder were made prisoners. Thus had he again  
P.D. II. accomplished his object.

CH. IV.

1777.  
Great joy.

6. Thrilling were the emotions, with which these successes were hailed by a disheartened nation. Even to this day, when an unexpected and joyful event is to be related, the speaker, who perchance knows not the origin of the proverb, exclaims, "Great news from the Jerseys!"

Jan. 6.  
Wash-  
ington  
retires to  
Morris-  
town.

7. On hearing the cannonade from Princeton, Cornwallis, apprehensive for the safety of his New Brunswick stores, immediately put his army in motion for that place. Washington, on his approach, retired to Morristown. When somewhat refreshed, he again took the field; and having gained possession of Newark, Woodbridge, Elizabethtown, and indeed of all the enemy's posts in New Jersey, except New Brunswick and Amboy, he retired to secure winter-quarters at Morristown.

Washing-  
ton's great  
merit.

8. Washington's military glory now rose to its meridian. Indeed, nothing in the history of war shows a leader in a more advantageous point of light, than the last events of this campaign did the commanding general.—Hannibal made war for revenge; Cæsar and Napoleon for ambition; Washington for justice,—for the rights of his country and of mankind.

## CHAPTER IV.

Difficulties and exertions of Congress—Campaign of 1777—Arrival of La Fayette.

High  
character  
of the old  
Congress.

1. CONGRESS in the mean time were surrounded with difficulties which would have utterly discouraged men of weaker heads, or fainter hearts. They were without any power, except the power to rec-

6. What effect had these successes on the nation?—7. What movements were next made by the two armies?—8. What was now Washington's reputation?

CHAPTER IV.—1 What was the situation of Congress?

commend. They had an exhausted army to recruit, and this, not merely without money, but almost without credit; for the bills which they had formerly issued, had almost entirely lost credit.

2. To raise money, they authorized a loan,—they created a lottery,—and they sent three commissioners to France, to borrow of that government. These commissioners, BENJAMIN FRANKLIN, SILAS DEANE, and ARTHUR LEE, were also, if possible, to prevail upon the French government to acknowledge the American independence.

3. On the 25th of April, 2,000 men, under GOVERNOR TRYON,\* major of the royalists, or tories, having passed the Sound, landed between Fairfield and Norwalk. The next day, proceeding to Danbury, they compelled the garrison, under Colonel Huntington, to retire; and not only destroyed the stores, but burned the town.

4. Meantime, 800 militia had collected to annoy them, on their return; of whom 500, under Arnold, took post at Ridgefield, to attack their front, while 200, under GENERAL WOOSTER, fell upon their rear. Both parties were repulsed. Wooster was slain; and Arnold retired to Saugatuck, about three miles east of Norwalk. The enemy having spent the night at Ridgefield, set fire to it, still retreating, although continually harassed by Arnold's party, now increased to 1,000. At Campo, between Norwalk and Fairfield, they took refuge on board their ships.

5. The British had collected at Sag Harbor, on Long Island, large magazines of forage and grain. . . . Colonel Meigs left Guilford, on the 23d of May, with 170 men, destroyed the stores, burned a dozen brigs and sloops, and returned without loss.

6. Congress had, with great judgment, selected DR. FRANKLIN as one of the mission to France. A

\* Late royal governor of New York.

2. What did they do to raise money? Whom send to France? For what objects?—3. Give an account of Gov. Tryon's expedition.—4. Give an account of the retreat of the British, and show it on the Map.—5. Give an account of Col. Meigs' exploit.

P.T. III.

P.T. II.  
CH. IV.

Their difficulties.

Franklin  
Deane.  
and Lee

1777.

April 26.  
Tryon  
burns  
DanburyApril 27.  
RIDGE-  
FIELD.  
Br. L. 170.  
Am. L. 100.May 23.  
Sag  
Harbor.  
Br. L. k. 6  
pr. 90.

PT. III. profound knowledge of human nature, had given to  
 PD II. this philosopher a manner possessing a peculiar  
 CH. IV. charm, attractive to all, however different their  
 1777. taste or pursuits. He exerted these powers so suc-  
 Dr. cessfully, that he excited great interest at the court  
 Franklin at the of France for the American cause.

7. Several gentlemen of rank and fortune came forward and offered their services. The most distinguished of these was the MARQUIS DE LA FAYETTE, a young nobleman, who, although he had every thing to attach him to his own country, yet took the resolution to risk his life and fortune, for the cause of American liberty and human rights.

La Fayette and others offer their service.

Magnanimity of La Fayette.

8. After the disastrous battle of Long Island, he was told of the despairing state of the country, then so poor that it could not provide him a conveyance. "Then," said La Fayette, "this is a moment when I can render most essential service." He provided a vessel for himself. His arrival caused heartfelt joy. Washington received him as a son; and Congress made him a major-general.

Movements of the two armies. June.

9. Washington removed the main army from Morristown, to a strong position on the heights of Middlebrook. Gen. Howe crossed the Hudson, and appearing before Washington's camp, vainly endeavored to draw him out. Affecting to retreat in haste, Washington pursued, when Howe turned upon him; but the American general regained his camp,—a skirmish only having ensued, where Howe intended a battle.\*

July 10. Col. Barton's exploit.

10. The British had taken Rhode Island in December. On the 10th of July, the British commander, General Prescott, was made prisoner by a

\* This incident was personally related to Mrs. W., by Gen. La Fayette. Mrs. W.'s histories of the American Revolution have an added value, from the fact that Gen. La Fayette himself inspected and gave his sanction to that contained in her larger history, of which this is an abridgment.

3. What kind of man was Dr. Franklin? What effect did he produce?—7. Who made offers of service?—8. What trait of magnanimity can you relate of La Fayette? How was he received in the United States?—9. Give some account of the two armies—10. Give an account of the capture of Gen. Prescott.

daring party of forty country militia, under COL. P.T. III.  
BARTON. General Prescott was surprised at night, P.D. II.  
and taken from his bed. CH. V.

## CHAPTER V.

### Burgoyne's Invasion.

1. THE grand British plan for the campaign was to send an army to Canada, which should invade by the way of Lake Champlain; while a force from New York should go up the Hudson to act in concert. It was supposed that the north-eastern States might thus be divided from the southern. The grand plan to be attempted.

2. GENERAL BURGOYNE was sent from England with an army, and arrived at Quebec in May. 1777. May. Burgoyne sent over. Burgoyne's army consisted of 7,173 British and German troops, besides several thousands of Canadians and Indians. His plan of operation was, that COLONEL ST. LEGER should proceed with a detachment by the St. Lawrence, *Oswego*, and *Fort Stanwix*, to Albany. Burgoyne, proceeding by Champlain and the Hudson, was to meet St. Leger at Albany, and both to join GENERAL CLINTON from New York. Burgoyne moved forward with his army, and made his first encampment on the western shore of Lake Champlain, at the river Boquet. June 20. Burgoyne at the river Boquet.

3. St. Leger had united with Sir John Johnson, and having nearly 2,000 troops, including savages, they invested Fort Stanwix, commanded by COL. GANSEVOORT. GENERAL HERKIMER, having collected the militia, marched to the relief of Gansevoort. He fell into an Indian ambuscade on the 6th of August, and was defeated and slain. St. Leger pressed upon the fort. Aug. 6. ORISKANY. Am. L. 400.

CHAPTER V.—1. What was now the grand scheme of the British?—2. Who was sent over to effect it? What forces had Burgoyne? What was his plan of operation?—3. Describe the route of St. Leger. When, and by whom, was the battle of Oriskany fought? What was the American loss?

**P.T. III.** 4. General Schuyler, who commanded the north-  
**P.D. II.** ern forces, dispatched Arnold to its relief. On  
**cu. v.** hearing of his approach, the Indians, having previ-  
 Aug. 22. ously become dissatisfied, mutinied and compelled  
 St. Leger returns. St. Leger to return to Montreal. . . Burgoyne ad-  
 June 30. vanced to Crown Point, from whence he proceed-  
 Burgoyne at Crown ed to invest Ticonderoga, which was garrisoned by  
 Point. 3,000 men under GEN. ST. CLAIR. Up to this period,  
 (\* Col. a circumstance respecting this fort seems strangely  
 Trumbull discover- to have been overlooked.\* It is commanded by an  
 ed it, and eminence near, called Mount Defiance. The troops  
 warned of Burgoyne got possession of this height on the  
 St. Clair, 5th of July, and St. Clair, finding the post no longer  
 who did not heed tenable, evacuated it on the same night.  
 the warn- ing.)

5. The garrison, separated into two divisions, were to proceed through Hubbardton to Skeenesborough. The first, under St. Clair, left the fort in the night, two hours earlier than the second, under COLONEL FRANCIS. The stores and baggage, placed on board 200 batteaux, and convoyed by five armed galleys, were to meet the army at Skeenesborough.

6. GENERAL FRAZER, with 850 of the British, pursued and attacked the division at Hubbardton, whose rear was commanded by COLONEL WARNER. The Americans made a brave resistance; but the British, in the heat of the action, receiving a reinforcement, they were forced to give way. They fled in every direction, spreading through the country the terror of the British arms. Many of the wounded perished in the woods.

7. A part of the stores and armed galleys, which had been sent up the lake, fell into the hands of the British. St. Clair, on hearing of these disasters, struck into the woods on his left. He was joined by the remnant of the vanquished division, conducted by Colonel Warner. After a distressing march,

---

4. By what means was St. Leger forced to return? By what means did Burgoyne get possession of Ticonderoga?—5. What arrangements were made for the retreat of St. Clair's army?—6. Give an account of the disaster at Hubbardton.—7. What became of St. Clair's division?

July 5.  
Americans evac-  
uate  
Ticonde-  
roga.

**1777.**  
 July 7.  
 HUB-  
 BARD-  
 TON.

Am. L. k.,  
 w., and  
 pr. 1000.  
 Br. L. k.  
 130.

July 12.  
 St. Clair  
 reaches  
 Ft.  
 Edward.

he reached the camp of General Schuyler, at Fort Edward. Warner, with a detachment, remained in Manchester. Burgoyne took possession of Skeenesborough. Schuyler, with the American army, retired from Fort Edward to Saratoga, and from thence to the islands at the mouth of the Mohawk.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. V.  
Aug. 13.  
Gen.  
Schuyler  
at the  
Mohawk.

8. General Schuyler had obstructed the roads, by breaking the bridges, and, in the only passable defiles, by cutting immense trees on both sides of the way, to fall cross and lengthwise. . . . GENERAL GATES was appointed to supersede General Schuyler in the command. LINCOLN, ARNOLD, and MORGAN, were sent north, which encouraged volunteers to join the army. The celebrated patriot of Poland, KOSCIUSKO, was also in the army, as its chief engineer.

Gates  
more pop-  
ular, su-  
persedes  
Schuyler.

9. Burgoyne, having with much labor and time, opened a way for his army, arrived at Fort Edward on the 30th of July; but he was in want of supplies. Learning that there was a large depot of provisions at Bennington, he sent 500 men, under LIEUT. COL. BAUM, a German officer, to seize them. GENERAL STARK, with a body of Vermont and New Hampshire militia, was on his march to join General Schuyler. He met the British force, four miles from Bennington. Baum was killed, and his party defeated. The militia had dispersed, to seek for plunder, when a British reinforcement of 500 men arrived. The Green Mountain Boys, under Colonel Warner, appeared at the same time, and the British were again defeated, and compelled to retreat.

July 30.  
Burgoyne  
reaches  
Ft.  
Edward.

Col. Baum  
at Ben-  
nington.

1777.  
Aug. 6.  
BEN-  
NING-  
TON.  
Br. L. 600

10. Cruel murders, committed by the Indians of Burgoyne's army, particularly that of MISS JANE MCCREA, which was perpetrated near Fort Edward, shocked and excited the people against the British,

July 27.  
Murder of  
Miss  
McCrea.

---

7. Of Col. Warner's? Where was now Burgoyne? Where was Gen. Schuyler?—8. What popular officers now joined the army? —9. What detachment did Burgoyne send out? Where was Gen. Stark? Give an account of the battle of Bennington.—10. Where was the murder of Miss McCrea? What effect did it produce on the public mind?

**P.T. III.** who had thus let loose the cruel savages upon the  
**P.D. II.** land; and there was now a general rising and rush  
**CH. V** to the camp of Gates. The army thus reinforced—  
**1777.** encouraged by the victory of Bennington, and now  
 Sept. 8. amounting to 5,000—Gates left the encampment at  
 Gates the islands, and advancing to Stillwater, occupied  
 encamps at Sara- Behmus heights.  
 toga.

11. On the 12th, Burgoyne crossed the Hudson, and on the 14th, encamped at Saratoga, about three miles distant from the American army. An obstinate and bloody battle occurred at Stillwater on the  
 Sept. 19. 19th. Both sides claimed the victory; but the ad-  
 STILL- vantage was clearly on the side of the Americans.  
 WATER. Am. L. 350.  
 Br. L. 500. Skirmishes, frequent and animated, occurred between this and the 7th of October, when a general battle was fought at Saratoga.

12. The Americans made the attack. The battle was fierce and desperate. The British gave way in fifty minutes. That short time decided great events. The loss was severe in killed and wounded, on both sides. The British lost Gen. Frazer. Arnold had greatly distinguished himself in the battle, and was severely wounded. . . Burgoyne made efforts to retreat; but he was hemmed in by a foe, whose army, constantly increasing, now amounted to four times his own wasting numbers. He capitulated on the 17th of October.

13. The number surrendered, amounted to 5,762; those lost in the previous battles and by deser-  
 Oct. 17. tion, made up their whole loss to about 9,000  
 Whole Br. L. 9,000. men. There also fell into the hands of the Americans, 35 brass field-pieces, and 5,000 muskets. It was stipulated that the British were to have free passage across the Atlantic; but they were not to serve again in North America, during the war.

---

**10.** What advance movement was made by Gates?—**11.** What by Burgoyne? Where did the armies meet and contend? Which had the advantage? When and where was a great and decisive battle fought?—**12.** Why could not Burgoyne retreat? What did he do on the 17th of Oct.?—**13.** How many men were surrendered? How many pieces of artillery?

On hearing of the defeat of Burgoyne, the British garrison at Ticonderoga returned to Canada, and not a foe remained in the northern section of the Union. Sir Henry Clinton had sailed up the Hudson; but as Burgoyne had failed, he returned to New York; having first barbarously burned *Esopus*, now Kingston.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VI.  
1777.  
Garrison  
of Ti-  
conderoga  
retreat to  
Canada.

## CHAPTER VI.

Battle of Brandywine.—British in Philadelphia.—Germantown.

1. ADMIRAL and GEN. HOWE, intent on the capture of Philadelphia, left Sandy Hook on the 23d of July. They were long at sea. At length they were heard of, sailing up the Chesapeake. They disembarked their troops, amounting to 18,000, at the head of the bay. Washington crossed the Delaware and marched to oppose them. Approaching the enemy, he encamped on the rising grounds which extend from Chad's Ford; and there the shallow stream of the *Brandywine*, being between the armies, he awaited an attack from the British commander.

Howe  
lands at  
Elkton.

Aug. 26.  
Wash.  
marches  
to meet  
him.

2. Early in the morning, the hostile army commenced the assault. Washington had made, and partly executed a plan, by which he would probably have won the day; but in the heat of the action, his judgment was misled by false intelligence—and he lost the battle. GEN. GREENE here distinguished himself; as did the brave POLANDER, PULASKI. GEN. LA FAYETTE, endeavoring to bring back the flying, to face again the enemy, received a wound in the leg. When in his old age, the country for whom he here shed his blood, conveyed him home an honored guest, returning from her shores, the new war-

Sept. 11.  
BRAN-  
DY-  
WINE.  
Am. L.  
1,300.  
Br. L. 500

### 13. What did Sir Henry Clinton?

CHAPTER VI.—1. Trace on the Map and describe the course of Admiral Howe's fleet. What course did Washington take?—2. Give an account of the battle of Brandywine. Mention the loss on both sides. What officers distinguished themselves?

**P.T. III.** ship which carried him to France, was named from this battle, the Brandywine.

**P.D. II.**  
**CH. VI.**

**1777.**

Sept. 26.  
The British enter Phila.

Oct. 4.  
**GER-**  
**MAN-**  
**TOWN.**  
Am. L.  
k. 200,  
w. 600,  
pr. 400.

Howe in danger of starving.

**FT.**  
**MER-**  
**CER.**  
Hessians lost 500.

The navigation opened by the British.

3. Congress, finding themselves insecure in Philadelphia, adjourned to Lancaster, to which place the public archives and magazines were first removed;—subsequently to York. A detachment of the British army, under Cornwallis, entered Philadelphia, while the main body, under Howe, took post at Germantown. The American army encamped at Skippack creek. Washington knowing that Howe was weakened by detachments, left his camp at seven in the evening of October 3d, and on the following morning, partially succeeded in giving the British a surprise. They at first retreated in disorder. Several companies having thrown themselves into a stone house, annoyed the Americans. A thick fog came on, and unable to distinguish friend from foe, confusion arose in the American ranks, and they lost the battle.

4. Congress had made it death to any citizen to furnish the enemy with food: and such was the spirit of the people, and the vigilance of the commander, that Howe now found his army in danger of starvation. To prevent this, he must open the navigation of the Delaware, which had been obstructed by sunken ranges of frames, and by forts on Mud Island, Red Bank, and other places. Howe removed his army to Philadelphia; and to open the navigation he sent Col. Donop with a detachment of Hessians. They attacked *Fort Mercer*, on Red Bank, and were repulsed with heavy loss. At length, however, the British sent against it such a force, that the Americans evacuated it. The British fleet then passed up the Delaware to Philadelphia. Much of the American shipping in the river was burnt; and the remainder fell into the hands of the enemy.

2. What vessel was named after this battle?—3. What movement did Congress make? When did the British troops enter Philadelphia? Where were Generals Howe and Washington? Describe the battle of Germantown.—4. What was the condition of the British army? What was now Howe's object? What measures did he take? Did he succeed?

5. Washington now retired to winter-quarters at Valley Forge. The huts for the camp were not completed, when the magazines were found to contain scarcely a single day's provision. As to clothing—they were destitute, almost to nakedness. Barefooted, on the frozen ground—their feet cut by ice—they left their tracks in blood. A few only had a blanket at night. Straw could not be obtained, and the soldiers, who, during the day, were benumbed with cold, and enfeebled by hunger, had at night no other bed than the damp ground. Diseases attacked them; and the hospitals were replenished, as rapidly as the dead were carried out.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VI.

1777.  
Dec. 11.  
Washington's  
winter-  
quarters  
at Valley  
Forge.

The dis-  
tress of the  
army.

6. This melancholy state of the army was owing to the condition of the finances. Congress had carried on the war thus far, by making a great quantity of paper money. That is, they had issued notes in the name of the government, promising to pay the holders such and such sums. If the government had possessed gold and silver enough actually to pay these notes, whenever they were presented, then they would have been good money, like the bills of good banks. But they had no specie; and the country became overrun with this paper. People began to think it doubtful whether it ever would be redeemed; and then they did not wish to take it. Its market-value had depreciated to one-quarter: that is, for an article valued at one dollar, there must be paid of this money, four dollars.

The paper  
money  
becomes  
bad.

$\frac{1}{4}$  below  
par.

7. But the people, who had such articles to sell, as the army needed, would not sell them, and take for pay this paper money at par. Congress, on the other hand, would not allow their agents to part with it below par, and the country was so poor, they had

Congres-  
have no  
other.

5. Where did Washington make winter-quarters? As to the condition of the army, had they food? Had they clothing? Had they shoes? What was their lodging at night? What the state of their health?—6. How had Congress thus far carried on the war? Give some account of the "continental money," as their bills were termed. Why did people become unwilling to take it? How much had it now depreciated?—7. Why could not the government agents procure things needful for the army?

**P.T. III.** nothing else to give. The consequence was, that they  
**P.D. II.** could not now provide either food or clothing for  
**CH. VI.** the army. The pay of the officers was not sufficient to provide them the necessaries of life. Those who  
**1777.** had fortunes were spending, or had already spent them. Those who had not, were in a state of actual suffering. Many resigned;—not merely the worthless,—but often the bravest and the best.

The army suffers.

Shameful cabal against Washington.

An example of magnanimity.

8. Amidst the grief and care to which the commander was thus subjected, a cabal was stirred up, to prejudice the minds of the people against him; and thus to get his office for Gen. Gates. The most active agent of the plot, was Gen. Conway. Even Congress so far gave way as to appoint this man inspector-general. Washington, in the calmness of his righteous mind, turned not aside from his public duties, to notice his private enemies. But the people took his part; and the more for this magnanimity. The army were so indignant, that at length, all who had been engaged in the plot, whatever had been their former services, were now afraid of their resentment, and kept out of the way. Gen. Conway's office was given to the **BARON STEUBEN**, a Prussian officer.

Officers provided for.

Success of Am. privateers.

9. Laws were passed which meliorated the condition of the army. The officers were allowed half-pay for seven years after the close of the war. . . The Americans were successful in the depredations which their swift-sailing privateers made upon the British commerce. With these they boldly scoured every sea, even those about the British islands. Since 1776, they had already captured 500 of the British vessels. . . Early in the season, **SIR HENRY CLINTON** arrived in Philadelphia, to supersede **Sir William Howe**.

10. The news of the capture of **Burgoyne** caused a

---

7. How was it with the officers?—8. How was the commander now treated? How did this vile treatment affect Washington, the people, and the army?—9. What law was passed? What success had the American privateers? By whom was Howe superseded?

deep sensation in Europe. The English people were astonished and afflicted. The FRENCH ACKNOWLEDGED THE INDEPENDENCE OF THE UNITED STATES. A treaty of alliance was made on the 6th of February, by which it was stipulated that France and the United States should make common cause; and that neither party should make either peace or truce with England without the consent of the other; and neither party lay down their arms, till the independence of the United States was secured. The American commissioners, Franklin, Deane, and Lee, were received at the court of France as the representatives of a sister nation. M. GERARD was appointed minister to the United States. DR. FRANKLIN, still in France, was the following September, made minister plenipotentiary.

P'T III.  
P'D II.  
CH. VI.

1778

Treaty  
with  
France.

May.  
A French  
minister  
arrives  
with the  
treaty.

11. The British now sent over three men, Carlisle, Eden, and Johnstone, under pretence of treating for peace; but, in reality, to plot secretly against the government established in the United States; and to draw off influential individuals, by direct bribery, and the promises of wealth and titles for the future. Johnstone offered to GEN. REED, if he would aid the royal cause, ten thousand pounds sterling, and any office in the colonies within the king's gift. "I am not," said the patriot, "worth purchasing; but, such as I am, the king of England is not rich enough to buy me."

A plan  
unworthy  
a great  
nation.

12. In some instances, Johnstone had the indiscretion to write. The offended patriots brought forward his letters, which contained the evidence of his base intrigues, and Congress indignantly forbade all farther communication.

---

10. How did the English receive the news of Burgoyne's capture? What important result did the news produce in France? What arrangements were now made by France and the United States?—11. What plan did the British government now resort to? How did Gen. Reed reply to the offer of Johnstone?—12. How did Congress treat those emissaries?

## CHAPTER VII.

Battle of Monmouth.—Seat of war transferred to the South.

**FT. HL.** 1. THE British army on the 18th of June, evacuated Philadelphia, and, marching through New Jersey, now directed their course to New York. Washington left Valley Forge, and adding to his army the New Jersey militia, hung on the rear of the enemy, and brought them to action at Monmouth or Freehold. The advantage was on the side of the Americans. In the beginning of the battle, Gen. Lee was guilty of an inadvertence, which endangered the whole army. Washington rebuked him sternly; for which, Lee afterwards wrote him insulting letters. A court martial censured Lee, and suspended him from his command.

**1778.**  
June 28.  
*MOON.*  
Br. L. 700.  
Am. L.  
not so  
much.

D'Estaing  
and Sullivan  
sent  
to R. I.

2. The French now fitted out a fleet, which, under the COUNT D'ESTAING, left Toulon on the 18th of April, and arrived in America in June. Washington, in order to derive the utmost advantage from the presence of the French fleet, directed an expedition against the British forces at Newport, in Rhode Island. He detached a force of 10,000 troops under the command of GEN. SULLIVAN. By concert with Sullivan, d'Estaing arrived off Newport, on the 25th of July.

Admiral  
Howe  
outwits  
d'Estaing

3. On the 9th of August, Sullivan landed on the north end of Rhode Island. On the 10th, the fleet of Lord Howe appeared in sight, and d'Estaing left Sullivan to give chase to the British admiral. The crafty Howe led him on, and both fleets were soon out of sight. When he returned he was in so shattered a condition, that he left Sullivan, in spite of his remonstrances, to his fate. He narrowly, by good

CHAPTER VII.—1. What did the British army on the 18th of June? Give an account of the battle of Monmouth.—2. What was now done by the French? What plan was conceived by Washington?—3. What was done by Gen. Sullivan? What caused the failure of the expedition?

generalship, escaped falling with his whole army into the hands of the British. An engagement occurred between the hostile armies, at Quaker Hill. These affairs caused Washington much trouble, as they irritated the Americans against the French. . . In June occurred the *massacre at Wyoming*, a well-known delightful valley on the banks of the Susquehannah. The perpetrators were a body of tories and Indians, led by Col. John Butler, a tory, and Brandt, a half-blooded Indian.

P.T. III.  
 P.D. II.  
 CH. VII.  
**1778.**  
*QUAKER HILL.*  
 Br. L. 266  
 Am. L. 211.  
 June.  
 Massacre of Wyoming.

4. In their military operations, the enemy now placed their principal hope of success, in conquering the Southern States. Sir Henry Clinton sent to Georgia 2,500 men, commanded by Col. Campbell. Savannah being unprepared for defence, he defeated the Americans, and then took possession of the city. That part of the American army which escaped, retreated into South Carolina. . . Washington took winter-quarters at Middlebrook, in New Jersey.

Dec. 27.  
 SAVANNAH.  
 Am. L. k. 160,  
 pr. 450,  
 much artillery, etc

5. The capital of Georgia being already in possession of the British, they soon overran the adjacent country. GEN. PREVOST, commander of the troops at St. Augustine, pursuant to the orders of Clinton, left Florida, and, after having in his way taken Sunbury, the only fort which held out for Congress, he arrived at Savannah, where he took the command. The whole of Georgia was now under the authority of the royalists.

**1779.**  
 Georgia overrun.

6. There were tories at the South, though not so many as the British had been led to believe. To encourage them, they moved up the river to Augusta. They sent out many persons to persuade them to take up arms immediately, promising them revenge on their opposers, and great rewards. The

Tories encouraged to rise.

3. What was the loss in the battle near Quaker Hill? Of what party were Butler and Brandt the leaders? Of what massacre were they the perpetrators?—4. What did the enemy now regard as their principal plan of operations? What force was sent from New York? To what place? What was the American loss at Savannah? Where did the remainder of the army go?—5. Give an account of the British movements in Georgia.—6. Were there tories in the South?

**P.T. III.** royalists rose, put themselves under the command of  
**P.D. II.** Col. Boyd, and moving towards the British army,  
**CH. VII.** pillaged, burnt, and murdered on their way. A  
**1779.** Carolinian force, under COL. PICKENS, met them,  
 Col. Pick- and after severe fighting, totally defeated them.  
 ens de-  
 feats the  
 Tories near  
 Augusta.  
 Linco'n at  
 the South.  
 March 3.  
**BRIAR**  
**CREEK.**  
 Am. L.  
 1,600.

7. GEN. LINCOLN now took command of the south-  
 ern forces at Charleston. Intending to recover the  
 upper part of Georgia, he detached Gen. Ashe, with  
 2,000 men, of the Carolina militia, to take post at a  
 strong position, on Briar creek. Here he was com-  
 pletely surprised by Gen. Prevost. The militia fled,  
 without firing a shot; but many of them were  
 drowned in the river, and swallowed up in the  
 marshes.  
 8. Again the British were masters of all Georgia.  
 Gen. Prevost now proceeded to organize a colonial  
 government. . . He defeated the Americans under  
 Gen. Moultrie, and compelled them to evacuate  
 Black Swamp and Purysburg, in which they had  
 placed garrisons. On the 11th of May he appeared  
 before Charleston; but Gov. RUTLEDGE, and Gen.  
 Lincoln, successfully defended the city.

9. In May, Sir H. Clinton sent out from New  
 York a fleet, with a corps of 2,000 men, under Gen.  
 Matthews, to ravage and subdue Virginia. Ports-  
 mouth, Norfolk, Suffolk, and Gosport, were barbar-  
 ously burned. Failing in the grand object of pro-  
 ducing a revolt, Clinton recalled his troops to New  
 York. . . The British again planned to cut off in  
 part the eastern states from the others, by getting  
 the entire command of the waters of the Hudson.  
 Gen. Clinton succeeded in taking the important  
 forts at Stony and Verplanck's Points. The British,  
 however, were not more than six weeks in possession,  
 before they were surprised at Stony Point by a de-

Prevost  
 carries the  
 war into  
 S. C.  
 May 11.  
 At  
 Charles-  
 ton.  
 British in  
 Va. burn  
 several  
 towns.

6. What happened to a party in arms?—7. Who received the  
 command of the southern forces at Charleston? What detach-  
 ment did he send out? What was its fate? What was the  
 American loss?—8. What were now the British operations in  
 Georgia and Carolina? What happened at Charleston?—9. De-  
 scribe the descent made by Gen. Matthews upon Virginia.

tachment of the American army, ably commanded by GEN. WAYNE. His assault of Stony Point, was one of the most brilliant successes of the war. Washington removed the artillery and munitions, dismantled and abandoned the fort.

P.T. III  
P.D. II  
CH. VIII  
**1779**  
July 15  
**STONY**  
**POINT**  
Br. L. 600  
Am. L.  
100.

10. The Connecticut privateers cut off the supplies of the British at New York. Clinton sent a detachment under Tryon to New Haven, which destroyed all the shipping in that port. Tryon then burned *Fairfield, Norwalk, and Greenwich.*

Tryon in  
Conn.  
burns  
several  
towns.

11. To chastise the Indians, Gen. Sullivan, with 3,000 troops, proceeded up the Susquehanna. At Wyoming he was joined by a reinforcement of 1,600 men, under the command of JAMES CLINTON, of New York. The Indians and royalists, under their ferocious leaders, Johnson, Butler, and Brandt, had advanced to Newtown, and there thrown up an entrenchment. Sullivan attacked and defeated them, and laid waste their country.

Aug. 29.  
Sullivan  
defeats the  
Indians.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Campaigns of 1779 and 1780.—The British conquer the South.

1. By previous concert, the French fleet, and the army of Lincoln were to co-operate against the British force, under PREVOST, now at Savannah. A bombardment was commenced by the allies. Fifty-three pieces of cannon, and nine mortars, sent an incessant shower of balls and shells, and the city was on fire in many places. The burning roofs fell upon the women, the children, and the unarmed multitude; and everywhere were seen the crippled, the wounded, and the dying. But the fort remained

Oct. 3.  
Unfortunate  
bombardment of  
Savannah

9. What happened on the shores of the Hudson?—10. What provocation had Conn. given to the British? What was done in retaliation?—11. How were the Indians chastised?

CHAPTER VIII.—1. What now were the French engaged in? What course was taken by d'Estaing? What did the allies agree to attempt? Give an account of the bombardment of Savannah.

P.T. III. uninjured. It was then resolved to assault the town.  
 P.D. II. The flower of the combined armies were led to a  
 CH. VIII. bloody and unsuccessful attack, by the two com-  
 manders, d'Estaing and Lincoln. COUNT PULASKI  
 1779. here fell. The allies, totally defeated, raised the siege.  
 Oct. 3. 2. On the coast of Great Britain, PAUL JONES, a  
 SA. I. A. Y. native of Scotland, but commanding a small fleet in  
 N. A. H. the service of the United States, attacked CAPT.  
 PEARSON, the commander of an English fleet in con-  
 vey of merchant ships. This fierce battle occurred  
 in the night; with the horrible circumstances of  
 magazines of powder blowing up,—vessels taking  
 fire, and sinking,—and the most shocking carnage.  
 In some of the vessels, more than three-quarters of  
 the officers and men were killed. Jones finally pre-  
 vailed.

3. At the close of this year, a dollar in specie could  
 scarcely be obtained for forty in continental bills.  
 But, the paper was fluctuating in its value. Hence  
 a set of men arose, who preferred speculating on  
 this currency, to honest industry; and often in the  
 changes which occurred, the worthless amassed sud-  
 den wealth, while many deserving persons of moder-  
 ate fortunes, sunk at once to poverty. The honest  
 individual of private life, will be surprised to learn  
 another reason of the depreciation of American pa-  
 per. England, on this occasion, turned counterfeiter.  
 Her ministers sent over, and her generals distributed  
 whole chests of spurious bills, so perfectly imitated,  
 as scarcely to be distinguished from the true.

4. Washington took winter-quarters at Morris-  
 town. . . Sir Henry Clinton, with 7,000 men, sailed in  
 December from New York, and soon after his land-  
 ing, menaced Charleston. Gen. Lincoln removed  
 thither with his army; and in conjunction with Gov.  
 RUTLEDGE, tried every measure to put the city in a

1. Give an account of the assault.—2. Who was Paul Jones?  
 Give some account of his sea-fight.—3. What was now the con-  
 dition of the country in regard to the currency? What effect had  
 it on the morals of the people? What had England done to aid  
 in depreciating the currency?—4. Where was Washington?  
 Where did Sir Henry Clinton go?

Paul  
Jones'  
melan-  
choly  
victory.

Public  
Immoral-  
ty caused  
by a fluc-  
tuating  
currency.

England  
counter-  
feits  
money.

Sir H.  
Clinton  
with 7,000  
men at  
the south

Lincoln  
and  
Rutledge.

posture of defence. But they had great difficulties to encounter. The militia had been disbanded; they were dispirited, and were afraid to enter Charleston on account of the small-pox, which was there prevailing.

PT. III.  
P'D. II.  
CH. VIII.  
Their  
discour-  
agements

5. Clinton commenced the siege on the 1st of April. On the 14th, a detachment of the American army, under GEN. HUGER, was defeated at Monk's Corner. Thus the only retreat of the army of Lincoln, was cut off. On the 7th of May, Fort Moultrie was given up. Gen. Lincoln then surrendered his army; which consisted of seven general officers, ten continental regiments, and three battalions. Four hundred pieces of artillery, and four frigates fell into the hands of the enemy.

1780.

May 12  
CHAS.  
TON.  
Am. L.  
Lincoln's  
whole  
army.

6. After taking possession of the capital, Clinton's next object was to make himself master of the whole State. A corps of Carolinians, under Col. Buford, were in arms. COL. TARLETON, noted for rapid movement and unrelenting cruelty, was sent against him at the head of a body of cavalry. He came up with him at Waxhaw, defeated him, and barbarously slew his men, after they had laid down their arms, and while they were crying for quarter.

The Br.  
masters  
of S. C.

Many Carolinians flocked to the royal standard. Clinton wrote to England, that "South Carolina was English again." He published a full pardon to all who should immediately return to their duty. But they must take up arms in support of the royal cause. . . Gen. Clinton distributed his army into the most important garrisons, and leaving Lord Cornwallis in the command of the southern department, he returned to New York.

June 10.  
Clinton  
returns to  
N. Y.

7. The winter had been so severe, that all the waters about New York were frozen. . . *Springfield*,

4. What was the condition of Charleston in regard to defence against invasion?—5. What advantages were gained by the British previous to the 8th of May? What was surrendered?—6. What was Clinton's next object? Who were in arms? Give an account of Tarleton. Of the engagement. What was at this time the position of affairs in South Carolina?—7. Was the winter of 1779-80 severe? What place was burned?

**P.T. III.** in New Jersey, had been burned by the Hessian army.

**P.D. II.**  
**CH. VIII.**

**1780.**  
Congress  
sanctions  
the depre-  
ciation of  
their bills.

Southern  
patriots.

8. Congress now decided, that in future, the continental bills should pass, not at the value indicated by the note, but at such a rate as people were willing to allow. . . . In Carolina and Georgia, the British treated all those who adhered to the republic, with great severity. Against their agreement, they were about to compel them to fight in their armies. They then said, "If we must fight, it shall be for America and our friends,—not for England and strangers."

Heroism  
of the  
women of  
South  
Carolina.

9. The women of Carolina refused their presence at every scene of gayety. Like the daughters of captive Zion, they would not amuse their conquerors. But, at every hazard, they honored, with their attention, the brave defenders of their country. Sisters encouraged their brothers,—the mother her son, and the wife her husband; and their parting advice was, "prefer prisons to infamy, and death to servitude."

Renewal  
of patriot-  
ism.

The wife  
of the  
command-  
er.

10. In every part of the nation that fire of patriotism rekindled, which burned so brightly in the beginning of the revolution. The militia and the men of capital, came forward with alacrity. The women, with **MARTHA WASHINGTON** at their head, formed an industrious society, to make clothing for the soldiers. All seemed ready to contribute, in such ways as they could, to the common cause.

La Fay-  
ette  
returns.

July 10.  
A French  
squadron  
arrives.

11. At this period, La Fayette, who, by leave of Congress had visited France, returned with the cheering intelligence that a considerable body of French troops had embarked for America. The fleet soon arrived, bearing 6,000 soldiers, under the command of the Count de Rochambeau. To pre-

---

8. What did Congress decide respecting the currency? How were the men of the South treated? What did they say?—9. What was the conduct of the women of the South?—10. How did the same spirit manifest itself throughout the nation?—11. At what time did the French squadron arrive? What number of troops came over? Who commanded the French troops?

vent contention, La Fayette had arranged that Ger. P.T. III.  
Washington should be the commander-in-chief of P.D. II.  
all the forces, both French and American, whether en. VIII  
on land or at sea.

12. The insolence of the British troops had aroused 1780.  
the people of North and South Carolina. Among Partisan  
the partisan officers, who headed the resolute parties officers  
which were formed, none rendered such distinguished and men.  
services as COLS. SUMPTER and MARION.  
Their men were such as were contented to serve  
their country, half-clothed, half-fed, and half-armed,  
rather than submit to lose the rights of freemen.  
Frequent skirmishes with the British, at length,  
furnished muskets and cartridges; and Col. Sumpter  
Sumpter  
defeats the  
Br at  
HA VIG-  
ING  
ROCK.  
ter, whose numbers now amounted to 600 men, as-  
saulted the strong post of Rocky Mount, where he  
was repulsed; he then attacked and destroyed a  
British regiment at Hanging Rock.

13. A few regular troops, under the command of  
the BARON DE KALB, had been sent from Maryland Baron de  
for the defence of Carolina. At Deep River they Kalb  
were joined, on the 25th of July, by GEN. GATES, enters N.  
who had been appointed to the command of the C. with a  
southern army. He advanced towards South Carolina force, and  
with a force, now amounting to about 4,000 men. is joined  
Multitudes flocked to join Gates, among whom were by Gates.  
whole companies which had been levied for the service  
of the king. He is  
joined by  
many.

14. LORD RAWDON, who had command of the  
British forces of Carolina, had concentrated them at  
Camden, where he was joined by CORNWALLIS. Aug 16.  
The hostile armies each making an attempt to sur- C.A.M.  
prise the other, met in the darkness of night. Wait- DEN.  
Am. L.  
2,000.  
Br. L. 324

11. Who commanded the whole allied army?—12. What distinguished partisan officers appeared at the South? What kind of men composed their parties? Who was successful at Hanging Rock?—13. Who was sent from Maryland? Who joined him? How large was the southern army? How was the army further enlarged?—14. Where and under whom were the British forces? Describe the meeting of the armies—the arrangements of the generals. Describe the battle of Camden. When did it occur? What was the loss?

PT. III. ing, by mutual consent, for the dawn, they drew up  
 P.D. II. their men for the fight. The American militia fled,  
 CH. IX. and the regulars could not sustain the unequal strife.  
 1780. Gen. Gregory was killed in this disastrous and  
 bloody battle; the BARON DE KALB was mortally  
 wounded. All the artillery, baggage, and stores,  
 Death of de Kalb. fell into the hands of the enemy.

15. After this disastrous defeat, Gen. Gates re-  
 treated to North Carolina, leaving the British tri-  
 umphant in the South. Col. Sumpter, on learning  
 the defeat of Gates, retired with 300 men to North  
 Carolina. Tarleton, with his legion, surprised him  
 on the banks of Fishing Creek. Sumpter, with a  
 few of his men, escaped; but most of them were  
 taken by Tarleton and put to the sword. Marion,  
 who about this time was promoted to the rank of  
 brigadier-general, still kept the field.

Aug. 18.  
 Tarleton  
 defeats  
 Sumpter  
 at Fishing  
 Creek.

General  
 Marion.

## CHAPTER IX.

### Arnold's Treason.

1. ARNOLD did not fully recover from the wounds  
 he received in the battle of Saratoga. Not being  
 able to take the field, he was, by his own request,  
 made commandant of Philadelphia. Here he in-  
 dulged in high play and extravagance of living; by  
 which he expended more than his income. When  
 he found that this was the case, had he possessed the  
 good sense and moral courage to retrench his ex-  
 penses, and give up the vicious habit of gaming,  
 much disgrace and suffering might have been spared.  
 2. But instead of this, he kept on in these expen-  
 sive courses; and set himself to devise expedients,  
 to get the required money. In presenting his ac-

Arnold  
 becomes  
 extrava-  
 gant.

Extrava-  
 gance  
 breeds  
 dishon-  
 esty.

15. What did General Gates? What officer yet made head in  
 South Carolina? What misfortune did he meet? Who yet kept  
 the field?

CHAPTER IX.—1. Give an account of Arnold? When he found  
 his expenses exceeded his income, what ought he to have done?

counts to the government, he made dishonest charges; and when they were challenged, he attempted to carry them through by bluster and bravado. In the end these accounts were disallowed; he was tried for his disrespectful language and behavior to those in authority; and by the sentence of a court martial, reprimanded by Washington.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CII. IX.

1780

3. Revenge was now added to avarice; and Arnold addressed a letter to Col. Robinson, at New York, opening, by this means, a negotiation with Sir Henry Clinton, in which he sold himself to the British, to do their bidding, for the sum of ten thousand pounds, and a commission in the British army.

Revenge  
and trea-  
son follow

The price  
of himself  
and his  
country's  
blood.

4. Instigated by Clinton, he sought and obtained of Washington the command of the fortress at West Point. His first measure was to scatter the army, so that it might be easily cut off by the British. Major André, the young and interesting aid-de-camp of Gen. Clinton, had been by him intrusted to plan with Arnold, how the stronghold of West Point and the American army might be put into the power of the British.

He ob-  
tains the  
command  
at West  
Point.

Major  
André.

5. To concert their last measures, André met Arnold a little below Stony Point. They spent the whole night in conference; and when the day dawned, their arrangements were not all concluded. André was kept in close concealment through the day, and at night he prepared to return. By the entreaties of Arnold, he was prevailed upon to exchange his uniform for a common dress.

Sept. 21.  
They  
have a  
personal  
interview

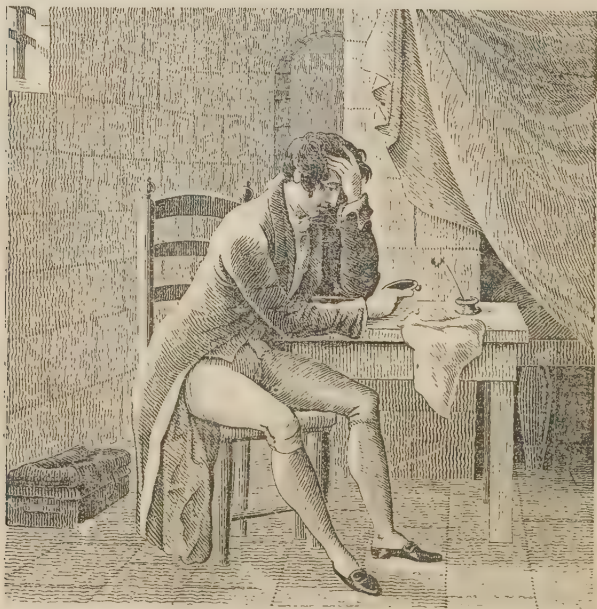
6. It became necessary for him to proceed towards New York by land. He took a horse from Arnold,

---

2. Into what measures did his extravagance lead him? How were his dishonest accounts received? What was done by a court martial?—3. What did Arnold's fierce passions next lead him to? For what did he sell himself?—4. What command did he obtain? Why did he scatter the army? Whom did Sir Henry Clinton authorize to plan with Arnold the delivery of the army?—5. Relate the circumstances of the interview?—What is the meaning at the top of the page? (*Suppose the teacher gives this to the class as the motto or subject of their next composition.*)

P.T. III. and a passport, under the name of John Anderson,  
 P.D. II. Having safely passed the American guard, and  
 CH. IX. reached Tarrytown, near the British posts, three  
 1780. soldiers of the militia crossed his way, and he passed  
 on. One of them thought the traveller had some-  
 thing peculiar in his appearance, and called him  
 back. André inquired, "Where are you from?"  
 "From below" (intending to be understood from  
 New York), replied the soldiers. "So am I," said  
 the self-betrayed André. The soldiers arrested him.

André is  
 taken  
 by three  
 soldiers.



7. André plead earnestly to be released, and offered large sums of money; but the humble patriots spurned the bribe, and were deaf to the entreaty. Their names were John Paulding, David Williams, and Van Weren.

5. Relate the circumstances of André's seizure.—7. What did André? What were the names of the three who seized him?

and ISAAC VAN WERT. They searched his person, and found papers in his boots, in the handwriting of Arnold, which disclosed the treason. They immediately conducted André to Col. Jameson, the officer who commanded the advanced guard, at Salem, near Peekskill. The officer could not be persuaded that his general was a traitor, and he permitted André to write to him. Arnold seized a boat and escaped on board the Vulture, a British ship, which had brought André up the river.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. IX.

1780.

They take him to the nearest American fort.

8. Washington summoned a court-martial, of which Greene and La Fayette were members. André appeared before his judges with a noble frankness. He disguised no fact, and resorted to no subterfuge. His judges, according to the usages of war, were compelled to sentence him to death as a spy. He was accordingly led from his prison to the gallows.

Oct. 2.  
Execution of André.

9. After the battle of Camden, Lord Cornwallis marched into North Carolina. He had sent before him Col. Ferguson with a body of troops. They had committed such shocking outrages, that the people, highly exasperated, had collected in great numbers, under several commanders, the principal of whom were CAMPBELL and SHELBY. They attacked Ferguson on a woody eminence, called King's Mountain. He was killed, and his party totally defeated.

Oct. 7.  
KING'S MOUNTAIN.

10. This was a severe blow to Cornwallis, and rendered his situation in North Carolina precarious. Cols. Sumpter and Marion were on the alert, and his troops were in continual danger of being surprised by these active leaders. He therefore retired to South Carolina, and stationed his army at Winnsborough.

Br. L. 300

Cornwallis retreats to S. C.

11. Tarleton was sent in pursuit of Sumpter. He

---

7. What further happened to André and Arnold?—8. What course did Washington pursue? What was the fate of André?—9. Describe the operations of the British. Who had committed outrages? Who were the leaders of the people? Describe the affair at King's Mountain.—10. Why did Cornwallis now retire to South Carolina?

P'D. III. attacked him at Blackstocks, but was compelled to  
 P'D. II. retreat. Sumpter being dangerously wounded, his  
 CH. X. forces were disbanded. Gen. Gates was now super-  
 1782. seded by GEN. GREENE. This officer found the  
 Affair at army at Charlottetown.  
 BLACK STOCKS.

12. Gen. Leslie, with 1,500 men, having joined  
 Dec. 2. Cornwallis at Winnsborough, his hopes of reducing  
 Gates is North Carolina and Virginia, were renewed. . . .  
 super- Arnold, whom the British had made a brigadier-  
 se ed by general, had been sent to the Chesapeake. He  
 Greene. landed 1,600 men in Virginia, and commenced, what  
 Arnold now seemed his favorite employment, the devasta-  
 makes a descent upon Virginia tion of his country.

---

## CHAPTER X.

Robert Morris.—Revolt of the Pennsylvania line.—Cornwallis at the South.

1. It is scarcely possible to conceive a situation more trying than that of the American Congress. They were striving, not for conquest, but for existence; their powerful foe was in full strength, in the heart of their country;—they had great military operations to carry on, but were almost without an army, and wholly without money, as their bills of credit had ceased to be of any value.

2. But instead of sinking in despair, they redoubled their exertions. They directed their agents abroad to borrow, if possible, from France, Spain, and Holland. They resorted to taxation, and they determined on introducing thorough reform, and strict economy. They accordingly appointed as treasurer, the excellent ROBERT MORRIS, of Philadelphia. By a national bank, to which he obtained

11. Give an account of the affair at Blackstocks. By whom was Gates superseded? Where did Greene find the army?—

12. What can you relate of Arnold?

CHAPTER X.—1. What difficulties had Congress to encounter?—2. What course did they take? Whom did they make treasurer?

the approbation of Congress, he contrived to draw out the money of wealthy individuals; and by borrowing, in the name of the government from this bank, and pledging freely his private credit, he once more put the government in funds. Franklin had obtained from Louis XVI. a gift of six millions of livres; and his guarantee to the States-General of Holland,—which, on this security, lent to Congress the sum of ten millions of livres.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
OIL. X

1780.  
Franklin obtains money from France and Holland.

3. Before these measures had imparted vigor to the fainting republic, an event occurred which threatened its subversion. The Pennsylvania line, amounting to near 1,500 men, were suffering the extremity of want. A violent tumult broke out on the night of the 1st of January. The soldiers declared that they would march, with arms in their hands, to the hall of Congress, and demand justice. It was in vain that their officers attempted to appease them. Their most popular leader, La Fayette, was constrained to quit the camp. Gen. Wayne presented himself boldly among them, with a pistol in his hand, but they menaced his life, and pointed their bayonets, as if to execute their threats.

1781.  
Jan. 1.  
Revolt of the Pa. line.

Jan.

4. Sir Henry Clinton, informed of this revolt, sent three American loyalists, to make the insurgents the most tempting offers. But the commissioners of Congress offered them, at the same time, the earliest possible payment of arrears, an immediate supply of necessary clothing, and an oblivion of the past. The mutineers accepted these proposals; and Congress, in due time, fulfilled the conditions. The Pennsylvanians then delivered up the emissaries of Clinton, who were immediately hanged. . . . The troops of New Jersey next erected the standard of revolt. Washington marched against them with so powerful a force, that he compelled them to submit;

(A pacific course advised by Washington and adopted by congress.)

Clinton's emissaries hanged.

New Jersey troops revolt and are punished.

2. What measures did Morris adopt? What had Franklin obtained?—3. Give an account of the mutiny of Jan., 1781. What was done to overawe, and what to appease the mutineers?—4. What did Sir H. Clinton? How was the difficulty settled? What was done to Clinton's emissaries?

P.T. III and, chastising their leaders with severity, the army  
P.D. II. was no longer disturbed by sedition.

CIL. X.

1781.  
Greene  
separates  
the south-  
ern army.

5. GEN. GREENE separated the southern army, which consisted of 2,000 men, into two parts; and at the head of one division he encamped at the confluence of Hicks' creek with the Pedee; while COL. MORGAN at the head of the other, moved, by his direction, into the western part of the State.

Jan 17.  
COW-  
PENS.  
Br. L. 800.  
Am. L.  
k. 12, w. 60.

6. Cornwallis detached Tarleton, who finding Morgan's division at a place called the Cowpens, attacked with his usual impetuosity. After one of the severest and best-fought engagements of the whole war, the British were entirely defeated, with heavy loss.

Morgan  
pursued  
by Corn-  
wallis.

7. Cornwallis pursued the victorious party. Each army made exertions to reach the fords of the Catawba, before the other. Morgan succeeded, having crossed the river two hours only, when the British appeared on the opposite bank. Night came on, a heavy rain fell, and Cornwallis was obliged to wait three days before the subsiding waters allowed him to pass. Greene here joined Morgan, having left Gen. Huger in command. Another race was begun, from the Catawba to the Yadkin. Again the British commander arrived just as the Americans had crossed, and again Providence interfered in their behalf—the waters rose so that their enemy could not follow them.

Another  
race from  
the Ca-  
tawba to  
the  
Yadkin.

Feb. 9.  
The two  
divisions  
unite.

8. Gen. Greene marched to Guilford, where he was joined by the forces under Gen. Huger. Cornwallis proceeded to the Dan; intending, by reaching these fords before the Americans, to prevent their communication with Virginia. In this, also, he was disappointed.

9. Greene's army had been augmented to 4,400. He now advanced upon his enemy, and took post at

---

4. What happened in regard to the troops of New Jersey?—5. How did Gen. Greene proceed in regard to the southern forces.—6. Relate the affair of the Cowpens, mentioning the loss.—7. Give an account of the race between the two armies.—8. Where was General Greene joined by the forces under Huger? Give a further account of the movements of Cornwallis.

Guilford Court House, about eight miles from the British general. The armies met on the 15th of March. The American regulars fought for an hour and a half with great bravery, and in some instances forced the British to give way. They were, however, at length, compelled to retreat, but it was only step by step, and without breaking their ranks. Cornwallis after a few days' repose, marched towards Wilmington; and from thence into Virginia, to co-operate with Arnold, in subduing that State. Greene proceeded towards Camden, in South Carolina.

P.T. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. XI.

1781.  
March 15  
GUIL-  
FORD  
C. II.  
Am. L.  
1300.  
Br L.  
probably  
more.

## CHAPTER XI.

Campaign of 1781.—Battle of Eutaw Springs.—Cornwallis taken.

1. LORD RAWDON, whom Cornwallis had left to command in Carolina, fixed his head-quarters at *Camden*. Gen. Greene advanced to Hobkirk's Hill, within a mile of Camden, where he intrenched his army. Here the Americans carelessly suffered themselves to be surprised in the night by Lord Rawdon. By good generalship, Greene, however, came near defeating the British; but the advantage in the encounter, was at last with the enemy. Greene retired five miles, and encamped.

НОБ-  
KIRK'S  
HILL.  
L. nearly  
300 on  
each side

2. Rawdon now found his army weakened; and the inhabitants in every direction were rising against him. On the 10th of May he evacuated Camden, and retreated towards Charleston. In two months, most of the upper forts of the British, were either abandoned or taken by the Americans. Marion, Sumpter, and Lee took three of the forts, and 800 prisoners.

May 10.  
Rawdon  
leaves  
Camden.

3. Lord Rawdon now established his camp at

9. Give an account of the battle of Guilford Court House. Where did Cornwallis then go? Where did Greene?

CHAPTER XI.—1. How were the armies in South Carolina now situated? Give an account of the battle of Hobkirk's Hill.—2. What was Rawdon's situation after the battle?

**PT. III.** Orangeburg. Greene pursued him, but finding his  
**P.D. II.** position covered by the windings of the Edisto, he  
**CH. XI.** bent his march on the 16th, to the heights which  
border the Santee. The season proved uncommonly  
**1781.** hot and sickly, and the contending armies, by tacit  
**Hostilities** consent, suspended their operations. . . . A tragic  
**sus-** scene occurred about this time at Charleston, which  
**pended.** greatly irritated the Carolinians. **COL. ISAAC HAYNE**  
**Execution** was executed, without even the form of a trial, by  
**of Col.** order of Lord Rawdon and Col. Balfour.  
**Hayne.**

4. Gen. Greene crossed the Congaree, and descended along its right bank, intending to attack **COL. STUART**, who had succeeded Lord Rawdon in command. This officer fell back upon Eutaw Springs, and thither Gen. Greene pursued him. The armies engaged on the 8th. The battle of Eutaw Springs, is memorable as being one of the most bloody, and valiantly contested fields of the war; and also for being the last of any note that occurred at the South. Greene's army in the first encounter, routed the British, but they found in their flight a house, and other sheltering objects, where they made a stand and rallied. Greene withdrew bearing to his camp 500 prisoners. He with his officers received the thanks of Congress. The British no longer dared to keep the open country, but retired to Charleston. The whole of South Carolina and Georgia, except their capitals, was thus recovered.

**Sept. 8.**  
**EUTAW**  
**SP.**  
**Br. L.**  
**1000.**  
**Am. L.**  
**600.**

**Am. re-**  
**gain the**  
**country.**

**La Fayette**  
**sent**  
**to Va.**

**March 16.**  
**Naval B.**  
**Fr. & Eng.**  
**fleets.**

5. La Fayette, at the head of 1,200 light infantry, was now dispatched by Washington towards Virginia; while a French fleet from Rhode Island, was sent out to cut off the retreat of Arnold from the Chesapeake. But Clinton sent Admiral Arbuthnot, who fought the French off Cape Henry, and obliged them to return. Clinton sent Gen. Philips,

3. Where did each army now move, and where rest for a season? What measure of the British incensed the Carolinians?—4. Give an account of the movements of the armies. Give an account of the battle which now occurred. Why was the battle of Eutaw Springs memorable? What was now the condition of the British in South Carolina?

with 2,000 men, to assist Arnold. La Fayette arrived in time to save Richmond; but he witnessed from that place, the conflagration of Manchester, on the opposite bank of the James.

PT. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. XI.

Manchester  
burned.

6. Cornwallis went to Petersburg, and was there met by Arnold. He then moved the whole army into the interior of Virginia, hoping to overrun and subjugate the State. He harassed the country by sending out his light troops, especially those under Tarleton. They on one occasion, came near taking prisoner Mr. Jefferson, then governor of the State. But he secreted himself and escaped.

Cornwallis and  
Arnold unite.

1781

7. Cornwallis was suddenly recalled to the sea-coast, by an order from Sir Henry Clinton. Fearing that the Americans and French meditated an attack on New York, he had directed Cornwallis to embark 3,000 of his troops for that city. He marched with his army to Portsmouth, where he received counter orders. Clinton having had a reinforcement, he believed he could dispense with further aid; but he ordered Cornwallis to remain upon the coast. This general then marched to Yorktown which he proceeded to fortify.

Sir H. Clinton  
recalls  
Cornwallis.

Remands  
his order.

Aug. 23.  
Cornwallis enters  
Yorktown.

8. Washington had learned that a French fleet with a large force under the COUNT DE GRASSE was to arrive in the Chesapeake. He concerted his measures with Count Rochambeau, the French commander in the United States. The allied force was concentrated in the neighborhood of New York. Sir Henry Clinton believed they meant to attack him there. He was surprised to learn that Washington had directed their march south, through New Jersey; but supposed it a feint to draw his army from their defences; but the allied forces had gone

Washington's  
grand manœuvre.

Allied  
armies  
go to take  
Cornwallis.

5-6. What was done in and near Virginia?—7. Why was Cornwallis recalled to the sea-coast? Where did he fortify?—8. What fleet did Washington expect? With whom did Washington take counsel? Where were the allied forces concentrated? What did Clinton suppose? What in the mean time did Washington do?—What is the heading at the top of the page? (*This would be a good subject for a composition.*)

P.T. III to take Cornwallis, and had so got the start of Clin-  
 P.D. II ton, that he could not now hinder them.

CH. XI.

**1781.**  
 De Grasse  
 enters  
 and blocks  
 up the  
 Ches-  
 apeake.

9. The Count de Grasse, with twenty-five sail of the line, entered the mouth of the Chesapeake, only one hour before Washington arrived at the Head of Elk, and immediately performed the part assigned to him, by blocking up the mouths of the York and James rivers; thus cutting off all communication between the British at Yorktown and New York. A French squadron from Rhode Island, got safely by the British fleet, and brought the artillery necessary for the siege.

Sept. 6.  
 FT.  
 GRIS-  
 WOLD.  
 The garri-  
 son all  
 butchered.

10. Clinton, vainly hoping to make a diversion in favor of Cornwallis, sent the traitor Arnold, lately returned from Virginia, to ravage Connecticut. The garrison of Fort Griswold, in Groton, near New London, being attacked, made a resolute defence. At length they were overpowered. As the British entered, an officer inquired, "Who commands this fort?" "I did," said Col. Ledyard, "but you do now;" and presented his sword. The monster took it and plunged it in his bosom. Scarcely was there a father of a family, in the little town of Groton, but was that night butchered; and almost its entire population became widows and orphans. New London was then burned.

Arnold  
 burns N  
 London

Oct. 14  
 YORK  
 TOWN.  
 Two  
 redoubts  
 taken

11. By the aid of the French fleet, Washington had effected the removal of his army and stores from the Head of Elk. The whole force amounted to 16,000; 7,000 of whom were French. The allies commenced their works at Yorktown on the night of the 6th of October. On the 14th, two redoubts in advance of the English main works were taken; the one by the Americans under LA FAYETTE and

---

9. What fleet arrived? Where? When? What did it perform? How were the allies supplied with artillery?—10. What diversion did Clinton attempt to make in favor of Cornwallis? Relate the capture of Fort Griswold. What was the traitor's next exploit?—11. How was Washington enabled to remove his army and stores? What was the number of the combined army? What was done, and by whom, on the night of the 14th?

COL. HAMILTON, and the other by the French under the BARON VIOMESNIL. P.T. III.

12. Cornwallis had confidently expected aid from Clinton, but becoming discouraged, he made an effort to escape, by crossing the river in the night. His army were to embark in three divisions:—a part had already crossed and landed at Gloucester Point; a part were upon the river; the third division alone had not embarked. The air and the water were calm, and his hopes of escape were high. In a moment the sky was overcast and a tempest arose. The very elements seemed armed against him, as if he were checked by an Invisible Power, which watched over the American people. At dawn the besiegers opened a destructive fire upon him, and he was glad, when the abating tempest allowed, to return to his almost dismantled fortifications. P.D. II.  
CH. XI.

**1781.**  
Cornwal-  
lis at-  
tempts to  
escape.

October  
17 to 19.  
**YORK-  
TO WN.**  
Br. L.  
7,000 pr.,  
60 cannon.  
To the  
French,  
2 frigates,  
20 trans-  
ports.

13. Seeing no hope, the general, on the 17th, sent a flag to Washington, and the terms of surrender were immediately agreed on. A sloop, laden with such persons as Cornwallis selected, was to be allowed to pass, without search or visit, to New York. The whole remaining British force was surrendered to the allies; the land army, with its munitions, to the Americans; the marine, to the French.

14. This event caused a burst of joy throughout America. Nor did the people, or the civil rulers, amid the honors, which were showered upon the American and French commanders, forget to acknowledge their supreme obligation to the GREAT COMMANDER and RULER of armies and of nations. Rejoicings  
public  
and  
devout.

15. Gen. La Fayette, who had sought America in her adversity, left her as soon as prosperity dawned upon her fortunes. He embarked about this time La Fay-  
ette  
returns to  
France.

---

**12.** What reflections might Cornwallis naturally make?—**13.** What step did Cornwallis now take? What were the most important of the terms of surrender? What was surrendered to the Americans? What to the French? How did this surrender affect the Americans?—**14.** What did they remember to acknowledge?

P.T. III. for France; leaving deep, in the hearts of a grate-  
 P.D. II. ful people, the remembrance of his virtues and his  
 CH. XII. services.

## CHAPTER XII.

Vermont.—Measures of Peace.—Fears and discontents of the Army happily quieted.

**1777.** VERMONT was, at this period, an independent nation. Its territory was first settled by grants from Situation of Vermont. New Hampshire, and afterwards decided, by the English government, to belong to New York; and had that State given quiet possession of the soil to those individuals who had purchased, and cultivated farms under New Hampshire, Vermont would now have been a part of its territory. But the attempt having been made to eject those settlers by force, they forcibly resisted. The inhabitants met in convention, in 1777, and declared the New Hampshire grants to be an independent State, under the title of "New Connecticut, alias Vermont;" the first appellation, and the ungraceful "alias," being afterwards dropped. Their affairs were, at first, managed by several of the leading men, called "a Council of Safety." Their first legislature met at Windsor, in March, 1778.

Declares  
itself inde-  
pendent.

Exhaustion of the  
U. S.

2. It was most fortunate for America that the result of the last campaign had been favorable; for such was the extreme poverty of the government, that it seems impossible that another could have been sustained. The several State governments wholly failed of paying their taxes; alleging the utter inability of the people to meet further taxation.

3. The people of England had also felt very se-

**15.** Where was now the most generous of the defenders of America?

CHAPTER XII.—**1.** What was Vermont? Under what State had the first settlements been made? What State afterwards laid claims to the settlements? How did the settlers proceed? By whom were their affairs first managed?—**2.** What was the condition of the United States at the close of the war?

verely their great expenses; and on hearing the disasters which had attended their arms, they murmured against the government for continuing the war. The house of commons, moved by this expression of feeling, as well as by the eloquent speeches of Gen. Conway, and others, voted, "that they should consider as enemies to his majesty and their country, all who should advise, or attempt, a further prosecution of offensive war on the continent of America."

4. To be ready for overtures of peace, Congress appointed as their agents, four distinguished men, already in Europe,—DR. FRANKLIN, JOHN ADAMS, JOHN JAY, and HENRY LAURENS. Mr. Adams procured, from the States of Holland, on the 19th of April, the recognition of American Independence. On the 8th of October, he obtained a treaty of amity and commerce; and, not long after, a loan of money; to the great relief of his exhausted country.

5. *On the 20th of January, 1783, preliminary articles of peace were signed at Versailles.* The definitive treaty was deferred until the adjustment of affairs between England and France, and was not signed until the 3d of September. The terms granted to the Americans by this treaty, in respect to the extent of territory, and right to the fisheries, were equal to their most sanguine expectations. It was a treaty which made America independent, in fact, as well as in name. Great Britain preferred this, to her becoming a dependent on France, of which she had some fears.

6. The officers of the army feared, that if they should disband, themselves and their services would be forgotten. Some were ambitious; and thought that if a monarchy should succeed, they might be-

PT. III.  
P.D. II.  
CH. XII.

**1781**  
Feb.  
Parliament  
takes  
measures  
for peace.

**1782.**  
Franklin,  
Adams,  
Jay, and  
Laurens.

April 19.  
Holland  
recognizes  
Am.  
independ-  
ence.

**1783.**  
Sept. 13.  
Peace of  
Ver-  
sailles.

Discon-  
tents  
among the  
officers.

3. What was the state of public feeling in England? What resolution passed in parliament?—4. What men were chosen by Congress? For what purpose? What was procured from Holland? By whom?—5. When were the preliminaries of peace signed, and where? What was deferred? Till what time? What can be said of the terms of the treaty as regards the United States?—6. What fears had the officers of the army? What ambitious project had some of them?

P.T. III. come dukes or earls. A letter was addressed by one  
 P.D. II. of these to Washington, endeavoring, in a smooth  
 CIL. XII. and artful strain, to persuade him, that a monarchy  
 1783. was the most desirable form of government, and  
 A rebuke. himself a suitable man for king. Washington re-  
 plied, that "he viewed such ideas with abhorrence,  
 and must reprehend them with severity."

7. But the discontents of the army remained ; and  
 Washington repeatedly urged Congress to attend to  
 their just claims. While the army were lying at  
 Newburg, an anonymous paper, able, but seditious,  
 was circulated. The advice that it contained was,  
 that the officers should cease to *petition* Congress,  
 but march with arms in their hands, and *demand*  
 justice. Washington had foreseen such a crisis, and  
 had remained with the army. His monitory voice  
 was heard, as he exhorted the officers not to tarnish  
 their fame, pure and bright as it was ; but to believe  
 and trust, that their country would yet be grateful  
 for their devotion and services. To Congress, Wash-  
 ington wrote ; and in the most forcible language,  
 presented the claims and great merits of those who  
 had breasted the common danger, and gained for  
 all the inestimable prize.

8. Congress used their utmost exertions to meet  
 the exigency. They commuted the half-pay, which  
 had been pledged, for a sum equal to five years' full  
 pay. The officers were satisfied, and the army  
 peaceably disbanded. . . . On the 19th of April, just  
 eight years from the battle of Lexington, the joyful  
 certainty of peace was proclaimed from head-quar-  
 ters to the American army. On the 25th of No-  
 vember, the British troops evacuated New York,  
 and a detachment entered it from the army of the  
 new republic.

---

6. What letter was addressed to Washington ? How did it  
 affect his mind ?—7. Give a further account of the discontents of  
 the army. What paper was circulated ? What did it propose ?  
 How did Washington meet this crisis ? To what did he exhort  
 the officers ? How did he write ?—8. What did Congress ? What  
 did then the officers ? What happened on the 19th of April ?  
 What on the 25th of November ?

The  
 Newburg  
 address.

Wash-  
 ington ex-  
 hibits the  
 sublime of  
 his char-  
 acter.

April 19.  
 War  
 closes  
 after just  
 eight  
 years.

9. On the 4th of December, Washington *parted* **PT. III.**  
*from his officers* at New York. . . . A day was ap- **P.D. II.**  
 pointed at Annapolis, where Congress were sitting, **CH. XIII.**  
 and in the presence of a large and deeply affected  
 audience, *he resigned his offices*, and commending **1783.**  
 his country to the protection of God, retired to **D.C. II.**  
 Mount Vernon, followed by the benedictions of **W. St-**  
 America, and the admiration of the world. **ington re**  
**signs**

## CHAPTER XIII.

Depression subsequent to the war.—Shay's Rebellion.—Constitu-  
 tion formed.

1. At the close of the war, debts encumbered the  
 General and State governments. Heavy burdens  
 were necessarily laid upon the people, who were so  
 poor as to be often nearly destitute of the necessa-  
 ries of life. The distress of the country at length  
 produced insurrections. **1784.**  
**Disres-**  
**es, dis-**  
**contents,**  
**and insur-**  
**rections.**

2. In August, nearly 1,500 insurgents assembled  
 under arms at Northampton. They took possession  
 of the court-house, to prevent the sittings of the  
 court, and the issuing of executions. The next  
 month a similar scene occurred at Worcester. The  
 leader was DANIEL SHAYS. At the head of 300 men  
 he marched into Springfield, and barred the court-  
 house against the supreme court. GEN. SHEPARD  
 at the head of 1,200 men, was sent to Springfield;  
 where the multitude refusing to lay down their arms,  
 he fired upon them, and killed three men. The riot-  
 ers fell into confusion, and soon dispersed. Four-  
 teen only were sentenced to death, and these were  
 afterwards pardoned. **1787.**  
**"Shay's"**  
**rebellion.**

Shepard  
 sent to  
 Spring-  
 field.

3. The articles of confederation, although they

9. What occurred on the 4th of Dec.? On the 23d?

CHAPTER XIII.—1 What was the condition of the country?  
 What was the consequence of this extreme depression?—2. Re-  
 late the circumstances of Shay's rebellion. How was it quelled?  
 How was the affair finally disposed of?

**P.T. III.** had served, during the pressure of danger, to keep  
**P.D. II.** the several parts of the nation together, were now  
**OU. XIII.** found inadequate. Congress had no authority to  
 Defects in the govern- *enforce* its ordinances; and now, that the pressure  
 ment. of public danger was removed, they were contemned  
 Articles of confeder- and disregarded.—A convention of delegates, from  
 ation. five of the middle States, met at Annapolis, in 1786,  
**1786.** who came to the conclusion, that a thorough reform  
 Delegates meet from of the existing government, would alone be effectual  
 five for the welfare of the country; and Congress passed  
 States. a resolution, recommending *a general convention of  
 delegates to be holden at Philadelphia.*

**1787.** 4. In May, 1787, the convention met, and instead  
 of amending the articles of confederation, they pro-  
 ceeded to form a new constitution. Their debates  
 Constitution were long and arduous. Much honest difference of  
 framed at Phila. opinion existed; in particular, where the strength of  
 the new government came in question. On the one  
 Honest difference of opinion. hand it was contended, that, if the government was  
 made too weak, a state of anarchy, and consequent  
 revolution, would ensue; on the other, that if it were  
 made too strong, America would lose those blessings  
 of liberty, which she had bled to obtain; and only  
 make an exchange of foreign, for domestic oppres-  
 sion. Those in favor of holding the States strongly  
 united, were called, at this time, *Federalists*, and  
 their opponents, at first, *Anti-federalists*—afterwards  
*Republicans.*

5. Other points of dispute arose, which were still  
 Points in the slave more dangerous, because they divided parties by  
 question agitated geographical lines. The most difficult of these, re-  
 and com- garded the representation, in Congress, of the slave-  
 promised. holding States. The slaves were at length allowed

---

3. Why was the government, as it then existed, found made-  
 quate? Where did a convention meet? At what conclusion did  
 they arrive? What resolution was passed by Congress?—4.  
 What important assemblage convened in May, 1787? What did  
 they proceed to do? In what respect was there an honest differ-  
 ence of opinion in the minds of the framers of the constitution?  
 What was maintained by each side? Who were called federal-  
 ists, and who anti-federalists?—5. What other point of dispute  
 was there, more difficult than any other?

to be reckoned, in settling the quota of direct taxes and representatives, as equal to three-fifths of an equal number of free white inhabitants.\* That these great difficulties were compromised, holds up this convention as an example to future times, of the triumph of strong patriotism and honest zeal for the public welfare, over party feeling and sectional prejudice.

P'T. III.  
P'D. II.  
CH. XIII.

1787.

\* This the northern States wished, as it lightened their taxes.

6. The supreme authority, in whose name the Constitution is promulgated, is that of "the people of the United States;" the objects for which they ordain and establish, and bind themselves to obey its precepts, are "to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to themselves and their posterity."

Its mandates from "the people."

Its objects.

7. The *legislative* power of the Federal Union, is vested in a senate and house of representatives, the latter is to be chosen for two years, by electors qualified to choose representatives to the State legislatures;—each to have been for seven years an inhabitant of the United States, and at least twenty-five years of age. Representatives are to be appointed in each State, according to the number of the inhabitants; though there must never be more than one representative to thirty thousand people. Lest the Congress should become too numerous, the apportionment is varied, once in ten years; or after the taking of each census.

The people represented by the lower house.

8. The senate is composed of two members from each State, to be chosen by the State legislatures. The term of service is six years; but the first senate was to be so chosen, that one-third of the members had two years to remain in office, another four, and another six; so that, thereafter, no more than one-

The States represented by the senate.

5. How was it disposed of? What may we say of this convention?—6. What is the supreme authority in which the Constitution is promulgated? What are the objects for which it was established?—7. In what is the legislative power vested? How are representatives chosen—and for what time? By whom? How are they apportioned?—8. Of how many members is the senate composed? What their term of office?

**PT. III.** third of the senate should be composed of new mem-  
**P.D. II.** bers. A senator must have been an inhabitant of  
**CH. XIII.** the country nine years, and be not less than thirty years of age.

**Presiding officers.** 9. The house of representatives choose their pre-  
 siding officer, who is called the speaker. The senate  
**Time.** are presided over by the vice-president of the United States. Congress must sit as often as once a year, and the ordinary sessions commence on the first Monday in December. The president is empowered to call extra sessions.

**The rep- resenta- tives have the purse.** 10. All bills for raising a revenue, must originate in the house of representatives. While the execu-  
**The exec- utive the sword.** tive bears the public sword, the branch nearest the people, carries the purse. . . . The *executive* power is vested in a president and vice-president; each chosen for a term of four years; each to be a native born citizen, and to have attained the age of thirty-five. The president is commander-in-chief of the army and navy when in actual service. With the consent of two-thirds of the senate, he is vested with the power to make treaties, to appoint ambassadors, judges of the supreme court, and many other officers.

**The judi- cial power.** 11. The *judicial* power is vested in one supreme court, and such other courts as Congress may estab-  
**Impeach- ment.** lish. The judges retain their offices during good behavior. They, as well as the president and vice-president, may be impeached by the house of representatives, and tried by the senate.

**1787.** 12. Towards the close of this period, Virginia,  
**The North- west erected into a territory.** North Carolina, and Georgia, extended to the Mississippi. The great tract, north of the Ohio river, was formed by Congress into the Northwest Territory.

---

9. Who chooses the presiding officer of the house of representatives? What is he called? Who is the presiding officer of the senate? How often must Congress sit?—10. What bills must originate in the house of representatives? Who bears the sword? Who the purse? Where is the executive power vested? What is requisite to make a person eligible? What power has the president? How are treaties made?—11. Where is the judicial power vested? By whom are impeachments made? Who tries them?

The original charters of Connecticut, Massachusetts, and Virginia, gave to these States title to large portions of its lands; but, Congress had previously compromised with these States, and extinguished their claims; except to certain specified reservations. Connecticut had a large reservation in the northeast part of Ohio; by means of which, she obtained the nucleus of her school fund.

13. The bill for the erection of the *Northwest Territory*, passed Congress in 1787. While it was pending, Mr. Jefferson introduced and carried an amendment, forever excluding slavery from that extensive region. A territorial government was here first introduced into the American system. The general government appoints for the Territory its executive and high judicial officers, while the people exercise, by an assembly of delegates, the legislative power.

PT. III.

PT. II.  
CH. XIIIThree  
States re-  
linquish  
claims.Conn.  
school  
fund.Slavery  
prohibited  
in the  
N. W.First ter-  
ritorial  
govern-  
ment

## EXERCISES ON THE TREE CHRONOGRAPHER.

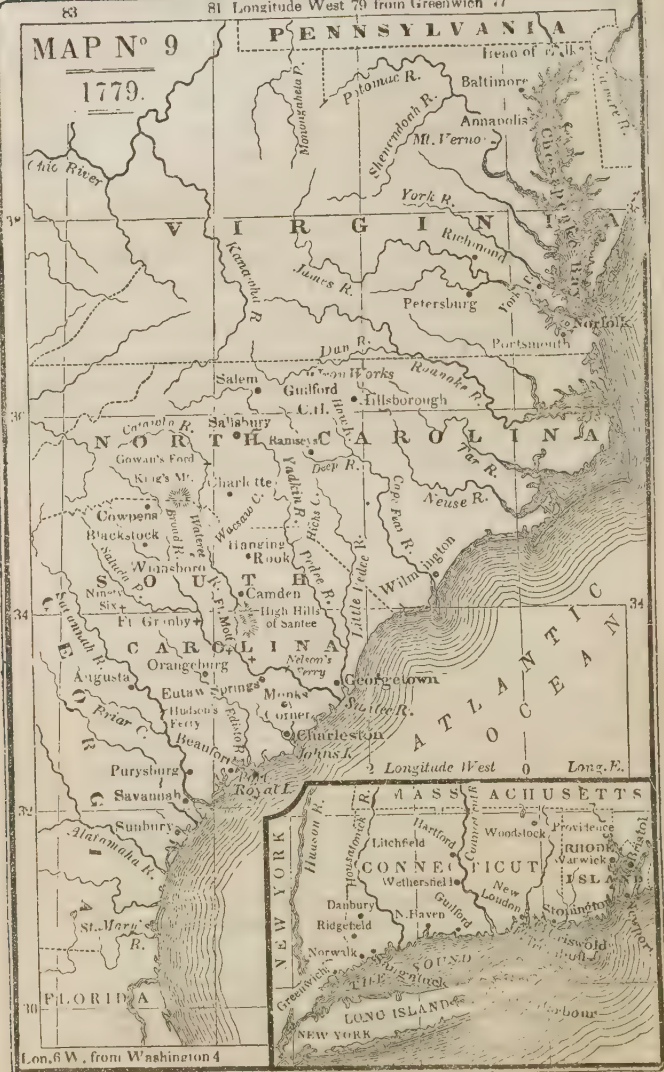
(For Period II., Part III.)

What event marks the beginning of this period? What is its date? Point out its place on the chronographer. Also show the places of the following events according to their dates: The Americans were defeated at the battle of Long Island, Aug., 1776. They defeat the Hessians at Trenton, Dec., 1776, and the British at Princeton, Jan., 1777. Dr. Franklin was sent on a mission to France, and Lafayette offered his services to Congress, in 1777. Burgoyne surrendered to General Gates, Oct., 1777. France made a treaty with the United States, in 1778. The battle at Savannah, and the naval victory of Paul Jones, occurred in 1779. Arnold's treason was 1780. Cornwallis' surrender at Yorktown, Oct., 1781. The treaty of peace was signed Sept. 3, and Washington resigned, Dec. 23, 1783. The N. W. Territory was erected, 1787.

*Note*—These exercises will not be continued through the last part of the History, as both teachers and pupils will now fully understand the use of the Chronographer without such assistance. Nor can it be equally useful in the last part of the History. As the country increases, events crowd; and a large chronographer is required.

MAP N<sup>o</sup> 9

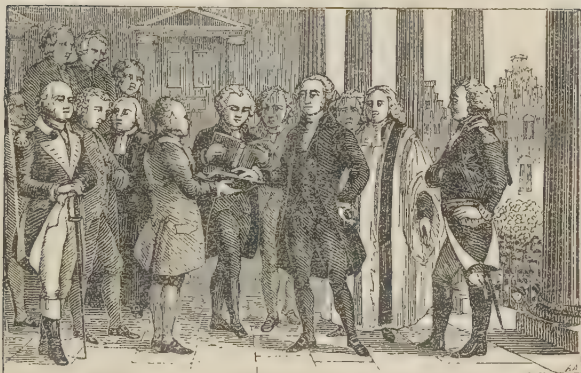
1779.



Long. 6 W. from Washington 4

# PART IV.

FROM 1789 TO 1860.



Washington's Inauguration.

## PERIOD I.

FROM

THE FINAL ADOPTION OF } **1789** { THE FEDERAL CONSTITUTION,

TO

THE PURCHASE } **1803.** { OF LOUISIANA.

## CHAPTER I.

Organization of the new Government.—The Funding System. --  
Party lines strongly drawn.

1. WHEN Washington retired at the close of the war, he had fully intended to pass the residue of his days in domestic retirement. The first summons which he received to quit his delightful retreat, was when the legislature of Virginia chose him first delegate to the convention, which framed the Constitution. With reluctance he consented to the pleas of

P.T. IV.  
P.D. I.  
CIL. I.

**1787.**  
Conven-  
tion  
at Annap-  
olis.

CHAPTER I.—1. What had been Washington's intention when he left the army? What was the first time he was induced to violate it?

**P.T. IV.** friendship, and the call of public duty. He was  
**P.D. I.** made president of the convention by a unanimous  
**CH. I.** vote.

**Washington pre-** 2. The Constitution being adopted, the universal  
**sides.** voice of the nation called him forth, to organize the  
 government. A special messenger from the president  
 of Congress, brought him the official intelligence of his  
 election to the presidency, and in two days he set  
**Unani-** out for *New York, where Congress first convened.*  
**mously**  
**elect-**  
**ed president.**

**1789.** 3. The ceremony of his inauguration was wit-  
 nessed with inexpressible joy. He made an address  
 to Congress, in which he offered his "fervent suppli-  
 cations to the Almighty Being, whose providential  
 aid can supply every human defect, that his bene-  
 diction would consecrate to the liberties and happi-  
 ness of the people of the United States, a govern-  
 ment instituted by themselves; and would enable  
 every officer to execute with success, the functions  
 allotted to his charge."

**Congress** 4. Congress made it their first object to establish  
**lay duties** a revenue, sufficient for the support of government,  
**on mer-** and for the discharge of the debt, contracted during  
**chandise** the Revolutionary War. For this purpose, they laid  
**and** duties on the importation of merchandise, and on  
**tonnage.** the tonnage of vessels.—The first appointed under  
 the Constitution as the heads of departments, were,  
 Thomas Jefferson, secretary of state, Alexander  
 Hamilton, of the treasury, and General Knox, of the  
 department of war. The small navy was assigned  
 to the care of the latter.

**The first** 5. During this session, it was proposed to amend  
**secretaries,** the Constitution. Congress agreed upon twelve new  
**Jefferson,** articles, which were submitted to the respective  
**Hamilton,** State legislatures; and being approved by three-  
**and Knox.** fourths of these bodies, they became a part of that  
 instrument.

**Constitu-** 1. Of what body was he made president? How?—2. By what  
**tion** vote was he elected president of the U. S.? Where did Congress  
**amended.** at this time meet? Did their messenger wait long for Washing-  
 ton?—3. Give some account of his inauguration.—4. What did  
 Congress make their first object? Who were made heads of de-  
 partments?—5. What was done respecting the Constitution?

6. Mr. Hamilton, early in the second session, brought forward his celebrated report, which was drawn up with a masterly hand. He showed the importance of public credit, and proposed assuming, or funding, not only the public debt, amounting to fifty-four millions of dollars, but also the State debts, estimated at twenty-five millions; and of making permanent provision for the payment of the interest, by imposing taxes on certain articles of luxury, and on spirits distilled within the United States.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. I.  
CH. I.

1790.  
Hamilton's  
funding  
system.

7. The debates on this report produced an irritation of feeling, which in the event, shook the foundation of the government; and they may fairly be said to be the origin of that violent party spirit, which, under the names of Federalists and Republicans, for thirty years arrayed one part of the American community against the other. Mr. Hamilton's plan was finally adopted; and at the same time a law passed fixing the seat of government where it now is. The debt funded, amounted to a little more than seventy-five millions of dollars; upon a part of which, an interest of three per cent. was paid, and on the remainder six per cent.

Heated  
debates  
and party  
animosities.

8. Rhode Island had refused to send delegates to the convention, which formed the Constitution; and neither that State, or North Carolina had accepted it at the time of its adoption. North Carolina acceded to it in November, 1789; Rhode Island in May, 1790. . . . An act was passed, accepting the cession of the claims of North Carolina, to a district west of that State; and a territorial government was established by Congress, under the title of "the Territory of the United States, south of the Ohio."

1790.  
N. C. and  
R. I. ac-  
cede to  
the con-  
stitution.

Tennessee  
made a  
territory.

9. Kentucky was separated from Virginia, and also erected into an independent government, re-

1791.

---

6. Give an account of Mr. Hamilton's system of funding the public debts?—7. What effect did its introduction produce in Congress? Was it adopted? What other law was passed at the same time?—8. What two States at first refused to adopt the Constitution? When did they agree to it? What territory was taken from N. C.?

P.T. IV. ceiving its name from its principal river.—*A na-*  
 P.D I. *tional bank* was, during this session, recommended  
 CH. II. by Mr. Hamilton, and passed through Congress, al-  
 though it met a violent opposition from the Repub-  
**1791.** lican party. After deliberate investigation, the  
 A national president was convinced of its constitutionality  
 bank es- and utility, and gave it his signature. The bank  
 tablished. was established at Philadelphia, with a capital of  
 ten millions of dollars.

Feb. 18. 10. VERMONT was, in 1791, admitted as one of  
 Vermont the States of the Union....In that year, the first  
 admitted to the census of the United States was completed. The  
 Union. number of inhabitants was 3,929,000; of whom,  
 695,000 were slaves. The revenue amounted to  
 4,771,000 dollars, the exports to 19,000,000, and the  
 Oct. imports to about 20,000,000.....In October, the  
 Number second Congress apportioned the number of rep-  
 of repre- resentatives, according to the census. After much  
 sentatives, disagreement, they fixed the ratio at one for every  
 1 to 33,000. thirty-three thousand inhabitants.

## CHAPTER II.

The Moravians.—The Indians of the Northwest.

1. THAT devoted Christian people, the *Moravian*  
 From *Brethren*, made, during the Revolution and the  
**1760** twenty years preceding, the most earnest and self-  
 to sacrificing efforts to convert the Indians. The prin-  
**1782.** cipal leader of their faithful band of missionaries was  
 ZEISBERGER; and the principal places where they  
 went among the Indians and dwelt with them, call-  
 ing them brethren, were in Pennsylvania (where, at

9. What was done respecting a national bank?—10. In what year was Vermont admitted into the Union? What in 1790 was the number of inhabitants in the Union? The amount of revenue? Of exports? Of imports? What the ratio of apportionment?

CHAPTER II.—1. What description is given of the Moravian Brethren? What was done by them and when? Who was Zeisberger?

Bethlehem and Nazareth, were their principal seats), in New York, and in Ohio. Previous to the year 1782, they had baptized 720 of the natives. . . . The most disgraceful massacre which stains the page of American history, was that of a party of 96 of these peaceful Indian converts. It occurred on the banks of the *Muskingum*, and was the work of a band of fanatical American marauders, who impiously considered themselves, as were the Jews of old, a chosen people commissioned to destroy the heathen.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. I.  
CH. II.

Sept.  
**1782.**  
Moravian  
Indian  
converts  
massacre  
on the  
*MUS-  
KINGUM*

2. After the treaty with Great Britain, that nation refused to deliver up Detroit and other posts in the western country; alleging that the Americans had not fulfilled certain stipulations of the treaty. These posts became the rallying points of the combined savage tribes, who, under MICHIKINQUA, the chief of the Miamies, called "the Little Turtle," now ravaged the frontiers of the United States. Pacific arrangements were attempted by the president, but without effect. On their failure, GEN. HARMAR was sent from Fort Washington, on the site of Cincinnati, with a force amounting to 1,400 men. In an engagement near Chillicothe he was defeated with loss.

Harmar's  
defeat at  
*CHIL-  
LICO*

3. GEN. ST. CLAIR, in October of the following year, with 1,400 men, marched into the wilderness, near to the Miami villages. He and his officers were asleep, while at dead of night the savage chieftains assembled in council. At dawn, the terrified Americans were roused by the war-whoop. The carnage was indescribable. Not more than one-quarter of the Americans escaped; and their whole camp and artillery, fell into the hands of the savages.

**1792**

October.  
St. Clair's  
defeat at  
the  
*MIAMI  
VIL-  
LAGES*  
Am. L.  
1,000.

4. *Kentucky* was admitted into the Union in 1792. . . . A mint was established by Congress; and

A mint.

1. Where were the principal seats of their colonies? How many had they baptized in 1782? Give an account of the massacre of the Muskingum.—2. What did the British refuse to do after the peace? What did these forts become? What party was first defeated by the Indians? Where?—3. Give an account of St. Clair's defeat.—4. What was done in 1792? What in 1793?

PT. IV. the division and value of the money, to be used  
 P.D. I. throughout the country, was regulated by statute,  
 CH II and called Federal money." . . . Gen. Washington  
**1793.** was again elected president, and in March, 1793,  
 Decimal was inaugurated. John Adams was also re-elected  
 values in- vice-president.  
 introduced.

5. The party spirit which had already agitated the whole Union, raged with increased violence. The democratic or republican party, were charged by the federalists with abetting all the crimes of the French revolutionists, who had just beheaded their king; while the federal party were accused by the democratic, of being in favor of monarchical principles, and under the influence of Great Britain.

Party  
spirit.

April 22.  
Washington's  
neutrality.

6. Information was received of the declaration of war by France, against Great Britain and Holland. Washington was an American, and he did not choose to involve his country in the contests of Europe. He accordingly, with the unanimous advice of his cabinet, issued a proclamation of neutrality. This measure contributed, in a great degree, to the prosperity of America; whose proper maxim was, and is, "Friendship with all; entangling alliances with none."

April.  
Arrival of  
Genet.

Congress  
sustain  
the execu-  
tive.

Feb. 1.  
**1794.**  
Fauchet  
arrives.

7. M. GENET, who was appointed by the French republic, arrived in Charleston, S. C. The flattering reception he met with, induced him to take the presumptuous measure of attempting to induce the American people to embark in the cause of France, whatever might be the determination of their government. This turned many against him. The conduct of the administration towards M. Genet, was approved by Congress. France, at the request of the president, annulled his powers, and he was succeeded by M. FAUCHET.

8. At Pittsburg a meeting of citizens was held,

---

5. What was the state of parties?—6. With what powers was France at war? What course did Washington take? What is the proper maxim of America?—7. What was done by the French minister? What part did Congress take? By whom was Genet succeeded?

and an opposition to the law of Congress, laying a duty on distilled spirits, agreed on. The marshal of the district, was seized by armed men, and compelled to enter into an engagement to refrain from executing the duties of his office; and other public officers were maltreated. The number of the insurgents was calculated at seven thousand. Washington made requisitions on the governors of New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Maryland, and Virginia, for 15,000 militia. These, under command of Gov. Lee, of Virginia, marched into the revolted district. Such salutary terror was inspired, that no farther opposition was attempted.

PT. IV.  
P.D. I.  
CH. II

1794.  
Whiskey  
insurrec-  
tion in Pa.

October  
Gov.  
Lee sent  
against  
the insur-  
gents.

9. A war between the United States and England was, at this time, apprehended. The Americans were accused of preventing the loyalists from regaining possession of their estates, and British subjects from recovering debts made before the war. On their part, they complained of the arrogant pretensions of England, in regard to navigating the sea; and also, that the military posts of the western wilderness were still retained, contrary to the treaty; and that the Indians were, by their garri-sons, incited to make incursions upon their frontier settlements,—and sheltered in their forts, as they returned from midnight burning and murder.

Mutual  
com-  
plaints of  
the Brit-  
ish and  
Ameri-  
cans.

10. Congress passed bills laying an embargo for thirty days—for erecting fortifications—for raising a provisional army, and for organizing the militia. To avert, however, if possible, the calamity of another war, Mr. JAY was sent to England, to negotiate, with the British government.

April.  
Mr. Jay  
sent to  
England

11. Gen. St. Clair was succeeded by GEN. WAYNE, to whom the Indians gave the name of the "Black-Snake." Many had forsaken their alliance, and the Little Turtle believing that the Indians would be defeated, would have persuaded them to peace. "We shall not surprise them," said he; "for they

8. Give an account of the whiskey insurrection in Pa.—9. Why was a war with England apprehended?—10. What laws were passed by Congress? Who was sent to England? For what?

P.T. IV. have now a chief that never sleeps." But the coun-  
 P.D. I. cil overruled his opinion. Wayne attacked and  
 CH. II. completely routed the confederacy, near the mouth  
 1794. of the river Au Glaize. The British, at the neigh-  
 Aug 20. boring fort, who had incited the Indians, now re-  
 Wayne's fused to shelter them. By this means they lost all  
 victory influence with them, and the savages made peace.  
 at the  
 AU  
 GLAIZE.

12. Mr. Jay having negotiated a treaty with  
 Great Britain, returned in the spring of 1795. His  
 treaty provided that the posts which the British  
 had retained, should be given up to the Americans,  
 and compensation made for illegal captures; and that  
 the American government should hold £600,000,  
 in trust for the subjects of Great Britain to whom  
 American citizens were indebted. But it did not  
 prohibit the right of searching merchant vessels,  
 which was claimed by the British.

Nov. 19.  
 Jay's  
 Treaty  
 with  
 England.

13. While the senate was debating with closed  
 doors, a member had given an incorrect copy to a  
 printer. It was circulated with rapidity, and pro-  
 duced great irritation. The senate, after much de-  
 bate, accepted the treaty. The president received  
 addresses from every part of the Union, praying him  
 to withhold his signature; but Washington, believ-  
 ing the conditions to be the best which, under ex-  
 isting circumstances, could be obtained, signed it  
 in defiance of popular clamor. . . . Treaties were  
 also made with the *western Indians*, with *Algiers*,  
 and with *Spain*. By the latter, the Mississippi was  
 made the western boundary, and a right to the nav-  
 igation of the river and to the use of New Orleans  
 as a place of deposit, was secured to the United  
 States. . . . In 1796, *Tennessee* was admitted to the  
 Union.

Passes the  
 senate,  
 and is  
 signed by  
 Wash-  
 ington.

1795.  
 Treaty  
 with  
 Spain.

1796.

14. The French government tried various means

- 
11. Give an account of Gen. Wayne's operations at the West.  
 —12. When did Jay's treaty arrive? What were its provisions?  
 —13. What happened while the treaty was before the senate?  
 What was the consequence, and what was done in reference to  
 the treaty? What other business was transacted at this time in  
 Congress?

to flatter and cajole the Americans into aiding them in their European wars; but finding a steady system of neutrality maintained, they began depredating on the American commerce—their cruisers being encouraged in capturing the vessels of the United States.

P.T. IV.

P.D. I.  
CH. II.

1796.

French  
aggression.

15. As the period for a new election of president of the United States approached, Gen. Washington publicly signified his determination to retire to private life. He received addresses from every part of the country, which, though expressing regret at the loss of his services, yet congratulated him on the astonishing increase of national wealth and prosperity, during the period of his administration over a country, which was more indebted to him, than to any other human being, not only for its prosperity, but for its very existence.

National  
pros-  
perity.

16. On retiring, Washington published a Farewell Address, in which he called on his countrymen to cherish an immovable attachment to the NATIONAL UNION. He recommended the most implicit obedience to the acts of the established government, and reprobated all obstructions to the execution of the laws,—all combinations and associations, with the design to overawe the constituted authorities. Good faith and equal justice should be observed towards all. Honesty, no less in public, than in private affairs, is the best policy. Religion and morality are the pillars of human happiness. These great truths, with others, were taught us, as parting precepts, by OUR PARENTAL FRIEND, whose fame, for wisdom, gathers brightness as time passes on.

Wash-  
ington's  
farewell  
address.

14. What was the conduct of the French?—15. What determination had Washington made?—16. What can you repeat of Washington's Farewell Address?

## CHAPTER III.

America resents the indignities of France.—Adams's Administration.—Jefferson's.

**PART IV.** 1. THE party candidates for president, were  
**PART I.** Thomas Jefferson, on the part of the republicans,  
**CH. III.** and John Adams, on that of the federalists. **MR.**  
**1797.** **ADAMS**, was elected president, and **MR. JEFFERSON**,  
 March 4. vice-president. . . Mr. Adams received intelligence  
 President, of an open insult on the part of the French govern-  
 Jefferson vice-ment, now in the hands of the directory. They had  
 president desired the American minister to quit France, and  
 In-sult determined not to receive another, until the United  
 from States had complied with their demands.  
 France.

2. Mr. Adams, to show his desire for peace, notwithstanding this ill-usage, appointed three envoys-extraordinary to the French republic; but they, instead of being openly received, were privately beset with intrigues; the object of which was, to make them pay money, to bribe the persons in power. These shameful proposals were made in letters signed X. Y. and Z. . . Nothing seemed now to remain, but war. An army was provided for by Congress, and Washington appointed to the command. **CAPT. TRUXTON** of the American frigate *Constellation*, fought and captured the French frigate *L'Insurgente*.

3. The French government at length became convinced, that although the Americans might choose to quarrel among themselves, yet they would not suffer foreign interference; and they made overtures for a renewal of negotiations. Mr. Adams promptly met them by appointing three envoys to

**1800.**  
 Sept. 30.  
 A new  
 French  
 Treaty.

**Naval B**  
 between  
 Am.  
 and Fr.

**Pinkney,**  
**Marshall,**  
 and **Gerry**  
 called  
 the X. Y.  
 and Z  
 mission.

CHAPTER III — 1. Who were the candidates of the two parties for president? Who was made president? Who vice-president? In what year? What government treated our republic with insolence?—2. Give some account of the X. Y. and Z. mission as it was called. What was done in reference to the expected war?—3. Of what did the French government become convinced?

Paris. They found the government in the hands of **P'T. IV.**  
**NAPOLEON BONAPARTE.** With him they amicably **P'D. I.**  
 adjusted all disputes. **CH. III.**

4. Washington calmly and peacefully expired at Mount Vernon, in the sixty-eighth year of his age. His history is that of his country, during the period of his public services. What may be said of many of the worthies of the Revolution, may be eminently said of him; in no instance has he rendered his country a more important service, than in leaving to her future sons, his great and good example.

5. Suitable buildings having been erected, the seat of government, agreeably to the law passed by Congress in 1790, was transferred from Philadelphia to the city of Washington. A territory, ten miles square, in which it was to be permanently located, had been ceded to the general government, by the States of Virginia and Maryland, and received the name of "the *District of Columbia*." . . . *Mississippi*, and a part of the northwest territory, called *Indiana*, were this year made territories with separate governments.

6. The time had now arrived for electing a president. It was at this period, that the feuds and animosities of the federal and republican parties were at their greatest height. Mr. Adams had lost the people's favor by one of those changes of popular sentiment which public men often experience. He had sanctioned two acts which were regarded as hostile to the Constitution; "the Alien Law," which authorized the president to order any alien, whom he should judge dangerous to the peace and liberty of the country, to depart from the United States, on pain of imprisonment,—and another, called the "Sedition Law," which imposed a heavy fine, and imprisonment for years, upon such as should "write, print, utter, publish, &c., any false, scandalous, and mali-

**1799.**Dec. 14.  
Death of  
Washing-  
ton.**1800.**Nov.  
Seat of  
govern-  
ment  
trans-  
ferred to  
Wash-  
ington.Sedition  
and alien  
laws.

3. Who was at the head of the French government, and what was done?—4. What interesting event is next related?—5. What transfer was now made?—6. What two unpopular laws had been passed?

**P.T. IV.** cious writing against the government of the United States, or either house of Congress of the United States, or the president, &c." Under the sedition law, several persons were actually imprisoned.

**1800.**

Jefferson  
and Burr.

7. By the Constitution, as it then existed, each elector voted for two men, without designating which was to be president. He who was found to have the greatest number of votes, was to be president, and the second on the list, vice-president. The republican electors, who had a very considerable majority over the federal, gave their votes, to a man, for THOMAS JEFFERSON and AARON BURR; intending, without question, that Jefferson should be president. They had thus an equal number of votes; and the election must, according to the Constitution, be decided by the house of representatives.

**1801.**

Are made  
president  
and vice-  
president.

8. The federalists considered that they might yet defeat their opponents; and probably believing that they should find a grateful friend in Col. Burr, they determined, if possible, to raise him to the presidency. On counting the votes in the house, Mr. Jefferson and Mr. Burr had each an equal number. Thirty-five times the voting went round, and the hour had nearly come, when if a president had not been chosen, the government would have been destroyed. At length Jefferson had a majority of one State. . . . The constitution was afterwards amended, so that the same danger might never occur again. The conduct pursued by both parties in Congress, on this occasion, manifests, how little party spirit cares for public good.

Second  
census

**1800,**  
declared  
in

**1801.**

9. A second census of the United States was completed, giving a population of 5,319,762; an increase of one million four hundred thousand, in ten years. In the same time, the exports increased from nine-

7. How did each elector then vote for president and vice-president? How was the vote of the electors given?—8. What did the federal party now think and do? What singular position of affairs now presented itself? How did it terminate? What does this affair show with respect to party spirit?—9. In what year was the second census taken? How many inhabitants? What increase in population in ten years?

teen to ninety-four millions, and the revenue, from 4,771,000 to 12,945,000 dollars. This rapid advance in the career of prosperity, thus begun, has continued in a degree unparalleled in the history of nations.

10. In 1802, *Ohio* was admitted as an independent State, into the Union. Much of the territory of this State was originally claimed by Virginia and Connecticut, and was ceded by them to the United States, at different times, after the year 1781. From this State, as a part of the N. W. Territory, slavery was excluded.

**1802.**

Ohio admitted to the Union.

11. In 1802, the port of New Orleans was closed against the United States. *Spain having ceded Louisiana to the French*, the Spanish intendant announced that the citizens of the United States could no longer be permitted to deposit their merchandise and effects in the port of New Orleans. The western States apprehended the ruin of their commerce; and great agitation was excited. The right of deposit was subsequently restored; but the alarm had shown how important was the possession of the waters of the Mississippi to the western States.

Louisiana ceded by Spain to France

Alarm of the western States.

12. Negotiations were therefore set on foot, by which the United States *purchased of France, for the sum of \$15,000,000, the whole territory of Louisiana.* This acquisition doubled the extent of the republic, adding the vast western section of the basin of the Mississippi, and giving the United States a western boundary on the Rocky Mountains.

**1803.**

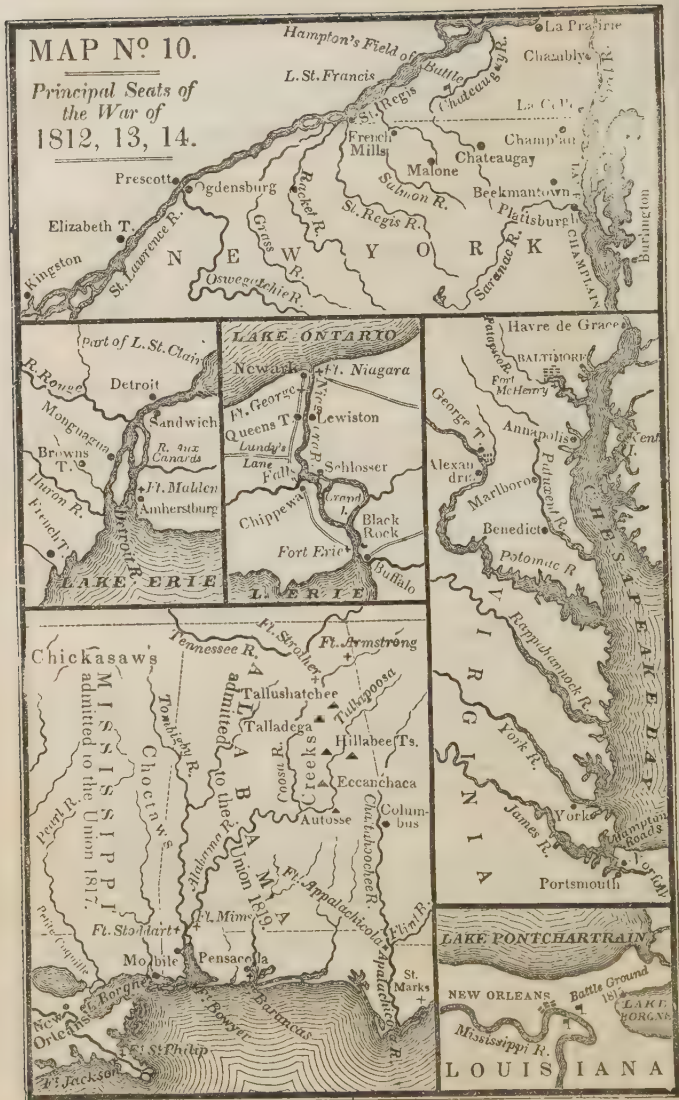
Louisiana purchased of France

---

9. What of exports and revenue?—10. What account can you give of Ohio?—11. On what account were the western States alarmed and agitated? Was the right of deposit restored? What had this alarm shown?—12. What negotiations were set on foot? What purchase was made? For what consideration? What may be said of this acquisition?

# MAP N° 10.

Principal Seats of  
the War of  
1812, 13, 14.





Decatur firing the Philadelphia.

## PERIOD II.

FROM  
THE PURCHASE } 1803 { OF LOUISIANA  
TO  
THE CESSION } 1820. { OF FLORIDA.

### CHAPTER I.

War with Tripoli.—Troubles with England and France.

1. THE Barbary Powers were nations of professed pirates. They took and made slaves of American citizens, as they did those of other countries; appropriating vessels and their cargoes. If any nation would pay them annual tribute, they would not take that nation's vessels. This was for several years done by the United States, as it had long been, by European nations. At length, the American republic determined to resist, and declared war against Tripoli. This war is memorable, as it laid the foundation of the American naval character and

PT. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.

1803.

Barbary  
powers  
piratical.  
Are re-  
sisted by  
the Amer-  
icans.

CHAPTER I.—1. What were the Barbary Powers? What did they with respect to the citizens and vessels of the European and American nations? In what case would they desist from their piracy? What did the U. S. do? Why is the Tripolitan war memorable?

**P.T. IV.** discipline. **COMMODORE PREBLE**, who commanded  
**P.D. II.** the American fleet sent in 1803 to the Mediterra-  
**CH. I.** nean,—was not only an able officer himself, but he  
 possessed the talent of moulding others.

2. The frigate *Philadelphia*, commanded by **CAPT. BAINBRIDGE**, was one of Preble's squadron, and had  
**1804.** ventured too far into the harbor of Tripoli; where,  
**Decatur's** ignorant of the navigation, she grounded. **LIEUT.**  
**bold** **STEPHEN DECATUR**, retook her from under the guns  
**exploit.** of the Tripolitan battery. Her officers and crew  
 had been made captives, and, with other Americans,  
 treated with every indignity. Their sufferings went  
 to the hearts of their fellow-citizens; and, as an ex-  
 pedient to oblige the bashaw of Tripoli to release  
 them, the government authorized **CAPT. WILLIAM**  
**EATON** to unite with **HAMET**, an expelled bashaw,  
 to assist him to recover his former station.

3. Eaton was made general of Hamet's forces,  
**1805.** amounting to a few hundred Arabs. He marched  
**Feb.** from Egypt to *Derne*, where the American fleet co-  
**Eaton** operated with him. He assaulted and took *Derne*.  
**takes** The Tripolitans sent an army, which was defeated  
**Derne.** in two engagements. The bashaw then sued for  
 peace; and **COL. LEAR**, the American consul, nego-  
**June 8.** tiated with him a treaty, by which the American  
**Peace** prisoners were set at liberty, \$60,000 ransom being  
**with** paid. Support was withdrawn from Hamet; but he  
**Tripoli.** recovered his wife and children.

4. In July, 1804, occurred the death of **GEN. AL-**  
**1804.** **EXANDER HAMILTON**. He died in a duel, fought  
**Hamil-** with **AARON BURR**, vice-president of the United  
**ton killed** States. Burr was the challenger. Hamilton, not  
**in a duel** having the courage to brave the opinion which  
**with Burr.** would call him coward, met his antagonist against  
 his sense of right, and without desire or intention to

---

1. Who was the commander? What can you say of him?—2. What daring exploit was performed by Decatur? How came the *Philadelphia* stranded? Where were the captain and crew? What was William Eaton to do in this war?—3. Give an account of his movements. On what terms was peace concluded?—4. Give an account of the death of Hamilton, and its cause.

injure him. By this lamentable weakness of mind, America lost one of her most gifted sons. . . Mr. Jefferson received his second presidential election; and such was his popularity, that out of 176 votes, he received 162. **GEORGE CLINTON** of New York, was chosen vice-president. P.T. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. I.  
**1805.**

5. Col. Burr was a dark and subtle man. Neither party, any longer, had confidence in him. He went to the West, and there set on foot some great scheme, which he was carrying on,—when, becoming suspected of treasonable designs against the government, he was seized and taken to Richmond for trial. It was supposed that he intended to possess himself of the bank of New Orleans, and that he was raising an army, with which he meant either to subdue Mexico, or some other of the Spanish provinces. Sufficient evidence of his guilt not appearing on trial, he was acquitted. **1807.**  
  
Burr's treasonable project.

6. Although a neutral policy had been steadily maintained, the American nation was now made to suffer in her commerce, by the measures which England took, on the one hand, to humble France, by keeping all neutrals from trading at her ports; and the counter-measures assumed, on the other hand, by the **EMPEROR NAPOLEON**, to keep all neutrals from the ports belonging to Great Britain. **1806**  
to  
**1809.**  
  
Am. commerce injured.

7. The “decrees” made by France, and the “orders in council” made by Great Britain, for these purposes, were unjust, and contrary to the laws of nations. The United States was not in right obliged to abstain from trading to the French ports, because the sovereign of Great Britain commanded it; nor to abstain from trading to Great Britain, because it was so ordered by the French emperor. And when these two nations proceeded—which on both sides they did, to take, and condemn as prizes, American Eng. and Fr. orders and decrees.

---

5. What further account is given of Col. Burr?—6. How did America now suffer in her commerce?—7. What may be said of the decrees and orders in council as regards the right of the case? What did both nations with regard to the U. S.?

PT. IV. vessels for disobeying their unlawful decrees, they  
 P.D. II. both committed acts of war upon our nation.  
 CH. I.

1807. 8. The American government by its agents at the  
 An Em- courts of Great Britain and France, remonstrated in  
 bargo. decided terms. As the shipping of the country was  
 thus constantly exposed to seizure, *Congress laid*  
*an embargo*, which deprived the nations injuring the  
 American commerce, of the advantages of their  
 trade. But the measure, in many cases, bore hard  
 on the American people, and was exceedingly un-  
 popular.

Pretended right of search. 9. There were other causes of complaint against  
 the English. In the exercise of what they termed  
*the right of search* for British native-born subjects,  
 their naval officers entered and searched American  
 vessels on the high seas; and repeatedly took, not  
 only naturalized, but native American citizens. The  
 Affair of the "Chesapeake." *Leopard*, a British ship of war, attacked and over-  
 powered an American frigate, the *Chesapeake*, but a  
 few miles from the coast, and took from her four men.

Outrage upon the Chesapeake. 10. This outrage, which happened before the em-  
 bargo was laid, was resented by the whole nation.  
 But the English government sent out Mr. Rose,  
 who made such explanations as satisfied the federal  
 party. . . . In 1809, MR. MADISON was inaugurated  
 1809. president, and MR. GEORGE CLINTON of New York,  
 Madison vice-president. . . The embargo met  
 with the most violent opposition throughout the  
 country. The government repealed it, and substi-  
 Non-Inter- course substituted. tuted a *law prohibiting all intercourse with France*  
*or Great Britain*; with a proviso, that should either  
 revoke her edicts, this non-intercourse law should  
 cease to be enforced, as it regarded that nation.

11. In April, a treaty was concluded with MR.  
 ERSKINE, the British minister, which engaged that

---

8. What course was taken by the Am. government?—9. What other cause of complaint was against England? What was done by a British armed ship?—10. What was the national feeling respecting this outrage? Who were made president and vice-president of the U. S.? In what year? What law was substituted for the embargo?

the orders in council, so far as they affected the United States, should be withdrawn. The British ministry refused their sanction, alleging that their minister, whom they recalled, had exceeded his powers. His successor, MR. JACKSON, insinuated in a correspondence with the Secretary of State, that the American government knew that Mr. Erskine was not authorized to make the arrangement. This accusation was denied by the American Secretary, but repeated by Mr. Jackson. The president then declined any further diplomatic intercourse with England.

12. In 1810, France repealed her decrees; and the president issued a proclamation on the 2d of November, declaring, that all the restrictions imposed by the non-intercourse law, should cease, in relation to France and her dependencies. . . The population of the United States, by the third census, taken in 1810, was 7,239,903.

13. An encounter took place off Cape Charles, between the American frigate *President*, commanded by COM. ROGERS, and the British sloop of war, *Little Belt*, commanded by CAPT. BINGHAM. The attack was commenced by the *Little Belt*, but she was soon disabled. This was a token that war was at hand.

14. The appearance of a hostile confederacy, had been discovered among the Indians on the western frontier. At its head, was the great chief TECUMSEH, and his twin brother, ELSKWATAWA. Tecumseh, who was the master-spirit, took upon himself the department of war and eloquence; while Elskwatawa was to invest himself with the sacred and mysterious character of "Prophet." Pretending to be favored with direct communications from the Great Spirit, he by tricks and austerities, gained be-

P'T. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. I.

1809.

Mr.  
Erskine's  
arrange-  
ment  
disowned  
by the  
ministry.

1810.

French  
decrees  
repealed.

Third  
census.

1811.

May 16.  
Naval B  
Am.  
President,  
Br. Little  
Belt.  
Br. L. 32

Indians  
hostile.

Tecumseh  
and Elsk-  
watawa.

11. What arrangement was made by Mr. Erskine? What was done by the British ministry? What was Mr. Jackson's behavior, and the consequence?—12. What was done by France? What by the president? What was the population of the U. S.? Of what year?—13. What encounter took place?—14. What two remarkable characters appeared among the Indians? Give an account of Tecumseh. Of Elskwatawa.

P'T. IV. lief. He then began a species of drill, the object of  
 P'D. II. which seems to have been to discipline the Indians  
 CH. I. to obedience and union. He ordered them to kill  
 1811. their dogs, and these faithful friends were instantly  
 The Indi- sacrificed. They must not, he said, permit their  
 ans led by fires to go out; and at once the fire of every wig-  
 their su- wam was watched as by vestals.  
 peretition.

Tecum-  
 seh's  
 move-  
 ments.

15. While the Prophet thus manifested, that priestcraft in its worst form may inhabit the desert as well as the city, Tecumseh was going from one Indian confederacy to another, and, by his eloquence, inflaming their minds against the whites.

Nov. 8.  
 TIPPE-  
 CANOE.  
 Am. k.  
 and w. 180.  
 Ind. 270.

16. Gov. HARRISON, of the Indian territory, was directed to march against them with a military force. On the 7th of November, he met a number of the Prophet's messengers at Tippecanoe, and a suspension of hostilities was agreed upon till the next day. Harrison formed his men in order of battle; and they thus reposed upon their arms. Just before day, the faithless savages rushed upon them. But the war-whoop was not unexpected. The Americans stood, repelled the shock, and repulsed the assailants. Tecumseh was at a distance, not having expected that the whites would be prepared to strike the first blow.

Am.  
 losses.

Prepara-  
 tions  
 for war.

17. The French decrees being annulled, commerce had begun with France. *Nine hundred American vessels, richly laden, had been captured by the British since the year 1803.* The president recommended to Congress, that the United States should be placed in an attitude of defence. Provision was accordingly made to increase the regular army to 35,000 men, and to enlarge the navy. The president was authorized to borrow \$11,000,000, and the duties on imported goods were doubled.

18. Mr. Madison laid before Congress documents,

---

15. What was made manifest by the Indian prophet? What was Tecumseh doing?—16. Who was sent against the Indians? Describe the battle of Tippecanoe.—17. How many of the American vessels had the British taken? Since what year? What measures were taken to prepare for war?

which proved, that in 1809, the British government, by its agent, SIR JAMES CRAIG, governor of Canada, had sent JOHN HENRY, as an emissary to the United States, to intrigue with the leading members of the federal party, and lead them, if possible, to form the eastern part of the Union into a nation or province dependent on Great Britain. Henry proceeded through Vermont and New Hampshire to Boston; but returned without effecting, in any degree, his purpose.

PT IV.  
PD II.  
CH. II.

1812.  
Henry's  
disclosure

1809  
Secret  
mission.

## CHAPTER II.

War of 1812.—Condition of the country.—Hull's surrender.

1. ON the 18th of June, 1812, *war with Great Britain was formally declared*. In 1775, the Americans were comparatively a warlike people; they had now become enervated by a peace of more than thirty years. In 1808, the regular army consisted of only 3,000 men; but during that year, the government increased it to 9,000. The act to raise an additional force was passed so short a time previous to the declaration of war, that not more than one-fourth of the number were enlisted at that time; and those were, of course raw and undisciplined.

1812.  
June 18.  
WAR DE-  
CLARED.

Military  
force of  
the U. S.  
inade-  
quate.

2. The state of the revenue in 1812, was extremely unfavorable to the prosecution of an expensive war. Derived almost solely from duties on merchandise imported, it was abundant in a state of commercial prosperity; but in time of war and trouble, the aggressions of foreign powers, while they produced an increase of public expenditure, almost destroyed the means of defraying it.

Bad state  
of the  
revenue.

3. The condition of the navy was better than that of the army. The situation of the United States, as

The navy  
in a better  
condition  
than the  
army.

18. What disclosures were made by the president?

CHAPTER II.—1. At what time was war declared? What was the condition of the army?—2. What was that of the revenue?

PT. IV. a maritime and commercial nation, had kept it pro-  
 P.D. 7. vided with seamen. The recent contest with Trip-  
 CH. II. oli, had given to the officers and men, some experi-  
 1812. ence in war. But the navy was small. Ten frigates,  
 ten sloops, and one hundred and sixty-five gun-boats,  
 was all the public naval force, which America could  
 oppose to the thousand ships of Great Britain. . . .  
 General Dearborn, a surviving officer of the Revolution, was appointed major-general and commander-in-chief of the American army.

4. The plan of the campaign was formed at Wash-  
 ington. It was intended to *invade Canada, at De-  
 troit and Niagara*, and that the armies from these  
 places should be joined, on the way, by the force  
 stationed at Plattsburg, and all proceed to *Montreal*.  
 The army destined for Detroit, was collected at  
 Dayton, in Ohio, some time before the declaration  
 of war. The forces consisted of three regiments of  
 volunteers, commanded by Cols. M'Arthur, Cass,  
 and Findlay, and 300 regulars under Col. Miller;—  
 the whole under GEN. HULL, who had been, for some  
 time, governor of the Michigan Territory.

5. Gen. Hull, moving slowly through an unculti-  
 vated region, reached the rapids of the Maumee,—  
 and on the first of July sent off his hospital stores,  
 his sick, and part of his baggage, in a vessel to go  
 by water to Detroit. This vessel, in which was his  
 trunk of private papers, containing accounts of the  
 army, and plans of movements, was taken by the  
 British. Gen. Hull arrived at *Detroit* on the 5th,  
 and on the 12th, invaded Canada. At *Sandwich*  
 he issued a bold and imposing proclamation, invit-  
 ing the Canadians to join him. The British force,  
 which it was expected his army would attack, was  
 at *Fort Malden*. He waited near it for artillery  
 from Detroit. A detachment of the army took a

---

3. What that of the navy? Who was made commander?—4.  
 What was the plan of the campaign? Describe the army of the  
 Northwest.—5. Describe Hull's progress from Dayton to the  
 vicinity of Malden.

bridge leading to the fort; but he would not suffer them to retain it. P.T. IV.

6. As the British had the command of the waters, the road from Ohio, by which Hull expected a party under CAPT. BRUSH, to bring provisions, was infested by warriors, whom their shipping landed on the American side. Hull sent a detachment, under Van Horne, to keep open the road. Tecumseh and his Indians, lay in ambush, and killed thirty of his men, when the remainder fled to Detroit. P.D. II.  
CH. II.  
  
1812.  
  
Van  
Horne's  
party de-  
feated  
by Tec-  
cumseh.

7. On the 17th, the important fortress of *Mackinaw* was taken, by a party of British and Indians, the small garrison being allowed the honors of war. The victorious party were now bearing down upon Hull. Nor was this all, Gen. Dearborn was drawn by the British, on pretence of treating for peace, into an armistice, in which Hull's army was not included. This set free the whole British army of Canada to come against him, as nothing was to be feared from any other quarter. Circum-  
stances  
which  
alarm  
Hull.

8. Gen. Hull took counsel of his fears, and against the entreaties of his officers, returned to Detroit. He sent immediately COL. MILLER, with 600 men, to escort Capt. Brush. In the woods of *Maguaga*, he routed, in a severe fight, Tecumseh and his Indians; and then returned to Detroit, having learned that Capt. Brush had taken another route. . . . Fifty persons, mostly the garrison of *Chicago*, were slain by a party of savages, as they were attempting to pass from that place to Detroit. Aug. 8  
MA-  
GUA GA.  
Am. L. 50.  
  
CHICA-  
GO.  
Am. L. 50.

9. On the 13th, BROCK, the most able of the British generals, arrived at *Malden*, and took command. On the 14th, he moved the British forces to Sandwich, and the next day sent a summons to Hull to surrender; threatening him that the In- Aug. 15.  
Brock ap-  
proaches  
Detroit.

---

6. What happened to the first party sent by Hull to escort Capt. Brush?—7. What circumstances alarmed Gen. Hull?—8. What retrograde movement did he make? What second party send out? What battle was fought? What happened on the 15th of August?—9. Who took command of the British army? Describe the movements of Brock.

**P.T. IV** dians would be let loose upon Detroit unless he did  
**P.D. II** On the morning of the 16th, Brock crossed to *Spring*  
**CH. III.** *Wells*, and moved towards Detroit. Gen. Hull  
**1812.** drew up his men in order of battle; then, while  
they were eager for the fight, ordered them to re-  
tire to the fort. The indignation of the army broke  
forth, and all subordination ceased. They crowded  
in, and without any order from the general, stacked  
their arms, some dashing them with violence upon  
the ground. Many of the soldiers wept,—and even  
the women were angry at such apparent cowardice.

Hull sur-  
renders  
his army.  
Am. L.  
pr. 800.

10. Hull perceiving that he had no longer any  
authority, and believing that the Indians were ready  
to fall upon the inhabitants, was anxious to put the  
place under the protection of the British. A white  
flag was hung out upon the walls of the fort. Two  
British officers rode up, and a capitulation was con-  
cluded by Hull, with the most unbecoming haste.  
His officers were not consulted, and every thing was  
left at the mercy of the British commander. . . Gen.  
Hull was soon after exchanged, and brought to trial.  
He was sentenced to death, for cowardice and unof-  
ficer-like conduct; but pardoned by the president,  
as he had, in his youth, been a brave revolutionary  
officer, and as there were strongly extenuating cir-  
cumstances.

### CHAPTER III.

Naval successes.

**Aug. 19.** 1. **THREE** days after the disgraceful surrender of  
**Naval V.** Detroit, occurred off the Grand Bank of Newfound-  
land, the capture of the British frigate *Guerriere*,  
under the command of CAPT. DACRES, by the Amer-  
ican frigate *Constitution*, commanded by CAPTAIN

Br. L. k.  
65, w. 63.  
Am. L. k.  
7, w. 7.

9. What was done by Hull? What was the conduct of the  
army, when bid to retire to the fort?—10. What was then done?  
What was the manner of the surrender? What sentence was  
passed against Hull? Was it executed?

CHAPTER III.—1. What important naval victory happened about  
the time of Hull's surrender? What was the loss on both sides?

HULL. Capt. Dacres had challenged any American vessel of her class, and in various ways, manifested his contempt of "the Yankees." In thirty minutes after the first broadside of the Constitution, the Guerriere had her masts and rigging shot away, and her hulk so injured, that she was in danger of sinking. . . . CAPT. PORTER, of the United States frigate *Essex*, captured, near the same place, the British sloop of war *Alert*, after an action of only eight minutes.

PT. IV.  
PD. II.  
CH. III.

1812.

Sept. 7.  
Naval V.  
Essex  
captures  
the Alert.

2. On the 13th of October, the army stationed at Lewiston, under GEN. VAN RENSSELAER, mostly composed of New York militia, made an unfortunate and unsuccessful attempt to invade Canada. A part of the army crossed, and a battle was fought at *Queenstown*. During the battle, Gen. Brock was killed, by a party headed by CAPT. WOOL. But GEN. SHEAFFE coming up with 1,000 British and Indians, while the militia on the American shore refused to cross, the republican troops on the Canada side were obliged to surrender.

Oct. 13.  
QUEENS  
TOWN.  
Am. L. K.  
60, w 100,  
pr. 700.

3. GEN. SMYTH succeeded Gen. Van Rensselaer, and late in the season, made another abortive attempt to cross an army into Canada. CAPT. KING, with a party, had prepared the way, by gallantly storming a battery opposite *Black Rock*; but the army did not follow him, and he was made prisoner.

Last at-  
tempt to  
invade by  
Niagara.

4. Ohio and Kentucky, had aroused at the call of Hull, for assistance; and an army, on its march for Detroit, was in the southern part of Ohio, when the news met them, of the surrender of that post. This rather stimulated than repressed their ardor. Kentucky put on foot 7,000 volunteers, Ohio nearly half that number. Congress appointed GEN. HARRISON to the command of these forces.

Volun-  
teers of  
the west

5. The Indians of the northwest had murdered twenty-one persons at the mouth of White river; and had committed other atrocities. For the de-

1. What other naval victory occurred?—2. Describe the affair of Queenstown?—3. What account can you give of Gen. Smyth's attempt?—4. What troops had been raised in the West? Who appointed to command?—5. What had been done by the Indians?

**P.T. IV.** fence of the Indiana and Illinois Territories, a large  
**P.D. II.** number of mounted volunteers was collected, by  
**CH. III.** Gov. SHELBY of Kentucky. Under GEN. HOPKINS, they attempted an expedition against the Kickapoo and Peoria towns; but being gentlemen-volunteers, and feeling on an equality with their general, they, after several days' march, put it to the vote of the army, whether or not they would proceed further; and a majority of the troops voting against it, they turned about, and, to the grief of the general, went home.

**1812.**

Hopkins' unsuccessful expedition.

6. Gen. Hopkins, at the head of another party,—and after him Cols. Russell and Campbell, made predatory incursions into the Indian towns. They put the savages in fear, and protected the white inhabitants. . . . CAPT. JONES, in the American sloop of war *Wasp*, captured, after a bloody engagement, Oct. 18. a British warlike vessel, the *Frolic*.  
 Naval V. Two hours after the battle, a British seventy-four took Capt. Jones and his prize. . . . COM. DECATUR, in the frigate *United States*, defeated and made prize of the British frigate *Macedonian*, CAPT. CARDEN. . . . The Oct. 25. fortunate frigate *Constitution*, commanded by COM. BAINBRIDGE, captured, off the coast of Brazil, the Naval V. British frigate *Java*.  
 Br. L. 104. Besides these public successes, the American privateers took 250 British vessels, and 3,000 prisoners.

Oct. 18. Naval V.

Naval D.

Oct. 25. Naval V.  
 Br. L. 104.  
 Am. L. 12.

Naval V.  
 Br. L. 161.

7. The warmth of party feeling had not abated. The enemies of the administration declared, that the ill-success of the war was owing to their inefficiency; while its friends attributed the failure, to the interference of the opposite party. Both were right in a degree; as the government, unused to war, had doubtless failed of making judicious and seasonable provisions: but all its difficulties were increased, by an ungenerous and almost treasonable opposition.

State of party feeling.

8. The most alarming opposition was not, how

5. Describe the expedition against them, headed by Gen. Hopkins.—6. What officers made successful incursions? What naval victory occurred Oct. 18th? What on the 25th of Oct. ?—7. What was the state of party feeling?

ever, that arising from mere individual clamor. P.T. IV.  
 The States of Massachusetts and Connecticut had P.D. II.  
 refused their militia to the call of the general gov- CH. IV.  
 ernment. They alleged that the State governments  
 ought to determine when the exigencies of the nation  
 require the services of their militia. They also declared  
 that it was unconstitutional for the president to del-  
 egate his power to any officer, not of the militia, and  
 who was not chosen by the respective States. It was  
 probably owing to the disapprobation with which  
 the great body of the people viewed these opinions  
 and measures of the opposition, that the result of  
 the election of president was not only favorable to  
 Mr. Madison, but showed a diminution of the fed-  
 eral, and an increase of the republican party.

**1812.**  
 Question  
 of state  
 rights

Mr. Madi-  
 son's  
 majority  
 increased.

9. Congress passed acts—authorizing the con-  
 struction of four large ships of war for the increase  
 of the navy on the lakes,—for increasing the bounty  
 given to recruits,—and for enlarging the regular  
 army. The previous law authorizing the employ-  
 ment of volunteers, as they had been found insubor-  
 dinate, was repealed. To provide for the revenue,  
 they authorized a loan of \$16,000,000; and gave  
 power to the president to issue treasury notes to the  
 amount of five millions. MR. MADISON received his  
 second inauguration on the 4th of March, and EL-  
 BRIDGE GERRY was, at the same time, made vice-  
 president.

**1813.**  
 Congress  
 make laws  
 to carry  
 on the  
 war.

Inaugu-  
 ration of  
 Madison  
 and  
 Gerry.

## CHAPTER IV.

Campaign of 1813.—Massacre of Frenchtown.

1. THE head-quarters of GEN. HARRISON, were, at  
 this time, at *Franklinton*, in Ohio. GEN. WINCHES- Harrison  
 divides  
 his army

8. What alarming symptoms of rebellion occurred in New  
 England? What effect had the proceedings of the opposition on  
 the election?—9. What laws did Congress make to carry on the  
 war? Who was made president and vice-president? What year?

CHAPTER IV.—1. Where was Gen. Harrison with the western  
 army? Whom did he detach?

PT IV. TER had been detached to proceed in advance of the  
 PD. II. main party. Hearing that a party of the British  
 CH IV. were stationed at *Frenchtown*, he attacked and dis-

1813.

Jan. 22.  
 Massacre  
 of  
 FRENCH-  
 TOWN.  
 Am. L.  
 k. 500,  
 pr. 500.  
 Br. L. k.  
 24. w. 153.

May 5.  
 FT.  
 MEIGS.

Aug. 1.  
 FT. STE-  
 PHEN-  
 SON.  
 Br. L. 150.

Feb. 22.  
 Br. take  
 OG-  
 DENS-  
 BURG.

But on the morning of the 22d, he was surprised and assaulted by the combined force of the British and Indians, under the command of COL. PROCTOR. Gen. Winchester was taken; and, being terrified with Proctor's threat of an Indian massacre, he presumed, though a prisoner, to send a command to the troops still fighting, to surrender; Proctor having promised them, in that case, protection. They laid down their arms, and the scenes of Fort William Henry were repeated. Proctor abandoned them, now unarmed and defenceless, to the savages. Five hundred were slain. They were mostly volunteers from respectable families in Kentucky.

2. Gen. Harrison removed his army to *Fort Meigs*. Proctor here besieged him with a combined force of British and Indians. GEN. CLAY, with 1,100 Kentuckians coming to his assistance, a plan was laid to attack the army of Proctor with the combined forces of Harrison and Clay. A party headed by COL. DUDLEY, fell into an ambuscade, and were slaughtered by Tecumseh and his Indians. But Proctor was defeated and obliged to raise the siege.

3. The Indians, as success failed, began to desert their allies. But Tecumseh was faithful. The Five Nations now declared war against the Canadas. . . . With 500 men, Proctor attacked *Fort Stephenson*, on the Sandusky river. MAJOR CROGHAN, a youth of twenty-one, defended the fort with 160 men; and repulsed Proctor with the loss of 150.

4. On the 22d of February, the British attacked *Ogdensburg* with 500 men. The Americans, inferior in numbers, retired and abandoned their artillery and stores to the British. Two schooners, two

---

1. What account can you give of the shocking scenes of Frenchtown?—2. Give a further account of the military operations near Lake Erie?—3. What was now done among the Indians? Give an account of the affair at Fort Stephenson.—4. Of the invasion of Ogdensburg.

gunboats, together with the barracks, were committed to the flames. . . . On Lake Ontario, COMMODE CHAUNCEY, had by great exertions made ready a flotilla, to aid in the operations of the coming campaign.

5. The first important service of the flotilla, was that of transporting the army of GEN. DEARBORN, from Sackett's Harbor to *York*, the capital of Upper Canada. GEN. PIKE, by whose advice the descent was made, defeated GEN. SHEAFFE at the landing, in a severe contest. In the moment of victory, this excellent officer, with 100 Americans and 40 English, was killed by the blowing up of a magazine. The Americans took possession of the town. After three days they recrossed the lake to *Sackett's Harbor*, where they left their wounded.

6. On the 27th Gen. Dearborn re-embarked his army and proceeded to attack *Fort George*. After fighting for its defence, the British commander, COL. ST. VINCENT, spiked his guns, and abandoned the fort. The Americans took possession of *Fort Erie*, that having also been evacuated by the British. Col. St. Vincent, had retired, with his army to *Burlington Heights*, near the head of Lake Ontario. To pursue him, Gen. Dearborn detached GENs. CHANDLER and WINDER. Col. St. Vincent, at dead of night, stole upon them and attacked the camp. In the confusion and carnage which ensued, Chandler and Winder were both made prisoners. The Americans, however, maintained their post, and forced the enemy to retire. . . . Col. Boerstler being sent against a British force at the Beaver Dams, which proved much larger than his own, surrendered his detachment.

7. The American fleet, now formed on Lake Erie, was commanded by COM. PERRY. It consisted of

4. Who commanded the American marine on Lake Ontario? What had he done?—5. What was the first important service of the flotilla? Give an account of the battle at the landing. Of the subsequent disaster. Of the further movements of the Americans.—6. Give an account of the military movements at *Fort Erie*. Of the affair at *Stony Creek*. What was done at *Beaver Dams*? What loss in prisoners?

P.T. IV.

P.D. II.

CH. IV.

1813.

April.

A flotilla

on Lake

Ontario.

April 27.

YORK.

Br. L. k.

90, w. 200,

pr. 800.

Am. L.

100.

May 27.

F.T.

GEORGE.

Br. L.

k. and w.

300.

Am. L. 62.

Affair of

STONY

CREEK.

BEA-

VER

DAMS.

Am. L.

pr. 570.

**P.T. IV.** the *Niagara* and *Lawrence*, each of twenty-five  
**P.D. II.** guns, and several smaller vessels, carrying two guns  
**CH. IV.** each. The enemy's fleet, of equal force, was com-  
**1813.** manded by COM. BARCLAY, a veteran officer. Perry,  
**Sept. 19.** at twelve o'clock made an attack. The flag-ship be-  
**Naval V.** came disabled. Perry embarked in an open boat,  
**L. Erie.** and amidst a shower of bullets, carried the ensign  
**Br. lost** of command on board another, and once more bore  
**their** down upon the enemy with the remainder of his  
**whole** fleet. At four o'clock, the whole British squadron,  
**fleet.** of six vessels, surrendered.

8. This success on Lake Erie, opened a passage to the territory which had been surrendered by Hull; and Gen. Harrison lost no time in transferring the war thither. On the 23d of September, he landed his troops near Fort Malden, but Proctor, despite the spirited remonstrance of Tecumseh, an abler man than himself, and now a general in the British army, had evacuated Malden, burnt the fort and store-houses, and retreated before his enemy. The Americans, on the 29th, went in pursuit, entered, and re-  
**Sept. 29.** possessed Detroit.  
**Detroit**  
**recovered.**

9. PROCTOR had retired to the *Moravian vil-  
lage*, on the Thames, about eighty miles from that place. His army of 2,000, was more than half Indians. HARRISON overtook him on the 5th of October. The British army, although inferior in numbers, had the advantage of choosing their ground. Gen. Harrison gained much reputation for his ar-  
**Oct. 5.** rangements, especially as he changed them with  
**THE** judgment, as circumstances changed on the field  
**THAMES.** of battle. Col. Johnson, with his mounted Kentucki-  
**Br. L.** ans, was opposed to Tecumseh and his Indians. In  
**pr. 600.** the heat of the battle the chief fell, bravely fighting.  
**Ind. k. 120.** His warriors fled. Proctor, dismayed, meanly de-  
**Am. L. 50.** serted his army, and fled with two hundred dra-  
**Death of** goons.  
**Tecum-**  
**seh.**

7. Describe the battle on Lake Erie.—8. What good effect immediately followed this victory? What movement was made by Proctor? By the Americans —9 What account can you give of the battle of the Thames?

10. The Indian confederacy, in which were still 3,000 warriors, had lost with Tecumseh their bond of union; and the Ottawas, Chippewas, Miamis, and Potawatomes, now sent deputies to Gen. Harrison, and made treaties of alliance.

PT. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. V.

1813.  
Indian  
Treaties.

11. In the early part of this year, *the bays of Chesapeake and Delaware* were declared by the British government to be in a state of blockade. To enforce this edict, fleets were sent over under ADMIRALS WARREN, COCKBURN, and BERESFORD. Admiral Cockburn made his name odious by his disgraceful behavior in the Chesapeake. He took possession of several small islands in the bay, and from these made descents upon the neighboring shores. *Frenchtown, Havre de Grace, Fredericktown, Hampton, and Georgetown*, were successively the scenes of a warfare, of which savages would have been ashamed; and which did much to hurt the cause of the British, by incensing the Americans, more and more, against them.

Havre de  
Grace, &c

Disgrace-  
ful con-  
duct  
of British  
marines.

## CHAPTER V.

Northern army.—Loss of the Chesapeake.—Creek War.

1. ON Lake Ontario, COM. CHAUNCEY, encountered a fleet of seven sail, bound for Kingston with troops and provisions. Five of the vessels he captured. . . . The general plan of the American government, was still to take Montreal. An army was at Sackett's Harbor, partly composed of the troops from Fort George, of which GEN. WILKINSON took the command. This army was embarked to proceed down the St. Lawrence, and was to be joined by the army from Plattsburg, commanded by GEN. WADE HAMPTON.

Oct. 5.  
Naval V  
L. Onta-  
rio.  
Br. lost  
5 vessels.

10. Did the death of Tecumseh produce consequences of importance?—11. What happened in the vicinity of the Chesapeake?

CHAPTER V.—1. What was done by Com. Chauncey? What was still the plan of the Americans? What movements were made, and by whom?

P.T. IV. 2. A detachment of the army landed under GEN.  
 P.D. II. BOYD, and engaged a party of the British at *Wil-*  
 CH. V. *liamsburg*, and was defeated. . . . GEN. HAMPTON, in  
 1813. attempting to move towards Montreal, had found  
 Nov. 11. some opposition from the British troops; and he re-  
 WIL- turned to *Plattsburg* for the winter. He was soon  
 LIAMS- succeeded in command by GEN. IZARD.  
 BURG.  
 Am. L. 339.

Br. L. 180. 3. SIR GEORGE PREVOST, no longer fearing an at-  
 tack on Montreal, sent Gens. St. Vincent and Drum-  
 mond to recover the forts on the Niagara. GEN.  
 Nov. M'CLURE, the American commander at *Fort George*,  
 10 and 19. having too small a force to maintain his post, with-  
 Newark, drew his troops, but burnt as he retreated, the Brit-  
 Buffalo, ish village of *Newark*. The American government  
 and Black disowned the act; but the British retaliated, by  
 Rock burned. burning the villages of *Buffalo* and *Black Rock*.

Feb. 23. 4. NAVAL AFFAIRS.—Another naval victory, the  
 Naval V. sixth in succession, now did honor to the sea-ser-  
 Br. L. 40. vice. CAPTAIN LAWRENCE, in the *Hornet*, defeated  
 Am L. 5. on the 3d of February, the British sloop of war  
*Peacock*, after an action of only fifteen minutes. . . .  
 Lawrence was promoted to the command of the  
 frigate *Chesapeake*. She was lying in the harbor of  
 Boston, ill-fitted for sea. Her crew were in a state  
 of dissatisfaction from not having had their pay. The  
 June 1. British, mortified at their naval defeats, had prepared  
 Naval D. the frigate *Shannon*, with a picked crew of officers  
 Shannon and Ches- and seamen. CAPT. BROKE, the commander, sent  
 apeake. a challenge to Lawrence, which he injudiciously ac-  
 Am. L. cepted. The frigates met. In a few minutes every  
 k. 70, w. 63. officer, and about half the men of the *Chesapeake*,  
 Br. L. were killed or bleeding and disabled. Lawrence,  
 half the mortally wounded and delirious, continually raved,  
 number. "Don't give up the ship!" The British boarded  
 her; and they, not the Americans, lowered her colors.

5. Another naval disaster followed. The United

---

2. What happened at Williamsburg? What was the loss? What further account can you give of Gen. Wilkinson? What of Gen. Hampton?—3. What was now done on the Niagara frontier?—4. Give an account of Capt. Lawrence's victory. Of his defeat and death.

States sloop of war *Argus*, commanded by LIEUT. ALLEN, was captured, in St. George's channel, by the British sloop of war *Pelican*; Allen, mortally wounded, died in England. . . . The Americans were again successful in an encounter between the brig *Enterprise*, commanded by Lieut. Burrows, and the British brig *Boxer*. Burrows was mortally wounded.

PT. IV.

PD. II.

CH. V.

1813.

Aug. 14.

Naval D

Am L. 40

Br. L. 8.

6. CREEK WAR.—The Creek Indians had become in a degree civilized by the efforts of the government, and those of benevolent individuals. Tecumseh went among them; and by his feeling of the wrongs of their race, infused by his eloquence into their minds, he wrought them to a determination of war and vengeance.

Creeks  
stirred up  
by Te-  
cumseh.

7. Without declaring war, they committed such acts of violence, that the white families were put in fear, and fled to the forts for shelter. At noon-day, *Fort Mims* was suddenly surrounded by the Creek warriors. They mastered the garrison, set fire to the fort, and butchered helpless babes and women, as well as men in arms. Out of three hundred persons, but seventeen escaped to tell the tale.

Massacre  
at  
FT.  
MIMS.  
273  
slough-  
tered.

8. What, in such a case, could the American government do, but to defend its own population, by such means as alone have been found effectual, with this terrible foe? GEN. JACKSON, probably the most efficient commander ever engaged in Indian warfare, went among them, at the head of 2,500 Tennesseans. GEN. FLOYD, the governor of Georgia, headed about 1,000 Georgia militia. They laid waste the Indian villages; they fought with them bloody battles, at Talladega, at Autosse, and at Ecannachaca.

Jackson  
and  
Floyd.

TALLA-  
DEGA.  
AUTOS-  
SE.  
ECCAN-  
NACHA-  
CA.

9. Finally, at the bend of the Tallapoosa, was the last fatal field of the Creeks; in which they lost 600 of their bravest warriors. Then, to save the

TOPO-  
HEKA.  
Ind. L.  
600.  
Am L. k.  
54, w. 158

5. In what other case were the Americans unsuccessful? What victory was achieved?—6. What was the state of the Creeks? How were their minds excited?—7. Give an account of the massacre at Fort Mims.—8. Who went against the Creeks? At what places were they defeated?—9. Where was the final battle?

PT. IV. residue of their wasted nation, they sued for peace;  
 PD II. and a treaty was accordingly made with them. But  
 CH. VI. while it remains, with the Indian nations, an allowed  
 1813. custom to make war without declaring it, treaties  
 with them, are of no permanent value.

## CHAPTER VI.

The Niagara Frontier.—Battles of Chippewa and Bridgewater.

1. VARIOUS proposals to treat for peace having been made since the commencement of the war, the American government sent MESSRS. ADAMS, GALATIN, and BAYARD, in the month of August, to *Ghent*, the place of meeting previously agreed on. They were there met by LORD GAMBIER, HENRY GOLBOURN, and WILLIAM ADAMS, commissioners on the part of Great Britain. On that of America, HENRY CLAY, and JONATHAN RUSSELL, were afterwards added to the delegation.

Commissioners to treat for peace meet at Ghent.

May 24.  
A bold congress.

2. Congress met in extra session,—and with the firmness of the days of the Revolution, taxed the people, regardless of popular clamor, for the necessary expenditures of their government. They also authorized a loan. . . . At the regular session, Congress, desirous of an efficient army, gave, by law, 124 dollars to each recruit.

1814. 3. CAMPAIGN OF 1814.—Gen. Wilkinson, having received orders from the secretary of war, detached GEN. BROWN, with 2,000 troops, to the Niagara frontier, and then retired to Plattsburg.

14,000 of Wellington's veteran troops sent over.

4. After the fall of Napoleon, a formidable army of 14,000, who had fought under the Duke of Wellington, were embarked at Bordeaux for Canada; and, at the same time, a strong naval force, was di-

9. What then occurred? Repeat the concluding sentence.

CHAPTER VI.—1. What persons were sent to treat for peace on each side? To what place?—2. What was done by Congress in their extra session? In the regular session?—3. What was done by Gen. Wilkinson?—4. What threatening measures were now taken by the British?

rected against the maritime frontier of the United States, to blockade and ravage the whole coast from Maine to Georgia.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CIL VI.

5. In June, GEN. BROWN marched his army from Sackett's Harbor to Buffalo, expecting to invade Canada. Here were added to his army Towson's artillery, and a corps of volunteers, commanded by GEN. PORTER, making, in the whole, about 3,500 men. On the 2d and 3d of July, they crossed the Niagara, and invested *Fort Erie*, where the garrison, amounting to 100 men, surrendered without resistance. A British army, of the supposed invincibles, and commanded by GEN. RIALI, occupied a position at the mouth of the Chippewa.

1814.

Gen.  
Brown  
takes  
Ft. Erie.

6. The two armies met at the battle of Chippewa, in fair and open fight. The republican soldiers, headed by the able officers that had now come forward, defeated, with inferior numbers, the veterans who had fought with Wellington. Soon after the battle, GEN. RIALI fell back to Fort George, where in a few days he was joined by GEN. DRUMMOND, when his army amounted to 5,000 men.

July 5.  
CHIP-  
PEWA.  
Br. L. 518  
Am. L.  
328.

7. Gen. Brown, being encamped at Chippewa, ordered GEN. SCOTT, with a brigade, and Towson's artillery, to make a movement on the Queenstown road, to take off the attention of the British from his stores on the American side, which, he had heard, they threatened. Instead of this, Gen. Riall was moving towards the Americans with his whole force. Gen. Scott passed the grand cataract, and then became apprised of the enemy's presence and force. Transmitting an account to Gen. Brown, he instantly marched on, and fearlessly attacked.

Gen.  
Scott's  
move-  
ment and  
bold  
attack.

8. His detachment maintained the fight for more than an hour, against a force seven times their num-

Br. L. 573

---

5. What movements were made by Gen. Brown? What addition was made to his army? What was the position and strength of the British army?—6. What account can you give of the battle of Chippewa? What was now the amount of the force under Gen. Riall?—7. Describe the commencement of the remarkable battle of Bridgewater.—8. What was done by Scott's detachment?

PT. IV. ber; and it became dark before the main army of  
 PD. II. the Americans, under Gen. Brown, came up. GEN.  
 CH. VI. RIPLEY then perceiving how fatal to Scott's brigade  
 1814. was a British battery of nine pieces of artillery, said  
 Gens. Rip- to Col. Miller, "Will you take yonder battery?"  
 ley and "I'll try," said Miller; and at the head of the 21st  
 Drum- regiment, he calmly marched up to the mouth of the  
 wounded. blazing cannon, and took them.



BRIDG-  
 WATER.  
 Br. L. 873.  
 Am. L.  
 860,  
 officers  
 k. 11,  
 w. 56.

9. The eminence on which they were planted, was the key of the British position; and Gen. Ripley following with his regiment, it was kept,—notwithstanding the enemy, by the uncertain light of the waning moon, charged with the bayonet, till they were four times repulsed. About midnight they

8. When were they joined by the main army? What was done by Ripley and Miller?—9. Was Miller's taking the battery important to the success of the Americans? Learn from the side-note what was the loss on both sides.

ceased to contend. The roar of the cataract alone was heard, as they retired, and left their position and artillery to the Americans. Gens. Brown and Scott were both wounded; and the command, after the battle, devolved on Gen. Ripley.

PT. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VII.

1814.

10. The American army, now reduced to 1,600, retired to *Fort Erie*, and there entrenched themselves. The enemy, to the number of 5,000, followed and besieged them. Col. Drummond had partially succeeded; and was in the act of denying mercy to the conquered, who were begging for quarter, when a barrel of powder beneath him became ignited, and he and they were blown together into the air.

Aug. 15.  
FT.  
ERIE.  
Br. L 500.  
Am. L. 54.

11. GEN. BROWN, observing that a portion of the British army was divided from the rest, ordered a sortie from the fort; which was one of the best conducted operations of the war. GEN. PORTER here distinguished himself, as did many others. But the loss was heavy for the wasting army of the Americans; and the country became anxious for the fate of those whose valor had shown the foe, that when once inured to war, there are no better officers or soldiers, than those of the American Republic. GEN. IZARD had been sent to their relief from Plattsburg; and now with 5,000 troops, he joined Gen. Brown. The British, after this, retired to their entrenchments behind Chippewa.

Sept. 17.  
ERIE  
SORTIE.  
Br. L k.,  
w., and pr.  
1,000.  
Am. L. k.  
and w. 300

## CHAPTER VII.

Washington taken by the British.—Baltimore threatened.

1. THE British fleet in the Chesapeake was augmented by the arrival of ADMIRAL COCHRANE, who

Aug. 17.  
Cochrane

9. What happened at midnight?—10. What was the condition of the American army after the battle? What the strength of the British? What was done by each? What loss occurred?—11. Describe the sortie from Fort Erie. What was the loss? What feeling had the country now respecting this army? What had the army shown? Who joined Gen. Brown? With what force?

P.T. IV. had been sent out with a large land force, com-  
 P.D. II. manded by GEN. ROSS, in pursuance of the resolu-  
 CH. VII. tion which had been taken by the British govern-  
 1814. ment, "to destroy and lay waste such towns and  
 Army districts upon the coast, as might be found assaila-  
 under ble." It was on the 19th, that Gen. Ross landed at  
 Ross. *Benedict*, with 5,000 infantry, and began his march  
 to Washington, distant twenty-seven miles, keeping  
 Aug. 22. along the right bank of the Pawtuxent. At Pig  
 Pig Point. Point, was stationed an American flotilla, com-  
 Barney's commanded by COM. BARNEY. He blew up the boats,  
 flotilla. and retired with his men.

2. The enemy's approach to Washington was by  
 Aug. 24. the *Bladensburg* road. Here he was met by GEN.  
 BLA- STANSBURY, with the militia from Baltimore,—by  
 DENS- Com. Barney's marines; and, finally, by the small  
 BURG. army under GEN. WINDER, to which had been as-  
 Am. L. 80. signed the defence of the capital. The British were  
 Br. L. 249. victorious.

3. Gen. Ross entered Washington at eight in the  
 Aug. 25. evening. His troops burnt, not only the capitol,  
 Gen. Ross enters the which was in an unfinished state, but its extensive  
 capital. library, records, and other collections; appertaining  
 not to war, but to peace and civilization. The pub-  
 lic offices and the president's house, were wantonly  
 sacrificed, together with many private dwellings.  
 This barbarous usage irritated, as it insulted the  
 American nation, and made the war popular with  
 all parties.

4. Admiral Cochrane having received on board  
 Sept. 11. his fleet the elated conquerors,—the combined land  
 The Br. and sea forces moved on to the attack of Baltimore.  
 threaten Ascending the Chesapeake, they appeared at the  
 Baltimore. mouth of the Patapsco, fourteen miles from that  
 city. Gen. Ross, with his army, amounting to about

---

CHAPTER VII.—1. What barbarous resolution had been taken by the British government? What sea and land forces had been sent out?—2. What opposition did Gen. Ross meet? What was the loss in the battle of *Bladensburg*?—3. When did the British enter Washington? What did they destroy?—4. Where did they next go?

5,000, debarked at *North Point*, and commenced his march towards the city. P'T. IV.

5. GEN. SMITH, commanded the defenders. He dispatched 2,000 men, under GEN. STRICKER, who advanced to meet the enemy. A skirmish ensued, in which Gen. Ross was killed. COL BROOKE, having the instructions of Gen. Ross, continued to move forward. The Americans gave way, and Gen. Stricker retired to the heights, where Gen. Smith was stationed with the main army. P'D. II.  
CH. VII.  
  
1814.  
Sept. 12.  
Skirmish  
  
Death of  
Ross.

6. Col. Brooke could not draw Gen. Smith from his entrenchments. His supporting fleet had not been able to pass Fort McHenry; and he removed his troops in the night, and re-embarked at North Point; to the great joy of the inhabitants of Baltimore. Night of  
Sept. 14.  
The Br.  
withdraw.

7. The eastern portion of the coast of Maine, was taken into quiet possession by the British. The frigate, John Adams, had been placed in the Penobscot river, near Hampden, for preservation. On the approach of the British, the militia who were there stationed as a guard, blew up the frigate and fled. July and  
August.  
Maine.

8. A British fleet under Com. HARDY appeared before Stonington. The marines landed and attacked at different points; but were met by the militia with much spirit. After bombarding the place for three days, Com. Hardy drew off his fleet. Aug. 9.  
British  
attack  
Stonington in  
Conn.

9. The British army in Canada was augmented by another body of those troops, who had served under Wellington. With such an army, 14,000 strong, SIR GEORGE PREVOST invaded New York by the western bank of Lake Champlain. From the village of Champlain, he proclaimed, that his arms would only be directed against the government, and those who supported it; while no injury should be done to the peaceful and unoffending inhabitants. Sept. 3.  
Sir G.  
Prevost  
invades  
at Cham  
plain.  
  
His proc  
amation  
offends  
the  
people.

---

5 What steps were taken to defend Baltimore?—6. Why did Col. Brooke withdraw?—7. What happened in Maine?—8. What in Connecticut?—9. What reinforcement had Sir G. Prevost received? What was his force? How did he employ it? What proclamation make at Champlain?

**P.T. IV.** 10. The fire of genuine patriotism rekindled in  
**P.D. II.** the breasts of the Americans, when they heard that  
**CH. VII.** an invading enemy had dared to call on the people to separate themselves from their government.  
**1814.** The inhabitants of the northern part of New York,  
 They rise to oppose the invaders. and the hardy sons of the Green Mountains, without distinction of party, rose in arms, and hastened towards the scene of action.

**Sept. 6.** 11. Sir George Prevost advanced upon *Platts-*  
**Skirmish.** *burg.* His way was obstructed by the felling of trees, and by a party, who in a skirmish, killed or wounded 120 of his men. But there was not a force at Plattsburg, which, at that time, could have resisted so formidable an army. Gen. Izard's departure had left GEN. MACOMB, his successor, not more than 2,000 regulars. Volunteers were, however, hourly arriving.

**The naval force on L. Champlain.** 12. Sir George waited, expecting that his navy would get the control of the waters of Lake Champlain. It was commanded by Com. DOWNIE, and was composed of the *Confiance*, a frigate of thirty-nine guns, with several smaller vessels, mounting, in the whole, ninety-five guns, and having 1,000 men. The American squadron, under Com. MACDONOUGH, which was anchored in the bay, mounted no more than eighty-six guns, and had only 820 men. It consisted of the *Saratoga*, of twenty-six guns, three small vessels, and ten galleys.

**Sept. 11.** 13. Com. Downie chose his position and made the  
**Naval V.** attack. The fleets engaged at nine in the morning.  
**CHAM-PLAIN.** The eager crowds upon the shore, beheld the combat under circumstances of intense and various interest. The powerful army of Prevost, was formed in order of battle, to follow up the striking of the American flag, with an assault, which the Ameri-

---

**10.** What effect did it produce?—**11.** What was now done by Sir G. Prevost? What resistance was made by the Americans? What force had Gen. Macomb?—**12.** Why did Sir George suspend his attack? What naval force had the British on the lake? What had the Americans?—**13.** Describe the naval battle on Lake Champlain.

cans, who beheld the fight, had reason to believe must be successful. But it was the British, not the American flag, which was struck. Great was the joy of the inhabitants. Sir George Prevost retreated in such haste, that he left a quantity of stores and ammunition behind. He was pursued by the Vermont volunteers under GEN. STRONG, who cut off a straggling party. The whole of the British fleet remained a prize to the Americans.

14. COM. PORTER, who sailed in the frigate *Essex*, had cruised in the Pacific Ocean. He had greatly annoyed the enemy's commerce, having captured twelve armed whale-ships, whose aggregate force amounted to 107 guns, and 302 men. One of these prizes was equipped,—named the *Essex Junior*, and given in command to LIEUT. DOWNES.

15. To meet the *Essex*, the British Admiralty had sent out COM. HILLYAR, with the *Phebe* frigate and the *Cherub* sloop of war. Com. Porter finding that this squadron was greatly his superior in force, remained in the harbor of Valparaiso. But at length the *Phebe* approached, when by a storm the *Essex* had been partially disabled. Porter, however, joined battle, and fought the most severe naval action of the whole war. He did not surrender until all his officers but one were disabled, and nearly three-quarters of his crew.

16. The sloop of war *Frolic*, was captured by a British frigate. The American sloop of war *Peacock*, fought and took the brig *Epervier*. The *Wasp*, in command of CAPT. BLAKELEY, sailed from Portsmouth, New Hampshire. She fought the brig *Reindeer*, and was conqueror after a desperate battle. Continuing her cruise, she next met, fought, and conquered the brig *Avon*. Three British vessels hove in sight and the *Wasp* left her prize. She afterwards captured fifteen merchant-vessels. But the

P.T. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. VII.

1814.

Com. Porter in the Pacific.

Com. Hillyar sent to meet him.

Naval D.  
The *Essex* captured.  
Am. L.  
227.

April 21.  
Naval D.

April 28.  
Naval V

The *Wasp* captured  
61 men.

14. Where was Com. Porter? What had he done?—15. Who was sent to meet him? What was the consequence? What was the American loss?—16. What naval actions occurred in April and May? Give an account of the *Wasp*.

PT. IV. gallant ship was heard of no more; and she prob-  
P.D. II. ably went down at sea.

CH. VIII. 17. The discontents of the opposition party, pro-  
duced a *Convention*, which met at *Hartford*. De-  
legates were appointed by the legislatures of three  
States, Massachusetts, Connecticut, and Rhode Isl-  
and. This assemblage, and the resolutions which  
they passed, were considered by the people gener-  
ally, as tending to separate New England from the  
Union, at least in degree; and the convention was,  
therefore, so unpopular, that of the leading men en-  
gaged in it, perhaps no one was ever afterwards  
elected to office. The committee by whom the res-  
olutions were to be transmitted to the government,  
met the news of peace on their way to Washington.  
That conservative patriotism which, in monarchical  
governments produces loyalty to the Sovereign, in  
AMERICA, becomes fealty to the UNION.

Dec. 14.  
Hartford  
conven-  
tion.

## CHAPTER VIII.

British invasion and defeat at New Orleans.

1. AFTER the treaty with the Creeks, GEN. JACK-  
son had fixed his head-quarters at *Mobile*. Here  
he learned that three British ships had entered the  
harbor of Pensacola, and landed about 300 men, un-  
der COL. NICHOLLS,—together with a large quantity  
of guns and ammunition, to arm the Indians.

Pensacola  
used as  
a hostile  
post.

La Fitte  
and the  
Barrata-  
rians.

2. The *Barratarians* were a band of pirates, so  
called from their island of Barrataria. Col. Nicholls  
attempted to gain LA FIRTE, the daring chief of the  
band. He gave Nicholls to think that he would aid

17. On what occasion did a convention meet at Hartford?  
Was this an affair of individuals acting in their private capacity,  
or one in which State governments were implicated? Why was  
it unpopular? Repeat the concluding sentence.

CHAPTER VIII.—1. Where was Gen. Jackson after the peace  
with the Creeks? What did he there learn had happened?—2.  
Give an account of the Barratarians.

him, until he had learned from him that the British were to make a powerful attempt upon New Orleans. La Fitte then went to CLAIBORNE, the governor of Louisiana, and laid open the whole scheme. The pirates were promised pardon, if they would now come forward in defence of their country. These conditions, they gladly accepted; and they rendered efficient service.

PT. IV  
P'D II  
CH. VIII

1811

3. Gen. Jackson, seeing that the British were using a Spanish port, for hostile acts against the United States, went to Pensacola, and forcibly took possession of the place. The British destroyed the the forts at the entrance of the harbor, and with their shipping evacuated the bay.

Nov. 7.  
Jackson  
takes Pen-  
sacola.

4. There Gen. Jackson was informed, that Admiral Cochrane had been reinforced at Bermuda, and that thirteen ships of the line, with transports, and an army of 10,000, were advancing. Believing New Orleans to be their destination, he marched for that place, and reached it on the 1st of December.

Dec. 1.

5. The inhabitants were already preparing for invasion, particularly Gov. Claiborne and EDWARD LIVINGSTON. On Gen. Jackson's arrival, all agreeing to put him at the head of affairs, he spared no pains, nor forgot any possible resource to enable the Louisianians to meet the coming shock. He had a motley mass of persons under his direction; and a few days must decide the fate of New Orleans. To direct their energies, and to keep them from favoring the enemy, which he had reason to fear some were inclined to do, he took the daring responsibility of proclaiming martial law.

Gen.  
Jackson  
placed at  
the head.

6. The enemy passed into *Lake Borgne*. They then mastered a flotilla, which, commanded by CAPT. JONES, guarded the passes into *Lake Pontchartrain*. GEN. KEAN, at the head of 3,000 British troops, landed at the head of Lake Borgne, and took post

Dec 13.

Dec. 22

3. What course did Jackson take with respect to Pensacola?—4. What did he hear, and what do?—5. What course did the inhabitants of New Orleans take? What bold measures did Gen. Jackson pursue?—6. Describe the course of the enemy.

**P.T. IV.** on the Mississippi, nine miles below New Orleans  
**P.D. II.** The next day, late in the afternoon, Gen. Jackson  
**CH. VIII.** attacked him; but the British troops stood their  
**1814.** ground. The Americans retired to a strong position,  
 Dec. 23. which was fortified with great care and skill,  
 Bank of and in a novel and effectual manner. Bags of cotton  
 the were used in making the breast-work, which  
**MISSISSIPPI.** received balls, like mounds of earth. The river  
 Whole was on one side of the army, and a thick wood on  
 Am. L. the other.  
 100.  
 Br. L.

**k. 224, w.**  
**unknown.**

**7.** **SIR EDWARD PACKENHAM**, the commander-in-chief of the British force, accompanied by **MAJOR GEN. GIBBS**, arrived at the British encampment with the main army and a large body of artillery. . . . On the first day of the new year, both  
**1815.** armies received reinforcements. That of the British  
 Jan. 1. now amounted to 14,000, while all that Jackson had under his command were 6,000,—and a part of these undisciplined.

**Jan. 8.**  
**NEW**  
**ORLE-**  
**ANS.**  
 Br. L.  
 2,600.  
 Am. L.  
**k. 7, w. 6.**

**8.** On the 8th of January, the British made their grand assault on the American camp, and were entirely defeated. They attacked three times with great spirit, and were three times repulsed by the well-directed fire of the American marksmen. Sir Edward Packenham was killed, and the two generals next in command were wounded. The disparity of loss, on this occasion, is utterly astonishing. While that of the enemy was 2,600, that of the Americans was but seven killed, and six wounded. Completely disheartened, the British abandoned the expedition on the night of the 18th, leaving behind their wounded and artillery.

---

**6.** What occurred on the 23d of Dec.? What was the loss on both sides? What can you say of the position where Gen. Jackson entrenched his army? Of his manner of fortification?—**7.** What was the numerical force of each army?—**8.** Describe the remarkable battle of the 8th of January? What was the loss on both sides?

## CHAPTER IX.

PEACE with England.—Naval combats.—War with Algiers.

1. ON the 17th of February, 1815, while the Americans were yet rejoicing for the victory at New Orleans, a special messenger arrived from Europe, bringing a treaty of peace, which the commissioners had concluded in the month of December, at Ghent. This treaty, which was immediately ratified by the president and senate, stipulated that all places taken during the war should be restored, and the boundaries between the American and British dominions revised. . . . The motives for the impressment of seamen had ceased with the wars in Europe; but America had failed to compel England to relinquish what, by a perversion of language, she calls the "right of search."

PT. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. IX.

1815.  
Feb. 17.

1814.  
Dec.

Treaty  
of Peace  
at Ghent.

2. On the 6th of April, a barbarous massacre was committed by the garrison at *Dartmoor prison*, in England, upon the defenceless Americans who were there confined. The British government was not, however, implicated in the transaction.

1815.  
DART-  
MOOR  
massacre.  
k. 68.

3. The United States declared war against *Algiers*. The Algerines had violated the treaty of 1795, and committed depredations upon the commerce of the republic. A squadron, under Com. *Decatur*, captured in the Mediterranean, an Algerine frigate; and also a brig, carrying twenty-two guns. He then sailed for Algiers. The Dey, intimidated, signed a treaty of peace, which was highly honorable and advantageous to the Americans.

War with  
Algiers.

Naval  
Victories  
June 17  
and 19.

Treaty  
with  
Algiers.

4. At the close of the war, the regular army of the United States was reduced to 10,000 men. For the better protection of the country, in case of an-

Army  
reduced

CHAPTER IX.—1. What news arrived on the 17th of February, 1815? At what time was the treaty concluded? What were some of its stipulations?—2. What massacre occurred?—3. What war was declared? What squadron was sent out? What was done by Decatur?—4. What was the number of the army?

**P.T. IV.** other war, Congress appropriated a large sum for  
**P.T. II.** fortifying the sea-coast and inland frontiers, and for  
**CH. IX.** the increase of the navy. . . . An act was passed  
**1816.** by Congress, to establish a national bank, with a  
**April.** capital of \$35,000,000. . . . In December, INDIANA  
**A national** was admitted into the Union as a State.  
**bank.**

**Progress**  
**of manu-**  
**factories**  
**for cotton**  
**cloth.**  
**5. MANUFACTURES.**—As early as the year 1790,  
 factories for the spinning of cotton, and manufactur-  
 ing of coarse cotton-cloths, were attempted in the  
 State of Rhode Island. They were first on a small  
 scale; but as the cloths found a ready market, their  
 number and extent gradually increased. The em-  
 barrassments, to which commerce was subjected  
 previous to the war, had increased the demand for  
 American goods; and led the people to reflect upon  
 the importance of depending upon themselves, inde-  
 pendent of the manufactures of foreign nations.

**Revulsion**  
**after war.**  
**6.** During the war, large capitals were vested in  
 manufacturing establishments, from which the capi-  
 talists realized a handsome profit. But at its close,  
 the English having made great improvements in  
 labor-saving machines, and being able to sell their  
 goods at a much lower rate than the American man-  
 ufacturers could afford, the country was immedi-  
 ately filled by importations from England. The  
 American manufactures being in their infancy, could  
 not stand the shock, and many failed.

**Manufac-**  
**tures en-**  
**couraged.**  
**7. NEW TARIFF.**—The manufacturers then peti-  
 tioned government for protection, to enable them to  
 withstand the competition; and in consequence of  
 this petition, the committee on commerce and man-  
 ufactures, in 1816, recommended that an additional  
 duty should be laid on imported goods. A new  
*tariff*, or arrangement of duties, was accordingly  
 formed, by which a small increase of duty was laid

**4.** What was done to put the country in a state of defence?  
 What act was passed in April, 1816? What State was admitted?

**—5.** Give some account of the progress, before the war, of manu-  
 facturing cotton cloth.—**6.** How did the manufacturers succeed  
 during the war? How after the war?—**7.** What did the manu-  
 facturers then desire the government to do? What was accord-  
 ingly done?

upon some fabrics, such as coarse cotton goods; but from the strength of the opposition, it was not sufficient to afford the desired protection.

PT. IV.  
P.D. II.  
CH. X.

8. COLONIZATION SOCIETY.—*A Society for colonizing free blacks* was formed. The society purchased land in Africa, where they yearly removed considerable numbers of the free blacks from America. The colony thus formed is named *Liberia*. . . . On the 4th of March JAMES MONROE was inaugurated president of the United States, and DANIEL D. TOMPKINS, vice-president.

1816.  
First proposed.

1817.  
March 4.

9. A treaty was made with the chiefs of the Wyandot, Delaware, Shawanese, Seneca, Ottawa, Chippewa, and Potawatomie Indians. Each of these tribes ceded to the United States, all lands to which they had any title within the limits of Ohio. The Indians were, if they chose, to remain on the ceded lands, subject to the laws of the State and country. . . . The Territory of MISSISSIPPI was this year admitted, as a State, into the Union.

Indian  
Treaties.

## CHAPTER X.

Internal Improvements.—Seminole War.

1. THE political feuds which had, since the Revolution, occasioned so much animosity, were now gradually subsiding. *A spirit of improvement* was also spreading over the country. *Facilities for travelling, and conveying merchandise and produce*, were continually increasing. These improvements were, however, made by the State governments; among which, the wealthy State of New York, at whose head was the illustrious DE WITT CLINTON,

1818.

Internal  
improvements.

De Witt  
Clinton.

The great  
canals of  
N. Y.

8. What society was formed? What is the African colony called? Who were made president and vice-president of the U. S.?—9. What treaty did the government make? What Territory was admitted as a State?

CHAPTER X.—1. What was at this time the condition of the country? By what authority were the improvements in roads, canals, &c., made? What State and what man took the lead?

PT. IV. took the lead. The *great western canal*, connecting  
 RD. II. Lake Erie with the waters of the Hudson; and the  
 CH. X. *northern canal*, bringing to the same river the waters  
 of Lake Champlain, were in 1823, fully completed.

1816. 2. Congress, however, by the consent of the leg-  
 islatures of Maryland, Pennsylvania, and Virginia,  
 caused the *great Cumberland road* to be made;  
 The Cumb- connecting, through the seat of government, the  
 erland road. eastern with the western States, and passing over  
 some of the highest mountains in the Union. *Mil-  
 itary roads* were opened from Plattsburg to Sack-  
 ett's Harbor, and from Detroit to the rapids of the  
 Maumee. *Military posts* were established in the  
 far West. One of these was at the mouth of the  
 Yellow Stone River.

3. SEMINOLE WAR.—Outlaws from the Creek na-  
 tion, and negroes, who had fled from their masters,  
 The Semi- had united with the Seminole Indians of Florida,  
 nole war. and massacres became so frequent, that the inhabi-  
 tants were obliged to flee from their homes for se-  
 curity. They were incited by an Indian prophet,  
 and by Arbuthnot and Ambrister, two English em-  
 issaries.

1817. 4. A detachment of forty soldiers, near the river  
 Dec. *Apalachicola*, were fired upon by a body of Indians  
 Lieut. that lay in ambush, and Lieut. Scott, who com-  
 Scott and manded, and all the party, except six, were killed.  
 34 men The offenders were demanded, but the chiefs re-  
 killed. fused to give them up. Gen. Jackson, with a body  
 General of Tennesseans, was ordered to the spot. He soon  
 Jackson makes defeated and dispersed them. Persuaded that the  
 a short Spaniards furnished the Indians with supplies, and  
 campaign. were active in fomenting disturbances, he entered  
 Florida, took possession of forts St. Marks and Pen-  
 sacola, and made prisoners of Arbuthnot, Ambris-  
 ter, and the Indian prophet.

2. What great work was accomplished, and at what time?  
 What road was, however, made by Congress? What military roads  
 were made? What posts established?—3. What was the cause of  
 the Seminole war? By whom were the Indians incited?—4. Re-  
 late the catastrophe of Lieut. Scott and his party. Who was sent  
 against the Indians? What did he do?

5. A court-martial was ordered by Gen. Jackson, PT. IV.  
P'D. II.  
CH. X. for the trial of Arbuthnot and Ambrister. They were found guilty of "exciting and stirring up the Creek Indians to war against the United States," and also of supplying them the means to carry on the war. Gen. Jackson caused them both to be executed. 1817.  
Two bad men

6. PENSIONS.—The indigent officers and soldiers of the Revolution had already been partially provided for. A more ample provision was now made, by which every officer, who had served nine months at any period of the Revolutionary War, and whose annual income did not exceed one hundred dollars, received a pension of twenty dollars a month; and every needy private soldier who had served that length of time, received eight. An act of justice.

7. INDIANS.—This year the *Chickasaws* ceded to the government of the United States, all their lands west of the Tennessee river, in the States of Kentucky and Tennessee. . . . The condition of those tribes living within the Territories of the United States, now attracted the attention of the government, and a humane policy dictated its measures. The sum of 10,000 dollars was annually appropriated for the purpose of establishing schools among them, and to promote in other ways their civilization. Missionaries, supported by societies, went among the Indians; and success, in many instances, crowned their efforts. . . . ALABAMA Territory was this year admitted into the union of the States; and the Territory of *Arkansas* separated from Missouri Territory. 1818.  
Provision made for the Indians.

8. FEMALE EDUCATION.—In December, 1818, De Witt Clinton, then governor of New York, recommended in his message to the legislature of that 1818.  
De Witt Clinton recommends attention to female education

5. What did he order? What was done in reference to Arbuthnot and Ambrister?—6. What measure of justice did Congress adopt?—7. What tribe ceded their lands to the United States? What was done in respect to the Indian tribes? What State was admitted? What territory was made?—8. What State patronized female education? Who recommended it?

**P.T. IV.** State, some special attention to the education of females. The legislature passed an act, in the course of the session, which was probably the first act of any legislature, making public provision for the education of young women. It provides that academies for their instruction in the higher branches of learning, shall be privileged to receive a share of the literature fund.

**P.D. II.**  
**CH. X.**  
**1819.**  
Feb.  
The legis-  
lature  
pass an  
act ac-  
cordingly.

9. Several of the States, especially among those recently admitted, have since made provision for the same object. Religious denominations and wealthy parents of daughters, have also favored it; and throughout the country, female schools have sprung up. Large and handsome edifices are erected; and adequate teachers, libraries, and apparatus, are provided for the use of the students.

Large edi-  
fices,  
apparatus,  
&c.,  
furnished.

10. On the 23d of February, 1819, a treaty was negotiated at Washington, between John Quincy Adams, secretary of state, and Don Onís, the Spanish minister; by which, Spain ceded to the United States, East and West Florida, and the adjacent islands. The United States agreed, on their part, to pay to their own citizens, what Spain owed them on account of unlawful seizures of their vessels; to an amount not exceeding five millions of dollars.

Feb. 23.  
Treaty  
with  
Spain  
nego-  
tiated.

**1820.**  
Ratified.

**1821.**  
Posses-  
sion  
given.

The treaty was ratified by the Spanish government in October, 1820, and possession of the Floridas given the following year.

---

8. What act was passed?—9. What has since been done in regard to female education?—10. What treaty was negotiated? When? What Territory was ceded? What was the American government to pay for it? When was the treaty ratified? When was possession given?

## LIST OF PRESIDENTS OF THE UNITED STATES

---

GEORGE WASHINGTON, of Virginia ;

(Two terms, 8 years)...his first inauguration, April 30, 1789.

His second, March 4, 1793.

JOHN ADAMS, of Massachusetts ;

(One term, four years), March 4 1797.

THOMAS JEFFERSON, of Virginia ;

(Two terms), March 4, 1801.

JAMES MADISON, of Virginia ;

(Two terms), March 4, 1809.

JAMES MONROE, of Virginia ;

(Two terms), March 4, 1817.

JOHN QUINCY ADAMS, of Massachusetts ;

(One term), March 4, 1825.

ANDREW JACKSON, of Tennessee ;

(Two terms), March 4, 1829.

MARTIN VAN BUREN, of New York ;

(One term), March 4, 1837.

\*WILLIAM HENRY HARRISON, of Ohio ;

(Who dies after one month), March 4, 1841

JOHN TYLER, of Virginia ;

Vice-president, becomes President, April 4, 1841.

JAMES K. POLK, of Tennessee ;

(One term), March 4, 1845.

\*ZACHARY TAYLOR, of Mississippi ;

(Who dies after 1 year and 4 months), March 4, 1849

MILLARD FILLMORE, of New York ;

Vice-president, succeeds, July 9, 1850.

FRANKLIN PIERCE, of New Hampshire ;

(One term), March 4, 1853.

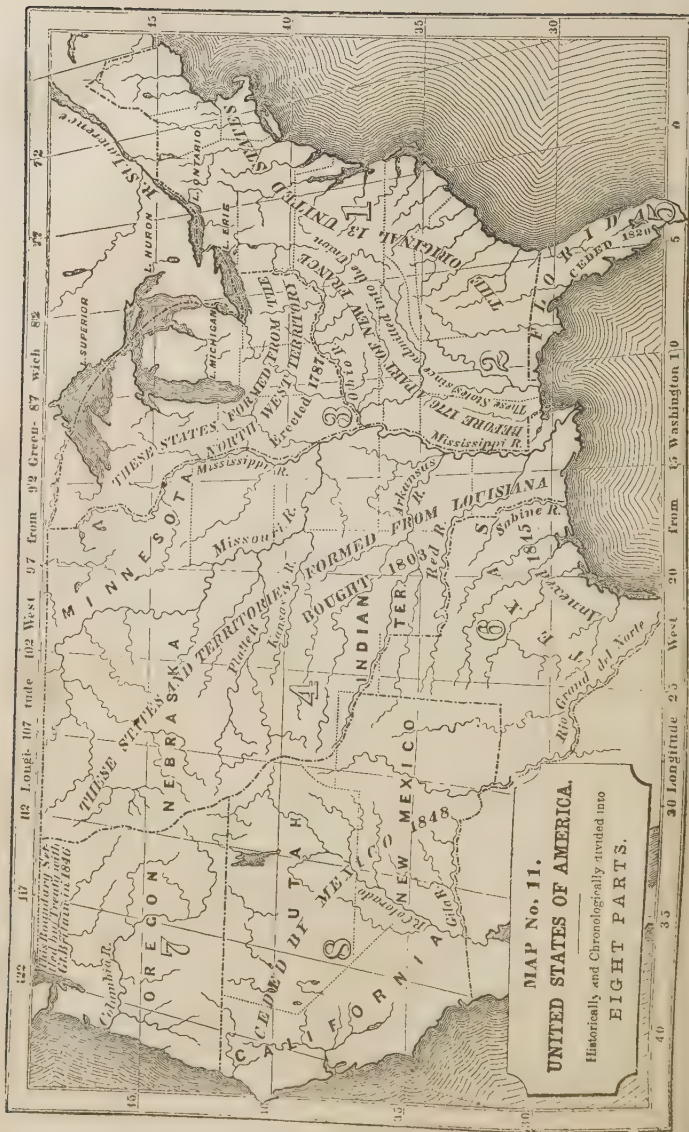
JAMES BUCHANAN, of Pennsylvania ;

(One term), March 4, 1857.

The presidents were all members of the national legislature before their election, and had all studied law, except Washington, Harrison, and Taylor.

---

\* Died in office. If from this list is copied the names of the presidents, to place on the pillars of the American Temple of Time enlarged—to prevent the drawing being crowded the two names marked with a star should be left off.





Osceola's Attack.

## PERIOD III.

FROM

THE CESSION } 1820 { OF FLORIDA,

TO

THE CLOSE OF } 1848. { THE MEXICAN WAR.

### CHAPTER I.

The Missouri Question.—The Tariff.—Gen. Lafayette's Visit.

1. A QUESTION was now debated in Congress, <sup>P.T. IV.</sup> which agitated the whole country. It had reference <sup>P.D. III.</sup> to a subject, which, at this time, more threatens the <sup>CH. I.</sup> stability of the Union, and consequently the existence of this nation, than any other. This is slavery. **1820.** The question arose on a petition presented to Congress from the Territory of Missouri, praying for authority to form a State government, and to be admitted into the Union. A bill was accordingly introduced for that purpose, but with an amendment, prohibiting slavery within the new State. In this form, it passed the house of representatives, but was arrested in the senate. <sup>The Missouri question.</sup>

CHAPTER I.—1. What very important question was now debated in Congress? What was done in reference to it?

- P.T. IV.** 2. After much discussion, a *compromise* was  
**P.D. III.** agreed on, and a bill passed for the admission of  
**CH. I.** Missouri without any restriction, but with the *in-*  
**1821.** *hibition of slavery* throughout the Territories of  
 Missouri admitted the United States, *north of 36° 30' north latitude.*  
 without restriction. **MAINE** was also received into the Union. . . . Mr.  
 Maine a separate State. **MONROE**, by a vote nearly unanimous, entered upon  
 his second term of office. **MR. TOMPKINS** was also  
 continued in the vice-presidency. . . . By the fourth  
 census the number of inhabitants in 1820, was found  
 to be 9,625,734, of whom 1,531,436 were slaves.
- Jackson** 3. President Monroe appointed Gen. Jackson gov-  
 governor ernor of Florida in March, but it was not until  
 of Florida. August that the reluctant Spanish officers yielded  
 up their posts. . . . The *Alligator*, a United States  
**1822.** schooner, was sent against pirates in the West Indian  
 Allen's seas, and recaptured five vessels belonging to Amer-  
 Naval V icans. She also took one piratical schooner; but  
 His death. **ALLEN**, the brave commander of the *Alligator*, was  
 mortally wounded in the engagement.
- 1823.** 4. By recommendation of the president the inde-  
 Republics pendence of the South American Republics was  
 of S. A. acknowledged, and ministers were appointed to  
**1824.** *Mexico, Buenos Ayres, Columbia, and Chili.* . . . Ar-  
 Treaty ticles were entered into, by the United States and  
 with Great Britain, authorizing the commissioned officers  
 of each nation, to capture and condemn the ships of  
 the other, which should be concerned in the slave  
 trade.
- 5.** Notwithstanding the depression which suc-  
 ceeded the war, the manufacture of cotton had ul-  
 timately proved successful. Domestic cottons almost  
 supplied the country, and considerable quantities  
 were exported to South America. Factories for  
 printing calicoes, had been erected in a few places;  
 and in some instances the manufacture of lace had
- Manufactures** begin to prosper.

---

2. What compromise was made? What other State was admitted at the same time? What was the number of inhabitants in 1820?—3. Who was made governor of Florida? What was done in the West Indian seas?—4. What was done in reference to the South American Republics? In regard to the slave-trade?

been attempted. The manufacturers and their friends, still wished the government to lay such a duty on imported cotton goods, as must make them so high in the market, that they could afford to undersell foreign goods of the kind. After much discussion, a bill for a new tariff passed. It afforded the desired protection to cotton goods; but the question was still agitated in favor of the manufactures of wool, iron, &c.

P.T. IV.

P.D. III.

CH. I.

1824.

A protec-  
tive tariff

6. GENERAL LAFAYETTE\* arrived in New York, in consequence of a special invitation, which Congress had given him, to become the guest of America. His feelings were intense at revisiting again, in prosperity, the country, which he had sought and made his own in adversity. Esteemed, as he was, for his virtues, and consecrated by his sufferings and constancy, no good man of any country could view him, without an awe mingled with tenderness; but to Americans there was besides, gratitude for his services, and an associated remembrance of those worthies of the Revolution, with whom he had lived.

Aug. 15.  
Lafayette  
arrives.Deep feel-  
ing of all

7. Thousands assembled to meet Lafayette at New York; who manifested their joy at beholding him by shouts, acclamations, and tears. He rode, uncovered, from the Battery to the City Hall, receiving and returning the affectionate gratulations of the multitude. At the City Hall, he was welcomed by an address from the mayor. He then met with a few gray-headed veterans of the Revolution, his old companions in arms; and though nearly half a century had passed since they parted, his faithful memory had kept their countenances and names.

His recep-  
tion in  
N. Y.

\* In the days of the Revolution, The Marquis de la Fayette was the style by which the hereditary nobleman was known. Subsequently he renounced all distinctions of this kind, and would receive no other title than that given by his military-rank. His address was then General Lafayette.

5. What protection did the manufacturers still desire? Was a new tariff formed which met their wishes?—6. What is here said of Gen. Lafayette?—7. How was he received in New York?

P.T. IV. 8. He travelled first east; then south and west,  
P.D. III. visiting all the principal cities, and every State in  
CH. I. the Union. His whole progress through the United  
States was one continued triumph, the most illustri-  
ous of any recorded in history. Nor was it merely  
his tour of triumph. honor, which the grateful republic gave to her former  
defender. Congress voted him the sum of two hun-  
dred thousand dollars, and a township of land in  
Florida.

9. During Mr. Monroe's administration, America  
1817 enjoyed profound peace. Sixty millions of her na-  
to tional debt were discharged. The Floridas were  
1825. peacefully acquired; and the western limits of the  
Republic were—on account of the discoveries of  
National CAPT. GREY, of Boston, and the expedition of CLARK  
prosperity and peace. and LEWIS, under Mr. Jefferson—now acknowl-  
edged to extend to the Pacific ocean. The voice of  
party spirit had died away, and the period is still  
spoken of, as the "era of good feeling."

10. Mr. Monroe's second term of office having  
expired, four among the principal citizens were set  
Four can- up as candidates for the presidency—John Quincy  
didates Adams, Andrew Jackson, Henry Clay, and William  
for presi- H. Crawford. No choice being made by the elect-  
dent. ors, a president was to be chosen by the house of  
No choice representatives, from the three candidates whose  
by the number of votes stood highest. These were Messrs.  
college of Adams, Jackson, and Crawford. MR. ADAMS was  
electors. chosen.

11. On the 4th of July, 1826, died JOHN ADAMS  
1826. and THOMAS JEFFERSON. Their deaths occurring  
July 4. on the same day, and that, the birth of the nation,  
caused intense public feeling. . . . Another anniver-  
1831. sary witnessed the death of Mr. Monroe.  
July 4.

12. A man by the name of WILLIAM MORGAN,  
who was preparing to publish a book, purporting to

---

8. What can you say of his travels and progress through the country? Of the gratitude of our republic on this occasion?—9. What was now the condition of the country?—10. What was the course of the election?—11. What three ex-presidents died on the 4th of July In what years?

disclose the secrets of Free-masonry, was taken, on the 11th of September, under color of a criminal process, from Batavia, Genesee county, New York,—to Canandaigua, in Ontario county,—examined and discharged; but on his leaving the prison in the evening, he was seized by persons unknown, forced into a carriage, rapidly driven out of the village, and was never seen by his friends again. . . . The legislature of New York appointed a committee of investigation, who reported that William Morgan had been put to death. Morgan's abduction excited a strong prejudice against Free-masonry; and a political party was formed, called the Anti-masonic,—the time-honored institution of Masonry has, however, in a great measure, recovered from the blow which it thus received from a few of its misguided votaries.

PT. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. II.

1826.

(Supposed that, to punish his revealing the secrets of Free-masonry, he was drowned.)

Anti-masonic party.

## CHAPTER II.

Black Hawk's war.—The cholera.—Nullification.

1. The tariff act was again amended and additional duties were laid on wool and woollens, iron, hemp and its fabrics, lead, distilled spirits, silk stuffs, window-glass, and cottons. The manufacturing States received the law with warm approbation; while the southern States regarded it as highly prejudicial to the interests of the cotton planter. . . . GEN. JACKSON was inaugurated president, and JOHN C. CALHOUN, of South Carolina, vice-president of the United States.

1828.  
Another protective tariff.

1829.  
March 4. Jackson's inauguration.

2. Though the tariff bill found but few friends in the southern States, the citizens of most of them were in favor of seeking its repeal by constitutional

12. What offence had William Morgan given the Masonic societies? Give an account of Morgan's abduction. What was done in consequence of Morgan's abduction?

CHAPTER II.—1. What further was done in reference to the tariff? In what year was President Jackson's first inauguration? Who was made vice-president?

P.T. IV. measures. In South Carolina, however, a small  
P.D. III. majority, now first called the "State rights" party,  
CH. II. and afterwards the "nullifiers," were preparing  
1832. themselves, by high excitement, for rash measures.

3. The Winnabagoes, Sacs, and Foxes, inhabiting  
the upper Mississippi, became hostile. Under their  
chief, BLACK HAWK, they scattered rapidly their  
well-mounted war parties over that defenceless coun-  
try, breaking up settlements, and killing whole fam-  
ilies. GENs. ATKINSON and SCOTT, were charged  
with the defence of that frontier.

4. The *Asiatic cholera* made its appearance in  
Canada, on the 9th of June, among some newly ar-  
rived Irish emigrants. It proceeded rapidly along  
the valleys of the St. Lawrence, Champlain, and  
Hudson, and on the 26th several cases occurred in  
the city of New York. A great proportion of the  
inhabitants left the place in dismay; but, notwith-  
standing the reduction of numbers, the ravages of  
the disease were appalling. It spread with great  
rapidity throughout the States of New York and  
Michigan, and along the valleys of the Ohio and  
Mississippi, to the Gulf of Mexico. From New  
York, it went south through the Atlantic States, as  
far as North Carolina. It apparently followed the  
great routes of travel, both on the land and water.

5. Gen. Scott, hastening to the seat of the war,  
embarked a considerable force in steamboats, at  
Buffalo. The season was hot, the boats were crowd-  
ed, and the cholera broke out among the troops.  
Language cannot depict the distress that ensued,  
both before and after their landing; and, although  
Gen. Scott watched over the sick soldiers with a  
father's tenderness, yet many died, and many de-  
serted from dread of the disease and perished in the  
woods—either from cholera or starvation. . . . Gen.

2. What party now arose in South Carolina?—3. Give some  
account of Black Hawk's war.—4. At what time did the Asiatic  
cholera make its appearance, and where? What course did it  
pursue?—5. By what cause was Gen. Scott detained with his  
troops?

Atkinson came up with Black Hawk's army, near the mouth of the upper Iowa, and routed and dispersed them. Black Hawk, his son, and several warriors of note, were made prisoners.

6. *The State rights party, in South Carolina*, held a convention at Columbia, from whence they issued an *ordinance* in the name of the people, in which they declared that Congress, in laying protective duties, had exceeded its just powers; and that the several acts alluded to, should, from that time, be utterly *null and void*; and that it should be the duty of the legislature and the courts of justice of South Carolina, to adopt measures to arrest their operation, from and after the 1st of February, 1833.

7. The friends of the Union, in South Carolina, also held a convention, at Columbia. They published a solemn protest against the ordinance. Meetings were held, and similar resolutions passed, in almost every part of the United States. When the legislature of South Carolina convened, Gov. HAMILTON, in his message, expressed his approval of the ordinance. He recommended that the militia should be reorganized;—that the executive should be authorized to accept of the services of 12,000 volunteers;—and that provision should be made for procuring heavy ordnance, and other munitions of war.

8. On the 10th of December, President Jackson published a proclamation, in which he said, "I consider, then, the power to annul a law of the United States, assumed by one State, incompatible with the existence of the Union,—contradicted expressly by the Constitution,—unauthorized by its spirit,—inconsistent with every principle on which it was founded, and destructive of the great object for which it was formed."

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. II.

1832.

Nov. 19.  
Nullification  
Ordinance.

Nov. 24.  
The  
Unionists  
meet and  
protest.

Nov. 27.  
State au-  
thorities  
approve.

Oct. 10.  
President  
Jack-  
son's pro-  
clamation.

5 What was done by Gen. Atkinson?—6. What convention was held? What was declared in the celebrated ordinance?—7. What did the friends of the Union in S. C.? What did the governor?—8. When did the President issue a proclamation? What view did he take of the question of a State's annulling the laws of the general government?

**P.T. IV.** 9. In conclusion, the president plainly said,—that  
**P.D. III.** the laws of the United States *must be executed*,—  
**CH. III.** that he had no discretionary power on the subject;  
**1832.** that those who said they might *peaceably* prevent  
 their execution, deceived them; that nothing but a  
 forcible opposition could prevent their execution,  
 and that *such opposition must be repelled*; for “dis-  
 union by armed force,” he said, “is treason.” Fi-  
 nally, he appealed to the patriotism of South Caro-  
 lina, to retrace her steps; and, to the country, to  
 rally in defence of the Union.

Shows the  
nullifiers  
their error  
and their  
danger.

10. This proclamation of Gen. Jackson was popu-  
 lar—with all ranks and parties. It was not, how-  
 ever, immediately followed by submission on the  
 part of South Carolina; but preparations for war  
 went on,—both on the side of the general govern-  
 ment, and that of the opposing State.

**1833.** 11. On the 12th of February, MR. CLAY intro-  
**Feb. 12.** duced into the Senate his plan of compromise. The  
**Mr. Clay's** bill reduced the duties on certain articles, and lim-  
**compro-** ited the operation of the tariff to the 30th Septem-  
**mise** ber, 1842. *Mr. Clay's compromise bill* was signed  
**Tariff bill.** by the president, and became a law on the 3d of  
 March. It gave content to the citizens of the Uni-  
 ted States; for the Union is the life of the na-  
 tion. . . . GEN. JACKSON having been re-elected pres-  
 ident, and MARTIN VAN BUREN, of New York,  
 chosen vice-president, they were, on the 4th of  
 March, inaugurated.

March 4.  
Jackson  
and Van  
Buren.

### CHAPTER III.

The aboriginal tribes of the Mississippi sent to the Far West.—  
 The Florida war.

1. GEN. JACKSON, in his message, proposed that  
 an ample district, west of the Mississippi, and with-

9. What did he say in regard to the laws being executed?—10.  
 Was this proclamation popular? Did S. C. immediately submit?  
 —11. What was introduced into Congress? How was it received?  
 What may be said of the Union? At what time was Gen. Jack-  
 son's second inauguration? Who was made vice president?

out the limits of any State or Territory, should be set apart and guaranteed to the remaining Indian tribes; each to have distinct jurisdiction over the part designated for its use, and free from any control of the United States, other than might be necessary to preserve peace on the frontier. Congress approved the plan, and passed laws authorizing the president to carry it into execution.

2. With the *Chickasaws* and *Choctaws*, treaties were made by which they exchanged lands, and quietly emigrated to the country fixed on; which was the territory west of Arkansas. The United States paid the expense of their removal, and supplied them with food for the first year. . . . When Georgia ceded to the United States, April 2, 1802, all that tract of country lying south of Tennessee, and west of the Chatahoochee river, the government paid in hand to that State \$1,250,000, and further agreed, "at their own expense, to extinguish, for the use of Georgia, as early as the same could be *peaceably* obtained upon reasonable terms, the Indian title to the lands lying within the limits of that State."

3. The *Cherokees*, in the meantime, exercised a sort of independent dominion, within their reservations; by which a retreat was furnished for runaway slaves, and fugitives from justice, who were ever ready for violence. The legislature of Georgia, annoyed by their aggressions, extended its laws and jurisprudence over the whole Indian territory. The Indians, offended, appealed to the general government for redress. The well-known policy of President Jackson, was to remove them; and the Georgians, thus encouraged, sought to make their position untenable. They put in prison two missiona-

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III  
CH. III.

**1830.**  
Jackson  
proposes  
the  
removal  
of the  
Indians.

**1831,  
2 & 3.**  
The  
Chicka-  
saws and  
Choctaws  
remove.

**1802.**  
Georgia  
cedes  
Alabama.

Cherokees  
an inde-  
pendent  
State.

**1831.**  
Missiona-  
ries put in  
prison.

CHAPTER III.—1. What did Gen. Jackson propose with regard to the remaining Indian tribes? What did Congress?—2. What tribes peaceably emigrated? What contract was made between the general government and Georgia?—3. In what situation were the Georgians placed? What did their legislature? What did the Indians? What did Gen. Jackson? What was done in reference to the missionaries?

P'T. IV. ries, whom they suspected of dissuading the Indians  
P'D. III. against the removal. The president would do  
CH. III. nothing to check these irregular proceedings.

1838. 4. A treaty was at length obtained by the agents  
of the general government, from a few of the chiefs,  
by which the removal of the tribes was to take place.  
Treaty The fairness of this treaty was denied; and the In-  
with the dians were averse to leaving their pleasant land, and  
Chero- the graves of their fathers. But their removal was  
kees. at length effected without bloodshed.

1823. 5. FLORIDA WAR.—The greatest difficulty was  
Sept. found with the *Seminoles*, inhabiting East Florida.  
Ft. A treaty was made at *Fort Moultrie*, with their  
Moultrie chiefs, by which they relinquished a large portion of  
with the their lands, but reserved a part for the residence of  
Semi- their people. . . . A further treaty was made at  
inoles. *Payne's Landing*, in Florida; by which they gave

1832. up all their reservations, and conditionally agreed to  
May 9. remove. Subsequently, some of their chiefs made  
Payne's this agreement absolute; but the transaction was  
Landing. regarded by the *Seminoles* generally, as unfair and  
treacherous.

6. President Jackson, in 1834, sent GEN. WILEY  
1834. THOMPSON to Florida, to prepare for the emigra-  
Gen. tion. He soon found that most of the Indians were  
Thomp- unwilling to leave their homes. On holding a con-  
son ference with them, OSCEOLA, their favorite chief, a  
sent to man great in Indian talents, took a tone that dis-  
Florida. pleased him. He put him in irons, and confined him  
to prison for a day. Osceola seemed penitent, signed  
Osceola. the treaty to remove, and was released. But he  
dissembled, and concerted with the Indians a deep  
and cruel revenge.

7. The government ordered troops from the south-  
ern posts to repair to *Fort Brooke*, at Tampa Bay.  
The command was given to GEN. CLINCH, who was

---

4. What treaty was obtained? And what was at length effec-  
ted?—5. Where was the greatest difficulty found? What treaties  
were made with the *Seminoles*? At what times?—6. Who was  
sent as government agent, and what were his first measures?—7.  
Who was appointed to the command?

at *Camp King*. MAJOR DADE, with 112 men, marched from Fort Brooke to join him. About eighty miles of the toilsome journey had been accomplished, when, on the morning of the 28th, Major Dade rode in front of his troops and cheered them with the intelligence that their march was nearly at an end. A volley was fired at the moment, from hundreds of unseen muskets, The speaker, and those he addressed, fell dead. Thirty alone remained, when the Indians drew off. They improved the respite afforded them, to construct a breastwork of trees which they felled. While they were thus engaged, where was Osceola? It is supposed that he went the twenty miles from Dade's battle-field to *Camp King*, to perform a work there.

8. On that day, Gen. Wiley Thompson, with a convivial party, was dining at a house within sight of the garrison. As the company sat at table, believing themselves in perfect security, a discharge of muskets was suddenly poured through the doors and windows. A part fell dead, and a part escaping from the house, were followed and killed in the bushes without. Of the latter was Gen. Thompson, who was scalped by the revengeful Osceola. He and his mounted party then returned triumphant, and completed the massacre of the remaining thirty survivors.

9. Gen. Clinch collected a force, and marched from *Fort Drane* to the *Withlacoochee*. But he followed a guide who was in league with the Seminoles. When the soldiers had in part crossed the *Withlacoochee*, Osceola and his warriors rose from concealment and attacked them. They charged, and drove the Indians, but met a considerable loss; and returned without effecting their object.

10. Emboldened by success, the Seminoles appeared in the neighborhood of almost every settlement in Florida. Houses were burned, crops de-

7. Where was he? Who marched to join him, and with what force? What befell the party?—8. What was done next by the savages?—9. Give an account of Gen. Clinch's battle of the *Withlacoochee*.

P.T. IV.

P.D. III.

CH. III.

1835.

Dade's  
march.

Dec. 28.

DADE'S

BATTLE

FIELD.

Am. L. 82.

Osceola's

MASSA-

CREAT

CAMP

KING.

The last

scene

of the

tragedy.

Dec. 31.

Clinch's

battle

of the

WITH-

LACOO-

CHEE.

Am. L. L.

40, w. 60.

**P'T. IV.** stroyed, negroes carried off, and families murdered  
**P'D. III.** in every direction. **GEN. SCOTT**, now invested with  
**CH. III.** the chief command, arrived at *St. Augustine*. The  
 savages having followed **Gen. Clinch**, his position  
 at **Fort Drane** was critical. **Gen. Scott** sent troops  
 to his relief, and was preparing a plan of offensive  
 operations, when **GEN. GAINES** landed at **Tampa**  
**Bay**, four days after **Scott** arrived at **St. Augustine**.  
 He brought a force from **New Orleans**, and consid-

**Feb. 11.** ered it as his right to command in the peninsula.  
**Gaines** 11. **Gaines** marched his troops to **Fort Drane**;  
**b. 1,000** and taking from there four days' provisions, he set out  
**from N. O.** for the **Withlacoochee**, to seek the **Seminoles**. Hav-  
 ing reached that river, the **Indians** attacked him, and  
 a battle ensued. The **Americans** kept the ground,  
 though not without considerable loss. The **Indians**  
 then besieged them in camp. **Gen. Clinch** approached  
 with an army. **Osceola** contrived to amuse **Gen.**  
**Gaines** with a parley, until the **Indian** women and chil-  
 dren were removed to the south. There, among the  
 everglades and hammocks, the **American** troops vainly  
 sought the tribe through bogs and fens,—in dan-  
 ger from serpents and other venomous reptiles,—tor-  
 tured by poisonous insects, and often the victims of  
 the climate.

**Feb. 20.** 12. **GEN. JESUP** soon arrived to take the com-  
**Gaines'** mand; **Gen. Scott** having been ordered to the coun-  
**battle** try of the **Creeks**. **Osceola**, under protection of a  
**of the** flag, with about seventy of his warriors, came to the  
**WITH-** American camp. **Gen. Jesup** had reason to believe  
**LACOO-** him to be treacherous; and he caused him with his  
**CHEE.** escort, to be forcibly detained, and subsequently to  
 be placed in a prison at **Fort Moultrie, S. C.**, where,  
 a few months after, he died of a complaint in the  
 throat.

**1837.** **Oct. 21.** 10. What was the conduct of the **Indians**? Who arrived at **St.**  
**Seizure of** **Augustine**? What did he do? What was done by **Gen. Gaines**?  
**Osceola.** —11. Where did he march? Describe **Gen. Gaines'** battle of the  
**1838.** **Jan.** **Withlacoochee**. What happened after the battle? To what evils  
**His death.** have the army been subjected in searching for these **Indians**?  
 —12. What change of officers occurred? What happened with  
 respect to **Osceola**?

13. Gen. Jesup, at first supposed that the war would soon be brought to a close, but finding himself mistaken, he directed COL. ZACHARY TAYLOR to act offensively. This officer set out with a thousand resolute men, who marched four days through wet, swampy grounds. On the fifth, the Indians, whom they sought, attacked them at the entrance of the *Kissimmee* river into lake *Okee-Chobee*. The troops engaged them with coolness. The brunt of the battle fell at first on the sixth regiment. COL. THOMPSON, their commander, mortally wounded, died, encouraging his men. The Indians were routed and dispersed, and a hundred gave themselves up to be carried to the West. GEN. WORTH had the honor of bringing this hard and difficult contest to a close.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. IV

1837.  
Dec. 20.

Dec. 25.  
OKEE-  
CHOBEE  
Semi.  
defeated.  
100 pr.  
Am. L. k.  
and w. 138.

14. CREEK WAR.—Early in May, the *Creeks* began hostilities—setting fire to houses, and murdering families. They attacked a steamboat which was ascending the *Chatahoochee*, eight miles below Columbus,—killed her pilot, wounded several others, and burned the boat. Another steamboat was fired at the wharf of Roanoke, and the passengers were consumed in the flames. The barbarians then set fire to the town, and destroyed it. The governor of Georgia raised troops, took the field in person, and Gen. Scott arrived on the 30th of May. Their combined efforts quelled the Creeks, and peace was restored early in the summer.

1836.

Creek  
outrages

May 30.  
They  
are over-  
powered.

## CHAPTER IV.

The Bank Question.—The Revulsion.—Van Buren's Administration.—Harrison's Election and Death.

1. MR. RIVES, at Paris, negotiated with the minister of Louis-Philippe, king of the French, a treaty

1803.  
Rives'  
Treaty  
with  
France.

13. What were the circumstances connected with the battle of Okee-Chobee? Who brought the Florida war to a close?—14. Give an account of the atrocious acts of the Creeks. How were they brought to terms?

CHAPTER IV.—1. What treaty was negotiated by Mr. Rives?

PT IV. by which that nation agreed to give 25,000,000  
 P.D. III. francs to indemnify the United States for spoliation  
 CH. IV. on American commerce, made under the operations  
 of the decrees of Napoleon. The French, however,  
 had neglected to pay the money. Gen. Jackson  
 took such prompt measures and so decided a tone,  
 that in 1836 the demand was liquidated agreeably  
 to the treaty. . . . In September, 1835, Wisconsin  
 was made a Territory, and ARKANSAS a State. MICH-  
 1837. IGAN was, in 1837, admitted to the Union, making  
 January. the twenty-sixth State; *the original number, thir-*  
 Michigan. *teen, being now exactly doubled.*  
 a State.

2. Extravagance and luxury had prevailed, and  
 national adversity followed. The opponents of Gen.  
 1837. Jackson attributed the revulsion to circumstances  
 connected *with the overthrow of the national bank,*  
*caused by his hostility.* . . . In 1832, the directors of  
 the bank applied for a renewal of its charter. After  
 much debate, Congress passed, by a considerable  
 majority, a bill granting their petition. This bill  
 1832. Gen. Jackson defeated by the presidential veto. . . .  
 The veto. The funds of the government had been deposited in  
 1833. the national bank. In 1833, the president caused  
 The with- them to be withdrawn. The public treasure, was  
 drawal. by act of Congress, placed in certain selected State  
 1835. banks, known at the time as the "pet banks."  
 The "pet These were encouraged to discount freely, as it might  
 banks." accommodate the people.

3. Mr. Jackson was succeeded by MARTIN VAN  
 1837. BUREN, who, during the last four years, had, as vice-  
 March 4. president, presided with great ability in the Senate.  
 Van Bu- RICHARD M. JOHNSON, of Kentucky, was made vice-  
 ren and president.  
 Johnson.

4. After the public money went into the State

---

1. When was the money paid? What Territory and States  
 were organized? What can you say concerning the number of  
 States at this time?—2. What had prevailed? What followed?  
 How was this change in public prosperity accounted for by the op-  
 ponents of Gen. Jackson? What happened in 1832? Where had  
 the national funds been deposited? Who caused them to be  
 withdrawn? Where were they then placed?—3. Who was made  
 president? In what year?

banks, facilities too great before, were increased, whereby men might, by pledging their credit, possess themselves of money. The good old roads of honest industry were abandoned, while fortunes were made in an hour by speculation. This unnatural state of things had its crisis in 1837.

5. Before this crisis, every one was making money. Afterwards all were losing. Many had contracted large debts; when some began to fail, others, who had depended on them, were obliged to fail also; and so the disaster went on increasing its circle, until the whole community felt it, in a greater or less degree.

6. The banks now stopped specie payments. Those where the public funds were deposited, shared the common fate, and the questions arose how was the government to meet its current expenses, and what next should be done with the public purse? To decide these questions, Mr. Van Buren issued his proclamation, convening a special Congress.

7. In his message, the president recommended a mode of keeping the public money, called the "sub-treasury" scheme; which was rejected by Congress. Treasury notes were ordered to be issued, and other measures taken to supply the wants of the government; but the majority contended, that, as to the distresses of the people, the case did not call for the interference of government, but for a reformation in the individual extravagance which had prevailed, and a return to the neglected ways of industry.

8. Among the causes of pecuniary distress, was a destructive fire in the city of New York. The mercantile houses, on whom, with the insurance offices, there fell a loss of \$17,000,000, did not generally fail at the time; for they were, with commendable

P.T. IV.  
P.T. III.  
CH. IV.

1835

to  
1837.

Mania of  
land spec-  
ulation.

The  
REVI L-  
SION  
causes  
great  
distress.

Mr. Van  
Buren  
convenes  
a special  
session,  
Sept. 4.

"Sub  
treasury  
bill."

Treasury  
notes.

1835.  
Dec. 16.  
529  
buildings  
burned.

4. What was the state of pecuniary affairs from 1835 to '37? —5. How was it before the crisis? How after?—6. How was it with the banks? What was done by the president? When did Congress meet?—7. What did Mr. Van Buren recommend in his message? What was his scheme called? Did it succeed? What did Congress order? Why did they not attempt some relief to the people?—8. Give an account of the great fire in New York.

**P.T. IV.** humanity, sustained by the others. But the prop-  
**P.D. III.** erty was gone; and though in a measure equalized  
**CH. IV.** at the time, at length the deficit affected all. . . . On  
**1838.** the 13th of August the banks resumed specie pay-  
**Aug. 18.** ments.

**Canadians**  
**revolt.** 9. A party had been gradually formed in Canada who were opposed to the British government, and who loudly demanded independence. Many Americans on the northern frontier, regarding their cause as that of liberty and human rights, assumed the name of patriots, and formed secret associations, for the purpose of aiding the insurgents across the line.

**Affair of**  
**Navy**  
**Island.** 10. In prosecuting this illegal interference in the concerns of a foreign power, a party of adventurers took possession of *Navy Island*, in the Niagara river, two miles above the falls, and lying within the jurisdiction of Upper Canada.—The president of the United States, and the governor of New York, both issued proclamations enjoining strict neutrality.

**1837.** 11. A small steamboat, called the *Caroline*, was, however, hired to ply for unlawful purposes, between Navy Island and Schlosser. At evening, a detachment of 150 armed men from the Canada side, in five boats, with muffled oars, proceeded to Schlosser, drove the men who were on board the *Caroline* ashore, cut her loose from her moorings, and setting her on fire, let her float over the falls. A man named Durfee was killed, and great excitement prevailed. . . . A Bill to establish the sub-treasury scheme, now called the Independent Treasury, at length passed; and although it was repealed early in Tyler's administration, it was afterward re-enacted and became popular.

**1840.**  
**Independ-**  
**ent**  
**Treasury**  
**passed,**  
**June 30.** 12. The census of 1840, gave as the number of inhabitants in the United States, 17,068,666.—The

---

8. When did the banks resume specie payments?—9. Give an account of Canadian affairs as connected with American.—10. What was done at Navy Island? What proclamations were issued?—11. What were the circumstances of the burning of the *Caroline*? What important bill did Congress pass, in June, 1840?—12. What number of inhabitants were there in 1840?

presidency was, by a large majority, bestowed upon GEN. HARRISON, whose social and public virtues had been rendered conspicuous by the various official stations of a long and useful life. JOHN TYLER, of Virginia, was made vice-president.

13. From the capital, Gen. Harrison went to the presidential mansion—where thousands flocked around him with congratulations and proffers of service.\* He expired just a month from the day of his inauguration. MR. TYLER, by the Constitution, became president. He issued an able and patriotic address, and appointed a day of public fasting.

P.T. IV.

P.D. III.

CH. V.

1841.

March 4.

Inaugu-

ration of

Harrison

and Tyler

April 4.

Death of

Harrison.

## CHAPTER V.

Mr. Tyler's administration.—Mobs.—Disturbances in Rhode Island.—Anti-Rentism.—Mormonism, &c.

1. THE Whig party were opposed to Mr. Van Buren's independent Treasury, and in favor of a National Bank, as a place of deposit for the public revenue. They said it would be more convenient and economical to the government,—that it would facilitate business, and promote prosperity; and that the attempt to bring back a specie circulation was a dangerous experiment upon the currency. The Democratic party, on the other hand, maintained that any connection of the government with banks, or with the business affairs of individuals, was foreign to its purposes, and a fruitful source of bribery and corruption. They believed that the government should keep its own money, operating not with paper currency, but with specie.

1841.

National  
Bank.Opinions  
of the  
Whigs.Opinions  
of the  
Demo-  
cratic  
party.

\* Gen. Harrison was fatally overwhelmed with office-seekers—as shortly before his death, he told his friend, Mrs. Peter, of Ohio.

12. How did the presidential election terminate?—13. How long did President Harrison live to enjoy his new dignity? Who was his successor?

CHAPTER V.—1. What were the opinions of the Whig party in regard to a National Bank? What on the other hand was maintained by the Democratic party?

- F.T. IV.** 2. The majority of the voters adopting the views  
**P.D. III.** of the Whigs, had chosen Messrs. Harrison and Ty-  
**CH. V.** ler, with an expectation that they would favor a  
**1811.** National Bank. General Harrison, aware of this,  
 issued March 17th, his proclamation, calling an ex-  
 tra session of Congress to convene on the 31st of  
 May, to consider "sundry weighty and important  
 matters, chiefly growing out of the revenue and  
 finances of the country." When this Congress met,  
 Mr. Tyler was president.
- May 31.** 3. Congress repealed the Sub-Treasury law on  
**Congress** the 6th of August. Three days earlier, the House  
**convene.** of Representatives had passed an act, establishing a  
 National Bank. Mr. Tyler, to the deep chagrin of  
 the party which elected him, defeated the measure  
 by the presidential veto. The mortified Whigs got  
 up another scheme for a bank, and passed it through  
 Congress under the name of a "Fiscal Corporation of  
 the United States." A second time Mr. Tyler de-  
 feated them by his veto. The able cabinet selected  
 by Harrison, had all remained in office up to the  
 period of this second veto, when all resigned, ex-  
 cept DANIEL WEBSTER, the secretary of state. His  
 country needed him in the office; and remaining, he  
 found occasion to render her essential service.
- Aug. 6** 4. In the unwarrantable stretch of credit which  
**Repeal of** had existed, States over-zealous for internal improve-  
**the Sub-T** ment, had participated; and when the revulsion  
 of 1837, whose ef-  
 fects were  
 felt for  
 several  
 years  
 after.)
- Aug. 16.** (\* The  
**Tyler's** revulsion  
**first veto.** of 1837,  
 whose ef-  
 fects were  
 felt for  
 several  
 years  
 after.)
- Sept. 9.** 2. What views were adopted by the majority of the voters? How  
**His** manifested? What was done by Gen. Harrison? What change  
**second.** occurred before the meeting of Congress?—3. What was done by  
 Congress with regard to the Sub-Treasury? With regard to a  
 National Bank? How were their acts met by Mr. Tyler? What  
 occurred immediately after his second veto?—4. Give an account  
 of what was called repudiation.
- Cabinet** 2. What views were adopted by the majority of the voters? How  
**all resign** manifested? What was done by Gen. Harrison? What change  
**except Mr.** occurred before the meeting of Congress?—3. What was done by  
**Webster.** Congress with regard to the Sub-Treasury? With regard to a  
 National Bank? How were their acts met by Mr. Tyler? What  
 occurred immediately after his second veto?—4. Give an account  
 of what was called repudiation.
- Repudia-** 2. What views were adopted by the majority of the voters? How  
**tion.** manifested? What was done by Gen. Harrison? What change  
 occurred before the meeting of Congress?—3. What was done by  
 Congress with regard to the Sub-Treasury? With regard to a  
 National Bank? How were their acts met by Mr. Tyler? What  
 occurred immediately after his second veto?—4. Give an account  
 of what was called repudiation.

2. What views were adopted by the majority of the voters? How manifested? What was done by Gen. Harrison? What change occurred before the meeting of Congress?—3. What was done by Congress with regard to the Sub-Treasury? With regard to a National Bank? How were their acts met by Mr. Tyler? What occurred immediately after his second veto?—4. Give an account of what was called repudiation.

cast disgrace upon the whole nation. With returning prosperity, however, nearly all of these States resumed payment.

PT IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. V.

5. A disagreement between the United States and England had long existed in regard to the northeastern boundary. Much excitement prevailed between the inhabitants of Maine and New Brunswick,—regions adjoining the disputed line,—and measures were taken on each side, which threatened war. LORD ASHBURTON was sent from England, as a special envoy, to settle this dispute; and Mr. Webster, with great diplomatic ability, arranged with him the terms of a treaty, by which the important question of a northeastern boundary is finally and amicably settled.

1842.

Ashburton  
Treaty.

Aug. 21.  
Ratified  
by the  
U. S.

Oct. 14.  
By G. B.

6. DANGEROUS TENDENCIES TO ANARCHY.—Serious riots occurred in the spring of 1844, in Philadelphia. They grew out of a jealousy on the part of native American Protestants, that the foreign Roman Catholic population intended to gain the control of the common-schools, and change the established order of instruction, especially in regard to the use of the Scriptures. Thirty dwelling-houses, a convent, and three churches were burned. Fourteen persons were killed and forty wounded. These disgraceful scenes were renewed on the 7th of June. The governor called out 5,000 of the military. Years have passed, and these unhappy jealousies have subsided.

1844.

Philadel-  
phia  
riots.  
May 6.  
k. 14,  
w. 40.

June 7.  
k. and w.  
50.

7. Rhode Island now became the theatre of an unlawful attempt to set aside existing authorities. The "suffrage party," by whom it was made, did not, however, regard the matter in this light. They formed, though by illegal assemblies, what they considered a constitution for the State; and then proceeded to elect under it a governor—MR. DORR—and members

1843.

April 18.  
Dorr's  
attempt.

5. On what subject was there a disagreement between the United States and Great Britain? How was it settled?—6. Give an account of the riots in Philadelphia, remembering to state the time, and the numbers killed in the first and second riots.—7. What occurred in Rhode Island?

FT IV for a legislature. Their opponents,—called the “law  
 PG 11 and order” party,—acting under existing authorities,  
 ca v. elected State officers, Mr. KING being made gov-  
 ernor.

- 1843.** 8. On the 18th of May, Dorr went with an armed force, and took the State arsenal. No lives were lost, as his directions to fire on those who opposed his progress, were not obeyed. Gov. KING, meantime, put himself at the head of the military. Several persons were arrested, and Dorr fled. He afterwards appeared at Chepachet, with some two or three hundred men; but a force being sent by the general government, they dispersed. Dorr afterwards returned, was tried, convicted of treason, and sentenced to the State’s prison. Meantime a new constitution was by legal measures adopted. In 1845 Dorr was released from prison.

June 25  
 Dorr at  
 Chepa-  
 chet.

**1844.**  
 Dorr sent  
 to the  
 State’s  
 prison.

**1845.**  
 Is re-  
 leased.

Anti-rent  
 disturb-  
 ances

(Rensse-  
 laerwyck,  
 45 m. long.  
 28 broad.)

9. An alarming tendency to anarchy has been experienced in the *anti-rent disturbances* in the State of New York. Under the Dutch government, certain settlers had received patents of considerable portions of land; of which that of Van Rensselaer was the most extensive,—comprehending the greater part of Albany and Rensselaer counties. These lands were divided into small farms, and leased in perpetuity, on low rents, to be paid in a certain quantity of wheat, a certain number of fowls, &c. In process of time, the tenants began to consider these legal conditions as anti-republican,—a relic of feudal tyranny.

- 1844.** 10. In the summer of 1844, the anti-rent disturb-  
 ances broke out with great violence in the eastern towns of Rensselaer, and on the Livingston manor, in Columbia county. Extensive associations were formed by the anti-renters to resist the laws. They kept armed and mounted bands disguised as Indians,

Anti-  
 renters  
 disguised  
 as Indians.

8. Give an account of the illegal proceedings of Mr. Dorr, and his punishment. When was he released from prison?—9. How in the State of N. Y. was a tendency to anarchy manifested? Give an account of the Dutch patents, with the conditions of rent. How in process of time had the tenants come to regard these conditions?

scouring the country;—and the traveller—as he met them issuing from some dark wood, with their hideous masks and gaudy calicoes, was required, on penalty of insult, to say, “Down with the rent.”

P<sup>T</sup>. IV.  
P<sup>D</sup>. III.  
CH. V.

1844.

11. These lawless rangers forcibly entered houses, —took men from their homes, tarred and feathered, or otherwise maltreated them. In Rensselaer county, at noonday, a man was killed where about fifty “Indians” were present,—some of whom were afterwards arraigned, when they swore that they knew nothing of the murder. Sometimes 1,000 of these disguised anarchists were assembled in one body. Similar disturbances occurred in Delaware county. At length STEELE, a deputy-sheriff, was murdered in the execution of his official duty.

(Smith  
killed in  
Grafton.)

(Steele  
killed in  
Delaware.)

12. Meanwhile SILAS WRIGHT was chosen governor of the State. Much does his country owe him for the wisdom and firmness of the measures by which public order was restored. On the 27th of August he proclaimed the county of Delaware in a state of insurrection. Resolute men were made sheriffs, and competent military aid afforded them. Leading anti-renters were taken, brought to trial, and imprisoned. The murderers of Steele were condemned to death,—but their punishment was commuted to that of perpetual confinement. The successor of Mr. Wright, released from the State’s prison the whole number, eighteen, who had been committed for anti-rent offences. Fresh outbreaks followed.

1846.

Governor  
Wright’s  
measures.

(Anti-rent  
outrage  
on Mr.  
Sheldon.)

13. In Congress, March 3d, 1845, an act was passed admitting two States into the Union,—IOWA, its western boundary the river Des Moines,—and FLORIDA, comprising the east and west parts, as defined by the treaty of cession.

1845.

March 3  
Iowa and  
Florida

14. MORMONISM.—This is the most extraordinary

---

10 & 11. What happened in the summer of 1844?—12. What is here said of Silas Wright? What was done in regard to sheriff’s? What was done in regard to the leading anti-renters? The murderers of Steele? Were they suffered to remain in prison?—13. At what time were two States admitted into the Union, and what States?

P.T. IV. imposture of the age. Its founder, JOSEPH SMITH,  
 P.D. III. was an obscure, uneducated man, born in 1805, in  
 CH V. Sharon, Vermont. Under pretence of special revelation, he produced the stereotype plates of the "Book of Mormon" \* by which he persuaded numbers, that he was the inspired founder of a new religion—which was to give to Mormons the same pre-eminence over all other people, as the Jews had over the Gentiles. Mormonism gives its followers license to commit every crime which may be sanctioned by the leading "prophet;"—especially does it, by allowing polygamy, degrade and demoralize women.

1838. 15. Yet numbers of both sexes were found to join and aid this delusion—throwing their property into common stock. On their arrival at the Far West, in Missouri, the Mormons were charged with various crimes; among others, an attempt to assassinate Gov. Boggs; and they were finally expelled the State by a military force commanded by Gen. Atkinson. They then purchased a large tract of land in Illinois, on the eastern bank of the Mississippi. There, on a beautiful slope, they built *Nauvoo*, and erected a pompous temple. But murders, robberies, and other secret crimes became frequent in their neighborhood. The surrounding people were enraged. The Mormon prophet and his brother were seized by the State officers, and confined in jail at Carthage. A hundred armed men, in disguise, broke in and murdered them. The Mormons then sold their possessions at Nauvoo, and in 1846 migrated westward to the *Great Salt Lake*. Their settlement, containing about 10,000 inhabitants, formed the nucleus of the *Territory of Utah*.

Oct. 6.  
 Mormons  
 at Far  
 West.

Nauvoo in  
 Illinois.

1846  
 to '48.  
 Collect at  
 the Salt  
 Lake.

1850.  
 Utah  
 made a  
 Territory.

\* The Rev. Mr. Spalding wrote the *Book of Mormon*, as a work of imagination, founded on the Old Testament. He died, after having placed the manuscript in the hands of a publisher. SIDNEY RIGDON, a young printer of the office, thus became acquainted with it, and he showed it to Joseph Smith; and they two concerted the plan of bringing it out as a new revelation. The plates found were called "the golden" plates.

14. Give some account of Mormonism, and its originators. (See note.)—15. Give a further account of the progress of Mormonism, to the building of the temple—to the departure of the Mormons to California.

## CHAPTER VI.

Texas.—Causes of Annexation and the Mexican War.

1. ON account of the discovery of *La Salle*, the French claimed *Texas* to the Rio Grande, as forming a part of Louisiana. The Spaniards of Mexico remonstrated, and sent thither an armed force, but the French had already dispersed. *The first effectual settlement in Texas, was that of San Antonio de Bexar, made by the Spaniards in 1692.* But the Mexican authorities seemed not so desirous to occupy this country, as to keep it a desolate waste, — that thus an impassable barrier might be maintained between them and their Anglo-American neighbors. This desire to avoid contact by means of an intervening desert, was so strongly felt by the Mexicans, even in 1847, as to break off negotiations for peace, when Gen. Scott was at the gate of their capital with a victorious army. The aversion to the Anglo-Americans thus manifested, the Mexicans at first derived from their mother-country; and it may be marked as *the first and predisposing cause of the Mexican war.*

2. After Ferdinand VII., king of Spain, had, in 1810, fallen with the Spanish nation, under the power of Napoleon, the Mexicans revolted. But the people were not united;—and after the bloody war of eight years, called *the first revolution*, the royalists prevailed. *The second revolution* was begun in 1821, by the Mexican general ITURBIDE. Under him they threw off the Spanish yoke. But he made himself a monarch. The people wished for a republic; and

PT. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH VI.

1685.  
La Salle  
discovers  
Texas.

1692.  
Bexar  
founded.

1810.  
Mexico  
revolts.

1818.  
Royalists  
prevail.

1821  
—21.  
Iturbide.  
(He is shot  
at Pa-  
dillo.)

(CHAPTER VI.—1. On what account did the French claim Texas? How was this claim met by the Spaniards? Describe the first effectual settlement made in Texas. How did the Mexicans manifest aversion to Anglo-Americans, at an early day, and again recently? Of what may this aversion be regarded as the first cause? —2. When did the Mexicans revolt against the Spanish government? Give some account of the first revolution—of the second—of Iturbide.

P.T. IV. they deposed Iturbide, banished,—and, on his re-  
 P.D. III. turn, condemned and executed him. In 1824, a  
 OL. VI. *federal Constitution* was formed under the auspices  
 1824. of a new leader, SANTA ANNA; by which Mexico,  
 Federal like our republic, was divided into States, with each,  
 consti- a legislature, and over the whole a general govern-  
 titution of ment.  
 Mexico.

3. In 1803, the United States, in purchasing Lou-  
 1820. isiana of France, obtained with it a just claim to  
 Texas Texas; but in 1820 they ceded it by treaty to Spain  
 ceded to as a part of Mexico; Florida being then granted by  
 Spain. that power to the United States. Two years there-  
 1821. after, STEPHEN F. AUSTIN led a colony from the  
 Anglo- United States to Texas, and made a settlement be-  
 American tween the rivers Brazos and Colorado. The Spanish  
 Texas authorities in Mexico, desirous of defence against  
 founded. the destructive incursions of the fierce and hostile  
 Comanches, had, contrary to their ordinary policy,  
 made laws favoring American immigration; yet on-  
 ly *under the condition that the immigrants should  
 adopt the Catholic religion, and send their children  
 to Spanish schools.*

4. Austin's enterprise being joined by others who,  
 like himself, sought to better their fortunes, his col-  
 ony soon flourished to such an extent, that it attract-  
 ed the attention of the Mexican clergy. They found  
 that the law, which required the settlers to make  
 oath that they were Catholics, and would establish  
 Spanish schools, had been disregarded. They felt  
 the utmost alarm; desiring that those whom they re-  
 garded as foreign heretics, should either submit to  
 their national laws, and embrace their national re-  
 ligion, or be rooted out. *Here were sown the seeds*

Mexican  
 clergy  
 alarmed.

2. What was done in 1824?—3. When had the United States a claim to Texas? How obtained, and how and when was it relinquished? When and by whom led, was the first American colony of Texas? Where established? What motives had the Mexicans in admitting these settlers, and what conditions did they require of them?—4. How did the Mexican clergy find that these conditions had been met on the part of the settlers? How did the clergy regard them, and what appears to have been their desire respecting them? To what would such feelings naturally lead?

of future war; for these supposed heretics were the brothers of American citizens, and though expatriated, they were children born of the republic.

PT. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VI.

5. Texas, under the Constitution of 1824, was united in one State with the neighboring province of Coahuila. The Spanish Mexicans of this province outvoted, and pursued an oppressive policy against the Texans. Stephen F. Austin was sent by them to the city of Mexico to petition against these grievances, and for the privilege of forming Texas into a separate State. The Mexican Congress treated him with neglect. He wrote a letter to the Texans advising them at all events to proceed in forming a separate State government. The party in Texas opposed to Austin, sent back his letter to the Mexican authorities,—who made him prisoner as he was returning,—sent him back to Mexico, and threw him into a dungeon.

(In 1833 there were about 10,000 Americans in Texas.)

Austin taken prisoner (at Saltillo.)

6. Meanwhile, Santa Anna subverted the Constitution of 1824, and in the name of liberty, made himself the military tyrant of Mexico. He sent GENERAL Cos into Texas, to place the civil rulers there in subjection to the military. At this time, Austin returned, and was placed at the head of a central committee of safety. Appeals were made through the press to the Texan people, and arrangements set on foot to raise men and money. Adventurers from the American States came to their aid. The object of the Texans at this time, was to join a Mexican party now in arms against the military usurpation of Santa Anna, and thus to maintain the Constitution of 1824.

Texan Revolution begins.

7. Mexican forces had been sent to *Gonzalez* to demand a field-piece. The Texans attacked and

Oct. 2.  
GONZALEZ.  
Mex. force 1,000.  
Tex. 500.

5. With what Mexican province was Texas united, and how treated? For what was Austin sent to Mexico? How was he there treated, and what course did he pursue? Why was Austin thrown into a dungeon?—6. What, in the mean time, was the course of Santa Anna with respect to the constitution of 1824, and with regard to the Texans? What measures indicating resistance were taken by the Texans? What was now their object?—7 Where was the first blood shed?

PT. IV. drove them from the ground with loss. Santa Anna  
 PD III. had now caused the fortresses of *Goliad* and the  
 CH. VI. *Alamo*, or citadel of Bexar, to be strongly fortified,  
 the latter being the headquarters of General Cos.  
 Mex. L. The Texans, on the 8th of October, took Goliad  
 100. with valuable munitions. On the 28th, they ob-  
 tained a victory near Bexar.—Texan delegates, No-  
 vember 22d, met in convention at St. Felipe, and  
 Nov. 22. established a *provisional government*. On the 11th  
 A pro- of December, their forces under GENERAL BURLE-  
 visional gov't at son, took, after a bloody siege and a violent strug-  
 St. Felipe. gle, the strong fortress of the *Alamo* and the city  
 of Bexar; General Cos and his army were made  
 prisoners, and *not a Mexican in arms remained*.  
 But Santa Anna, ever active and alert, was gather-  
 ing his forces, and in February, 1836, was approach-  
 ing with 8,000 men.

8. Unhappily, divisions prevailed in the Texan  
 counsels, while the small and insufficient garrison of  
 the *Alamo* was attacked by this powerful army;  
 1836. headed by a man, who added to the smoothness of  
 March 6. the tiger, his fierceness and cruelty. TRAVIS, who  
 Massacre of the commanded, had only 150 men. They fought all  
 of the one bloody night, until he fell with all the garrison  
 ALAMO. but seven;—and they were slain, while crying for  
 Ann. L. quarter!  
 k. 150.

9. Meantime, a Texan convention had assembled  
 at Washington, on the Brazos, which, on the 2d of  
 March 2. March, DECLARED INDEPENDENCE. They had de-  
 Texans sired, said the delegates, to unite with their Mexi-  
 declare in- can brethren, in support of the Constitution of 1824,  
 depend- but in vain. Now appealing to the world for the  
 ence. necessities of their condition, they declared them-  
 selves an INDEPENDENT REPUBLIC, and committed  
 their cause to the SUPREME ARBITER OF NATIONS.

10. COLONEL FANNING commanded at Goliad.  
 He had besought the Texan authorities to reinforce

7. Give some account of the battle of Gonzalez. What was done  
 by the Texans under Burleson?—8. Give some account of the  
 massacre of the Alamo.—9. Of the Texan declaration of Inde-  
 pendence.

him; and he had been directed by them to abandon his post, and save his garrison by retreat.\* This he had attempted to do; but the Mexicans, by their superior force, overpowered him. He surrendered on condition that he and his men should be treated as prisoners of war. Santa Anna ordered their execution; and four hundred unarmed and unresisting men, unsuspecting of harm, were drawn out. One of the fated soldiers exclaimed, "They are going to shoot us; let us turn and not be shot in the back." In another instant the fire was given, and the prisoners fell dead. Fanning was shot the next day;—and his body denied a burial. These men were American-born. Fanning had been an officer in the army of the United States. American hate and sympathy kindled as the shocking massacre was told. *Annexation followed in time, and the Mexican war.*

PT. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VI.

1836.

March 27  
Massacre  
at  
GOLIAD  
Am L.  
k. 400.

11. On the 21st of April, the main Texan army, under GENERAL HOUSTON, met the Mexicans, who were double their number, near the San Jacinto. Furiously the Texans rushed to battle with the cry, "Remember the Alamo!" They fought at less than half-rifle distance, and in less than half an hour wholly routed the Mexicans; killing and wounding a number greater than the whole Texan force. Among the prisoners taken after the battle, was Santa Anna himself. As supreme ruler of Mexico, he, by a treaty, acknowledged their independence, and allowed their western boundary to be the Rio Grande. This treaty was, after his return, disavowed by Mexico,—and by Santa Anna himself, on the plea that it was made while he was a prisoner.

April 21.  
SAN JA-  
CINTO.  
Mex. force  
1,600.  
Tex. 788.  
Mex. L.  
k. 630.  
w. 208.  
Tex. L.  
k. 8, w. 17

\* Of this fact the writer was, in conversation, informed by Gen. Houston. Fanning had marched out of the fortress, met, and contended with the Mexicans, was taken and carried back, so that the massacre was at Goliad.

10. Of the massacre of Goliad. Who were the men massacred at Goliad, and with what feelings was their slaughter heard of in America? What followed?—11. Give some account of the battle of San Jacinto. What treaty did Santa Anna make with the Texans? How was it observed?

P.T. IV. 12. Although the United States, England, and  
 P.D. III. other powers acknowledged the independence of  
 CB. VI. Texas; yet Mexico, through all her changes of  
 rulers ever claimed the country, and occasionally  
 1837. sent troops to renew the war by predatory excursions.—The Texans, in 1841, sent under McLEON, a  
 March 3. party of 300, who were mostly Americans, to take  
 United States possession of *Santa Fé*, the capital of New Mexico,  
 recognize that city lying on the eastern side of the Rio Grande.  
 Texan These were made prisoners by the Mexicans, and  
 Independence. treated with great cruelty.

13. GENERAL WOLL, sent by Santa Anna to invade Texas, took *Bexar*. A Texan army, having driven him back, were full of zeal to carry the war into Mexico. A party of 300 crossed the Rio Grande, and proceeding to *Mier*, they attacked it; and although opposed by five times their force, they fought their way into the heart of the place, killed and wounded double their whole number, when, although they had lost only 35 men, they capitulated.\* These prisoners were treated with great severity.

14. Texas early made application to be received into the American Union. General Jackson objected, and afterwards Mr. Van Buren,—on the ground of existing peaceful relations with Mexico, and the unsettled boundary of Texas. Mr. Tyler, by the influence of Mr. Calhoun, secretary of state, brought forward the proposition. It was lost in Congress.  
 1844. But the mass of the American papers were in favor of Annexation. The Whig candidates for president and vice-president, were Henry Clay and Theodore Frelinghuysen, who were opposed to immediate an-

Elected as  
 president,  
 J. K. Polk,  
 of Tenn.  
 Vice-P.,  
 G. M. Dallas,  
 of Pa.

\* They were, says General Green, in his Journal of the Expedition, betrayed into the surrender by Fisher, their leader, who had lost his mind by a gunshot wound. Green says this party of 300, killed and wounded 800 of the Mexicans at Mier.

12. Who acknowledged the Texan independence, and who did not? Give some account of the attempt to take Santa Fé.—13. The attempt of the Texans on Mier.—14. Give a history of the Annexation of Texas, to the close of the presidential election. How is it manifested by this account that the people were in favor of annexation?

nexation ; and the Democratic were, JAMES K. POLK, PT. IV.  
and GEORGE M. DALLAS, who were pledged in its P.D. III.  
favor. The latter were elected ; and on the 4th of CH. VI.  
March, 1845, they were duly inaugurated.

15. On the 28th of February—after the election and before the inauguration—Congress passed the *joint resolution* to annex Texas. By this act, additional new States, not exceeding four, may be formed from this Territory *with* slavery, if south of lat.  $36\frac{1}{2}$ , but if north, *without*. The Mexican minister at Washington, SENOR ALMONTE, who had before announced that Mexico would declare war if Texas were annexed, now gave notice, that since America had consummated “the most unjust act recorded in history,” negotiations were at an end. 1845. March 4. Inaugurated. Joint resolution annexing Texas. (March 1. It receives the President's signature.)

16. Mexico had been to the Americans an unjust and injurious neighbor. Such had been the unredressed wrongs of person and property, to which American citizens had been subjected in Mexico, that had she not been a weaker nation and a sister republic, war would have resulted during Jackson's administration. Mr. Van Buren recommended measures leading to war ;—when the Mexicans negotiated ; and in 1839 a treaty was made, by which they agreed to pay large indemnities to American sufferers. This treaty was modified in 1843, but its stipulations the Mexican government had mostly failed to observe. 1839. Mexican Treaty. 1843. It is modified.

17. The assent of Texas, by which she became a part of the American Union, was expressed in the ordinance of July 5, 1845. Two days thereafter, a 1845. July 5. Texas ordinance completes annexation.

14. Are presidents of the United States elected the same year in which they are inaugurated—Mr. Polk for example?—15. When did Congress pass the joint resolution to annex Texas? What condition was there respecting new States? What had previously been announced as the determination of Mexico in case the United States annexed Texas? What announcement was now made by the Mexican minister?—16. What had been the course of Mexico towards American citizens? What hindered war during Jackson's administration? What was done during Mr. Van Buren's administration respecting a treaty?—17. When did Texas by her own ordinance actually become a part of the American Union?

**P.T. IV.** request was dispatched to President Polk to send an armed force to protect Texas against the threatened invasion of Mexico. The administration judiciously chose, as commander of the forces to be sent, **COL.**

**1845.** **ZACHARY TAYLOR.** On the 30th of July, he was ordered by the war department to move as near the Rio Grande as prudence would dictate. He took post at *Corpus Christi*. A Mexican force, in the mean time, had collected on the western bank of the Rio Grande, near Matamoras.

(He is soon made a brigadier.)

18. The ancient aversion of the Mexicans had been, by the annexation, wrought into jealousy and fierce revenge; and he who most vilified the Americans, and the loudest blustered for war, was most the popular favorite; and such was **PARADES**, by whose party, Herrera, the president, and a wise patriot, was denounced as a traitor for suspected intercourse with the foes of the nation.

**19. TREATY WITH CHINA.**—In 1845, the United States senate ratified a treaty with China, which had there been negotiated between **MR. CUSHING**, the American envoy extraordinary, and the commissioner of the Chinese Emperor.

**Jan. 16.**  
**Chinese**  
**Treaty.**

**20. OREGON.**—England and America both claimed the extensive country north of the Columbia river, to the Russian settlements. Columbia river and its vicinity, belongs to the Americans by right of the discovery made in 1792, by **CAPTAIN GREY** of Boston, and by the explorations made by **LEWIS** and **CLARK**, in the employ of the American government, made in the years 1804–5. **JOHN JACOB ASTOR**, of New York, founded *Astoria*, at the mouth of the Columbia river, in 1811. The first house on its waters, was, however, established on Lewis river, by the Missouri Fur Company, in 1808.

**1792.**  
(Capt. Grey, sailing in the Columbia, gives to the river the name of his ship.)

**17.** What was done two days thereafter? Who was chosen to command the military defenders of Texas? What orders did he receive, and what do?—**18.** How did the aversion of the Mexicans now manifest itself?—**19.** Give an account of the Chinese treaty.—**20.** What part of Oregon was in dispute, and with whom? On what was the American claim to the Columbia river and its valley founded? What were the first settlements in Oregon?

21. The difficulty with England became so serious as to threaten war. It was, however, compromised by a treaty negotiated at Washington between MR. PACKENHAM, the British Minister, and MR. BUCHANAN, the American Secretary. This treaty makes the northern boundary of Oregon, the line of lat. 49 deg.; but gives to the British the whole of Vancouver's Island, and a right to the joint navigation of the Columbia river.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VII.

1846.  
June 18.  
Treaty  
of Wash-  
ington.

## CHAPTER VII.

Mexican War.—Army of Occupation.

1. GEN. TAYLOR was ordered by the secretary of war, Jan. 13, 1846, *to take post at the mouth of the Rio Grande*. The effect of the order was to precipitate the collision of arms. Gen. Taylor accordingly moved from Corpus Christi on the 8th of March. On the 25th, the army reached Point Isabel, which, from the nature of the coast, he must make the depot for his stores. Leaving them with 450 men under MAJOR MUNROE, he advanced, and took post at the mouth of the Rio Grande, opposite to *Matamoras*. Batteries were erected by the Mexicans, pointing at his camp. This he intrenched, and immediately commenced a fort, whose guns threatened the heart of the city. Yet Gen. Taylor was strictly courteous to all. He had come, in peace, he said, to protect Texas, not to invade Mexico; but if attacked, he should know how to defend himself.

Effect of  
sending  
Gen. Tay-  
lor to  
the Rio  
Grande.

March 28  
Gen.  
Taylor  
encamps  
opposite  
Matamo-  
ras.

2. This attack he had hourly reason to expect. Paredes had put in requisition the best troops of Mexico, headed by her ablest generals, and they

(April 10.  
Col. Cross  
rode out  
from  
the camp  
alone, and  
was killed  
by Mexi-  
can ran-  
cheros.)

21. How was the difficulty with England settled?

CHAPTER VII.—1. What order did Gen. Taylor receive? What was its effect? Give an account of Gen. Taylor's march from the mouth of the Nueces to that of the Rio Grande. What was here done by the Mexicans and the Americans? What was Gen. Taylor's course of conduct?

**P'T. IV.** were gathering towards the Rio Grande. On both  
**P'D III.** sides of the river, all was warlike action;—here,  
**CH. VII.** mounting or relieving guards,—and there, planting  
**1816.** artillery. GEN. ARISTA now arrived, and took the  
 command at Matamoras. *The Mexican govern-*  
*ment made a formal declaration of war on the 23d*  
**April 24.** *of May.* On the 24th, CAPT. THORNTON with sixty-  
**Hostilities** three dragoons was sent by Gen. Taylor a few  
**com-** miles up the river to reconnoitre. They fell into an  
**mence by** ambushade, and, finding themselves surrounded by  
**Thorn-** a far superior force, they attempted to retreat, cut-  
**ton's** ting their way; but they were obliged to surrender,  
**capture.** with the loss of 16 killed and wounded.  
**Am L. k.**  
**and w. 16.**

**Aston-** 3. The American Congress and people were as-  
**ishment** tonished and agitated, when Gen. Taylor's account  
**and** of this first bloodshed was received. Their army  
**anxiety.** was surrounded and in danger, from the soldiers  
 who had committed the massacres of Goliad and the  
 Alamo! A kind of monomania pervaded the na-  
**May 11.** tion. The President announced to Congress that  
**Presi-** the Mexicans had "invaded our territory, and shed  
**dent's** the blood of our citizens upon our own soil." Con-  
**extra** gress responded, that "war existed by the act of  
**message.** Mexico," and in two days passed a law authorizing  
**May 13.** 50,000 volunteers to be raised for twelve months;  
**Act of** and appropriating, towards the carrying on of the  
**Congress** war, ten millions of dollars. Thus were the means  
**to raise** at once provided.  
**men and**  
**money.**

**Plan of** 4. Declared war being upon the hands of the Ex-  
**the Exec-** ecutive, the plan for its prosecution and results ap-  
**utive.** pears to have been,—to take for indemnity and as a  
 permanent acquisition, that part of the Mexican ter-  
 ritory lying between the Old United States and the  
 Pacific; and so to carry the war into the more vital  
 and richer parts of Mexico, that the people would

---

2. What was now the aspect of things in regard to war? How did hostilities actually commence? When did the Mexicans declare war?—3. How was news of the breaking out of the war received in America? and what was done by the President and by Congress?—4. What was the general plan of the American Executive?

be willing to receive peace and some needful funds, though at the sacrifice of this territory, and the relinquishment of Texas to the Rio Grande.

5. The American Executive,\* aided by the head of the war department, and by General Scott, now sketched out, in two days' time, a plan of a campaign, exceeding, in the vastness of the spaces over which it swept by sea and land, any thing of the kind known in history. Vessels were to pass round Cape Horn to the coast of California, to aid those already there, in conquering that country. An "Army of the West" was to be assembled at Fort Leavenworth to take New Mexico, and then proceed westward to the Pacific, to co-operate with the fleet. An "Army of the Centre," to be collected from different and distant parts of the Union, was to rendezvous at San Antonio de Bexar, and thence to invade Coahuila and Chihuahua. These armies were mostly to be created from the raw material. The existing regular force of the United States, officers and men, did not exceed 9,000.

6. Gen. Taylor, whose force was called the "Army of Occupation," now received intelligence by CAPT. WALKER, that a large Mexican force in his rear, was interposed between him and his stores at Point Isabel. Walker had there been stationed by Major Munroe, to keep open the communication; and he had fought fifteen minutes with his one company of Texan rangers (armed with revolving pistols), with 1,500 Mexican cavalry,—killed thirty, and escaped; and subsequently he had found his way with six men through the Mexican army to bring this information.

7. Leaving his camp at Matamoras, with a garrison in command of the trusty veteran, MAJOR BROWN, Taylor marched with the main army, and

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CIL VII.

1846.

May 15  
and 16.

(\* Mr.

Polk had

for adviser

Senator

Benton,

who

desired to

conduct

this war

as Lieut.

General.

Mr. Polk

nominated

him,

but the

Senate re-

fused to

confirm.)

April 28.

Walker's

battle.

Mex. L. k.

and w. 80.

May 1.

Taylor at

Point

Isabel

5. What military operations were now sketched out? What is in the side-note concerning Senator Benton?—6. What was now received by Gen. Taylor? What was the first battle of the war in which Mexican blood was shed?—7. What was now done by General Taylor?

PT. IV. reached Point Isabel unmolested. The Mexicans at  
 PD. III. Matamoras attacked the camp with their batteries,  
 CH. VII. and Major Brown opened his guns upon the city.  
 1846. The firing was anxiously heard by Taylor, and a  
 May 7 to 9. messenger for aid reached him from Major Brown.  
 Cannon- The garrison at Point Isabel being reinforced by  
 ade of 500 men, supplied by COMMODORE CONNER from  
 Fort the navy, Gen. Taylor announced to the war de-  
 Brown. partment, "I shall march this day with the main  
 7th. body of the army, to open a communication with  
 Taylor leaves Pt. Major Brown, and throw forward supplies of ord-  
 Isabel. nance and provision. If the enemy opposes my  
 march, in whatever force, I shall fight him."

8. The same evening he marched. The next day  
 at noon he came in full sight of the Mexican army,  
 drawn up in order of battle, and extending a mile  
 across his way. Taylor halted his men,—bade them  
 refresh themselves at the pools—then formed his  
 line. The Mexicans, although with choice of the  
 ground, and more than double numbers, were forced,  
 after five hours, to yield to the Americans the vic-  
 tory of *Palo Alto*. MAJOR RINGGOLD was here  
 mortally wounded.

9. At two o'clock the next day the army resumed  
 its march. Having advanced about three miles, the  
 Mexicans were discovered, skilfully posted, with ar-  
 tillery, at *Resaca de la Palma*. At four o'clock  
 the Americans came up. The field was fiercely  
 contested. It was here, that CAPT. MAY, with his  
 dragoons, rode up to a Mexican battery, cut down  
 the men, and took GEN. LA VEGA, as he was apply-  
 ing a match to one of the guns. The Mexicans  
 were wholly routed. Their camp, its stores, equi-  
 page, and Gen. Arista's private papers, fell into the  
 hands of the Americans. The arrival at the camp

---

7. What cannonade was heard by him at Point Isabel? What  
 determination did he announce?—8. Give an account of the bat-  
 tle of Palo Alto, the numbers engaged, loss, &c.; see side-note.  
 (When the direction is, Give an account of a battle, let the side-notes  
 be studied as well as the text.)—9. Give an account of the battle of  
 Resaca de la Palma. What had occurred at the camp?

of Taylor and his victorious army, carried joy to the wearied combatants. But the commander of the fort had been killed. Gen. Taylor named the place where he fought and fell, *Fort Brown*.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. VII.

1846.

10. Great were the rejoicings and illuminations in the United States, for the victories of the Rio Grande. The Mexican army now deserted Matamoras, and the civil authorities suffered the Americans to take quiet possession. Everywhere the young men of America were now ready, nay in haste, to go forth to defend their brethren, fight the Mexicans, and push for the "Halls of the Montezumas." \* Gen. Taylor was embarrassed and delayed by the ill-provided numbers who came. The towns on the lower Rio Grande were taken and occupied by the Americans. *Camargo*, made the depot of provisions and stores, was garrisoned with 2,000 men under GEN. PATTERSON.

May 18.  
Taylor occupies  
Matamoras

June and  
July.  
(Taylor delayed  
by the pre-  
sence of  
unfurnished  
volunteers.)

11. The army being now 6,000 strong, its first division, under GEN. WORTH, marched for the interior on the 20th of August. Gen. Taylor, with the rear column, soon followed. On the 5th of September, the several divisions were concentrated at *Marin*. Moving on, they encamped on the 9th, at Walnut Springs, three miles from the city of *Monterey*, a stronghold which they must capture. Here, on the south and west towered the high peaks of the Sierra Madre, while before them stood the walls of Monterey, bristling with cannon and surrounded by fortresses. Around them was an unknown region—an invaded country, with thousands of embittered foes. Most of their troops were untried volunteers. But their officers, mostly educated at West Point, had no superiors. Especially had they a commander,

Sep. 5.  
The army  
at Marin.  
9th, at  
Walnut  
Springs.

\* Prescott's very popular history, "The Conquest of Mexico," had just appeared; and it had no little influence in producing this enthusiasm.

10. What effect in the U. S. had the victories of the Rio Grande? What occurred at Matamoras? What effect on Taylor's movements had the too great accession of ill-provided numbers? —11. Give an account of the movements of the army until reaching Walnut Springs. What now was its position?

PT. IV. cool and deliberate,—judicious to plan, and energetic to act.

P.D. III.  
CH. VII.

1846.

Sept. 20.  
Worth  
leaves the  
camp.  
(21st. A  
skirmish.  
Mex. L.  
100.  
Col. May  
disting-  
uished.)

12. He perceived towards the southwest, that the mountains were cleft by the small stream of the San Juan, along which was the road from Saltillo to Monterey. He thought if a new way could be made by which the Saltillo road could be reached, the enemy's line of supplies would be cut, and probably less formidable defences intervene. The skill of the American engineers, under CAPT. MANSFIELD, found out such a way; and Gen. Worth being selected for the important service, led a column of 650 men on the 20th and 21st, by a difficult detour round to the Saltillo road.

(Forts  
Federation  
and  
Soldado  
carried.)

Sept. 22.  
8 o'clock,  
A. M.  
Bishop's  
Palace  
stormed.

13. This road being gained, two batteries on a hill were taken, and their guns turned on the third and principal battery, called the *Bishop's Palace*, situated on the steep hill *Independence*. After having with hardship and loss taken this battery, and turned it against the city, the war-worn troops—now three days from the camp, their numbers thinned by death, stood close upon the rear of Monterey.

Sept. 22.  
Attack  
on Mon-  
terey in  
front.

14. Meantime, Taylor had sought to direct the attention of the enemy from this, his real point of attack, by making a feigned one in front. But so fiercely was this movement conducted by GEN. BUTLER and GEN. QUITMAN, that the city was entered, though with great sacrifice of life. On the morning of the 23d, the defences of the opposite side were carried by Gen. Worth.

("Santa  
Anna's  
Pass" was  
dated May  
15, 1844.)

15. The Mexican general, AMPUDIA, came with a flag to propose capitulation and an armistice, on the ground that peace might shortly be expected,—Paredes being displaced, and Gen. Santa Anna now in power. General Taylor knew that in consequence of President Polk's hope of that wily Mexi-

---

12. What plan was formed for approaching Monterey in rear? Who led the detachment?—13. Give an account of the movements of Worth's party until it reached the rear of Monterey.—14. Of those of Quitman and Butler.—15. On what ground did Gen Ampudia propose an armistice?

can's favorable disposition, he had given an order to the fleet, which Com. Conner obeying, Santa Anna had passed unmolested on his return from Cuba.

P.T. IV.  
P.P. III.  
CH. VIII.

16. Gen. Taylor had not men sufficient to guard the Mexican soldiers, if he kept them as prisoners; and his own unsupplied army needed all the provisions to be found in Monterey; and he wished to spare, especially "non-combatants." With the advice of his officers, he therefore agreed to an armistice of eight weeks, on condition of the approval of the American government. This, on correspondence, was withheld; and the war, after six weeks, was renewed.

1846.

Sept. 23.  
The  
armistice

Its rejection by  
Mr. Polk.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Army of the Centre.—Gen. Wool's march.—Battle of Buena Vista.

1. To GEN. WOOL the administration confided the principal share in mustering and preparing the volunteers. His orders, dated May 29th, he received at Troy;—left immediately for Washington, —from thence moved through the States of Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Kentucky, Tennessee, and Mississippi;—meeting the enlisted volunteers at designated places of rendezvous, and inspecting and admitting them, if suitable men, into the army. These distances were accomplished, and twelve and a half regiments (two of cavalry), making about 12,000 men, were inspected, mustered into the service, and sent to their destined places, by the 16th of July.

May 29.  
Gen.  
Wool's  
orders.

July 16  
In six  
weeks  
3,000  
miles tra-  
versed,  
and 12,000  
men  
mustered

2. About 9,000 of these recruits went to the Rio Grande, to reinforce the army of Gen. Taylor. Those to form the "Army of the Centre" went by different routes to rendezvous at Bexar;—some go-

Aug. 1.  
(Gen. W.  
at La Yaca-  
gon Mat-  
agorda  
Bay).

15. What did Taylor know of Mr. Polk's course in regard to Santa Anna?—16. What farther do you learn concerning the armistice of Monterey?

CHAPTER VIII.—1. Give an account of Gen. Wool's movements in mustering volunteers.—2. How many of these went to Gen. Taylor? Where were those for the Army of the Centre to rendezvous, and by what routes?

PT. IV. ing the far circuit of *Little Rock*, in Arkansas, and  
 P'D. III. some by the Gulf through *La Vaca*. At Bexar be-  
 CH. VIII. gan that drill and strict discipline of the volunteers,  
 1846. which made Gen. Wool's corps, whether resting or  
 Gen. moving, a camp of instruction; and which, together  
 Wool's with his great care that every article necessary to  
 discipline health and efficiency, should always be prepared and  
 (unpopu- ready, gave to it the praise of being "a model army."  
 lar with  
 his men at  
 the time).

Gen. Wool  
 leaves  
 Bexar—  
 crosses the  
 R. G. at  
 Presidic.

3. Gen. Wool's destination was Chihuahua. His force, amounting to 500 regulars and 2,440 volunteers, crossed the Rio Grande at *Presidio*, on a flying bridge prepared for the purpose. From this fertile spot they marched westward 26 miles, to *Nava*, over a dead level,—without finding a drop of water or a human habitation. The troops, in crossing the *Sierras of San José* and *Santa Rosa*, encountered steep rocky ascents and deep mountain gorges; and often before their 300 heavy-laden wagons could pass, roads must be repaired or made. Sometimes, as the army appeared, the ignorant people of the country, taken by surprise, believed that the robber bands of Mexico were upon them. The shrieking women would run from their houses, and embrace the crosses by the wayside,—probably where some friend had been killed, whose fate they expected to share.

Oct. 31.  
 Gen. Wool  
 at Mon-  
 clova.

(Troops  
 under  
 drill dur-  
 ing the ar-  
 mistice;  
 they are  
 always  
 encamped  
 without  
 the cities  
 and vil-  
 lages).

4. But Gen. Wool protected the quiet and the weak against the lawless and the strong; and as he passed on through *San Fernando* and *Santa Rosa* to *Monclova*, his advance was heralded as that of a friend. He there peacefully unfurled the American flag over the government-house of the province. At *Monclova*, Gen. Taylor communicated to him the capture and armistice of Monterey.

5. On the 25th of November, Gen. Wool marched upon *Parras*; Gen. Taylor having advised him to

---

2. What gave to Gen. Wool's corps the credit of being a "model army?"—3. Describe the army's march.—4. To whom did Gen. Wool afford protection? How was his advance regarded by the well-informed Mexicans? What did he learn at *Monclova*?—5. Why did he march to *Parras*?

establish a post in that fertile region and collect provisions, of which his army were in need, and which the country about Monterey could not supply. At Parras, Gen. Wool was received with all the courtesy due to a distinguished guest. The strictness of his discipline was not only improving his army, but, by imparting the new feeling of security to a people, so long the victims of anarchy, he was winning their affections, and giving them desires for a better government. Stores came in abundantly, and the necessities of the two armies were fully supplied.

6. In the mean time Gen. Taylor had proceeded to *Victoria*, the capital of Tamaulipas, expecting to co-operate with Gen. Patterson and a naval force in the reduction of *Tampico*. But that place had surrendered to Commodore Conner on the 14th of November. Gen. Butler was left in command at Monterey. Saltillo, the capital of Coahuila, of which the Americans had taken peaceable possession on the 17th, was garrisoned and commanded by Gen. Worth.

7. The changeful Mexicans, having now displaced Paredes, and given full power to SANTA ANNA, he had concentrated a force of 22,000 at *San Luis Potosi*. Gen. Worth, 60 miles in advance of Monterey, and 200 from Taylor at Victoria, now received the startling intelligence that this army was immediately to be brought down upon him;—he having but 900 men. He sent a rapid express, entreating Wool to hasten to his aid with his whole force. In two hours Gen. Wool was in motion, only fourteen of his soldiers being unable to march. Such was the gratitude of the protected people, that the ladies of Parras came forward and voluntarily took these sick soldiers to their houses. In four days the army

PT. IV.  
PD III.  
CH VIII.

1816.

N IV. 8 to  
Dec. 5.  
March  
from  
Mexico  
to Parras

(Nov. 14.  
Tampico  
taken  
without  
blood-  
shed, by  
the cour-  
age and  
conduct of  
Mrs.  
CHASE,  
wife to  
the Am.  
consul.)

Dec 17.  
An ex-  
press from  
Gen.  
Worth,—  
Gen Wool  
leaves  
Parras;  
his rapid  
move-  
ment.

5. What was the effect of his discipline?—6. Give an account of the arrangements detailed in paragraph 6th.—7. What do you now learn of Santa Anna? What alarmed Gen. Worth, and what express did he send? What was done by Gen. Wool? What remarkable proof of gratitude did he receive from the ladies of Parras?

PT. IV. marched 120 miles, to *Agua Nueva*, twenty-one  
 PD. III. miles in advance of Saltillo.

OR. VII. S. Gen. Taylor, while at Victoria, learned that  
 1846. the city of Mexico was to be approached by Vera  
 Scott's  
 supposed  
 Taylor. Cruz; and that Gen. Scott, appointed to conduct  
 this invasion, would, as his senior, supersede him in  
 the Mexican command; and it was from the forces  
 of Taylor and Wool, that Scott's army was, by the  
 direction of the war department, mainly to be  
 drawn;—they, "to stand on the defensive, till more  
 could be sent by government." Whatever might  
 have been their feelings, the two generals obeyed  
 the order; and promptly detached many of their  
 best officers—Worth among the rest—with the  
 greater part of their regular troops and volunteers.  
 Yet, with the remainder, they met and bore back  
 the danger which then threatened them—the shock  
 of the most formidable army which Mexico had  
 ever sent to the field.

9. Gen. Taylor, in order to prepare for the com-  
 1847. ing crisis, left a small garrison at Monterey, and  
 Santa  
 Anna's  
 approach. advanced south with about 300 men to the camp of  
 Wool, at *Agua Nueva*. Their whole force, officers  
 and men, was 4,690, and Santa Anna was approach-  
 ing with more than four times that number—be-  
 sides 3,000 regular cavalry under GEN. MINOX, and  
 1,000 under GEN. URREA, sent in advance, to turn  
 the American position, destroy their stores, and cut  
 off their retreat.

10. The army remained encamped at *Agua Nueva*  
 until the afternoon of the 21st of February; when,  
 Santa  
 Anna. Santa Anna being now near, the camp at *Agua*  
 deceived. *Nueva* was broken up; and Santa Anna, believing  
 to be drawn that his foes were flying in dismay, eagerly pursued,  
 position till he was drawn to the mountain-gorge of Angos-

7. What moral was made by Gen. Wool?—8. What disagree-  
 able intelligence was received by Taylor? What was his conduct?  
 Was Gen. Wool affected by the government order? What did the  
 two generals effect with the remainder of their force?—9. What  
 was now the position and force of the Mexican and American  
 armies?—10. What occurred on the afternoon of the 21st of Feb-  
 ruary?

tura, previously chosen by Gen. Wool, as the place for the battle. He was left by Taylor the active commander at Buena Vista; while, anxious for his stores menaced by Minon, Taylor himself went to Saltillo.

P.T. IV.

P.D. III.

CH. VIII.

1847.

11. On the morning of the 22d, Gen. Wool drew up the army for battle. The gorge was the key of the position. Here was placed Capt. Washington's battery. THIS WAS THE BIRTHDAY OF THE GREAT WASHINGTON, and the battle-cry was to be, "The memory of Washington!" From their positions the troops looked out through the gorge to the south, and beheld, issuing from clouds of dust, the long array of the Mexican host,—glittering with burnished arms, and gorgeous with many-colored draperies.

Feb. 22.

BUENA

VISTA.

Mexican

army

appears.

12. About noon the Mexicans pushed forward a party to the heights on the east, or American left. At three o'clock began the battle. The Mexicans made no impression upon the American lines, while they suffered loss. Night came. The Americans remained under arms. Two hours after midnight the Mexicans commenced the second day's attack.

3 o'clock,

P. M.,

battle

begins.

Mex. L. k.

and w.

more than

300.

Am. L.

w. 4, k. 0.

13. No language can depict the perilous condition of the comparatively few Americans who fought, and finally won the long and bloody battle of Buena Vista. Some of the volunteers fled in the early part of the day, and in endeavoring to rally them, CAPT. LINCOLN lost his valuable life. Once the Mexicans had turned the American left, and in that quarter were gaining the field, when they were met and repelled by COL. JEFFERSON DAVIS, with the unerring rifles of the Mississippi volunteers. Repeatedly the battle had been lost but for the flying-artillery, which changed rapidly from point to point as it was needed. Twice LIEUT. O'BRIEN checked masses of the enemy with his small battery, remaining in their way so long that he could only save himself by leaving

Col. Davis  
and the  
Mississippians.

O'Brien.

Wash-  
ington

11. What on the morning of the 22d?—12. What were the military operations of the afternoon of that day?—13. Relate some of the earlier incidents of the battle of Buena Vista.

**PT. IV.** part of his guns. Washington, though repeatedly  
**P'D. III.** attacked, maintained his position.

**CH. VIII.** 14. Once Mexican cavalry found their way to the  
 rear of the Americans, and attacked their camp;

**1847.** but they were repelled. **COL. YELL** here lost his life.  
**Camp** attacked. Then came a moment in which several thousand

**Santa Anna's base**  
 trifling  
 with a flag  
 of truce.

Mexicans were in danger, when Santa Anna relieved  
 them, and changed his batteries for a final assault,  
 by the vile trick of sending a flag, as if for surren-  
 der. This last assault was furiously made on the

**Last**  
**assault of**  
**the Mex-**  
**icans.**

American centre, commanded by Taylor in person.  
 For a few moments the volunteers were in danger  
 of being overwhelmed by numbers. **COLONELS**  
**HARDIN, CLAY, and McKEE,** were killed. The bat-  
 teries of **BRAGG** and **SHERMAN** arrived, and by  
 almost superhuman exertion, they saved the day.

15. Santa Anna was obliged to draw back his  
 much diminished forces. The second night came  
 on. Officers and men were on the alert, and horses  
 in harness. The field was strewn with the lifeless  
 victims of war. The American surgeons and their  
 assistants administered to the wounded, whether  
 friend or foe; and Mexican women were there, to  
 soothe the dying, or wail the dead.

**Feb. 23-4.**  
**BUENA**  
**VISTA.**  
**Mex. L.**  
**k. and w.**  
 2,500,  
 missing  
 4,000.  
**Am. L.**  
**k. 264,**  
**w. 450.**

16. At morning the Americans were prepared  
 to renew the contest. Outposts, by astonishing  
 marches, had reached the camp. **MARSHALL,** with his  
 mounted Kentuckians, and **PRENTISS** with his artil-  
 lery, had travelled from the Pass of Rinconada—  
 35 miles of bad road—in one day. At dawn, Gen.  
 Wool, abroad to reconnoitre, discovered that the  
 enemy were in full retreat. Hastening with the  
 news to the tent of Taylor, they embraced and  
 wept,—while the glad shouts of victory rang over  
 the battle-field.

**Anxiety**  
**and relief.**

17. Santa Anna had promised his army, before  
 the battle, *the lives* and property of their foes, and

---

14. Of the later.—15. What was the position of things when  
 night came on?—16. What preparation had the Americans  
 made to renew the contest? What was discovered at dawn of  
 day?

he had sent, besides regular troops, hordes of rancheros, to fill the mountain-passes, so that not an American should escape with his life. By a body of these troops, a wagon train was attacked at Ramas, and 45 wagoners killed. On the day of the battle, Gen. Minon, with 1,800 cavalry, was driven from Saltillo by CAPT. WEBSTER and those under his command.

Pt. IV.  
PD III.  
CH IX.  
1847.  
Santa Anna's preparations to cut off the whole Am. army

18. The victory of Buena Vista diminished, and in a degree discouraged, the Mexican army, while it gave animation and impetus to that of the Americans—needful for them in the difficult enterprise to be undertaken by Scott, and it left the Americans in quiet possession of the northern provinces of Mexico proper. Gen. Taylor returned to receive the highest honors of his country. Gen. Wool was left in command at Monterey; where he so protected the conquered region, that its principal citizens desired its annexation to the American Union.

## CHAPTER IX.

Army of the West.—Conquest of New Mexico and California.

1. A FLEET was already on the coast of California, when the war commenced. Commodore Sloat, the commander, was advised by the navy department, that war with Mexico might occur, in which case he was, without further notice, to employ his fleet for hostile purposes. Having been led to believe that war existed, Com. Sloat took *Monterey* on the 7th of July, 1846. On the 8th, *San Francisco*, north of Monterey, was taken by a part of his squadron, acting under the orders of Com. Montgomery.

1846.  
July 7.  
Monterey in California, taken by Com. Sloat.

2. At *Sonoma* the American flag had already been

17. What had Santa Anna promised and prepared to do? What occurred at Ramas? At Saltillo?—18. What is here said of Gen. Taylor? Of Gen. Wool?

CHAPTER IX.—1. Of what was Com. Sloat advised? What places in California were taken on the 7th and 8th of July 1846?

**P.T. IV.** planted by COL. FREMONT,—who, with 63 men  
**P.D. III.** had been sent out in 1845 by the government with  
**CH. IX.** the ostensible object of making peaceful explorations. Fremont being threatened with destruction by DE CASTRO, the Spanish commandant, went north and aroused the American settlers in the neighborhood of Sonoma, and on the river Sacramento. They added to his force, and he swept out the Mexican authorities from around the Bay of San Francisco and further north. The American Californians, July 5th, declared their independence, and placed Fremont at their head. A few days after, a rumor came that war existed between the United States and Mexico; when the California colors were joyfully pulled down and the American hoisted. . . . On the 15th of July arrived, in a frigate at Monterey, COMMODORE STOCKTON. Fremont, with his battalion, now increased to 160—placed himself under Stockton's command, Commodore Sloat leaving the station.

**1846.**  
 June and  
 July.  
 Fremont  
 and the  
 American  
 Californians  
 drive out  
 the Span-  
 ish govern-  
 ment.

(Called  
 the Bear  
 Revolution,  
 from the flag  
 adopted.)

**Aug. 17.**  
**Com. 8.**  
 institutes  
 govern-  
 ment at  
 Angeles.

**Army of  
 the  
 West—**  
 1st reg.  
 856.  
 Inf. 145,  
 Lt. Art.  
 250,  
 Drag. 407  
 16 pieces  
 of ord.)

3. Gen. Castro went south to *Los Angeles*, the seat of civil government. Stockton and Fremont, with their combined land and naval forces, followed. The Mexicans withdrawing, they took peaceable possession; and Com. Stockton assumed, by proclamation, the style of governor. He and Fremont then going north, a Mexican force under GEN. FLORES retook Los Angeles and the southern towns, driving out the American garrisons. Fremont increased his California battalion to 428, with which in December and January he assisted in the final conquest of California.

4. **ARMY OF THE WEST.**—Immediately after the opening of the war, orders were issued by the Executive for organizing an "Army of the West," to be commanded by GEN. KEARNY;—for the object of taking,—and placing under American laws, New

2. Give some account of Col. Fremont and his military operations in California. Who arrived? What further is said of Fremont?—3. What happened at *Los Angeles*?—4. What was the object of the Army of the West?

Mexico and California. The army began, June 5th, to appear at the rendezvous, which was *Fort Leavenworth*. Here the volunteers chose their own officers. The men elected by them had entered their ranks as privates. DONIPHAN was chosen colonel of the first Missouri regiment. All were for twenty days instructed by such of their officers as had been West Point students; and thus the military arts and sciences infused into this celebrated school, by COL. SYLVANUS THAYER and his associates and successors, were rapidly transfused into the capable volunteers of the West.

5. Gen. Kearny having sent forward his baggage, and taken in convoy the annual train of merchants' wagons, now numbering 414 (going to trade at Santa Fé and Chihuahua), set out with his army on the last of June. They moved south-westerly across the river Kansas and its southern branches,—along the Arkansas to Bent's Fort; thence south and southwesterly to Santa Fé.

6. A great portion of the region moved over, was prairie;—one wide, wild, unmeasured level, or gently undulating field;—sometimes green, as far as the eye could reach, with tall, rank grass,—and sometimes gay with unnumbered flowers,—perhaps blushing, far round with the varieties of the prairie rose,—or tinged orange with the wild lily; and sometimes showing the pale green and delicate white and red of the moccasin flower, the "belle of the prairie." Along the Arkansas the troops found great herds of buffalo; and cheerily joined the hunt, and enjoyed the feast.

7. But they had many hardships. The ground was often so soft and spongy that the wagons sunk; and the strength of the men must be added to that

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. IX.

1846.  
June 18.  
Doniphan  
chosen.

June 26-  
29.  
Army  
march.  
30th.  
Reach the  
Kansas.  
July 12.  
The Ar-  
kansas.

Prairie  
scenery.

From  
June to  
Aug. 19

4. What occurred with respect to election of officers and discipline, and where?—5. What is said of a wagon-train which Gen. Kearny was to convoy? What course was taken by the army in their march to Santa Fé?—6. Describe the prairie scenery, and the chief pleasure of the army.—7. What disagreeable scenes had they to encounter?

**PT. IV.** of the horses to drag them forth. Again, chasms  
**P.D. III.** must be filled, and torrents bridged; and sometimes  
**CH. IX.** the volunteers must lie down at night in places in-  
**1846.** fested with serpents, horned frogs, lizards, and mos-  
 quitoes. Often they made long marches without  
 water, and sometimes with scarcely any food.

**Aug. 18.** 8. Gen. Kearny having thus marched 900 miles,  
**Gen.** peacefully entered the city of Santa Fé, containing  
**Kearny** about 2,000 inhabitants. He occupied the govern-  
**enters** or's palace, and planted above it, August 18th, the  
**Santa Fé.** standard eagle of Republican America. The day  
 after he proclaimed himself governor of New Mex-  
**He estab-** ico. He next required the principal men to swear  
**lishes civil** allegiance to the laws and government of the United  
**govern-** States.  
**ment.**

9. Gen. Kearny having taken possession of New  
 Mexico, and organized a government,—it next be-  
**Sept. 25.** came his duty to proceed to California. He made  
**Kearny** **CHARLES BENT**, civil governor of Santa Fé; and ap-  
**leaves** pointed Col. Doniphan, as his military successor;  
**Santa Fé.** with orders, however, that on the arrival of volun-  
 teers under Col. Price, Doniphan should leave him  
 in command, proceed with his regiment and some  
 additional forces to Chihuahua, and there report to  
 Gen. Wool.

10. Proceeding down the Rio Grande, Kearny  
 was met by an express from Col. Fremont,\* by which  
 he learned that California was already conquered.  
 Selecting 100 men as his escort, he ordered the re-  
 turn of his main force to Santa Fé. Crossing the  
 Rio Grande in latitude 33°, he reached the river  
 Gila, at the copper mines, on the 20th of October;  
 and following its course, he arrived at its mouth on  
 the 22d of November, in lat. 32°. From this point  
 he kept along, or near the Colorado, forty miles N.;  
 thence westerly sixty miles, through an arid desert.

(\* Fre-  
 mont is  
 promoted  
 for mili-  
 tary  
 services.)

**Nov. 22.**  
**Kearny**  
**at the**  
**mouth of**  
**the Gila**

8. What were some of the circumstances of Gen. Kearny's tak-  
 ing Santa Fé and establishing government?—9. What was Gen.  
 Kearny next to do? Whom did he leave to succeed him? What  
 orders did he give?—10. What information met Gen. Kearny and  
 what was his course of action? Describe the route of Gen. Kearny.

11. On the 2d of December, Gen. Kearny reached **P.T. IV.**  
 Wamas village, the frontier settlement of California. **P.D. III.**  
 By capturing a Mexican express, he had learned the **CH. IX.**  
 revolt, and had sent to Stockton at St. Diego; by **1846.**  
 whose orders he was met on the 5th by Captain  
 Gillespie, with thirty-six men. A corps of the  
 enemy were near. The next morning the gen-  
 eral mounted his little party on the jaded beasts,  
 which they had ridden from Santa Fé, 1050 miles,  
 and at day-dawn went forth to *San Pascal*,—where **Dec. 6.**  
 he engaged 160 mounted Californians. The Amer- **SAN**  
 icans were victorious;—but these more northern **PASCAL**  
 troops sold victory at a dearer rate, than the south- **Mex.**  
 ern Mexicans. Kearny was twice wounded. **force 160**  
**CAP-**  
**TAINS JOHNSON, and MOORE, and LIEUT. HAMMOND,**  
 were killed;—indeed, more than half the officers  
 were either killed or wounded, with 19 of the men.  
 When the surgeon appeared, the commander di-  
 rected, “first dress the wounds of the soldiers;”  
 and then fell,—fainting with exhaustion. Happily,  
 his wounds were not dangerous. He reached San  
 Diego on the 12th of December.

12. On the 29th of that month, Com. Stockton **1847.**  
 and Gen. Kearny, at the head of 500 marines with **Jan. 8.**  
 the land forces, marched to the vicinity of Ciudad **SAN GA-**  
 los Angeles to quell the revolt of the inhabitants,— **BRIEL.**  
 met and defeated them at *San Gabriel*, on the 8th **Am L. 20.**  
 of January, and the next day took peaceable posses- **Mex. L.**  
 sion of Los Angeles. The Californians, still in force. **70.**  
 knowing that Fremont approached, passed the city. **Jan. 13.**  
 marched twelve miles north, and surrendered to him **Capitu-**  
 at *Cowenga*, on an honorable capitulation. This **lation of**  
 proved the final pacification of California. **Cowenga**

13. The following day the American parties **Jan. 14.**  
 met at Los Angeles. Who should be governor? **The three**  
 Stockton said it should be Fremont. General **at Ange-**  
 Kearny claimed the office on account of his su- **les.**  
 perior rank, and the President's authority. But **Jan. 17.**  
**Fremont**  
**refuses to**  
**obey.**

11. Describe the battle of San Pascal.—12. Of San Gabriel—  
 the capitulation.—13. Relate the dispute concerning the gover-  
 norship.

- P.T. IV.** Kearny's written order, Fremont refused to obey,  
**P.D. III.** until further directed, from Washington. Kearny  
**CH. X.** left him in the gubernatorial mansion; and marched  
**1847.** forth, with the poor remains of his party, to San Di-  
 Jan. 19-23. ego. Here he was reinforced by the Mormon bat-  
 Kearny's talion under Col. Cooke. Leaving them, he sailed  
 march to to Monterey; where in conjunction with Com. Shu-  
 S. Diego. brick, he made a proclamation as governor;—annex-  
 Feb. 8. ing California to the United States.  
 At  
 Monterey.  
 March 1.  
 Proclama-  
 tion.  
 March 21  
 to 23.  
 Fremont's  
 horseback  
 journey.  
 Aug. 22.  
 His arrest.  
**1848.** 14. Fremont learning, at length that the Presi-  
 His sentence. dent would not sustain his course, rode on horse-  
 back, 400 miles in three days and ten hours, to make  
 his submission to Kearny, at Monterey. . . . Col.  
 MASON arrived with orders to supersede Kearny,  
 and permit Fremont to join his regiment, or pursue  
 his explorations. He was forced, instead, to accom-  
 pany Kearny in his overland journey by the South  
 Pass;—arrested by him at Fort Leavenworth, tried  
 at Washington by a court-martial, and finally sen-  
 tenced to lose his commission. The President  
 offered its restoration, but Fremont would not accept  
 it at his hands.

## CHAPTER X.

Doniphan's Expedition to Chihuahua.—Revolt in New Mexico.

- 1846.** 1. THREE days after Gen. Kearny's departure  
 Sept. 28. from Santa Fé, Col. Price arrived with his recruits.  
 Col. Price Col. Doniphan was awaiting this event to commence  
 arrives at his march upon Chihuahua. But on the 11th of Oc-  
 Santa Fé. tober, he received an order from Kearny, dated "near  
 Oct. 11. La Joya," to march with his regiment against the  
 Doniphan Navajo Indians,—their chiefs not having come to  
 ordered Santa Fé to hold a peace-council with those of other  
 against Indian nations, as they had been invited, and as they  
 the Nava- had promised to do;—but instead of this, they had  
 joes.

**13.** What was Kearny's course?—**14.** What was Fremont's? What was the result?

CHAPTER X.—**1.** What was Gen. Kearny's order to Col. Doniphan?

made war on "the inhabitants of New Mexico, under the protection of the United States."

2. Winter was approaching, and the abodes of the powerful Navajoes, the "mountain-lords" of unknown regions, extended far to the west. The more thoroughly to scour their country, Col. Doniphan divided his regiment into three parties,—one under MAJOR GILPIN, to take a northern route; one under COL. JACKSON, a southern, while Doniphan himself was to take a central range. All were to meet at *Ojo Oso*, or the Bear Springs,—bringing in the chiefs to hold a council. Notwithstanding incredible hardships, this was done; and on the 22d of November a treaty of peace and amity was made in form.

3. From *Valverde*, Col. Doniphan moved his army in three divisions; with baggage-wagons and merchant trains in convoy. He now crossed a dreary desert of ninety miles, called the "Journey of the Dead," where was neither water, food, nor fuel. At *Doñanna* the army found refreshment.

4. At *Bracito* on the Del Norte, they encountered a Mexican force, commanded by GEN. PONCE DE LEON, who sent an officer with a black flag, demanding Doniphan to appear before him. On refusal, he said in haughty defiance, "We neither ask quarter, nor give it!" The Mexicans advanced, firing three rounds. The Missourians falling upon their faces, were supposed to be dead; but suddenly rising, they delivered a fire so fatal, that the foe fled in confusion, leaving about 200 killed and wounded.

5. In the delightful valley of *El Paso del Norte*, the troops were fully recruited. Their march from El Paso was forth into unknown hostile regions. And now they had learned that Gen. Wool was not at Chihuahua. But fearlessly they pressed on. They encountered as they went from the Del Norte a

PT. IV.

P'D. III.

CH. X.

1846.

Nov. 11.

(Major

Gilpin

marches

about 750

among th

Indians)

Nov. 22.

Treaty

with the

Nava-

joes.

Dec. 14.

Doni-

phan's

army

move

from

Valverde.

Dec. 22.

At Do-

nanna, 60

m. from

El Paso.

Dec. 25.

BRA-

CITO.

Mex. force

1,200.

Mex. L. k.

50, w. 150

Am.

force 500.

Am. L.

w. 7. k. 0

2. What divisions of his force were made by Col. D.? For what object? With what result?—3. Describe the army's march from Valverde to Doñanna.—4. What occurred at BRACITO?—5. Describe the march from El Paso to Laguna de los Palos.

**P.T. IV.** desert of sixty-five miles in extent, in which the  
**P.D. III.** whole army were in danger of perishing from thirst.  
**CH. I.** Many animals, and some men gave out, and lay  
 down to die. Many officers and soldiers threw all  
 aside, and were running with their last strength to  
 to reach a lake ten miles distant. But that Providence  
 which so often saved our armies during this  
 war, relieved their sufferings by a shower so copious,  
 that the torrent-streams came dashing from the  
 rocks, to refresh and save them. Having at length  
 reached the lake (Laguna de los Palos), they remained  
 to recruit, one day only, and on the 18th resumed  
 their march.

**1847.**  
 (El Paso  
 noted for  
 delicious  
 wines.)

Feb. S.  
 Army  
 leave El  
 Paso.

16th.  
 Great distress  
 from  
 thirst.

6. Col. Doniphan, as he approached Chihuahua, learned that an army of 4,000 men had been raised to oppose him by **DON ANGEL TRIAS**, governor of the province. He met this formidable force strongly posted, and fortified with heavy ordnance at the *Pass of Sacramento*, eighteen miles from the capital; and his little army of about a thousand brave men here defeated quadruple numbers of their enemies.

7. The city and province of Chihuahua were now at the mercy of the conqueror. He entered the succeeding day, March 2d, and planted the colors of his country over a city containing 40,000 inhabitants, and having in its vicinity some of the richest mines in Mexico. His soldiers marched by Parras to Saltillo, where at length they met Gen. Wool. Their term of service expired on the last of May. By Camargo and the Rio Grande, they arrived at New Orleans on the 15th of June; having marched 5,000 miles since they left the Mississippi.

8. In the mean time the New Mexicans had secretly conspired against the American authority. On the 19th of January, at *Fernando de Taos*, were cruelly murdered Gov. Charles Bent, Sheriff Lee, and four other persons. Massacres occurred at other places. Col. Price, the military commander

Jan. 19.  
 Massacre  
 of Gov.  
 Bent and  
 13 others.

March 2.  
 Doniphan  
 enters  
 Chihuahua.

May 22.  
 At  
 Saltillo.

**SACRAMENTO.**  
 Mex. force  
 4,120.  
 Am 924.  
 Mex L.  
 k. 300.  
 w 300.  
 Am. L. k.  
 1, w. 13.

6. Give some account of the battle of Sacramento.—7. Of the entrance of Col. Doniphan into Chihuahua. Of his army's return —8. What occurred in New Mexico on the 19th of Jan., 1847?

at Santa Fé, received the startling intelligence on the 20th; when he learned, that a force, hourly increasing, approached him. On the 23d he marched with 350 men,—met the foe on the 24th, near the small town of *Canada*, attacked and defeated him; and again on the 29th, at the mountain-gorge called the *Pass of Embudo*.

9. The Americans next had a march over the Taos mountain, through snows two feet in depth, with a degree of cold so intense, that many froze their limbs. At Pueblo de Taos they met the enemy, stormed his fortifications, and drove him from his position. The valuable lives of CAPTAIN BURGWIN and other officers were here lost. Fifteen Mexicans were executed as conspirators. Peace was now restored, but a fear of secret conspiracy remained.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. XI.  
**1847.**  
Victories  
of Col.  
Price.  
Jan. 24.  
CANA-  
DA.  
Jan. 28.  
EMBU.  
DO.  
Mex. force  
about  
1,500.  
Am. 479.  
Feb. 5.  
TAOS.  
Mex. L. K.  
200, w. 68

## CHAPTER XI.

Scott's Invasion.—Vera Cruz.—Cerra Gordo.

1. SINCE Mexico refused to treat for peace, the American Executive determined to strike at her capital through Vera Cruz. Gen. Scott, the first officer in the American army, was properly selected to conduct this perilous enterprise. He was, on the 18th of November, notified by SECRETARY MARCY of his appointment, and directed, as we have seen, to draw his force chiefly from Gen. Taylor. Santa Anna was lying with 22,000 men at San Luis Potosi. It would have seemed probable that he would have turned towards Vera Cruz, and uniting with forces in that vicinity, oppose, as he might have done, with an army of more than 30,000 the landing of Gen.

**1846.**  
Nov. 18.  
Scott's  
orders.

8. What were the two first victories of Col. Price?—9. What the third and most important? How many were executed? Was confidence restored as well as peace?

CHAPTER XI.—1. Of what was Gen. Scott notified, and what directed to do? What is here stated concerning Santa Anna's position and movements?

**P.T. IV.** Scott:--rather than to march against Gen. Taylor.  
**P.D. III.** But (as Scott learned after landing) Santa Anna  
**CH. XI.** chose the latter, and was defeated at Buena Vista.

**1817.** 2. The rendezvous of the several corps, which  
 Feb. 23 were to compose the invading army, was the island of  
 and 24. *Lobos*, 125 miles from Vera Cruz. It was on the 7th  
*BUENA* of March, that Gen. Scott embarked on board the  
*VISTA.* transporting squadron, commanded by COM. CONNER.

March 7. Reaching Vera Cruz on the 9th, he debarked his  
 Scott army on the west side of the island of Sacrificios.  
 embarks his army. Having vainly summoned the garrison to surrender,  
 9th,— Scott, with the aid of his engineers, of whom Col.  
 lands at Sacrificios TOTTEN was chief, planted his batteries, and on the  
 18th,— night of the 18th, bombarded the city. The fleet  
 begins the cannon- lent its aid, although exposed to the fire of the castle.  
 ade.

3. On the night of the 27th, Vera Cruz, with the  
 strong castle of San Juan d'Ulloa,—the principal  
 commercial port and the strongest fortress in Mex-  
 ico, were surrendered, with 5,000 prisoners (dis-  
 missed on parole), and 500 pieces of artillery. Two  
 meritorious American officers, CAPTAINS ALBURTIS  
 and VINTON, with ten privates, were killed. CAPT.  
 SWIFT, one of the brightest ornaments of the ser-  
 vice, who had organized a company of sappers and  
 miners,—too eager in duty for his impaired health,  
 fainted at the head of his corps, from over-exertion,  
 and died in the hospital. The discipline of Gen.  
 Scott's army was strict, and no invasion of private  
 rights was permitted.

4. COM. PERRY succeeded Conner in command of  
 the Gulf squadron. *Alvarado* on the south was  
 captured, and *Tuspan* on the north. The Ameri-  
 can government about this time adopted the policy  
 of drawing a revenue from the conquered;—lest by  
 too much lenity, in paying for all needed supplies,  
 the war should become a pecuniary advantage to  
 to the Mexicans, and thus peace be deferred. Amer-

(Captain  
 Hunter,  
 with val-  
 or, but  
 disrespect  
 to his  
 superior,  
 took Al-  
 varado.)

2. Give some account of the embarkation and landing of Scott's army. Of the attack on Vera Cruz.—3. Of the surrender. Of the loss of officers and men.—4. What places were captured by the navy? What was done in reference to collecting a revenue?

ican revenue officers were appointed, and impost duties collected in the captured ports.

5. On the 6th of April, Gen. Scott, leaving a garrison in Vera Cruz, sent forward the advance of his army under GEN. TWIGGS, on the road to *Jalapa*. At the base of the grand eastern chain of the Cordilleras, the other division of the army came up, and the commander established a camp at *Plan del Rio*. There lay before him an arduous and difficult ascent through a mountain-gorge. Across this way, and on the heights which commanded it, bristled the artillery of the invaded foe, 12,000 strong, commanded by Santa Anna, who declared that he would die fighting rather than "the American hosts should proudly tread the imperial capital of Azteca."

6. Gen. Scott found that the Mexican position was so commanded by the batteries of the lofty height of Cerro Gordo that approach in front was impracticable. But, aided by the skill of his engineers, LEE and BEAUREGARD, he turned to the left, causing to be made a new road, by which—ascending along difficult slopes, and over deep chasms, his army might reach the rear of the enemy's camp. After three days of secret labor, the road was made. On the 17th of April, the commander published a general order for the next day,—showing how the battle was to be gained,—how the flying were to be pursued,—and how the greatest advantage was to be reaped from the victory. All was done as he commanded.

7. About noon the steep ascent was won. The heights of Cerro Gordo were stormed by Twigg's brigade,—and the enemy's camp by a party led by COL. HARNEY, GEN. SHIELDS (severely wounded),—and by COL. RILEY. At two o'clock, P. M., the enemy were put to flight,—more than a thousand having

5. To what point did Gen. Scott move, and what was his position in regard to the Mexican army?—6. What great advantage was here gained by the American skill in engineering, and the sagacious foresight of the commander? What was his general order?—7. Give a sketch of the battle of Cerro Gordo.

P.T. IV.

P.D. III.

CH. XI.

1847.

April 8.

Army

leaves

Vera Cruz

Plan del

Rio.

April 17.

Remark-

able

order.

April 18.

CERRO

GORDO.

Mex force

12,000.

Am. force

8,500.

Mex L. k.

and w.

1,500

Am. L. k.

and w. 430

P.T. IV fallen. Santa Anna and a part of his army had fled,  
 P.D III. and the eager pursuit had commenced. Scott, in  
 CH. XI. his orders before the battle, had directed that the  
 1817. pursuers should each take two days' subsistence,  
 and that wagons with stores should immediately  
 follow, so that they need not return.

8. On the 19th, the pursuing squadrons entered  
 and took possession of *Jalapa*. On the 22d, having  
 now attained the summit of the eastern Cordilleras,  
 April 22. General Worth displayed the American banner from  
 Worth takes the town and castle of Perote.  
 the unresisting *castle of Perote*, the strongest for-  
 tress in Mexico, next to San Juan d'Ulloa. Thus by  
 vigorously following up this remarkable victory, the  
 enemy were unable to recover in time to make a  
 stand in this, their strongest inland post; and thus  
 other battles were saved.

9. Three thousand prisoners were taken at Cerro  
 Gordo, among whom were four generals. General  
 Scott dismissed them all upon parole, having neither  
 food to sustain, nor men to guard them. Santa  
 Anna's equipage and papers were secured. . . From  
 (54 pieces of cannon and mortars were taken at Perote.)  
 Perote the army passed onwards, through that great  
 table-valley between the grand chains of the Cordil-  
 leras, called "Terras Frias," or the cold country.  
 On the morning of the 15th May, the advance un-  
 der Worth, entered *Puebla*, the second city of Mex-  
 ico, containing 80,000 inhabitants. Eagerly did the  
 Mexican men and women look out from their bal-  
 conies and from the roofs of their houses, to see their  
 mighty conquerors. War-worn, and habited in the  
 sober hue of the American army, the Mexicans, ac-  
 customed to a gaudy uniform, looked upon them  
 with disappointment, and could find no reason but  
 one for their success. "Their leaders," said they,  
 "are gray-headed men."

---

7. Of the pursuit of the flying.—8. Of the places now occupied  
 by the Americans.—9. What was taken at Cerro Gordo? What  
 is here related of Puebla?

## CHAPTER XII.

State of the army.—Its march.—Contreras.—Churubusco.

1. THE American Executive about this time, sent NICHOLAS P. TRIST, as an agent to make the experiment, whether Mexico would not treat for peace. But the olive-branch was again rejected. The interruption of the army's activity caused by this unavailing effort for peace, was opportune. Its numbers were lessened by sickness; for the climate though pleasant, proved so unhealthy, that hundreds were in hospitals, and many died. The time for which large numbers of the volunteers were enlisted, expired, and many had deserted. Congress had, however, passed a law, February 11th, 1847, authorizing ten new regiments; and these being raised, reinforcements were sent by the way of Vera Cruz; and although not in sufficient numbers to admit of leaving such garrisons behind as would keep open his line of supplies, yet General Scott determined to move forward.

2. On the 7th of August he marched from Puebla with 10,728 men, leaving more than 3,000 in hospitals, and as a garrison under COL. CHILDS. Keeping the several columns into which he had divided the army, within supporting distance, and himself accompanying the van, General Scott moved forth with his little army;—like a second Cortez, to encounter the unknown numbers which would be brought against him, at the coming death-struggle of an infuriated nation.

3. The march of the Americans was now through a beautiful and cultivated region, whose abundant waters flowed pure and cool. Soon they began to

P.T. IV.  
PD III  
CH XII.  
1847.  
(730 died at Perote, 1,800 were at one time in hospital at Puebla, and 1,700 deserted in little more than a year.)

Aug. 7.  
Scott's march from Puebla through the Terraz Frias.

---

CHAPTER XII.—1. What experiment was now made by the American Executive? What was now the condition of the army? —2. In what manner did Gen. Scott with his army go forth from Puebla?—3. Describe the march of the army and the appearance of the country.

P.T. IV. ascend the gradual slope of the great Cordilleras of  
 P.D. III. Anahuac, central between the eastern and western  
 CH. XII. oceans. On the third day, their toilsome march  
 wound up through steep acclivities. At length they  
 1817. reached the summit; and three miles beyond *Rio*  
 Aug. 10. *Trio*, burst upon their gaze, all the glories of the  
 First view of the grand Valley.  
 grand valley of Mexico. Spreading far round and  
 beneath, were its mingled lakes, plains, cities, and  
 cloud-capped mountains. The giant peak of Popo-  
 catpetl was far to their left; before them lay the  
 lake Tezenco; and beyond it, the domes and towers  
 of the city of the Montezumas.

4. On the 11th, the advance commanded by Gen.  
 Twiggs, rested at *Ayotla*, north of lake *Chalco*, and  
 fifteen miles from the capital. The remaining corps  
 were soon concentrated at small distances; some on  
 the lake's eastern border. The ground plot of the  
 city had formerly been an island. What was once  
 the lake on which it stood, was now an oozy marsh.  
 Long straight causeways, easily raked by artillery,  
 led through the marsh to the several gates, from the  
 great roads by which the city was approached; and  
 much the longest was that connected with the road  
 from Vera Cruz. But before reaching the cause-  
 ways was an exterior system of strong defences.

Aug 11.  
 Advance  
 at Ayotla.

5. By the Vera Cruz road, on which the army  
 were, the city could not be approached, without first  
 encountering the strongest of the exterior fortifica-  
 tions, that of *El Penon*. "No doubt," says Gene-  
 ral Scott, "it might have been carried, but at a great  
 and disproportionate loss, and I was anxious to spare  
 the lives of this gallant army for a general battle,  
 which I knew we had to win before capturing the  
 city, or obtaining the great object of the campaign  
 —a just and honorable peace."

Aug. 15  
 -18.  
 Army  
 marches  
 from  
 Ayotla  
 to St. Au-  
 gustine.

6. The commander then moved his troops 27  
 miles; they making a new road directed by the en-  
 gineers, over such sharp rocks and deep chasms, as

4. Where did the army rest, and what was their position in re-  
 gard to the Mexican capital?—5. Why did Gen. Scott not ap-  
 proach the city by the Vera Cruz road?

the foe had not dreamed could be passed; when,—  
 having turned the lakes *Chaleo* and *Jochamilcho*,  
 they encamped at *St. Augustine*, on the Acapulco  
 road, eight miles south of Mexico. From the camp,  
 looking towards the city, the defences on this road,  
 were the fortress of *Antonio*, and a mile and a half  
 further north, the strongly fortified hill of *Churubusco*.  
 These could be approached in front only by  
 a dangerous causeway. By making a detour to the  
 west, where lay yet other dangers, they might be  
 reached from the left.

PT IV.  
 PD III.  
 CH. XII.

1847.

7. Two movements, ordered by the commander, were simultaneously made. Worth with Harney's cavalry, went to menace *Antonio* in front; while to the left, GENERAL PILLOW's division, consisting of the brigades of GENERALS PIERCE\* and CADWALLADER, conducted by the engineers, Lee, Beauregard, and others, made a road through craggy rocks of ancient lava; whose crevices shot up the thorn-armed maguey, and whose deep chasms were filled with water. To cover and support the working party, was sent General Twiggs' division, made up of the brigades of GENERALS RILEY and PERSIFER SMITH.

August  
 18-19.  
 A road  
 made to  
 Contreras

8. In the afternoon of the second day, after accomplishing nearly three miles of this difficult road, the troops found themselves within cannon-range of the enemy's fortified camp at *Contreras*, commanded by GENERAL VALENCIA, with 6,000 men, surmounted by 22 heavy guns, and communicating by a good road with Mexico, and also with the main camp of Santa Anna, which was lying two miles nearer the city. Upon this road the American soldiers saw the Mexicans hurrying to the scene of action.

19th.  
 (The  
 troops  
 within  
 range of  
 the guns  
 of Contreras.)

\* Gen. Pierce afterwards became President of the Union.

---

6. To what position did he remove his army, and by what means? What was now his position in regard to the Mexican city and army?—7. What movements were next ordered and effected?—8. What was now the position of the party sent to the left?

P.T. IV.

P.D. III.

CH. XII.

1847.

Village of  
Ansalda  
taken.

(\* Of sev-  
en officers  
sent by  
Scott after  
sundown  
to carry  
orders,  
not one  
succeeded  
in reach-  
ing An-  
saldá.)  
Night of  
the 19th.

9. Fighting now begins, in which the divisions of Twiggs and Pillow, especially Riley's brigade, are engaged. They advance, though suffering from the enemy's fire. About sunset, the commander, now on the field with fresh troops, gives to Col. MORGAN of the regular infantry an order, which, aided by General Shields of the volunteers, he executes; taking the village of *Ansalda*, which lay on the road from the fortified camp, to that of Santa Anna, The enemy's line of reinforcements was now cut.

10. Night,—cold, dark and rainy, closed in. Comfortless was the condition of the troops, remaining without food or sleep, upon the ground. The officers at Ansalda, in their perilous position,—separated as they were from their commander by the almost impassable\* lava-field; whose crags, on account of the rain-flood, were interspersed by torrents,—now found resources in their own genius, courage, and union.

Morning  
of the 20th  
of August.

11. General Persifer Smith proposed to set out at midnight, surprise and storm the camp at Contreras. From that moment, dark forebodings passed from the army, and each officer and man, as by spontaneous movement, fell into his proper place. Gen. Shields extending his 600 men into a long line, and keeping up fires, was interposed between the storming party and the camp of Santa Anna, with his 12,000 reserve. One messenger alone—LEE, the engineer—found his dark and watery way over the lava-rocks, and carried to the gratified commander the tidings of the gallant attitude of his troops,—and also the request of Gen. Smith, for co-operation. Scott complied, by sending with the messenger the force under Twiggs, to Contreras at five in the morning—to aid, by making a diversion in their front—the storming party, approaching the enemy's rear.

---

9. What was now done, and what advantage gained by the Americans?—10. What was the night of the 19th of August, and the condition of the troops?—11. What plan was proposed, and by whom? What part had Gen. Shields? What was done by Lee? What by Scott?

12. A little past midnight, General Smith sets forward, conducted by engineer Smith,—Col. Riley leading the van. The rain continues to fall in torrents, and their progress is slow. So profound is the darkness, that the men must touch each other as they move, lest they divide, and some be lost. At sunrise they storm the intrenchments, and precipitate themselves upon the surprised Mexicans. Dismay and carnage prevail for seventeen minutes, when the camp is carried. Eighty-eight officers and 3,000 men are made prisoners. Thirty-three pieces of artillery are captured; among which are found two of those so honorably lost by O'Brien at Buena Vista. They are received with shouts of joy by the victors of Contreras; in which the commander, now present, heartily participates.

13. General Scott next directed a grand movement upon *Churubusco*, to which the victory already achieved, opened the way. Moving northeasterly by the road through St. Angel, he keeps the centre of the extended field, while General Worth on his extreme right, is driving the now terrified garrison from Antonia. General Shields, who at Contreras, had kept for hours the whole army of Santa Anna in check, was in command of the extreme left; still charged with the dangerous duty of keeping off the grand Mexican army from the immediate object of attack. In the centre, General Twiggs presses forward to *Churubusco*, and entering it from the west, attacks one of its two strong defences, the fortified church of *San Pablo*. In the mean time, Worth, joined by Pillow and Cadwallader, comes in from Antonio, and furiously carrying the stronger fortress, called *Tête du Pont*, or Bridge's Head, he turns its guns upon the citadel-church, which now surrenders.

14. Meantime, Shields, Pierce, and others, are fighting a bloody battle with Santa Anna, with fear-

12. Describe the approach to Contreras, and the storming of the camp.—13. Describe the approach to *Churubusco*, and the assault.

PT. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. XII.

1847.  
CON-  
TRERAS  
Mex. force  
7,000;  
12,000  
more in  
sight  
Am. force  
engaged  
4,500.  
Mex. L. k.  
700, pr.  
813. 88 of-  
ficers.  
Am. L. k.  
and w. 66.

Antonia  
taken.

August  
19 and 20  
CHURU-  
BUSCO.

Entire  
Am. force  
4,052.

P.T. IV. ful odds against them. Scott sent successive regi-  
 P.D. III. ments to their aid. Churubusco was now taken,—  
 CH. XIII. the brave old GENERAL RINCON, its commander,  
 1847. having surrendered. Santa Anna abandoned the  
 field. Worth and Shields pursued. COL. HARNEY  
 with his dragoons dashed by them, and one of his  
 officers, CAPTAIN KEARNY, not hearing the call to  
 return, followed the flying Mexicans to the very  
 gate of the capital, in which the army of Santa Anna  
 was now inclosed.

## CHAPTER XIII.

Armistice.—Molinos del Rey.—Chapultepec.—Mexico.

Generous  
 proceed-  
 ings of  
 Scott.  
 Aug. 21. 1. THE commander, following up his victory,  
 might now have entered Mexico. But he was not sent  
 to conquer the country, but to “conquer a peace,”  
 and he believed that the reduction of the capital  
 would delay, rather than accelerate this result. He  
 did not wish to drive the government away from  
 the city dishonored. “The army,” says Scott in his  
 dispatches, “are willing to leave to this republic  
 something on which to rest her pride,—and they  
 cheerfully sacrifice to patriotism the eclat that would  
 have followed an entrance, sword in hand, into a  
 great capital.”

24th.  
 Armistice  
 con-  
 cluded.  
 Violated  
 by the  
 Mexicans.  
 2. *Tacubaya* now became the head-quarters of  
 the American army. The general-in-chief occupied  
 the archbishop's palace, with its beautiful gardens.  
 Here he negotiated with Mexican commissioners an  
 armistice, as a step preparatory to a final peace.  
 But the Mexicans would not agree to the terms  
 proposed; and they, violating the armistice by  
 strengthening their defences, General Scott de-  
 clared it at an end. The Mexicans then called on

14. Give a sketch of the closing scene of the victories of this  
 “great day in war.”

CHAPTER XIII.—1. What were the reasons why General Scott  
 now forbore to enter Mexico?—2. What efforts were now made  
 for peace, and how did they result?

the provinces to come to their aid in mass; and by fire—or poison,—by any weapon, in any manner, to injure and destroy the invader.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. III.  
CH. XIII.

3. From Tacubaya, Mexico was in full view—northeast, and distant three miles. North—bearing a little east—distant a mile—rose in beautiful prospect, the fortified hill of Chapultepec; its porphyritic rocks abruptly descending on its southern and eastern sides,—while to the west, the hill fell gradually, with a gentle, wooded slope, till it met the fortified building of stone, called *El Molinos del Rey*, or the King's Mills. A quarter of a mile west of the fortified mills stood another stone fortress called *Casa Mata*. These were the obstacles which now barred the way of the Americans to the capital; and they constituted the supporting points of the Mexican army, ranged behind them, headed by Santa Anna, and amounting to fourteen thousand.

1847

Scott's  
position in  
respect  
to Mexico  
and its  
defences.

4. After reconnoitering, Scott gave the order for an assault on Molinos del Rey, committing its execution to Worth. A terrible battle was fought,—and an important but melancholy victory was won. The commanders had been deceived as to the enemy's strength, which was five times that of the assaulting party. In the heat of the action, MAJOR WRIGHT, assisted by MASON of the engineers, fell upon the enemy's centre, and took his main field-battery; when so furiously did he charge to regain it, that of fourteen American officers, eleven fell. Among the number were Wright and Mason. One brigade lost its three senior officers,—COL. MCINTOSH and MAJOR WAITE, wounded, and COL. MARTIN SCOTT, killed. *Casa Mata* was blown up, and El Molinos dismantled.

Sept. 8.  
MOLI-  
NOS  
DEL  
REY.  
Mex. force  
14,000.  
Am. 3,200.  
Mex. L.  
severe but  
unknown;  
pr. 800,  
52 officers.  
Am. L.  
k. 116,  
w. 665,  
including  
49 officers

5. It was at the beautiful hill of *Chapultepec*, where once arose the veritable "Halls of the Montezumas." Here was now the military school of Mex-

2. What call was made upon all Mexican citizens?—3. What was the position of the city, regarded from the American headquarters?—4. Give an account of the battle of Molinos del Rey.—5. Where were the "Halls of the Montezumas?"

P.T. IV. ico, and the last exterior defence of the successors  
P.D. III. of Cortez to that capital which he had so iniqui-  
cu. XIII. tously taken, shedding seas of blood, because "the  
Spaniards had a disease of the heart, which nothing  
1847. could assuage but gold."\* The God of battles, who  
(\* See Prescott's had so signally made the American armies the means  
request of Mex- of chastising the Spanish Mexicans for national cru-  
ico.) elties, again led them to victory.

Sept. 11. 6. On the night of the 11th of September, Gen-  
Four eral Scott caused to be erected four heavy batter-  
batteries ies, bearing on Chapultepec. On the 12th, the out-  
erected. works of that fortress began to give way. On the  
13th. 13th was the battle. The officers and men were all  
CHA- promptly in the places assigned them, by eight  
PULTE- o'clock in the morning.  
PEC.  
(See Mex-ico.)

The 7. The cannonade ceases for a moment. It is the  
fortress stormed. signal for the assault. In an instant the assailants  
are in rapid motion. General Quitman hastens  
from the south, General Persifer Smith from the  
southeast, and General Pillow, with Col. Clark,  
from the wooded slope on the west. The batteries  
throw shells into the fort over the heads of their  
friends, as they begin the furious attack. The gar-  
rison, though they fight with desperation, are over-  
powered. Some yield, and others attempt to retreat.

Sept. 13. 8. Meantime the main force under Santa Anna,  
MEXICO in the rear of Chapultepec, is attacked and defeated  
Mex. force more than by Gen. Worth. Directed by the commander, he  
20,000. pursues the enemy as he flies to the city, pressing  
Am. 7,180. forward to enter, by a circuitous route, the San  
Mex. L. Cosme gate on the northwest. Gen. Quitman, in  
the whole army, the mean time, follows the flying foe to the city, by  
except about a route direct from Chapultepec.  
6,000, k., w., or  
deserted.

Am. L. 9. Gen. Scott, meantime, advanced with Worth  
Sept. 12 into the suburb of *San-Cosme*, where opposing bat-  
-14, teries were taken; but he returned at night to Cha-  
pultepec, to look with a father's care to the condi-

6 officers;  
w. 703—  
8 officers.

6. Relate the operations previous to the assault on Chapultepec.  
—7. Describe the assault—the defeat and flight of the enemy.  
—8. The pursuit by Worth —by Quitman.—9. What was now the  
conduct of Gen. Scott?

tion of all,—the living, the wounded, and the dead. 1<sup>ST</sup> T. IV.  
P.D. III  
CH. XIII.  
Worth, as instructed, remained in the suburb until morning. But General Quitman, accompanied by Shields and Smith, rested that night within the city; having changed the feint which the commander ordered, into a real attack, by which they entered (though with considerable loss) the Belen gate. They had not yet passed the formidable citadel. **1847.**

10. At four o'clock on the morning of the 14th, Gen. Scott having returned to San-Cosme, the Mexican authorities sent him a deputation, desiring of him terms of capitulation; their army having fled a little after midnight. Gen. Scott replied that the Americans would come under no terms but such as were self-imposed, and demanded by honor, by the spirit of the age, and the dignity of the American character. Worth and Quitman, as directed, moved cautiously forward,—Worth to the Alameda, and Quitman to the Grand Plaza, where the victorious army reared above the National Palace of Mexico, the stars and stripes of the Republic of America. Sept. 14.  
MEXICO  
TAKEN.  
(The Am  
colors  
were  
hoisted at  
7 A. M.)

11. Three hours before noon, Gen. Scott made his entrance, with escort of cavalry, and flourish of trumpets; and as his towering figure approached the grand plaza, he was loudly and warmly cheered by shouts, which arose from the hearts of his companions in arms. . . . The troops for twenty-four hours now suffered from the anarchy of Mexico more than her prowess had been able to inflict. Two thousand convicts, let loose from the prisons, attacked them from the house-tops, at the same time entering houses and committing robberies. The Mexicans assisting, these felons were quelled by the morning of the 15th. Sept. 14.  
10 A. M.  
Scott's  
entrance  
  
Convicts  
kill and  
destroy.

12. Gen. Scott gave his army, on the day of his entrance into Mexico, orders directing that companies and regiments be kept together, that "there be

---

9. The position of Worth? of Quitman?—10. What negotiations now took place? How did the two parties enter the city?—11. What is said of Gen. Scott's entrance? How did the troops now suffer?

P.T. IV. no disorders, no straggling, no drunkenness. Ma-  
 P.D. III. rauders shall be punished by courts-martial. The  
 CH. XIV. honor of the army, the honor of our country, call  
 for the best behavior from all. The valiant must,  
 to win the approbation of God and their country, be  
 sober, orderly, and merciful."

Scott en-  
 joins  
 order, so-  
 briety, and  
 mercy.

13. On the 16th, he called on the army to return public and private thanks to God for victory. On the 19th, for the better preservation of order, and suppression of crime, he proclaimed martial law. Thus protected by the American army, the citizens of Mexico were more secure from violence, and from fear of robbery and murder, than they had ever been under their own flag.

## CHAPTER XIV.

### Treaty of Peace.

1. MEXICO was now conquered; and if the Re-  
 1847. public of America, like that of ancient Rome, de-  
 sired to subjugate neighboring nations, nothing hin-  
 dered her taking possession of the whole country.  
 But American annexation—making equal States of  
 a race unfit for freedom—would have been a suici-  
 dal policy. To bring forward a Mexican govern-  
 ment, with which peace could be made, became at  
 this period, the difficult task of the well-meaning of  
 both nations.

March 16.  
 ROZA-  
 LES.  
 Mex. L.  
 E. and W.  
 258.  
 Am. L. 20.  
 (Gen P.  
 took the  
 Mexican  
 comman-  
 der and 42  
 officers.)

2. The remaining occurrences of the war, were mostly confined to skirmishes of American soldiers marching to join Scott, and guerilla parties watching to cut them off. At the north, however, Gen. Sterling Price, marching to the aid of Scott from New Mexico, fell in with a Mexican force, fought

12. What were now the orders of Gen. Scott?—13. What was done on the 16th of September? on the 19th?

CHAPTER XIV.—1. Suppose America, like ancient Rome, had desired to subjugate neighboring nations? What was now the desire and the difficult task of the well-meaning of both nations? —2. What may be said of the remaining circumstances of the war?

and defeated it. This was, unfortunately, after the treaty of peace had been signed.

3. Santa Anna, abandoned by his troops, resigned his offices on the 18th of October, and soon became a fugitive. The supreme power passed into the hands of Señor Peña y Peña, by virtue of his office as President of the Supreme Court. He forthwith sent his circulars, calling on the several States in pathetic language, to send deputies to *Queretaro*, to treat for peace. A Congress there assembled on the 11th of November, which appointed four commissioners, to arrange with Mr. Trist the plan of a treaty. Meantime, that gentleman had lost the confidence of the American Executive, and his powers had been revoked. Nevertheless, with General Scott's approbation, he presumed, in this emergency, to act.

4. On the 2d of February, the treaty was signed by Mr. Trist and the Mexican commissioners at the city of *Guadalupe Hidalgo*, and twenty days afterwards it was submitted by the President of the United States to the Senate. That body adopted it with alterations. President POLK then appointed two gentlemen, MR. SEVIER, of the Senate, and Mr. CLIFFORD, attorney-general, to proceed with the modified treaty to *Queretaro*. There, on laying it before the Mexican Congress, the President eloquently urged its acceptance, and it was ratified by a large majority.

5. On the 21st of February, the beloved and venerated patriot, John Quincy Adams, who, since his presidency, had served his country in the national legislature, fell from his seat during the debates of the house of representatives, struck by a fatal paralysis. Congress, in both its branches, suspended public ac-

PT. IV.  
P'D. III.  
CH. XIV.

1847.

Nov. 11.  
Mexican  
congress  
appoint  
commis-  
sioners.

1848.  
Feb. 2.  
Treaty  
of Gua-  
dalupe  
is signed.  
22d. Laid  
before  
the Senate  
of the  
U. S.

Feb. 23.  
Death of  
Ex-presi-  
dent J. Q.  
Adams.

2. What of the battle of Rozales?—3. What is said of Santa Anna? What change in the supreme power now occurred in Mexico? How was a congress called? When and where did it assemble, and what do?—4. When and where was the treaty of peace signed? What action was taken upon the treaty in the United States? What commissioners were appointed?—5. What occurred on the 21st of February?

PT. IV. tion ; and its members were waiting as around the  
P.D. III. couch of a dying father. He expired, in Christian  
CH. XIV. hope and resignation, on the 23d, saying : " This is  
the last of earth."

1848.

6. Peace was declared to the American army in  
May 29. Mexico, on the 29th of May, by General Butler,  
Peace pro- who was, by order of the government, left in com-  
claimed in mand of the army by General Scott, he being about  
Mexico. to return to the United States.

Bounda-  
ries.

7. The treaty stipulated that all Mexico should  
be evacuated by the American armies within three  
months. Prisoners on each side were to be released ;  
and Mexican captives made by Indians within the  
limits of the United States, were to be restored.  
These limits, as they affect Mexico, were to begin  
at the mouth of the Rio Grande—thence to proceed  
along the deepest channel of that river to the south-  
ern boundary of New Mexico. From thence to  
the Pacific, they were to follow the river Gila,  
and the southern boundary of Upper California.  
This boundary is now removed south, including a  
Territory called *Arizona*.

Citizens  
allowed a  
choice.

8. Citizens of New Mexico and Upper California,  
are allowed a year to make their election—whether  
they will continue Mexican citizens, and remove their  
property (in which case they are to receive every  
facility), or whether they will remain and become  
citizens of the United States. The American govern-  
ment, not sanctioning the right of conquest by war,  
is to pay to Mexico, for the lands she receives from  
her, fifteen millions of dollars ; and also to assume  
her debts to American citizens, to the amount of  
three millions and a half more. Three millions  
were paid to Mexico in hand ; Congress having the  
preceding winter placed that sum with the President,

Money  
paid for  
territory  
already  
con-  
quered.

6. When and by whom was peace proclaimed in the city of  
Mexico?—7. Mention some of the stipulations of the treaty? De-  
scribe the boundary between the United States and Mexico.—8  
What was stipulated respecting Mexican citizens in the ceded  
territory? What money was paid, and what yet remains to be  
paid by the United States as a consideration for the territory  
acquired?

in anticipation of such an event;—the remaining twelve millions to be paid in instalments.

9. The Territory of WISCONSIN was admitted into the American Union as a State on the 29th of May, 1848. The Mexican treaty was brought home by Mr. Sevier; Mr. Clifford remaining in Mexico as American envoy. President Polk made his proclamation of peace on the 4th of July, 1848; the first day of our seventy-third national year.

10. The American armies have evacuated Mexico. The remains of officers who died in the service of their country, have been brought home to be honored in death, and to find their last repose among their friends. And the soldiers too—they who fought so bravely for their native land,—have returned. Regiments that went forth full and fresh, have returned,—smitten and scathed. Many is the desolate hearth, to which the son, the husband, the father, shall return no more. No kindred eye shall weep at his grave. He is buried with the undistinguishable dead, who fell in the foreign battlefield, or died in the hospital. Thirty thousand American lives, it is calculated, have been sacrificed in this war; and about seventy-five millions of money expended,—and we know that the sacrifice of Mexican life and property, has been still greater.

11. Let the value of money be estimated by the good that it may be made to do, and we shall see the magnitude of the evils which, in a pecuniary way, war inflicts. Ireland was visited with famine in the winter of 1846-7, from the failure of crops, especially that of the potato. The benevolent among us were moved with compassion, and contributed money and food to her relief. The government in one instance sent a public ship to carry provisions thus contributed.\* The very heart of affectionate

P'T. IV.

P'D. III.

CH. XIV.

1848.

May 29.

July 4.

Peace

pro-

claimed.

Return of  
the army.Fate of  
the com-  
mon  
soldier.

Am. L. in

the Mex.

war, 30,000

men.

75,000,000

of dollars.

1847

(\* March

28, Sailed

from

Boston,

the sloop

of-war

James-

town,

Captain

Forbes.

She an-

chored at

Cork.

April 22.)

9. What new State was added to the Union, and when? When did President Polk proclaim peace?—10. What is said concerning the return of the army?—11. How may the value of money be estimated? What was the condition of Ireland and what the relief contributed by this country?

PT. IV. Ireland overflowed with gratitude; and England  
 PD. III. and Scotland, themselves sufferers in a less degree  
 CH. XIV. from the same cause, felt and praised our liberality.

1817. Thus we blessed others, and were ourselves blessed  
 (\* This includes soldiers' bounty-lands, widows' pensions, &c.)  
 in return; and the money which it cost us, was about half a million of dollars; whereas, we paid three hundred millions,\* to kill and distress the Mexicans. . . The time to act for the prevention of war, as of incendiarism, is when none is raging; and those to move first in the cause of peace, should be nations and men, of undoubted courage and ability in war. The Mexican contest has placed our Republic in that position. No country has at any period shown braver soldiers, or better officers.

---

11. How is the expense of this good deed and that of the Mexican war contrasted?

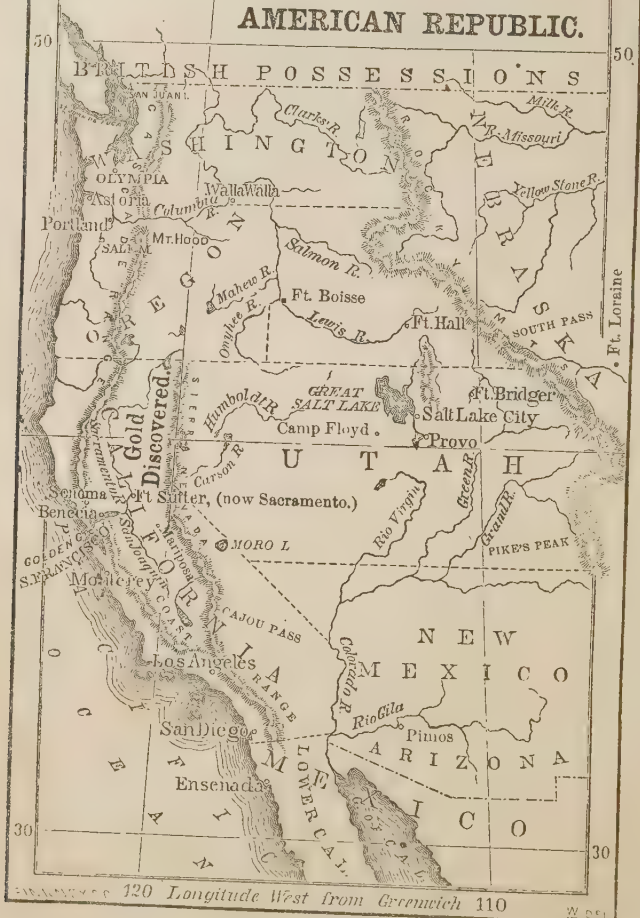


Map No. 12.

## The Pacific Part

OF THE

AMERICAN REPUBLIC.





First discovery of Gold in California

## PERIOD IV.

FROM  
THE TREATY OF } **1848** { GUADALUPE HIDALGO,  
TO  
THE COMPROMISE } **1850.** { MEASURES.

### CHAPTER I.

Oregon.—American California.—Capt. Wilkes' Exploring Expedition.—Capt. Fremont's Explorations.—Discovery of Gold and its Effects.

1. OREGON.—In the valley of the Walla-walla, PT. IV.  
the worthy Presbyterian missionary, DR. WHIT- PT. IV.  
MAN, with his wife and twelve others, were barbar- CH. I.  
ously murdered by the Cayuse Indians. The peo- **1847.**  
ple petitioned Congress for protection and a Terri- Nov. 2.  
torial government. The northern members desired Murder of  
that slavery should be prohibited; the southern, Dr. Whit-  
that it should be recognized. The day before the man and  
session closed, the Territorial bill was passed, with a family.  
clause forbidding slavery; this having been con- **1848.**  
Aug. 13.  
OREGON a territory.

CHAPTER I.—1. What occurred in Oregon? What petition followed? How was the petition met in Congress? What was the final result of the petition?

**PT. IV.** sented to by some southern members, and sanctioned by the president, on the ground that Oregon lies wholly north of latitude  $36^{\circ} 30'$ ; that being the line of the Missouri compromise.

**PD. IV.**  
**CH. I.**  
**1579.** 2. AMERICAN CALIFORNIA was called by the Mexicans *New or Upper California*, in distinction from the peninsula, which was named *Old or Lower California*. It was discovered in 1579, by **SIR FRANCIS DRAKE**. He called the country *New Albion*, and took possession of it for his sovereign, Elizabeth of England. But the English lost the right imparted by discovery, as they sent out no colonies.

**1603.** 3. The Spanish under Cortez had discovered Old California. About 1603 Philip III. of Spain sent **SEBASTIAN VISCAINO**, who discovered and took possession of the harbors of *San Diego* and *Monterey*. Attempts of the Spaniards to colonize the country, proved ineffectual, on account of the hostility of the natives, whom the emigrants provoked by ill-usage. The Spaniards, however, frequented the coast, on account of its valuable *pearl fishery*.

**1769.** 4. *The first permanent settlement in New California, was a Franciscan mission at San Diego.* The Spanish king had given to the priests leave to settle in the country, for the purpose of converting the natives to Christianity. They selected the most fertile lands, and founded twenty-one missions, each occupying about fifteen miles square. The buildings were all contained in an inclosure made of *adobe* or sun-dried brick. To the principal missions was attached a *presidio*, where was a quadrangular fort of adobe. In this was stationed a company of soldiers, to protect the missions from the natives, and to aid in bringing their feeble and disorderly tribes into subjection to the priests.

**Missions and presidios.**

**21 missions.**

**First settlement of Franciscans.**

**Sir Francis Drake discovers New California.**

---

2. What was American California called by the Mexicans, and why? When discovered? and by whom? Did it remain under the English?—3. Give an account of the Spanish discoveries. Of the results of their first attempts to colonize.—4. Where was the first permanent settlement? By whom made? For what object? How many missions were there? Describe them.

5. The order of things was not favorable to the increase of population. The missions were made up of monks and nuns; and to these were added the soldiers of the presidios, not allowed by the priests to bring their wives into the country. A few, however, had taken with them their families, and a small number of towns had thus sprung up; the largest of which were *Los Angeles*, *Monterey*, *San Diego*, and *San Francisco*—neither of which contained, in 1840, a thousand inhabitants.

6. This country, during the Spanish rule, constituted a part of the *viceroyalty of Mexico*, or *New Spain*. When Mexico became a federal republic, not finding California sufficiently populous to form a State, she established over it a Territorial government, of which Los Angeles and Monterey were the seats.

7. NEW MEXICO.—In 1581, a party of adventurers from Mexico, under FRANCISCO DE LEVYA BONILLO, visited the country, and finding similar aboriginal inhabitants, mines, etc., they gave it the name of New Mexico. In 1594 the COUNT DE MONTEREY, then viceroy of Mexico, sent the gallant JUAN DE OÑATE of Zacatecas, to take formal possession in the name of Spain; and to establish colonies, missions, and “presidios.” The country then became settled, and was divided into three parts, of which *Santa Fe* was one. The Indians among whom they settled, were far more civilized than the surrounding aborigines. In 1681 they drove out the Spanish inhabitants, who rallied at their southernmost town, *El Paso del Norte*, and at length regained the whole country.

8. In 1821, the journal of PIKE, a volunteer explorer from the United States, inflamed curios-

P.T. IV.

P.D. IV.

CH. L

The  
priests  
supreme.

1840

(The entire population of California is estimated at 22,000; of which 5,000 are whites.)

1846.

(Los Angeles contains 1,500 inhabitants.)

1581.

N. M. first explored.

1594.

First colonized.

1681.

Natives revolt.

1824.

Pike's journal attracts attention.

5. Which were the largest of the small towns of Spanish settlers?—6. What changes occurred in California with respect to government?—7. Give an account of the first party who visited New Mexico. Of the second. How was the country divided? What was done by the natives in 1681? Where did the Spaniards rally?—8. What explorer published a journal?

**P.T. IV.** ity, and thus produced enterprise. Mexico had  
**P.D. IV.** now become independent of Spain. Adventurers  
**CH. I.** from Missouri, following the track of Pike, opened  
**1825.** a trade through Santa Fé to Chihuahua on the  
Congress take the south, and to the Gulf of California, on the west.  
traders Their annual caravans of trading-wagons being en-  
under dangered by hostile Indians, Senator Benton, of  
their protection. Missouri, obtained of Congress, in 1825, an act to  
keep open the way and afford them military protec-  
**1846.** tion. When Gen. Kearny went, in 1846, to con-  
quer New Mexico, he convoyed the trains of mer-  
chant wagons, amounting to 414, and travelled over  
the rough way thus opened for the traders.

**1841.** 9. The American government, in 1838, sent out a  
Aug. 14. naval *Exploring Expedition*, under CAPT. CHARLES  
Captain WILKES. He pronounced the harbor of *San Fran-*  
Wilkes. cisco to be "one of the finest, if not the very best in  
the world." The inhabitants were few, and their  
(San dwellings poor. The most prominent man in the re-  
Francisco gion was CAPT. SUTTER, a Swiss by birth; but emi-  
contained grating from Missouri. Having obtained from Mex-  
in 1846, ico a grant of land, thirty leagues square, he located  
1,500 in- his residence within it, and built a fort at the conflu-  
habitants: ence of the American river with the Sacramento.  
1848,  
15,000;  
1850,  
47,000.)

**1842.** 10. In 1842, LIEUT. FREMONT, being ordered with  
June 10. a party of about twenty, on an exploring tour, left,  
Fremont's June 16, the mouth of the Kansas,—travelled along  
tour of ex- its fertile valley—struck off upon the sterile banks  
ploration. of the Platte—followed its South Fork to St. Vrain's  
(He found Fort;—thence northerly to Fort Laramie, on the  
no moun- North Fork of the same stream. Following up,  
tain road or the line of  
travel.) from this point, the North Fork, and then its afflu-  
(Kit Car- ent, the Sweet Water river, he was conducted by a  
son was his guide.)

8. When did New Mexico begin to be visited by Americans? What has been done by traders, and what by Congress to encourage them? Who obtained of Congress a military way? Who travelled over it? When? On what occasion?—9. Give an account of the naval exploring expedition. What said Capt. Wilkes of the bay of San Francisco? Who was the most prominent man in the country? What is said of his location?—10. What is the date of Fremont's first exploring tour? Describe his route (*Learn it by your Map.*)

gentle ascent, to that wonderful gateway in the Rocky Mountains, the *South Pass*. P.T. IV.

11. The next year Fremont crossed the Rocky Mountains further south,—examined, and laid open, by his report, the region of the *Salt Lake*. He explored Oregon, and traversed, in winter, the terrible snows of the Sierra Nevada. The famished wanderers emerged upon the waters of the *Sacramento*, and followed to *Sutter's Fort* its affluent, the *American Fork*, ignorant of the golden treasures beneath their feet. P.D. IV.  
CH. I.  
1843.  
March 17  
Leaves mouth of the  
Kansas.  
Sept. 6.  
At the Salt Lake  
19th. At Fort Hall,  
Nov. 4.  
At the Dalles.  
Dec. 10.  
At Hamath Lake.

12. After their wants had been kindly supplied by Capt. Sutter, the party travelled south, and beheld and enjoyed the vernal beauties of the flowery valley of the San Joaquin. By the southern extremity of the Sierra Nevada, they passed the arid wastes of the great Desert Basin. They had discovered and named, on their way, new rivers and mountain passes; and they had laid open regions which had heretofore, except to the hunter and the savage, been but the hidden recesses of nature. They had explored California, and made known an overland route. 1844.  
Jan. 10.  
At Pyramid Lake.  
(Fremont discovers also many new objects of importance in natural science, for which he receives honors from England and Germany.)

13. When, in 1848, the Mexican treaty added to the American Republic vast tracts, of which the Californian portion had a frame-work of society adverse to our own, many patriots looked with apprehension for the result; knowing, that, ordinarily, the full river keeps the course first taken by the rivulet.

Would enough of our citizens go thither to turn this course—to fuse this portion into the common mass? Providence presented a material to draw them thither, so quickly, and in such ample numbers, that they at once constituted the principal stream of Californian society into which all minor currents, not excepting the original, were merged; and GOLD, the curse of other lands was a blessing to this. 1848.  
(Feb. 2.  
The treaty with Mexico signed at Guadalupe Hidalgo.)

---

11. Describe his second tour from the Rocky Mountains to Sutter's Fort, observing the dates.—12. From Sutter's Fort homewards —13. What cause of apprehension had the American patriot? What queries naturally arose in his mind? How were these answered by a great Providential event?

P'T IV. 14. In February, 1848, a *private discovery of*  
 P'D. IV. *gold was made on the grounds of* Capt. Sutter, by  
 CH. II. a Mr. MARSHALL, then in his employ, *twenty-five*  
 (The *miles up the American Fork of the Sacramento.*  
 Mint, on *It was soon found in other localities. Rumors of*  
 assaying *Californian gold soon reached the Atlantic States,*  
 the Cali- *which were converted to certainty by the president's*  
 fornia *message of December, 1849, accompanied by a let-*  
 gold, *ter from Gov. MASON, who had been in person to*  
 found it *visit the gold "diggings." As he passed along, he*  
 remarka- *found houses deserted, and fields of wheat going to*  
 bly pure.) *ruin, their owners having left them, to dig for gold.*  
 (From *Such had been the quantities found, that every con-*  
 Dec., 1849, *venience of life bore an enormous price. Capt. Sut-*  
 to Jan., *ter paid his blacksmith \$10 per day; and he re-*  
 1850, 99 *ceived \$500 per month for the rent of a two-story*  
 vessels *house within his fort. In a little gutter, two men*  
 from the *had found the value of \$17,000.*  
 U. States; *15. Such were the facts reported from unques-*  
 52 from *tionable sources; and California at once became the*  
 N. York, *one luminous point, to which all eyes were directed.*  
 29 from *There was a rush for the land of gold, not only from*  
 New Eng- *the United States, but from Europe, Asia, South*  
 land ) *America, and the isles of the sea.*  
 (From  
 Oct., 1849,  
 to Oct.,  
 1850, one  
 year,  
 arrived at  
 San Fran-  
 cisco,  
 48,615 im-  
 migrants  
 by sea, and  
 \$3,000 by  
 land.)

## CHAPTER II.

Taylor's Inauguration.—Close of the 30th Congress.—California  
 —Establishment of Civil Government.—Difficulty with Texas.

**1849.** 1. MINNESOTA, adjacent to the head waters of the  
 March 4. Mississippi, was erected into a Territory on the 3d  
 Inaugura- of March, 1849.  
 tion of  
 Taylor  
 and Fill-  
 more.

2. At the election in 1848, GEN. ZACHARY TAY-

14. When was gold discovered? Where? By whom? When  
 first made known to the Atlantic States? What did Gov. Mason  
 observe and relate?—15. What was the consequence of the  
 spread of these and similar facts?

CHAPTER II.—1. What do we here learn of Minnesota?—2.  
 What offices were filled by election? What persons elected?  
 When? When inaugurated?

LOR, the hero of the Rio Grande, was chosen president; and MILLARD FILLMORE, of New York, vice-president. . . The increase of labor devolving on the several departments of the government, in consequence of the growth of the nation, caused Congress to authorize a separate bureau, called "*The Department of the Interior*." THOMAS EWING, of Ohio, was appointed by the president, its first secretary, and JOHN M. CLAYTON, of Delaware, was made secretary of state.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. IV.  
CH. II.

**1849.**  
New department

3. With such exactness were the different parties balanced in regard to the slavery question, that in the Congress of 1848-9, all that could be obtained for California was a law, by which her revenue was to be collected and placed in the coffers of the republic. Happily, the exemplary political conduct of California, under these trying circumstances, relieved the anxious forebodings of American patriots, that she might take Oregon for an ally, and set up for herself. To prevent any such disaster, Gen. Taylor gave the Californians the timely assurance, that "whatever can be done to afford the people of the Territories the benefits of civil government, and the protection that is due them, will be anxiously considered and attempted by the executive." He suggested to them the expediency of forming a State government for themselves, thereafter to be submitted to Congress.

**1848**  
to  
**1850.**

(1850. The census estimate of the population of California is 200,000.)

**1849.**  
April 3.  
(See Sec. Clayton's letter to T. B. King, who was sent to California by the President.)

4. These counsels tended to keep the leading politicians of California true to the Union; they loved their native land, and confided in her ultimate justice; but, while waiting for future protection, the exciting present was upon them—the gathering thousands, attracted from every land by the sovereign power of gold,—and government, in addition to that

**1848.**  
(Aug. 7. Mason, learning the existence of the treaty assumes civil powers.)

2. What new department was created? Who was the first incumbent? Who President Taylor's secretary of state?—3. What was the estimated population of California in 1850? (See side note.) What was the only action of the Congress of 1848-9 respecting California? What did American patriots fear? What did Gen. Taylor suggest by a letter of his secretary to his agent, Thomas Butler King?

**PT. IV.** exercised by Gen. Mason, the military commandant, the citizens found it necessary to organize among themselves. At first it was informal; and he who  
**P.D. IV.** was found guilty of high crimes, was put to death,  
**CH. II.** with little ceremony or delay. **GEN. RILEY**, who  
**1849.** succeeded Gen. Mason, as military governor, estab-  
 April 13. lished a species of judiciary, at the head of which was  
 Riley placed **PETER H. BURNET**. . . Delegates were chosen,  
 succeeds Mason. who met at Monterey, September 1st, 1849, and  
 Aug. 1. there formed a constitution which excluded slavery.  
 A Judiciary es- 5. The first legislature elected under it convened  
 tablished. at *San José*. Peter H. Burnet, who was chosen  
 Sept. 1. governor, addressed to the senate and assembly a  
 At Monte- message of extraordinary interest. "How rapid,"  
 rey, dele- he exclaims—"how astonishing have been the  
 gates meet to form a changes in California! Twenty months ago, inhab-  
 State gov- ernment. ited by a sparse population—a pastoral people, de-  
 Dec. 21. riving a mere subsistence from their flocks and  
 At San herds, and a scanty cultivation of the soil;—now  
 José, first in- inexhaustible gold mines discovered,—our ports are  
 Legisla- filled with shipping from every clime; our beautiful  
 ture meet bays and placid rivers are navigated by steam; and  
 Governor commercial cities have sprung up as if by enchant-  
 Burnet's eloquent address. ment."

6. The choice of senators to Congress fell upon  
 (Edward JOHN C. FREMONT and WILLIAM M. GWIN. The  
 Gilbert constitution of California, and her petition for ad-  
 and G. H. mittance into the Union, were carried by them to  
 Wright, Washington, and by the president transmitted to  
 first repre- Congress, with a commendatory message. The  
 sentatives.) clause prohibiting slavery was, in Congress, as a  
**1850.** torch applied to explosives; some southern members  
 Feb. 13. declaring that its adoption by Congress would be  
 President the cause of the immediate secession of the South.  
 Taylor sends to Congress the consti-  
 tution of California.

---

4. What were the necessities of the Californians in regard to civil government? Who was Gen. Riley? What was done by him? What was done in consequence of his proclamation? How was the slavery question disposed of?—5. Where did the first Legislature meet? Who was chosen governor? Relate his speech.—6. What senators were the first chosen? What did they carry to Washington? What effect was produced in Congress by the clause prohibiting slavery?

7. Other subjects of appalling difficulty pressed upon Congress;—all, however, implicated in the one absorbing topic of slavery. Texas claimed that her territory extended to the Rio Grande; but the New Mexicans in and around Santa Fé, east of the Rio Grande, had never submitted, and were utterly averse to her rule. In January, 1849, her legislature passed laws, dividing the disputed region into counties. To organize in these counties a Texan government, Gov. BELI, the executive, sent an agent, Major Neighbours, to Santa Fé, who warned Col. Monroe, the United States military commandant, against all “interference.” Colonel Monroe finding the New Mexicans enraged, called a convention, which framed a State constitution; and, while Texas was making preparations to seize this Territory by force, the petition of New Mexico to be admitted into the Union was introduced into Congress.

P'T IV.  
P'D IV.  
CH. II.

1849.  
Jan.  
Texas  
makes  
laws to  
assert her  
power  
over New  
Mexico.

1850.  
April 18.  
Major  
Neigh-  
bours at  
Santa Fé.  
Texas and  
U. States  
govern-  
ments in-  
terfere.

8. While New Mexico was petitioning Congress for a government, another remarkable people were at their doors with the same request. These were the enterprising Mormons, who, under the lead of their “prophet,” the able but unscrupulous BRIGHAM YOUNG, had found a resting-place on the borders of the Salt Lake. Here collecting their scattered bands, they founded Salt Lake City, Provo, and other towns; and, sending out their emissaries to foreign lands, to return with proselytes, they had now a flourishing settlement of about 25,000 inhabitants.\* Another exciting subject was a bill introduced by SENATOR BUTLER, of South Carolina, for a new law, to enable the masters of fugitive slaves to recover them from other States.

1850.  
Jan. 16.  
Senator  
Foote in-  
troduces a  
bill for  
the gov-  
ernment  
of Deseret  
—i. e.  
Utah.

(\* 1850.  
Census  
estimate,  
25,000.)

---

7. What other difficult subject is next mentioned as pressing upon Congress? What measures did Texas take in 1849? What was done on the part of New Mexico?—8. What is here said of the Mormons?

## CHAPTER III.

Congressional Eloquence.—The Compromise.—Death of Taylor.

**P.T. IV.** 1. THE first session of the thirty-first Congress  
**P.D. IV.** was the longest, the most stormy, and the most im-  
**CH. III.** portant in its results, of any since the organization  
**1849** of the government; and in it, by the strife and  
**-50.** power of words, were settled more important issues  
 (One Con- than those on any battle-field since the Revolution.  
 gress occupies  
 two years. The senate took the lead. Never had that body  
 There presented more powerful orators.

2. The two first northern senators who broke in  
 upon the sullen gloom of uncharitableness and dis-  
 content, with which the southern members met the  
 northern, were DICKINSON, of New York, and  
 PHELPS, of Vermont. The former, in the course of  
 his speech, solemnly assured his southern brethren  
 that the North, as a body, regarded the guarantees  
 of the Constitution as sacred. "Sir," said he, "take  
 a small number out of the northern and also out of  
 the southern sections of the Union, or silence their  
 clamor, and this accursed agitation will be settled  
 in less than a week."

3. In the speech of Senator Phelps, logical argu-  
 ment was mingled with wit. Without taking seri-  
 ous ground against the southern threat of secession,  
 he showed that the time had not yet come. The  
 supreme judiciary of the United States were the  
 proper court to try constitutional questions; and  
 unless the South, before proceeding to action, ap-  
 pealed to that tribunal, she would put herself in the  
 wrong. In so important a matter, she should not  
 be in too much haste, but take the proper steps, and  
 bide her time. As to what had been offensively said  
 at the North, this was a land of free speech; and what

**1850.**  
 Jan. 17.  
 Mr. Dick-  
 inson's  
 speech.

Jan. 23.  
 Speech of  
 Mr.  
 Phelps.

---

CHAPTER III.—1. Why was this called the 31st Congress? (See side note.) What is said of the first session of this Congress?  
 —2. Give some account of the speech of Senator Dickinson.—3. Of that of Senator Phelps.

was to be done with people who believed themselves charged with a mission, not only to amend the Constitution framed by the wisdom of our fathers, but also to assist the Almighty in the correction of sundry mistakes which they had discovered in his works? The brows of the southern members unbent, and they cordially greeted the orator when the speech was ended; and an observer remarked, "He has thrown the first bucket of water which has reached the fire."

4. On the 25th of January, MR. CLAY offered his memorable plan of compromise. On the 5th of February, amidst such a crowd of both sexes as the senate-chamber had never before witnessed, he came forward to speak in their defence. He was now venerable in years, but his intellect retained its soundness, and his heart its deep well-spring of patriotic feeling. His voice, his eye, his grace of action and gift of words, which made him regarded as the first orator who spoke the English tongue, were yet preserved, that he might succor, and perhaps save, his country, in this her hour of peril. In the preamble of his eight resolutions, he stated the reason of their introduction to be, that it was "for the peace, harmony, and concord of the Union to settle, and adjust amicably, all exciting questions of controversy between them arising out of the institution of slavery, upon a fair, equitable, and just basis." The compromise was substantially the same as that which passed after months of debate, and is hereafter to be explained.

5. "Never before," said Mr. Clay, "have I risen with feelings of such deep solicitude. I have witnessed many periods of great anxiety, of peril, and of danger to the country; but never before have I risen to address an assembly—so oppressed, so appalled, so anxious." He attributed the danger of the country to the unprincipled selfishness of party

P.T. IV.  
P.D. IV  
CH. III.

1850

Jan. 25.  
Mr. Clay's  
eight  
compromi-  
se reso-  
lutions.

Feb. 5.  
Mr. Clay's  
great  
speech.  
Mr. Clay's  
view of  
the dan-  
gerous  
position  
of the  
country.

4. What occurred on the 25th of January, 1850? On the 5th of February? What is said of Mr. Clay's powers as an orator? What was the object of his eight resolutions?—5. Recite the introductory sentence of Mr. Clay's speech.

PT. IV. men. He dwelt on the ruin which would spring  
 PD IV. from a dissolution of the Union. War would be  
 CH. III. inevitable; and such a war,—so furious, so bloody,  
 1850. so implacable, so exterminating,—could not be found  
 Of the upon the pages of history. He entreated members  
 consequences of to pause on the brink of the precipice, before they  
 disunion. took the fearful leap, into the yawning abyss! But  
 if that direful event, the dissolution of the Union,  
 were to happen, he implored of heaven that he  
 might not survive to behold it!

6. To similar effect was the eloquence of DANIEL  
 March 7. WEBSTER. “Mr. President,” he said, “I hear, with  
 Mr. Web- pain and anguish and distress, the word secession  
 ster’s falling from the lips of the eminent and patriotic.  
 great speech. Secession! Peaceable secession! The dismember-  
 (Its gen- ment of this vast country without convulsion! The  
 eral subject to breaking up of the fountains of the great deep, with-  
 recommend the out ruffling the surface!... Peaceable secession!  
 compromise.) What would be the result? What would become  
 of the army, the navy, and the public lands? Where  
 is the line to be drawn? What States are to be as-  
 sociated? What is to remain American? Where  
 am I to be? Where is the flag to remain? Is the  
 eagle still to tower? or is he to cower, to shrink,  
 and fall to the ground?”

7. In the tempest, it is the lightning, not the thun-  
 der, which kills; but as, peal by peal, the dangerous  
 element explodes, the atmosphere becomes cleared.  
 Thus the impassioned eloquence and fiery declama-  
 tion of the capitol, gave wholesome vent to danger-  
 ous feeling, and inspired a healthier tone of public  
 sentiment; which, beginning at Washington, spread  
 throughout the Union.

8. Mr. Clay had ably defended his plan of com-  
 promise. SENATOR BELL, of Kentucky, introduced  
 and advocated another. SENATOR FOOTE, of Mis-

---

5. To what did he attribute the danger of the country? What did he say of the dissolution of the Union?—6. Recite the sketch given of the remarks of Mr. Webster on secession, made in his great speech of March 7th, 1850.—7. What beneficial effects were produced by the stormy eloquence of the Capitol?

Mississippi, made a motion, which was finally carried, for the appointment of a committee of the Senate, to be composed of six members from the North, six from the South, and a thirteenth to be chosen by the first twelve; to whom should be referred the different plans for compromise;—with directions, however, that the committee report, according to their own judgment, a plan of settlement for the different branches of the slavery question.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. IV.  
CH. III.

1850.  
April 19.  
Commit-  
tee of  
Thirteen  
appointed.

9. Of this honored committee, Mr. Clay was chairman, by choice of the Senate; and he made their report to that body; on the 8th of May. Four months of jarring debate ensued; much of which referred to the point, whether the several proposed laws should be voted for separately, or in one "Omnibus Bill." SENATOR BENTON urged the former course, on account of its fairness, and especially in behalf of suffering yet dutiful California; while Mr. Clay maintained the latter; urging that if the different parts of the bill were presented together, both parties would concede some things, for the sake of gaining others.

May 8.  
Mr. Clay  
reports  
the "Om-  
nibus  
Bill."

10. In the mean time the Nashville convention, which, had it assembled in January, might have led to civil war and national destruction,\* met harmlessly on the 2d of June; partaking of the country's calmer mood and renewed devotion to the Union. Judge Sharkie, of Mississippi, was made president of the convention. In his initiatory address, he said, that its members had met, "because the Constitution, which gave equal rights to the South, had been violated." It was a slander of enemies, that they

June 2.  
Nashville  
Conven-  
tion meet.

June 3.  
Judge  
Sharkie's  
address.

\* Mr. Calhoun had, before his death, prepared a constitution for the U. S. South, which he advised should be adopted at the Nashville Convention. "The Southern members conferred together, spoke together, and, at one time, would have been prepared to sink or swim in a common peril."—See *Senator Butler's Speech at the Charleston Convention, May, 1851.*

8. What motion was made and carried by Senator Foote?—9. What is said of the organization and action of the Committee of Thirteen? Of the debate which ensued?—10. Of the Nashville Convention? Who was made President of the Convention? In his address what did he say?

**P.T. IV.** had met to dissolve the Union. He hoped that "the  
**P.D. IV.** Union would be the last thing to perish amidst the  
**CH. III.** wreck of matter."

**1850.** 11. Pending the debates on the compromise measures, the nation was called to deep and sincere mourning for the loss of her beloved chief magistrate. Gen. Taylor expired at the presidential mansion on the 9th of July, and **MILLARD FILLMORE**, of New York, immediately succeeded him in the presidency. Mr. **KING**, of Alabama, was chosen president of the Senate.<sup>†</sup> The cabinet of Gen. Taylor resigned. Mr. Fillmore appointed able successors,—**Mr. Webster** filling the department of state.

**Sept. 7.**  
**The com-**  
**promise**  
**measures.**

12. In the early part of September, the measures reported by the committee of thirteen passed—separately; but they had been considered together, and were agreed to, as mutual concessions and compromises for the sake of the Union. By them, 1st, California, excluding slavery, was admitted as a State. 2d, the Great Basin east of California, containing the Mormon settlement, was erected, without mention of slavery, into a Territory, by the Indian name **Utah**. 3d, **New Mexico** was also erected, without mention of slavery, into a Territory; Congress giving Texas, for the relinquishment of her claims, ten millions of dollars;—Texas to pay with the money former debts, for which the United States were bound, not legally, but in honor. 4th, a law was passed, abolishing, not slavery, but the slave-trade, in the District of Columbia; and 5th, the fugitive-slave law was passed; whose object is, the more effectually to secure the prompt delivery of persons bound to service or labor in one State, and escaping into another. The compromise measures proved, for a time, the quieting of the fearful storm.

**Utah (es-**  
**timated**  
**popula-**  
**tion,**  
**25,000).**

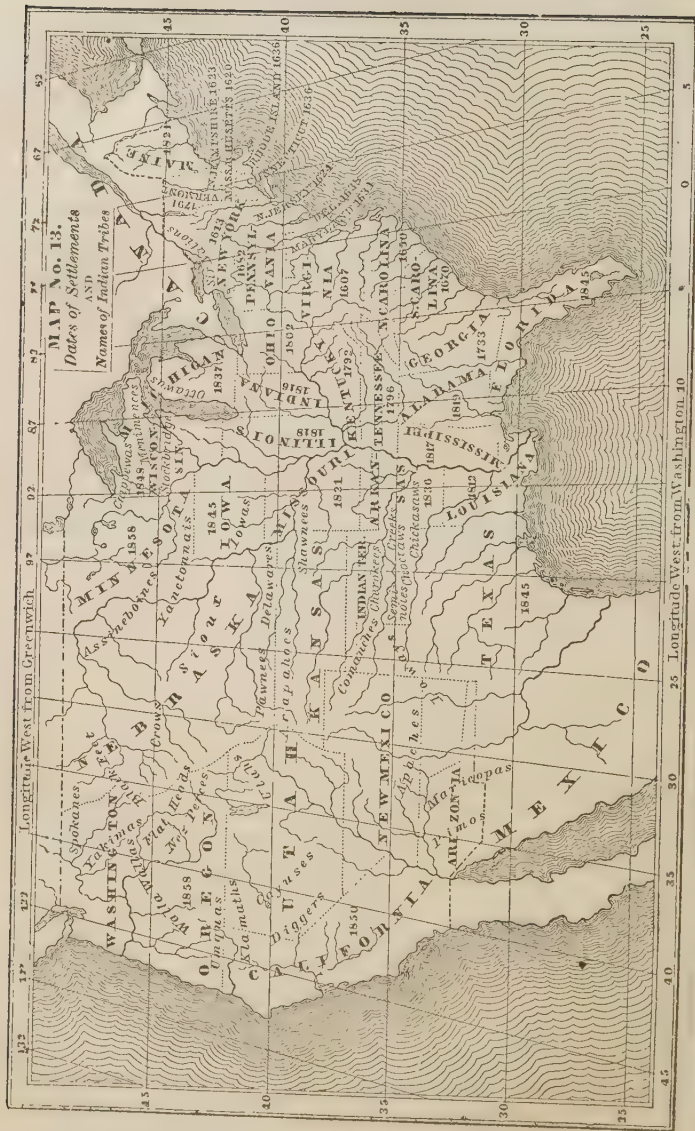
**New Mex-**  
**ico (esti-**  
**mated**  
**popula-**  
**tion,**  
**61,504).**

(A fugi-  
 tive-slave  
 law was  
 passed in  
 1793; but  
 being  
 found, or  
 made  
 difficult of  
 execution,  
 it had  
 become  
 obsolete.)

---

**11.** What melancholy event occurred July 9? What is said of Mr. Fillmore? What change occurred in the cabinet?—**12.** What is said of the compromise measures? What is, in your author's order of arrangement, the first of the compromise measures? What the second? The third, including the agreement with Texas? What is the fourth? The fifth?







Departure of Red Leaf and his self-devoted compatriots to deliver themselves up for their country.

## PERIOD V.

FROM  
 THE PASSAGE OF THE } 1850 { COMPROMISE MEASURES,  
 TO  
 THE PRESENT TIME. } 1860. { (TO BE CONTINUED.)

### CHAPTER I.

Sketch of the Condition of the Aborigines.—Degree of Civilization, Diversities of Character, Wars, &c.\*

1. THAT the Indians are, and must be considered, subordinate to the whites, is a question of fact, now so entirely settled, that the officers of government are no longer embarrassed by it; but they regard the aborigines *as the wards of the nation*, of whom, they, as the representatives, are bound by law to act as the guardians. The care of the Indians is now confided to the Secretary of the Interior,<sup>†</sup> whose office, containing the Indian Bureau, is at

P<sup>T</sup>. IV.  
 P<sup>D</sup>. V.  
 CH. I.  
 1858.  
 († Hon. Jacob Thompson.)

\* The names and locations of the principal Indian tribes may be found on Map 13, which includes the territory gained from Mexico in 1848. No attempt will here be made to name them all, or describe their locations. That belongs to the geographer.

CHAPTER I.—1. How do the government of the U. S. regard the Indians? What office is now charged with the care of the Indians?

P.T. IV. Washington; and this is presided over by a com-  
 P.D. V. missioner, to whom are made the reports of the  
 OH. L. superintendents of the *eight grand divisions*, or  
 Indian superintendencies, into which the whole coun-  
 1858. try *west of the Mississippi* is divided; and also of  
 Hon. C. E. the *three Indian agencies*, which remain *east of that*  
 Mix. Com- river. The superintendents receive the reports of  
 n.issioner. the several agents, each within his own locality,—  
 about fifty in the whole. The entire number of In-  
 Present dians now in the United States is computed at 350,-  
 numbers. 000; the number of distinct tribes at one hundred  
 and seventy-five. Several tribes are, however, some-  
 times comprehended under one generic name, as the  
 Sioux, the Apaches, &c.

2. In all our earlier history, the right of the In-  
 dian tribes to the use of the lands on which they  
 dwelt, was acknowledged; and, except in cases of  
 territory gained by conquest, as in the Pequot and  
 King Philip's wars, *the lands of the Indians were*  
 obtained by treaties, which were made with their  
 chiefs. In this way, by 393 separate treaties, made  
 with 44 tribes, the United States have obtained  
 from the Indians a domain of 581 millions of acres,  
 for which they have paid 50 millions of dollars. For  
 this land the federal treasury has already received  
 an amount of money, which exceeds the entire cost  
 of the acquisition, by 100 millions of dollars. Many  
 treaty stipulations, of annuities in money, or in  
 other articles, are, however, yearly to be paid. The  
 whole expenses of the Indian Bureau were, in 1858,  
 about five millions of dollars.

3. The United States government has become  
 convinced, that for the time past it has committed

---

1. What subordinate officers are mentioned? Into what Indian superintendencies and agencies is the Republic of America divided? How many tribes are there, and what is the whole number of Indians?—2. What was acknowledged in our earlier history? How were Indian lands obtained? How many treaties were made? How much land obtained? How much money has been paid? What beyond the cost has the U. S. treasury received? What is yet on their hands to pay? What was in 1858 the expense of taking care of the Indians?

*three capital errors* in its Indian policy;—first, in the removal of the tribes from place to place as the white population advanced; second, in the assignment of too great an extent of country to be held by each in common; and third, in having paid large sums of money as annuities. . . . The present policy of the government is *to oblige the Indians to settle*,—giving them only such reservations as they can cultivate—and instead of giving the land to the whole tribe, dividing it among the several families; that thus they may gain the knowledge of private property in land, and each learn, that his own efforts will redound to his own individual benefit.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. I.

1859.  
Three  
errors in  
Indian  
policy.

4. In lieu of money annuities, the government is now furnishing the Indians with facilities for learning agriculture, and with the means of beginning it;—such as stock-animals, and agricultural implements. In some instances a practical farmer shows them how to till the earth, by cultivating, with their assistance, a model farm. Saw-mills and grist-mills are made; blacksmiths' and carpenters' shops are built—and especially are schools established; the government now believing, that, if they would civilize the Indians, they must begin with the young; and they must raise the condition of their women, from that of mere drudges to minister to the indolence of the men. A grand impediment to the success of these experiments, is the laziness of the men, and their contempt of labor. Added to this, are their habits of intemperance; and other vices introduced among them by unprincipled white traders, who, contrary to law, carry them whiskey; which is to them, disease and death. The number of aborigines is, on the whole, diminishing.

Present  
policy of  
the United  
States  
in regard  
to the  
Indians.

Impedi-  
ments to  
success.

5. The Indians within our borders differ in natural character as well as in degrees of civilization.

3. What errors are the government convinced have been committed in their Indian policy? What is the government's present policy?—4. What is done in lieu of giving money annuities? (*This question requires a full answer.*) What are the grand impediments to civilizing the Indians?

P.T. IV. They also differ in their feelings of dependence on  
 P.D. V. our government; many of them having become  
 CH. I. convinced that they have no way to escape extermination, but to obey the behests of their "Great Father" at Washington,—for so they call the President of the United States,—and to order themselves according to the advice of the agent which he sends them, whom they call "Father." Some anxiously seek to be instructed. "What do you want?" said COL. WRIGHT to the Flat-Heads and Nez-Percés of the north. "Peace, ploughs, and schools," was the noble reply of their chief. . . . Of the three Indian agencies east of the Mississippi, one is in *New York*, embracing the remains of the *Six Nations*, who have six reservations,—with churches, schools, and farms; one is at *Macinac*, over a part of the *Ottawas*, *Chippewas*, and *Pottawatomes*; and one at *Green Bay*, which, besides some of the same tribes, has charge of the *Menomenees*, and also of *removed portions* of the *Six Nations*, and of the *Stockbridges*. Some of these Indians are intemperate and vicious.

6. Among the aborigines who are unsubmissive, are the *Navajoes* of New Mexico. They have villages in the fastnesses of their mountains, and live by sallying forth to the plains and robbing the inhabitants. We have seen how Col. Doniphan, as ordered by Gen. Kearney, in 1846, sought them in their mountain homes, collected their chiefs, and made a treaty of peace with them at *Bear Springs*. But, although the chief, Sandoval, and 400 of his men were true to their engagement, yet the main body of the nation paid no regard to the treaty; but went on robbing and murdering as before. The first check which they received was in 1852, by the building of Fort Defiance. Since then, able officers have been sent against them, and advantages gained; but they are not yet subdued.

1852.  
 Fort Defiance built.

Character and actions of the Navajoes.

5. What diversities are found among the Indians? What question and reply is related? Give the particulars concerning the first Indian agency mentioned—of the second—of the third.—6. Give an account of the Navajoes.

7. "The *Apache*," says superintendent Bailey, P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. I.  
 "is the most rascally Indian on the continent,—treacherous, blood-thirsty, and thievish. He is the depopulator of the fields of Chihuahua and Sonora." By the treaty of 1848, the United States bound themselves to protect the Mexican inhabitants of this border,—and heavy demands have been made upon the treasury for their depredations, and those of the *Comanches*, a fierce and warlike tribe, found west of the Indian territory. In the mining State of California, the *Diggers*, an inferior tribe of the *Apaches*, were found by those who came thither to endure hardship and gain fortune. Said a Californian miner, "When we saw them prowling around, we shot them down as we would wolves." This was perhaps the origin of the horrible idea of attempting the extermination of the Indians, which seems in some measure to have prevailed in those regions.

The *Apache* a bad type of the race.

(From 1848 to 1858 The country being convulsed on the subject of Slavery, the affairs of the Indians have been neglect'd.)

8. Settlers crowded into Oregon and took possession of the lands of the Indians, before agents had been sent to make treaties with them, and thus prepare their way; and there were then 42,000 in Oregon and Washington; and some of them, as the *Walla-Wallas*, the *Klamaths*, and the *Unquias*, near Rogue river, in Oregon,—and the *Yakimas*, *Spokanes*, and others in Washington, have since shown themselves among the most subtle and warlike of the American aborigines. Battles have been fought with various success. The war with the *Yakimas* was begun, by the bad treatment of some of their squaws by the miners. MAJOR HALLER, in 1855, going to meet them, found himself confronted by a force much larger than his own, and he considered himself fortunate in escaping with a small loss. The same Indians, united with others, in 1858, sur-

1855. Maj. H. and the *Yakimas*. Am. force, 105. Indians, 1,500.  
 1858. Col. Steptoe. Similar inequality of force.

7. What character is given of the *Apaches*?—of the *Comanches*? Who are the *Diggers*? and how are they treated by the miners? To what horrible idea may this wrong doing have given rise?—8. Was the way here prepared for white settlers as formerly? \* How many Indians were there in our Pacific territories? What tribes who have proved subtle and warlike? What two fruitless expeditions against them are related?

\* Read also the side-note, above.

**P.T. IV.** rounded Col. STEPTOE, having three times his force  
**P.D. V.** —and obliged him to flee. The *Nez-Percés* and  
**CIL. L.** *Flat-Heads* succored the flying Americans and saved them from total destruction.

**1858.** 9. At length, on the 1st of September, 1858, Col. Wright, with 300 men, met 500 Indians at the *Four Lakes in Washington*; and without loss defeated them, killing seventeen of their number. —But agents—though an unsufficient number—are among the Indians on the Pacific; and reservations have been set apart, into which they are being gathered, and there instructed. The *Nez-Percés*, the *Pend d'Oreilles*, and the *Flat-Heads*, have always been friendly to the whites, and are now anxious to learn the arts of civilization. In Arizona, south of the Gila, dwell the united tribes of the *Pimas* and *Maricopas*, who are already partially civilized,—living in villages and subsisting mostly by agriculture. The *Pueblos* and *Moquis* of New Mexico are peaceable and partially civilized,—unique in their customs, and retaining usages which they held before the Spanish invasion.

10. The progress of civilization among the aborigines has nowhere been so marked as with the Mobilian races. It began before their removal by the government from the Gulf States; and their settlement in the Indian territory, west of Arkansas, has accelerated it. The *Cherokees* are the most numerous and civilized tribe of Indians in America. The celebrated JOHN ROSS is their chief. Their capital is *Talequah*. The *Creeks*, *Choctaws*, and *Chickasaws* are also settled—dwell in houses, practise agriculture and the mechanic arts, and have churches, common schools,† and higher seminaries. The *Creeks* have lately been instrumental in bringing to

(The *Cherokees* have 20 schools, 1100 pupils; *Creeks* two manual labor schools.)

(† The higher seminaries for the two sexes are now stopped for want of funds.)

8. What friendly tribes afforded succor?—9. What success was at length obtained? Are there agents and reservations? What three tribes are friendly to the whites? What two, near the Gila, are partially civilized? What two in New Mexico?—10. What races have made the greatest advances in civilization? What is said of the *Cherokees*? (*Examine the side note.*) What other tribes are mentioned in the same connection?

dwell beside them, a kindred tribe, the *Seminoles* from Florida; the government giving them by treaty \$200,000 on condition of their performing this service. These Indians are not permitted to sell their reservations to the whites, and we hope they may not be; but that one place in the whole wide continent which belonged to their fathers, may still be theirs. . . In Kansas were settled a number of tribes, as the *Delawares*, *Pottawatomies*, *Shawnees*, &c., in the same manner as in the Indian Territory; but having been permitted to sell their lands, the consequence is that the whites overreach and dispossess them. Thus the presumption, that the Indian is the white man's equal and can cope with him, would soon be utter ruin to the race.

P.T. IV.  
 P.D. V.  
 CH. I.

Indians of Kansas

Schools of the Cherokees and Creeks.

The Sioux or Dacotahs.

The most remarkable of uncivilized Indians.

(† The Mandans also, but the tribe is almost extinct.)

11. To find the best type of the Indian, who yet lives by hunting and fishing, we must seek north of the *Upper Platte*, from the *Mississippi* to the base of the *Rocky Mountains*. The whole southern part of this large space, is occupied by various tribes of the great *Sioux* or *Dacotah* nation, who have developed higher moral traits than belong to other savages. The *Yanctonnais* are their most powerful tribe. Unlike other Indians, when they are dissatisfied with the U. S. government, they stand upon their dignity, and refuse to receive any presents. The *Sioux*, the *Crows*, and also the *Blackfeet*,† a large and powerful tribe to the north, are regarded as containing the finest specimens of Indian beauty.

This they heighten by their dresses of buckskin, curiously wrought with beads of many colors—and, when worn by a chief, surmounted by a coronet of eagles' feathers, sometimes continuing down the back almost to the feet.—The great want of these

10. What has been effected with regard to the *Seminoles*? What is said concerning the selling of the reservations in the Indian territory? What concerning Kansas and the Indian reservations there?—11. Where must we now look for the finest type of the native Indian? What nation occupy the southern part of this region? What is its most powerful tribe? What tribes are regarded as the finest in personal appearance? What is said of their dresses? What is their great want?

**P.T. 17.** Indians is a true and life-giving religion. They have  
**P.D. V.** a devout belief in a Supreme Being, whom they call  
**CH. I** the "Great Medicine;" but 'of that immortality, which is brought to light by the gospel, *they have never heard.* Among them is no civilizing influence—neither missionary, nor school.

**1853.** 12. **THE SIOUX WAR.**—In 1853 a hunting village of the *Conjoux-Sioux* was established near *Fort Laramie*, on the opposite bank of the Upper Platte river. Two of the young braves having visited the fort were improperly detained at the ferry. To show their displeasure, they discharged their guns, but without actual or intended injury. For this act, Lieut. **FLEMING** was dispatched from the fort with a small party to demand the young men. The chief told him, and truly, that they were not in the village; but Lieut. Fleming, believing that they were, fired upon the Indians, killed three, and took two prisoners. Although the two hundred warriors present permitted him to depart in safety, yet revenge was harbored, especially by the kindred of the three who were shot. But Fleming's bold exploit gave him in the garrison such an enviable reputation, that Lieut. **GRATTAN**, lately arrived from his graduating honors at West Point, expressed his determination to seek a similar command.

**1854.** 13. In the summer of 1854, the same tribe of the Sioux, with another, who were waiting to receive from an expected agent their treaty annuities, were encamped on the Platte, eight miles below the fort. The united villages numbered 800 lodges. While they deferred hunting, to wait for the agent, their provisions failed, and hunger was upon them. At this time, a Mormon emigrant passed, who left behind him a lame cow. An Indian, straying from the camp, shot the animal, and his hungry compan-

**Aug. 17.**  
**A lame**  
**cow shot.**

---

**11.** What belief have they? What has never been taught them?  
**—12.** Relate the opening circumstance of the Sioux war. What was done by Lieut. Fleming? How did it affect the minds of the Indians? How that of Lieut. Grattan?—**13.** Where were these Indians in the summer of 1854? How many lodges?

ions soon devoured her. The shooting of an animal belonging to an emigrant, was reported at the fort. The venerable "BEAR CHIEF" was in the encampment of the Sioux; and he went himself to make explanations to Lieut. FLEMING, now commandant of the fort; who, notwithstanding, insisted that the offending Indian must be given up. The chief pleaded for time, that he might persuade the irritated braves.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V  
CH. I.

1854.  
Aug. 18.  
The Bear  
chief at Ft  
Laramie

14. The next morning, the Indian not having been sent, young Grattan obtained from Lieut. Fleming an order to proceed with a detachment of seventeen men to the Indian camp. Grattan increased the party by volunteers until it amounted in all to thirty-one,—well armed, and carrying two howitzers. There were 1,500 warriors in the lodges. The offender not appearing at his demand, Lieut. Grattan went into the camp, and there gave his men the order to fire, notwithstanding the old chief cried to his braves not to fire on the whites.\* The next moment, he fell mortally wounded. The infuriated Indians rushed to revenge his blood,—and, in five minutes, Grattan and all his men lay dead upon the field. Thus, suddenly, had occurred a fatal event, totally undesigned, and unlooked for, by either party. "The news spread with the rapidity of lightning, and struck a terror as if a thunderbolt had fallen from a cloudless sky;" and the country was agitated with false and exaggerated accounts. The secretary of war called on Congress for four new regiments, and all the Indian traders left their posts and fled.

Aug. 19.  
Massacre  
of Grattan  
and his  
party

15. Immediately after the massacre, the Indians removed from the Platte to the head-waters of the White and Cheyenne rivers. The whole nation of

\* My authority for this, and other of these particulars, is Major Twiss; who, residing, immediately after, as Indian agent at Fort Laramie, took pains to collect and write out the circumstances of this war; and he has favored me with the use of his manuscript.

13. What led the Bear Chief to visit Fort Laramie? and what was the result?—14. Relate the circumstances of Lieut. Grattan's invasion of the Indian camp. Of the death of the Bear Chief, and of that of Grattan and his party. Were these events either designed or expected? What was done by the secretary of war?

**P.T. IV.** the Sioux were regarded by the government as participants in the outrage; and they, knowing that  
**P.D. V.** the army of the United States was to move against  
**CH. L.** them, believed, that utter extermination awaited their whole race. The kindred of the murdered chief bore among the tribes the dishonor of not having shed white blood in revenge; the wail of mourning was still heard in the lodges, and would only cease when the manes of the dead were thus appeased. "While we yet live," they said, "let us bravely avenge his death." Then, **RED LEAF**, his oldest brother, with a younger brother, and others of their kindred went forth. The first white persons they met, were a party guarding the mail,—and they killed them all. . . . In September, 1855, Gen. **HARNEY** having been ordered on the service, met the Sioux with a powerful force,—fought them at the Sand Hills, on the North Fork of the Platte, and gained a complete victory.

Nov. 21.  
 Massacre  
 of the  
 Mail  
 Party.

**1855.**  
 Sept. 3.  
*THE*  
*SAND*  
*HILLS.*  
 L. of the  
 Sioux, k.  
 56, w. 70.  
 Am. L.  
 k 5.

16. In the mean time, Major **Twiss** had been appointed to the agency of the Upper Platte, at Fort Laramie. After Gen. Harney's victory, a part of the tribes of the Sioux appeared friendly. The agent informed the chiefs, that all who made their lodges south of the Platte should be regarded by him as friends. Large villages soon collected, among which were friends of the murderers of the mail party. That five of their number, including **Red Leaf**, should be given up, was the condition on which Gen. Harney had promised peace to the whole nation. Major **Twiss** sent some of these friends to **Red Leaf** and his party, with such a message, as soon brought them to the fort. He then wrought upon them, until, with the self-devotion of the six burghers of Calais, they determined to yield

**15.** Relate the movements and the state of mind of the Sioux. What reproach was cast on the kindred of the murdered chief? What was then resolved and executed? Who was sent against the Sioux? and with what result?—**16.** Who was agent at Fort Laramie? What course did he take regarding the Sioux? What terms of peace had Gen. Harney given them? How did Major **Twiss** send word to **Red Leaf** and his party?

themselves a sacrifice to save their nation. The chief and his party wished first to go and hunt the buffalo, that their wives and children need not be hungry; but they promised to return in ten days. Major Twiss believed them; and within the time they came, mounted and prepared to go to Ft. Leavenworth, and there surrender themselves to the officers of justice. They were accompanied by many of their tribe; and before they bade them adieu, they rode slowly around their camp—gorgeously arrayed—and solemnly chanting their death-song.

PT. IV.  
PD. V.  
CH. I.

1855.

Deed of  
heroism of  
Red Leaf  
and four  
others.  
(The noblest trait  
of Indian  
history.)

17. After their departure, Major Twiss wrote to the President of the United States, urging that they should not be put to death. The remainder of their history may be known by the following letter from the Indian bureau to the superintendency which included the Sioux. After speaking of the voluntary surrender of the five Indians who killed the mail party, the letter adds, "The President has been pleased to act in accordance with the recommendation of Major Twiss, and has pardoned them. The war department will have them taken back within the limits of their country, where Major Twiss will receive them at the hands of the military, and take measures to place them among their friends,"—all of which was done—the five having been six months absent. They were joyfully received, and peace was established. "We desire," said one of their aged chiefs to Major Twiss, "that our Great Father will send us a man of God to teach us how to do good, and also a teacher for our children, that they may learn to think and act like the white men. We wish to turn our minds and the minds of our children from the war-path. We are anxious to do right, but how can we know the right path from the wrong, when we are not taught?"

1856

Feb. 4.  
Letter  
from G.  
W. Many-  
penny, of  
the Indian  
bureau,  
to Col.  
Cumming  
Supt.

16. What noble sacrifice did they determine to make to save their nation? Relate the remaining circumstances of the paragraph.—17. How were they saved from death? What letter is mentioned? Give its date. What directions from the President did it contain? and what happened in consequence? Recite the speech of the aged chief.

## CHAPTER II.

Second Era of good feeling.—Invasion of Cuba.—Evidences of Progress in the World—in the Republic of America.

- P.T. IV.** 1. At no period of American History had the Re-  
**P.D. V** public occupied so commanding a position, in regard  
**CH. II.** to foreign nations, as that which followed the bril-  
**1850** liant successes, the military fame, and the large ac-  
**to** cessions of territory gained in the Mexican War.  
**1851.** The compromise measures had quieted the danger-  
**High** ous strife between the North and South; and a  
**foreign** second, though brief period of domestic "good  
**position,** feeling" was enjoyed by the nation. . . . On the 16th  
**and** of Dec., 1850, the National Assembly of Switzer-  
**domestic** land, in open session at Berne, ratified a treaty of  
**peace.** amity and commerce between America and Switzer-  
**1850.** land. . . . Postal arrangements having already been  
**Swiss** made, by which facilities were given for foreign cor-  
**Treaty.** respondence, Congress passed a law diminishing the  
**1851.** postage of ordinary letters, to all parts of the Union  
**March 3.** except the Pacific Coast, to three cents; and to that  
**Three-** region, to twelve and a half cents each.  
**cent**  
**postage.**

2. Notwithstanding a proclamation of President Fillmore, forbidding a violation of the neutrality laws, a military force of 600 men under LOPEZ, a Cuban, sailed from New Orleans—pretended emigrants—in vessels clearing for Chagres. They landed at Cardenas, on the island of Cuba. After a bloody skirmish, and the burning of a few houses, the party re-embarked, the officers intending to effect another landing; but their men compelled them to go to Key West,† the nearest port on the American coast. But Lopez, aided by influential citizens of the South, again sailed, with 500 men, from New
- May 18.** Lopez at  
**Lopez at** Cardenas.  
**Cardenas.**
- † May 22.** Arrives at  
**Arrives at** Key West  
**Key West** with 400  
**with 400** men.

CHAPTER II.—1. At what time did the American Republic attain its most commanding position among foreign nations? and what was the state of things *within* the nation? What was done on the 16th of Dec., 1850? What on the 2d of March, 1851?—2. Relate the first expedition against Cuba.

Orleans. In nine days he debarked at Playtas, on the northwestern coast of Cuba. Taking 300 of his men, he marched 10 miles inland to Las Pozas, leaving 100 with the chivalric COL. CRITTENDEN. As he was conveying to Lopez, stores and ammunition from the ship, he was met by 500 Cubans, not to be hailed as a liberator, but to be fought as a piratical invader. Crittenden made a gallant defence, but he was overpowered, taken prisoner, and shot. Lopez, defeated, fled to the mountains, where his party were pursued, hunted by dogs, taken, and put to death. Lopez suffered as a malefactor by the garotte.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CR. II.

1851.

Aug. 3.  
Lopez  
sails.

Aug. 12.  
Debarka.

Aug. 16  
Crittenden shot.  
26, Lopez  
garotted.

3. The Hungarian patriot, KOSSUTH, having been brought from Turkey in a national vessel, was received in New York with an enthusiasm unknown since the reception of La Fayette. He pathetically plead the cause of his "down-trodden Hungary," and collected for her use "material aid," in the several cities of the United States. . . . During the administration of Mr. Fillmore, Mr. Clay,—his vital energies exhausted by his last great services to his country,—declined, and peacefully expired at Washington. He was mourned, by the whole nation, with a filial sorrow. . . . At the approach of the presidential election, the convention of the Whig party gave the nomination to Gen. Scott, believing that his great military services would insure him the election. Mr. Webster soon after fell into a decline, and died. John C. Calhoun, the compeer of Clay and Webster, had preceded them to an honored grave by only two years. EDWARD EVERETT, of Boston, was appointed by Mr. Fillmore, to succeed Mr. Webster in the department of state.

Oct. 15.  
Kossuth  
arrives in  
N. Y.

June 29.  
Clay dies  
at Wash-  
ington,  
aged 72.

Oct. 21.  
Webster  
dies at  
Marshfield.

March 31,  
1850,  
John C.  
Calhoun  
dies at  
Washing-  
ton. Both  
aged 70.

4. The Democratic party nominated for president

2. Give an account of the proceedings of Lopez in the second invasion of Cuba. Of Col. Crittenden. What was the fate of Lopez and his men?—3. What is here said of Kossuth? Of Mr. Clay? Who was at this time nominated for President by the Whig party? Give the time and place of the death of the three great American statesmen, Clay, Webster, and Calhoun. What was the age of each? (*See the side-notes.*) Who succeeded Mr. Webster as secretary of state?

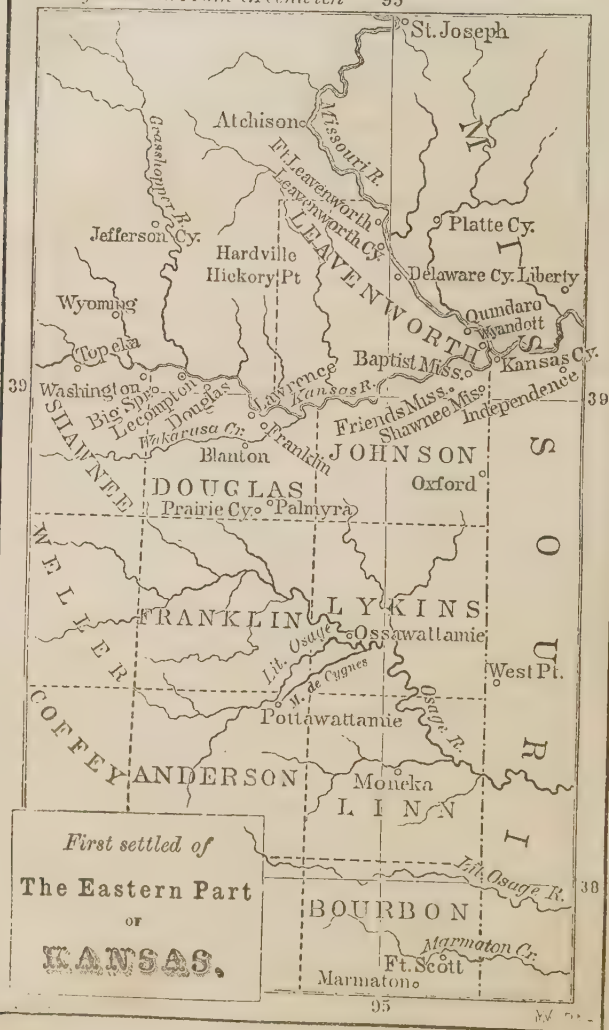
PT. IV. GEN. FRANKLIN PIERCE, of New Hampshire, beloved  
 PD. V. as a citizen, and known to the public as a member  
 CH. II. of Congress, and an officer in the Mexican War.  
 1853. Gen. Pierce and WM. R. KING of Alabama, were  
 March 4. chosen President and Vice-President. Gen. Pierce  
 In. of was inaugurated, March 4th, 1853; but Mr. King  
 President was then in the West Indies, vainly seeking relief  
 Pierce. from a fatal malady. GEN. ARCHISON, of Missouri,  
 being chosen president of the Senate, became, *ex-officio*, Vice-President of the United States. Gen.  
 Pierce's chief secretary was the able statesman,  
 WILLIAM L. MARCY.

5. An important event in the world's progress, was  
 1851. the "Exhibition of the Works of Industry of all  
 May 1. Nations," opened at London, by Queen Victoria,  
 World's Fair. and held in the immense "Crystal Palace;"† itself a  
 († Made of wonder of art. A similar exhibition was inaugurated  
 glass and by President Pierce in New York, where a Crystal  
 iron.) Palace‡ was erected,—much less extensive, but equal-  
 1853. ly beautiful. . . . This period is distinguished for prog-  
 † July. ress in popular education. States made liberal pro-  
 Am. Crys. vision; normal schools were established, and teachers,  
 Palace. associating for mutual improvement, met cordially,  
 1855. in county, state, and national associations. In July,  
 July. 1854, a "World's Educational Convention" met in  
 World's London, under the auspices of a society, at the head  
 Ed. Con. at of which was Prince Albert.\* . . . For the gallant de-  
 London. fence of the rights of MARTIN KOSZTA, a native of  
 Hungary, but an adopted citizen of the United  
 States, then in Smyrna, CAPT. INGRAHAM was much  
 applauded, and Congress, in token of their appro-  
 bation, voted him a sword.

\* The Society met in St. Martin's Hall, where were exhibited Maps, Charts, School-books, models of School-houses, with their needful furniture, &c. The writer was present. Lectures were daily given, and there were frequent reunions, where speakers from different nations were called upon to describe the methods of their own country. Ours had an able representative in Henry Barnard, now Chancellor of the University of Wisconsin.

4. Who was at this time the nominee of the Democratic party? What persons were chosen president and vice-president? What is said of the inauguration? Of the acting vice-president? 5. Give an account of the first World's Fair. When and where was the second? What was done in this decade to show favor to the cause of education? What is said of Martin Koszta?





First settled of  
The Eastern Part  
of  
**KANSAS.**



Commodore Perry going to deliver the President's Letter.\*

### CHAPTER III.

Brilliant diplomacy.—Commodore Perry and the Japan Expedition.—China.

1. THE Japan Expedition should be made a prominent feature in American history. It opened to the brotherhood of nations an empire of thirty millions of inhabitants; it gave to America a consideration, not only in that empire, but in China,—as late events have proved; and it has shown, to every part of our confederacy, the advantage of belonging to a great and powerful nation. “We have seen,” said the Japanese Commissioner to Commodore Perry, “the map of your country.”†

Import-  
ance of  
the Japan  
Expedi-  
tion.

2. After the Pacific coast was added to the American Republic, the important object of obtaining for

\* Engraving copied from Dr Hawke's account of Perry's Japanese Expedition.

† The Map of this noble country is assumed as the background of the American Temple of Time. Its name is America; its inhabitants are Americans. If it were divided as Poland is, there would no more be an America for Americans, than there is a Poland for the Poles.

CHAPTER III.—1. Why should the Japan Expedition be made prominent in American history?

PT. IV. it the trade of the opposite shores of the ocean, led to  
 P.D. V. using the power and resources of the nation in fitting  
 CH. III. out the Japan Expedition. COM. PERRY, younger  
 Matthew brother of the victor of Lake Erie, had given much  
 Perry. study to the history and character of the Japanese;  
 and, like Columbus, he was inspired with a passion  
 1851. to make a great attempt. The president, Mr. Fill-  
 The Pres- more,—his first secretary, Mr. Webster, and his sec-  
 ident and onnet ond, Mr. Everett, all gave the scheme their earnest  
 favorCom. support; and a noble armament was prepared, con-  
 Perry. sisting of four war-steamers, one seventy-four gun  
 1852. ship, four sloops of war, and three armed store-ships.  
 May 24. Commodore Perry sailed from Norfolk, May 24,  
 He sails. 1852, and made the southern ports of China on his  
 1853. way; thus gaining important information, and in-  
 April 7. spiring the Chinese with a high idea of the power  
 At Hong- and dignity of his nation.  
 Kong.

3. Com. Perry was going among a proud, cere-  
 monious, and exclusive people; and he won their  
 confidence by beating them at their own game. The  
 squadron, on reaching Japan, where its arrival was  
 not unexpected, proceeded up the *Bay of Yeddo*;  
 and, in gallant trim, cast anchor in the harbor of  
 Uraga. Hundreds of guard-boats came around the  
 squadron, as had been customary with other foreign  
 vessels, the people expecting to come on board to  
 gratify their curiosity, and receive refreshments.  
 But the Americans were not to be thus unceremoni-  
 ously treated; and their approaches were repelled  
 by swords and cutlasses—flashing in their faces, but  
 not wounding them. Next came a boat alongside  
 the flag-ship in which was an officer. But he was  
 only the vice-governor of Uraga; and the high

July 8.  
 Com. Per-  
 ry arrives  
 at the Bay  
 of Yeddo.

---

2. What led to using the power and resources of the govern-  
 ment in fitting it out? What is here said of the person who com-  
 manded the Expedition? Who gave the plan their earnest sup-  
 port? Give an account of the armament prepared. (Compare this  
 armament with that of Columbus when he sailed to discover  
 America. How long before?) What port did Com. P. sail from?  
 When? What ports did he touch at on his way?—3. What kind  
 of people was Com. P. going among? How did he win their  
 confidence?

commander of the American squadron, who came to bring a letter from the President of the Great Republic of America to the Emperor of Japan, would not confer with any one below his own rank. The governor himself soon came; and he was courteously received on board the flag-ship, and sumptuously entertained.

4. But Commodore Perry could only deliver his letter to the emperor in person, or to one of his highest officers of state. Couriers passed and repassed to the Emperor's court at Yeddo, and the PRINCE OF IDZU was appointed, who wished to come for the letter on board the flag-ship; but that would not be duly respectful to the President of the United States. It could only be delivered on land, and near the capital. Then a temporary building was erected at Uraga; and on the appointed day, the ships which moved with steam (a novel sight to the Japanese), approached and anchored near. Then appeared Commodore Perry with great pomp, attended by five hundred officers and men, the two boxes of rose-wood and gold, containing the president's letter, and the treaty-making credentials of the commodore,—carried by negroes richly dressed, all passing through the floating draperies arranged on each side,—while thousands of eager eyes were gazing with admiration. The Prince of Idzu received the letters to be taken to the Emperor. All was done in form and in silence.

5. The commodore and his officers were then feasted by the governor of Uraga. In the letters which the emperor received, he was addressed by Mr. Fillmore as his "Great and good Friend." His country, he told him, extended from ocean to ocean, and a portion of it, rich in gold, lay on the shores of the Pacific, opposite to Japan. In eighteen days a steam-

PT. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. III.

1853.

(For these facts, and for the preceding picture, see Dr. Hawkes' Japan Ex.)

July 17.  
Com. P.  
lands, and  
delivers  
the President's  
letter

Contents  
of the  
President's  
letter

3. Relate the circumstances by which Com. Perry impressed the Japanese with a high idea of himself and his nation. What letter had he brought?—4. Describe the circumstances attending the delivery of the President's letter.—5. Relate the contents of the President's letter.

**P.T. IV.** er might pass from one country to the other; and it  
**P.D. V.** was his wish to open with him such commerce as  
**CH. III.** would be mutually beneficial.

**1854.** 6. Commodore Perry left Japan, to return in the  
 March 31. spring and receive the answer to the president's letter.  
**Japanese** The emperor's letter, in answer to that of the  
**Treaty** president, was expressed in terms of high courtesy.  
 signed at Besides *Nagasaki*,—*Simoda* and *Hakodade* were  
 Kanagawa. opened to the Americans,—and *Napha* in Lew  
 Chew. After the treaty was settled, the presents  
 sent by the president were forwarded to the emperor,  
 and others returned to be carried to him. Mutual  
 entertainments were given; and the Japanese  
 were especially delighted with the exhibition of a  
 miniature railroad and telegraph. Mr. TOWNSEND  
 HARRIS, left as consul at Simoda, did much towards  
 cultivating, in the minds of the Japanese, the good  
 will and respect established by Commodore Perry.\*  
 He has lately been appointed resident-minister, and  
 has gained advantages for his country by a new  
 treaty.

**1859.** 7. Since the treaty made with China by Mr. Cushing,  
 (Sept. 15. American ministers have been maintained in  
 Mr. Ward, that country. Mr. REED, who succeeded Mr. Cushing  
 our minister in as minister to China, was there when Canton  
 China, was taken by the English and French; but he wisely  
 sent a frigate to conveyed his diplomacy distinct from theirs, still maintaining  
 convey their commissioners coming to friendly relations with all parties. Mr. WARD,  
 the U. S.) his successor, has had similar trials. In company  
 with the French and English ministers, he yet pursued  
 his policy.

**1845.** 7. Since the treaty made with China by Mr. Cushing,  
 Jan. 16. American ministers have been maintained in  
**Chinese** that country. Mr. REED, who succeeded Mr. Cushing  
**Treaty** as minister to China, was there when Canton  
 made with Mr. was taken by the English and French; but he wisely  
 Mr. Cushing. conveyed his diplomacy distinct from theirs, still maintaining  
 friendly relations with all parties. Mr. WARD,  
 his successor, has had similar trials. In company  
 with the French and English ministers, he yet pursued  
 his policy.

**1858.** 7. Since the treaty made with China by Mr. Cushing,  
 June 18. American ministers have been maintained in  
**Chinese** that country. Mr. REED, who succeeded Mr. Cushing  
**Treaty** as minister to China, was there when Canton  
 made with Mr. was taken by the English and French; but he wisely  
 Mr. Cushing. conveyed his diplomacy distinct from theirs, still maintaining  
 friendly relations with all parties. Mr. WARD,  
 his successor, has had similar trials. In company  
 with the French and English ministers, he yet pursued  
 his policy.

\* He opened a school where he taught nine young men of the nobility,  
 who gained his love by their affectionate and cheerful respect to him, and  
 their extreme politeness to each other—all rising to bow low, when, as  
 rarely happened, any one entered after the exercises had begun.

6. When did Com. P. go to Japan for an answer? What did  
 he succeed in obtaining? Relate all that is said of the treaty.  
 What best pleased the Japanese? What is said of Mr. Harris?  
 —7. Who succeeded Mr. Cushing as our minister to China?  
 What course did he pursue? Who was Mr. Reed's successor?

sued a separate course. They, attempting to force their way up the Peiho, were arrested by the Chinese forts, and after a bloody battle† were defeated and turned back. Mr. Ward, with his suite, was sent overland to Pekin. There he met three of the imperial commissioners, and the wish was mutual that he should see the emperor. But according to custom, the emperor must receive the divine honors of the *Ko-tow* from all who approached his person,—regarded by the Chinese as sacred. To perform the *Ko-tow* was to kneel three times, and nine times to knock the head against the floor. Mr. Ward could not pay divine honors to any *man*. The commissioners said, since he represented “a great and equal nation,” he might be excused with one kneeling and three knockings. But Mr. Ward could not conscientiously satisfy the Chinese custom; so he neither saw the emperor, nor could he obtain in Pekin the ratification of the treaty which he had brought from America; but it was done at Peitsang.

P.T. IV.

P.D. V.

CH. IV

1859

† June 25.

At Peiho

Fr. &amp; Eng.

lose 634.

July 27.

Mr. Ward

arrives

in Pekin.

## CHAPTER IV.

Kansas-Nebraska Bill.—First settlement of Kansas.—Invasion of the Polls.—Retaliatory Measures.—Provisional Government.—Topeka Constitution.

1. UNHAPPILY, the repose of the Union was broken in the winter and spring of 1854, by the heated discussion and final passage of the Kansas-Nebraska bill. The incorporating of these extensive tracts into territories, was made the occasion of abrogating the Missouri line of compromise,† N. L. 36½, as the northern limit of slavery. This line passing south

1854.

May 30.

Passage of

the Kan-

sas-Ne-

braska bill

† 1 his line

was estab-

lished in

1820. Re-

affirmed

in 1850.

7. What was his conduct in regard to the French and English? What happened to them? Where did the Chinese send Mr. Ward? Who met him in Pekin, and what was wished on both sides? Why could not Mr. Ward see the Emperor? What was the consequence? Where was the treaty ratified?

CHAPTER IV.—1. How and when was the repose of the Union broken? What was the incorporating of Kansas and Nebraska made the occasion of? What was the line of compromise?

**P.T. IV.** of Kansas, that territory had been regarded by the  
**P.D. V.** North as devoted to freedom; but by this act, the  
**CH. IV.** South claimed it as having been granted to them for  
**1851.** slavery. To this the whole North was opposed;  
 and Congress was flooded with petitions against it,  
 not only from all classes of individuals, including the  
 New England clergy, but also from several of the  
 State legislatures. Senator Atchison, of Missouri,  
 was regarded as the author of this part of the bill.  
 But without another portion, of which SENATOR  
 DOUGLAS, of Illinois, was the author, it could not  
 have passed. Under the idea of preventing any fu-  
 ture dangerous excitement in Congress concerning  
 slavery, the Kansas-Nebraska bill took from that  
 body powers formerly exercised over the territories,  
 and left it to the people themselves, "to regulate  
 their own affairs, in their own way," especially in  
 regard to slavery.

May 30.  
 "Squatter-  
 Sovere-  
 ignty" es-  
 tablished  
 by the  
 Kansas-  
 Nebraska  
 bill.

April,  
 May, and  
 June, were  
 made new  
 Indian  
 treaties.

2. The North and South were now contestants,—  
 the one determined that Kansas should not have  
 slavery, the other that it should. On each side,  
 combinations were early formed. The most efficient  
 of those on the part of the Free States, was the New  
 England Emigrant Aid Society, of which the secre-  
 tary, THOMAS H. WEBB of Boston, was the active  
 agent; and two societies in New York, of which  
 THEODORE DWIGHT, Esq., the president of both, was  
 the acting manager.\* On the pro-slavery side, the  
 principal were the "Blue Lodges," which were most-  
 ly conducted by Missourians of the border counties.

(Their  
 travelling  
 fare was  
 dimin-  
 ished  
 about six  
 dollars.)

\* According to testimony taken before the Investigating Committee, the  
 Emigrant Aid Society sent out, first and last, 1,300 settlers. According to  
 a letter from Mr. Dwight to the author, the two New York Societies sent  
 out 3,000. Neither of these Societies furnished money or arms to the em-  
 igrants; though individuals afterwards sent both.

1. How, in view of the new law, did this line of compromise  
 affect Kansas? How did the Southern view of the case affect the  
 North? Who were regarded as the authors of the Kansas-Ne-  
 braska bill? Under what idea were the powers formerly exercised  
 by Congress, taken away?—2. On what point were the North and  
 South contestants? What were the principal combinations formed  
 on the North or anti-slavery side of the question? What on the  
 South or pro-slavery side?

They collected much money, and held in their employ numerous bodies of men.

PT. IV.

P'D. V.

CH. IV.

1854

July 17.

First par

ty leaves

B'n. (150

arrive the

first year;

400 the

next

spring.)

1855.

March 30.

"The

Invasion."

There

were 5000

illegal

votes cast.

† There

was one

free-state

man elect-

ed at

Manhat-

tan, but

he was

crowded

out of th

legislature

July 2.

‡ Legisla-

ture meet

at Paw-

nee.

3. In the summer and fall of 1854, three companies of emigrants, headed by BRANSCOMB, ROBINSON, and POMEROY, were sent to Kansas by the Emigrant Aid Society, and founded *Lawrence*. Other companies came the following spring. . . . ANDREW H. REEDER, of Pennsylvania, appointed as governor by President Pierce, arrived in the territory on the 9th of October.\* According to his prescribed duty, he first took the census; finding in the territory 8,501 inhabitants, of whom, 2,905 were voters; and he then ordered an election, to take place on the 30th of March, of members to form a territorial legislature. On that day, armed bands were sent into Kansas from the border counties of Missouri,—who took forcible possession of the polls, and themselves voted for pro-slavery candidates, some of whom were residents of Missouri: and they kept from voting, free-state residents; and thus, they, and not the settlers of Kansas, elected a legislature. Gov. Reeder instead of declaring the whole election illegal, gave the sanction of his office, by certificates of lawful election, to a majority of those elected. He caused new elections in six precincts; but on assembling, the majority voted out this newly-elected minority, and gave the seats to the members first chosen.†

4. This legislature met by direction of Governor Reeder at *Pawnee*. They chose Dr. B. F. STRING-FELLOW their speaker, and then adjourned, by a two-thirds vote over the governor's veto, to *Shawnee*

\* Nov. 29th. Reeder, before taking the census, ordered an election of delegate to Congress. Whitfield was chosen, mostly by illegal votes, the Missourians, on this day, making their first invasion, though not in so great numbers as on the 30th of March.

3. What companies were sent out, and when, by the Emigrant Aid Society? What place did they found? When did other companies arrive? How many each year? (*See note.*) Whom did President Pierce appoint governor, and when did he arrive? What did he first do? How many inhabitants, and of them how many voters were there? What election did the governor order, and when? Describe what took place on the day. What was done by Gov. Reeder, and with what result?—4. When and where did the legislature first meet? What did they do?

**P.T. IV.** *Mission.* Reeder then repudiated their proceedings, and withdrew from them. They, however, proceeded to enact a code of laws for Kansas,—mostly copying those of Missouri, but adding others, arbitrary and unconstitutional. In establishing slavery, they made criminal any opposition,—either by deeds or by words,—spoken, written, or printed, under penalties of state-prison, or, in extreme cases, of death. No man could be a juror, or vote, or hold any office, unless he first took an oath upholding slavery. Every officer was, either directly or indirectly, appointed by themselves; and there was to be no further election of a legislature until October, 1857,—the members to meet March 4th, 1858.

**1855.**

July 6.  
Adjourn  
to Shaw  
nee  
Missour

(The term  
*bagus* was  
applied to  
this Legis-  
lature and  
these  
laws.)

Aug. 15.  
Meeting  
of free-  
state

settlers at  
Lawrence.  
(Removal  
of Reeder  
formally  
announced  
to him the  
same day.)

(† Oct. 9.  
Reeder  
was elect-  
ed Whit-  
field was  
elected by  
the pro-  
slavery  
party.)

5. In the mean time, immigration was going on, as in similar cases of settling new territories; usually from the nearer States, and by free laborers. All the *bona-fide* settlers, including those who came as friends to slavery, as well as the opposite party, were indignant at “the invasion” of the 30th of March; and greatly excited by the subsequent proceedings of the usurping legislature. Their first measure, inaugurating a series of measures,—which were revolutionary as regarded the territorial legislature,—was to hold a meeting in Lawrence, and adopt a memorial to Congress. This set forth, that notwithstanding they were entitled, both by general right, and by special law, to self-government, and in this confidence had left their homes,—yet this right was now wrested from them:—and they called for relief—on Congress, and on all their fellow-citizens of every State. They resolved to nominate Reeder, now removed from office, for their delegate in Congress;† and finally, they made formal arrangements for a meeting of delegates from all the actual settlers to assemble at Big Springs.

4. What course did Reeder pursue? Give an account of the laws which they enacted.—5. How was immigration going on? Who were indignant at “the invasion?” and what else excited them? What was their first measure? Whom did they nominate, and for what? For what future meeting did they make arrangements?

6. A large meeting, at Big Springs,<sup>†</sup> denounced the legislature, and declared they would never submit to its enactments, but "all other means failing, resist them to a bloody issue." They decided that all the *bona-fide* settlers should be invited to choose delegates to a convention at *Topeka*. There they organized a provisional government,<sup>‡</sup> and placed JAMES H. LANE as first on its executive committee; and they resolved that a convention should be called to form a State constitution. The committee accordingly issued their mandate, and members were elected. The convention met at *Topeka*,<sup>§</sup> and formed a constitution, which was, on the 15th of December, approved by the people; and was placed in the hands of Reeder to carry to the House of Representatives, with their petition to be admitted as a State.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. IV.

§ 85.5.  
† Sept. 5, 6  
Big  
Springs.

‡ Sept. 19  
and 20.  
First To-  
peka Con-  
vention.

§ Oct. 23.  
Second  
meets and  
forms a  
Constitu-  
tion.

7. These proceedings enraged the pro-slavery party. They met at Leavenworth<sup>||</sup> and denounced them as revolutionary,—took the style of the "law and order" party,—made arrangements for stopping and turning back eastern emigrants on the Mississippi river, organized a committee in Leavenworth to see that none opposed to slavery either remained there, or passed into the territory to settle. Arrangements were here made to bring a force against Lawrence; which they rightly considered as the head-quarters of the opposers of slavery.

Nov. 14  
Pro-  
Slavery  
meeting  
in Leav-  
enworth.

8. To serve as an excuse for this predetermined foray, SHERIFF JONES, of Douglas county, wrote to Gov. SHANNON, the successor of Reeder, that Lawrence was in rebellion; and he called on him to send all "law-abiding citizens" to his aid in executing a legal process in which, he said, he had been forcibly resisted. Shannon sent out his mandate,

Nov. 27.  
Jones  
makes a  
requisi-  
tion on  
Gov.  
Shannon

6. Give an account of the meeting at Big Springs. Of the first Topeka Convention. How was the second, or constitutional Topeka Convention called? When did it meet, and what do?—7. What effect had these proceedings on the Pro-Slavery party, and what did they do? For what did they make arrangements?—8. Describe the introduction of the foray against Lawrence, called the Wakerusa War.

PT. IV. and nearly 2,000 men appeared, having armed them  
 P.D. V. selves by forcibly breaking open the United States  
 CH. IV. Arsenal at Liberty. By their leaders they were  
 1855. encamped on the *Wakerusa river*, six miles from  
 Lawrence. But Robinson and the other principal  
 men there, were careful that no pretence to attack  
 should be given to the invaders. It was probably  
 in the hope to obtain this, that, in seeming wanton-  
 ness, the blood of the unoffending Barber was shed,  
 two miles from the city.

Dec 6.  
 Brier  
 sho by G  
 W Clark.

Shannon  
 at  
 Lawrence.

9. Shannon, now resolved to visit Lawrence. As he entered the hotel, he shuddered at beholding the corpse of Barber, and hearing the shrieks of his widow.—An agreement was signed, in which the leaders promised that they would be submissive to the laws; though they would not bind themselves with respect to those made by the territorial legislature. Shannon then wrote to the camp, that he was satisfied that Sheriff Douglas could, without resistance, execute any process in Lawrence; and he therefore ordered the army to disband,—which was done. He commissioned Robinson and Lane to organize their own military force for defence. Lawrence was fortified.

Dec. 9.  
 Thirty-  
 fourth  
 Congress  
 begins.  
 Great con-  
 test for  
 Speaker

10. These operations against the emigrants were reported in the Free States—with exaggerations; and the north indignantly aroused. A new party was now formed in the Northern States into which others were merged, called the Republican, whose watchword was Kansas; and congressional elections were controlled by it. When Congress met, the intense feeling of the different parties manifested itself in the House of Representatives, by a more heated contest for Speaker than had ever before occurred. The South nominated Mr. Aikin of South Carolina,\*

\* Mr. Aikin had been governor of South Carolina. The respect in which he was held in every part of the Union, was increased by his behavior during that memorable canvass. When at length Mr. Banks was elected, Mr. Aikin conducted him to his seat.

9. What happened on the visit of Gov. Shannon to Lawrence?  
 —10. Where and how were these proceedings reported? What new party was formed?

the North, MR. BANKS of Massachusetts. There was a tie between them, and not a member would change, until after nine long weeks of voting, when by the absence of one southern man, Mr. Banks obtained the chair. Then came Reeder from Kansas with the Topeka constitution. High words and fierce debate ensued. At length a majority of the House voted to accept it, and receive Kansas as a State; but the Senate rejected it.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. IV.

1856.  
Feb. 2.  
Mr. Banks  
made  
Speaker.

11. In the mean time, the Kansans chose a legislature under the Topeka constitution, making CHARLES ROBINSON, governor. The members met in March, took the oath of office, chose a committee to prepare a code of laws,—and then adjourned to meet on the 4th of July. The Missouri party, having missed their object by the measures of Gov. Shannon, again planned to break up the settlement at Lawrence; and they wished to effect it before the arrival of the large Spring emigration, which they were aware the Free States were preparing to send. They had made frequent appeals to the South not to leave them with all the trouble and expense of maintaining the common cause; but to send them men and money,—and these calls had been responded to. COL. BUFORD had arrived with a regiment from Alabama, MAJOR TITUS with men from Georgia, and CAPTAIN WILKES, from South Carolina.

March 4.  
Free State  
Legisla-  
ture meet  
at Topeka.

March 5.  
(Robin-  
son's mes-  
sage.)

April.  
Troops  
from the  
South.

12. SAMUEL D. LECOMPTE was chief justice, and J. B. DONALDSON, marshal of the United States court in Kansas. They were of the pro-slavery party, and ready to do whatever might facilitate its designs against Lawrence. A grand jury was formed at *Lecompton*, by which Robinson and others, who

District  
Court  
held at  
Lecomp-  
ton.

---

10. How was Congress affected? and what happened in regard to the choice of Speaker? What in regard to the Topeka constitution?—11. What in the mean time was done in Kansas by the Anti-Slavery party? What by the Missouri party? What was the result of their appeals to the South?—12. Where in Kansas was the U. S. District Court located? What officers are mentioned? What action was taken by this court?

**P.T. IV.** had accepted office under the Topeka constitution  
**P.D. V.** were indicted for treason; and a further indictment  
**CH. V.** was found, by which the presses of the two free-  
 state papers in Lawrence, and the best building  
 there,—indeed, the best in the territory—the hotel  
 of the Emigrant Aid Society, were pronounced to  
 be nuisances, and thus condemned to destruction.

---

## CHAPTER V.

Civil war in Kansas.—Sacking of Lawrence.

- 1856.** 1. THE House of Representatives chose from their  
 March 19. number Messrs. HOWARD of Michigan, SHERMAN of  
 Commit- Ohio, and OLIVER of Missouri, as a committee of  
 tee ap- investigation to proceed to Kansas, with powers to  
 pointed; examine persons and papers. Reeder and Whit-  
 April 14, field, delegates elected from the two opposite par-  
 arrive in ties in Kansas, were sent back to aid them in their  
 Kansas. arduous duties. By perseverance, they succeeded,  
 though bitterly opposed by the pro-slavery party,  
 in getting together a body of evidence by which  
 the preceding history of Kansas is fixed.† Reeder  
 was wrongfully subpœnaed from their court by  
 order of Judge Leecompte. Refusing to obey the  
 summons, he was made to know that his life was in  
 danger; and he escaped, and fled down the Missouri  
 river in disguise. Robinson, attempting to go to  
 the East to hasten on the expected emigration, was  
 made prisoner at Lexington, in Missouri.
2. On the 21st of May, occurred the “sacking of  
 Lawrence” by about 700 men acting under the orders  
 of Atchison and the southern officers. The hotel

(† This is  
 published  
 by Con-  
 gress in a  
 volume of  
 1,200  
 pages, and  
 includes a  
 minority  
 as well as  
 a majority  
 report.)

May 8.  
 Robinson  
 taken.

May 21.  
 Sacking of  
 Lawrence.

---

CHAPTER V.—1. Who were chosen by the House of Represent-  
 atives—when—and for what purpose? What hindrances and an-  
 noyances had they? What did they accomplish? What is said  
 of Reeder? Of Robinson?—2. What occurred on the 21st of  
 May? By whom? What was done at the sacking of Lawrence?

of the Emigrant Aid Society, and the two printing presses were destroyed; and stores and private houses were rifled. The hotel, a very high building, and also Gov. Robinson's house standing on an eminence,<sup>†</sup> were burned just at evening. The flames shone far over the country, and seemed to madden the people. They could no longer be restrained, and they rose up, and without authority formed themselves into guerilla parties—JOHN BROWN, a native of Connecticut, being the principal leader. At Pottawatomie Creek, they took five pro-slavery men at night, and after a mock trial shot them.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. V.

1856.

(† Called  
Mt.  
Oread.)

(May 26.  
Three

Doyles,  
a father  
and his  
sons, and  
two others  
murdered.

3. The troops from the South were placed in different parts of Kansas, in four fortified camps,—to get their living, by depredating on the anti-slavery people, who, they had been taught to believe, had no right to be there, since Congress had given Kansas to be a Slave State. The guerilla parties under John Brown and others, were abroad to meet them; and they held that it was right to take the property of all who favored their enemy. Thus was it that civil war was produced in Kansas; and indescribable were the sufferings of the peaceful settlers—especially the women. Their husbands being in the war, they were left alone, or with their helpless infants, in their solitary homes; while, on either side, murderers, thieves, and house-burners were abroad.

How civil  
war was  
produced.

4. It was the object of the guerilla parties to break up the fortified camps of the invaders. The Missourians, who had called the Southerners from their homes, felt bound to protect them; and CAPT. PATE, GEN. REID, and others, came with armed bands and took part in the contest. Numerous

---

2 What effect had the burning upon the people? Who was the leader of the *guerilla* bands? What was their first exploit?

—3. How were the southern troops disposed of? And how were they to get their living? What enemy was in the field to meet them? What was produced? What was the effect of civil war?

—4. What was the object of the guerilla parties? Why did the Missourians feel bound to protect the Southerners? What was done by them?

P.T. IV skirmishes occurred. The one best deserving the  
 P.T. V. name of a battle was at Ossawatimie, and John  
 CH. V. Brown, whose home was near, and who had had one  
 son tortured to insanity, and another just killed,  
 1855. was the hero of the battle. With 40 mounted men  
 OSS. I. he attacked 300 under Pate and Reid—killed 31,  
 W. ITO. wounded 32, and escaped with the loss of only two  
 MIE. men.  
 f. brown.  
 31. w 32.  
 lost 2.

5. During this period, emigrants, coming up the  
 Emigrants Missouri river to Arkansas, were forcibly turned  
 back; their property, especially their arms, taken  
 go by from them, and their families distressed. In Leav-  
 Iowa and Nebraska) enworth a "vigilance committee" turned out of the  
 city all who assumed independence of opinion on the  
 († May 25. slavery question.†  
 William Phillips  
 was shot  
 at Leavenworth, by  
 Captain Emory, on  
 Bloody Monday.)

6. Men, money, and "Sharp's rifles," were now  
 sent, by northern people, to Kansas,† through Iowa  
 and Nebraska. . . President Pierce ordered the mil-  
 itary, under the command of COL. SUMNER at Fort  
 Leavenworth, to interpose; and he marched onto  
 the battle-grounds, and partially put a stop to the  
 war. . . When, on the 4th of July the free-state  
 legislature met at Topeka, he, with a company of  
 United States dragoons, forcibly dispersed them. . .  
 Lawrence sent a military force of 300 mounted men  
 to Leecompton, under Lane—who liberated Robinson  
 and his fellow-prisoners confined there.

7. Gov. Shannon had resigned, and the worthy  
 Gov. GEARY was appointed to succeed him. Trav-  
 elling with his secretary, Dr. GHON, up the Missouri,  
 he met Shannon, who was fleeing for his life. Says  
 Dr. Ghon,§ "his description of the country was  
 frightful and horrible." "A civil war," he said,

(§ See  
 "Geary  
 and Kan-  
 sas," by  
 John N.  
 Ghon,  
 secretary  
 of Gov.  
 Geary.)

4. What personal provocation nad John Brown? Relate the  
 battle of Ossawatimie.—5. Relate some of the acts of violence by  
 which the free-state emigrants suffered?—6. How were the Free  
 States affected by these proceedings? What new way had the  
 emigrants found? What action was taken by the President?  
 What in consequence was done by the U. S. troops? What other  
 military force is mentioned? What was done by it?—7. What  
 is said of the two governors? What account of Kansas was given  
 by Shannon?

"was raging in Kansas; murder ran rampant; and the roads were everywhere strown with the bodies of slaughtered men." The new governor passing onwards to Lecompton, saw the ravages of war, in the blackened ruins of burned houses, and in fields laid waste; and he chanced to witness the dying struggles of poor Buffum,<sup>†</sup> exclaiming, "Oh, it was a foul murder!" and he resolved that he would bring the murderer to justice.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. V.

1856.

July 10.  
(† Shot because he objected to giving up his horse to a marauder.)

8. Geary was sent to settle differences and make peace. The influence of public opinion on the approaching presidential election demanded it. The United States' forces—now about to be transferred to the command of Gen. Persifer F. Smith, were to be used at his discretion. Arrived at Lecompton, he issued his proclamation, commanding all military organizations of the territory to disband. Lane immediately disbanded his forces, and went east to hurry on the approaching emigrants. Meantime 2,700 men, mostly from Missouri, had collected, with five pieces of artillery, and encamped within four miles of Lawrence. The inhabitants fearing instant destruction, appealed to the governor. He came to their relief with 300 United States dragoons; and found men, with women and some children, armed, and preparing to resist. Gov. Geary, after taking them under his protection, proceeded to the camp; and conferring with Atchison and the other leaders, persuaded them to disband their troops. They returned to their homes, and, aware of the vastly superior numbers of their opponents, they, from this time, abandoned the contest; leaving it to new leaders, less violent, but less honest.

Sept. 11.  
Geary's proclamation at Lecompton.

Sept. 14.  
Geary at Lawrence

---

7. What was seen by Gov. Geary?—8. Why was Gov. Geary sent? What is said concerning the U. S. troops? What proclamation was made? By whom was it promptly obeyed? What caused a delay at Lawrence? and what was the final result?

## CHAPTER VI.

Geary's troubles.—Presidential election.—Walker's governorship.

- P.T. IV.** 1. **EXULTANT** at his success, Gov. Geary proclaimed  
**P.D. V.** that peace was restored to Kansas. But applying  
**CH. VI.** himself to organize a legislature and a judicial tri-  
**1856.** bunal, under which the inhabitants could live in  
 Oct. 10. peace, with any prospect of equal justice, he found  
 210 emi- he had undertaken what he could not accom-  
 grants plish. . . . A party of emigrants advancing under  
 • arrested. the lead of GEN. POMEROY through Iowa, were ar-  
 Oct. 14. rested on entering Kansas. They satisfied Gov.  
 They are Geary, that they came as *bona-fide* settlers; and he  
 dismissed sent them in peace to their several destinations. . . .  
 by Gov.  
 Geary.
- 1857.** The legislature, called together by the governor,  
 Jan. 12. and assembled at Leocompton, were furiously opposed  
 Leocomp- to his measures. On the floor of the house the  
 ton Legis- most shocking and profane abuse was heaped upon  
 lature assembl'd. him; and on occasion of his visiting the legislature,  
 Attempt an attempt was even made upon his life.  
 to assassi-  
 nate Gov.  
 Geary  
 (see Dr.  
 Cihon's  
 book).
2. This outrage produced a reaction, and the pro-  
 slavery settlers united with the others in publicly  
 denouncing it.† The free-state men would then  
 have submitted to the usurped government, had  
 Geary been allowed to administer it. They told him  
 their troubles, and he tried to help them. No mur-  
 der of a free-state man, they said, had ever been  
 punished by law. The murderer of Buffum, Geary  
 had discovered, but he could not have him appre-  
 hended, until he sent, at his own expense, Major  
 Titus, with a military party. Hay, the murderer,  
 was then indicted; but was dismissed, by Judge
- († A great meeting was held at Leocompton to sympathize with Geary.)
- Hay, who murdered Buffum, suffered to escape.

---

**CHAPTER VI.—1.** Under what state of feeling did Gov. Geary proclaim peace? How was he disappointed? Relate what hap-  
 pened to a party of emigrants. How came the legislature to  
 assemble? What were their feelings and conduct respecting the  
 governor?—**2.** What were the feelings and conduct of the people?  
 Describe, by the case of the murderer of Buffum, the condition of  
 the U. S. Court.

Lecompte, on nominal bail. Gov. Geary sent long accounts of these affairs to Washington; but artful counter-statements were also forwarded by Lecompte and others. Secretary Marcy sent them to Geary—coolly remarking, that he desired to call his attention to the discrepancies between those statements and his own, of which he expected an explanation. Thus did artful misrepresentations avail to poison the minds of the authorities at Washington against their own chosen officers. Lecompte was sustained in office. Geary tendered his resignation, to take effect on the 4th of March.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. VI.

1857.  
Marcy's  
letter to  
Geary.

Geary  
resigns.

3. On that day, JAMES BUCHANAN of Pennsylvania, long known and well-beloved by his fellow-citizens, was inaugurated President of the United States, and JOHN C. BRECKENRIDGE of Kentucky, Vice-president. There had been two other candidates in the field—MR. FILLMORE, who was selected by a comparatively small party, called "the American," whose motto was, "Americans must rule America;"—and JOHN C. FREMONT, the candidate of the Republican party. He lost his election because conservative men of the North feared that the success of a party, bounded, as this was, by a geographical line,—all the slave-holding States being opposed to it,—might endanger the perpetuity of the Union, and thus the very existence of the nation.

March 4.  
Inauguration  
of  
Buchanan  
& Breck-  
enridge.

1856.  
June 18.  
Rep. Con  
meet at  
Philad'a.

May 22.  
Dem. Con  
meet at  
Cincinnati.

4. On the day succeeding the inauguration, a majority of the Supreme Court of the United States, in the celebrated case of Dred Scott, made the decision—that the territories, acquired by the United States, being for the common benefit of all its citizens, all were equally entitled to go and make their

1857.  
March 5.  
(Dred  
Scott was  
a negro,  
suing for  
his free-  
dom.)

2. What did Gov. Geary? How was he counter-worked? Which was upheld at Washington, the governor or the judge? What was the consequence?—3. When was the inauguration, and who was inaugurated? How many, and what candidates had been in the field? Of what party was John C. Fremont the candidate? Why did he lose his election? What was the motto of the American party? Who their candidate?—4. What decision was made by the Supreme Court in the Dred Scott case?

**P.T. IV.** homes there,—carrying with them whatever was  
**P.D. V.** allowed by the Constitution to be their property,  
**CH. VI.** and that included their slaves. This decision was not acceptable at the North.

**1857.** 5. The first care of the new president was to make a judicious selection of a governor and secretary for Kansas; and **ROBERT J. WALKER** and **FREDERICK P. STANTON**, both men of distinction, and Southerners were prevailed upon to accept these offices. Stanton preceded Walker by six weeks. He was, when he went into the territory, as he says, “a real border ruffian”† regarding the territorial legislature as a legal power, and all those who opposed it, as rebels and enemies to the public peace. His first official duty, however, led him to understand its character, by the unfair arrangements which it had made, in preparing for the election of members to form a new constitution. No one could vote unless his name was found on a registry of voters made expressly for the occasion; and to obtain this registry, a new census had been taken by its officers. The census-takers had left out just one-half the counties, and in the other half, omitted many of the free-state party,—who, thus situated, refused to go into the election;—although assured by Gov. Walker, who had then arrived, that the constitution, when formed, should be submitted to the people. The result of this election showed a small vote, but it was of course in favor of the pro-slavery party; which was, therefore, the maker of the Lecompton constitution.

**Robert J. Walker and F. P. Stanton,** governor and secretary of Kansas.

**April 15.** Stanton arrives in Kansas.

(† A name by which Missouri-ans engaged in this contest were pleased to be called.)

**Last of May.** Walker arrives.

**June 15.** Election of members to the Lecompton Constitution.

6. The scene now changes, and the people of Kansas, for the first time obtain their right of self-government. Mr. Buchanan had given stringent or-

---

**4.** Was this acceptable at the North?—**5.** What was the first care of the new President? Who were appointed? Give an account of Stanton and his first proceedings. What did he learn in the exercise of his first official duty? What unfair arrangements were made by the legislature for a convention to frame the constitution, afterwards called the Lecompton constitution? What course was taken by the free-state party? What was the result of the election?—**6.** What change now occurs?

ders that the polls should be guarded from violence; and to this end had placed 2,000 United States troops under the command of Gov. Walker. He assured the people, that if they would vote in the election which was to take place (by decree of the first legislature, on the 9th of October) for a new legislature, that the polls should be protected. The free-state men, believing him, voted, and carried the election. But they came near to losing it, by a stupendous fraud, committed under a new and crafty set of leaders, of whom the surveyor-general JOHN CALHOUN, was at the head.\* He was made president of the convention for forming the constitution, which assembled at Leecompton on the 5th of September. The constitution was to be submitted to the people on the 21st of December,—when they were to vote in the words “for the constitution with slavery” or “for the constitution without slavery;” but a schedule was appended, not to be voted on, making hereditary slavery permanent, and providing, that the constitution should not be altered till 1864, and then only by a two-thirds vote.

7. To the president, Mr. Calhoun, the returns of this voting were to be made, as also of another election,—that of members to a State legislature, to be held under it, on the 4th of January, 1858,† the day that the free-state legislature (thus to be superseded) was by law to meet. The free-state people were fiercely indignant. Gov. Walker had left the terri-

PT. IV.  
PP. V.  
OP. 7.

1857.  
Oct. 9  
Election  
of Legis-  
lature  
carried b  
the Free  
State  
party.

Sept. 5.  
Leecom-  
pton Conv  
assembly  
(Reassem-  
ble,  
Nov. 7)  
Dec. 21.  
The  
people to  
vote Con-  
stitution  
any way.

† By law  
of the first  
territorial  
legislature.

\* From the precinct of Oxford, where were 43 voters, and from McGee county, where no poll was opened, returns were sent to Stanton—from Oxford, containing 1,600 votes, and from McGee county, 1,200. These returns, it is said, were made out by copying the names from an old Cincinnati directory. When Stanton received them, in a great roll of papers pasted together, he unrolled it, up on the floor of his office, and it stretched to the length of 40 feet.

1858.  
Jan. 4.  
Import-  
ance of  
this date  
in the  
annals of  
Kansas.

6. How did Mr. Buchanan take the first step in producing this change? What part had Gov. Walker in it? What difference was there in this election and that of March 30, 1855? How did the free-state people come near to losing a declared majority? What do you learn of John Calhoun?† In what form of words was the Leecompton constitution to be submitted to the people? —7. How was a legislature to be chosen to supersede that chosen by the free-state people?

(† A very  
different  
man from  
John C.  
Calhoun.)

PT. IV. tory on a visit to Washington, and they persuaded  
P.D. V Secretary Stanton to antedate the meeting of the  
OU. VI legislature to the 19th of December. The first day  
of their session, they remonstrated to Congress  
**1857.** against the Lecompton constitution, declaring it a  
Dec. 19. usurpation to which they would never submit; and  
Meeting of the Free-State legislature called by Stanton. They sit forty days.

8. On the 21st of December, the vote had been taken, "Constitution with slavery," or without, and  
**1857.** Calhoun reported 6,226 votes for "Constitution  
Dec. 21. with slavery." These votes being afterwards ex-  
Vote, Con- amined by a committee of investigation, which this  
stitution legislature appointed, 2,700 of them were shown to  
without be fraudulent.\* The vote of the people, as cast on  
slavery. the Lecompton constitution, by the law of the free-  
state legislature, was the largest ever polled in  
Kansas, there being a majority of 9,512 against it.

(Mr. Buchanan could not, at this time, have known of these frauds.) 9. The Lecompton constitution was now by Mr. Calhoun carried to Washington. He placed it—no doubt with his own version of affairs—in the hands of the president; who, impressed with the belief that its adoption by Congress would quiet Kansas, and restore harmony to the nation, sent it to the  
**1858.** House of Representatives, with a special commendatory message. A stormy debate ensued, in which  
Feb. 2. a number of his friends in the House, at the head of  
Special whom was Mr. HICKMAN, took decided ground  
message. against his message.† Mr. DOUGLAS, in the Senate,  
(† These are now called Anti-Lecompton-ites.) took the same ground. Congress having made sev-

\* Capt. Walker, the sheriff, demanded the votes at the office of Calhoun, on a warrant from the committee. "They are not here," he was told. "Search the office." "I shall not search the office, but the wood-pile," said the sheriff; and there he soon unearthed a candle-box, containing the missing votes. Thus was this fraud, which was chiefly that of the "Delaware Crossing," brought to light.  
Fraud of the "Delaware Crossing," and discovery of the candle-box.

7. How by the aid of Stanton did the free-state legislature come together, before the 4th of January? (*the day Calhoun meant their power should cease*).—8. What report did Calhoun make concerning the people's vote on the Lecompton constitution? How were his frauds detected? (*See note*).—9. Who placed the Lecompton constitution in the hands of Mr. Buchanan? What did he think, and what do? How was his message received?

eral attempts to agree on some plan of settlement, finally adopted the "English bill." This, in an indirect manner, referred the constitution to the people of Kansas. If they accepted it, they were immediately to become a State; otherwise, they were not again to apply to Congress till they had a number of inhabitants (93,423) sufficient to entitle them to one representative in that body. On the 9th of August, by the large majority of 11,300 to 1,788, the people of Kansas rejected the Lecompton constitution.

10. While the English bill was pending, Capt. Hamilton, with two of his brothers, to intimidate the free-state people, raised an armed band, who rode at noonday into the small town of *Trading Post*, and seized eleven of the unsuspecting people; one, an old man, one, a youth from behind the counter, and one a minister of the Gospel. They then took them about three miles, to a ravine near a small stream called the *Maraïs des Cygnes*, and there shot them. Some by feigning death, saved their lives. The people aroused, and under the brave old partisan leader, JAMES MONTGOMERY (a cousin of him who fell at Quebec), they pursued the murderers with 200 men. But failing to overtake them, they sought in lawless ways, to right existing wrongs,—especially at *Marmaton* and *Fort Scott*. . . . Gov. DENVER, who had succeeded Walker, visited the region; and persuading Montgomery to lay down his arms, restored quiet to the country. Gov. MEDARY has succeeded Denver. The Kansans have recently formed at *Wyandotte* a constitution to be offered for acceptance to Congress. They have elected under it a legislature, and again chosen Robinson governor.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. VI.

1858.

May 4.  
The "English bill."  
So called from its author, a member of the H. R.

Aug. 9.  
The Kansans reject the Lecompton Constitution

May 19.  
Massacre of the Marais des Cygnes.  
k. 5.

May 29.  
(Convention at Ray'sville during Gov. Denver's visit to the southeast of Kansas.)

9. What was done in Congress respecting it? In what manner did the English bill refer the Lecompton constitution to the people of Kansas? What was the result?—10. Relate the massacre of the Marais des Cygnes (*pronounced mārā-da-seen*). What followed? Who succeeded Walker as governor? What was done by him? Who was his successor? What constitution is now formed? Who chosen governor under it?

## CHAPTER VII.

The Sound Dues.—Dr. Kane's Arctic Expedition.—Walker the Filibuster—Mormon War.—The Revulsion.—Paraguay.—England and America.

**FT. IV.** 1. HAVING continued unbroken the chain of interior history, during the years in which it turned upon that of Kansas, we now give our attention to such other matters of the last decade, as lie within our province to record. . . . The "Sound Dues" were a premium claimed by Denmark from the ships of every nation passing her islands to enter the Baltic sea. By the treaty of 1826, America had agreed to pay this tribute; but with the reserved right of abrogating the treaty after ten years, on a year's previous notice being given. Mr. Marcy, the American Secretary, gave this notice to the Danish government on the 14th of April, 1855, —with his exceptions to the Sound Dues, as an exaction, unreasonable, and behind the spirit of the age. Other nations united in the remonstrance, thus set on foot by the American government; and the affair was settled, by the final abolition of the Sound Dues, and the substitution of a specific sum of money. Thus this grand highway is now free to all nations.

**P.D. V.**

**CH. VII.**

**1855.**

April 14.

Notice of

the Amer-

ican gov-

ernment

to Den-

mark.

**1857.**

March 14.

Treaty for

the aboli-

tion of the

sound

dues per-

fectcd.

**1850.**

First

Grinnell

Expedi-

tion under

De Haven

2. In the search after SIR JOHN FRANKLIN (a British navigator, lost in the Arctic seas), among those who were moved by the pathetic appeals of his wife, LADY JANE FRANKLIN,\* was MR. HENRY GRINNELL, a wealthy merchant of New York. He fitted out, in 1850, an expedition with two ships, the *Advance* and *Rescue*, giving the command to LIEUT. DE

\* This noble woman came to America, in 1846. She spent a day in examining the regulations, and learning the studies and modes of teaching in the Female Seminary at Troy.

CHAPTER VII.—1. What was meant by the "Sound Dues?" What were the conditions of the treaty of 1826? What was done in April, 1855? What was the result?—2. Who was Sir John Franklin? What is said of Henry Grinnell? Give an account of the first Grinnell Expedition.

HAVEN. He, failing to obtain any traces of the lost navigator, DR. ELISHA KENT KANE of Philadelphia, encouraged by Mr. Grinnell and others, proceeded with the *Advance* to renew the search. In high northern latitudes he encountered a terrific storm, which obliged him to find anchorage for his vessel, in Rensselaer Harbor,† where his party fitted up their cabin,—which became their home for two winters. Their bold explorations—travelling in various directions with dog-trains—extending their observations north two degrees beyond the eightieth, and the indications they there found of an open polar sea—their sufferings and adventures among the barbarous Esquimaux—have made this one of the most famous voyages on record. Attempting to return, after the second winter, they were met on the coast of Greenland by LIERT. HARTSTEIN, who had been sent by the government with two vessels to their relief.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. VII

1853.  
May 30.  
Dr. K.  
sails.

(† So  
called by  
Dr. K.)

(Aug. 20  
A storm.)

(Sept.  
They de-  
termine to  
winter at  
Rensselaer  
Harbor.)

1855.  
(Oct. 11.  
arrive in  
N. Y.)

1853.  
Oct. 17.  
Walker  
sails.

1854.  
February.  
Walker  
and 40  
filibusters  
relieved  
by Gen.  
Wool.

(200 lives  
lost in this  
invasion.)

3. In 1853, WILLIAM WALKER, who had been the editor of a paper at San Francisco, set on foot an expedition, which sailed with 53 men from that port. The object was to prevail on the people of *Old California* and *Sonora* to declare independence, and then raise the American flag. After a series of operations, which at first seemed to promise success, and drew others from California to join him, he was finally reduced to distress by the hostility of the inhabitants, and prevented from receiving reinforcements, by Gen. Wool, who had been sent out by the government with special orders to put a stop to such violations of the neutrality laws. Finally, Walker, with the miserable remnant of his party, were taken from Euseñada, by a vessel dispatched by Gen. Wool, and carried to San Francisco.

4. This enterprising filibuster, soon sailed again from the same port with 65 men; having been

---

2. Of the second, sent out under Dr. Kane. Of his explorations and return.—3. When, with what object and what force, did William Walker sail from San Francisco? What was his course, and its final result? For what was Gen. Wool sent to the Pacific coast, and what did he do?

**PT. IV.** tempted by the splendid offers of vast quantities of  
**PD. V.** land, made by one CHAMORRO, a rebel against the  
**CH. VII.** government of *Nicaragua*. When there, Walker

**1854.**

May 17.

Walker  
sails for  
*Nicaragua*.

(† Of 3000  
who fol-  
lowed or  
joined  
Walker,  
but 600  
returned.)

**1857.**

June 28.

First  
party  
brought  
to N. Y.  
by Com.  
Paulding.

**1853.**

Brigham  
Young  
made  
Governor  
of Utah.

Mormon-  
ism.

played his game so artfully that he raised himself to the head of the government. This drew to his standard, hundreds of his deluded countrymen.<sup>†</sup> But a strong party of Nicaraguans were in arms against him, and they obtained military aid from *Costa Rica*. Although Walker was sometimes victorious, yet his army was wasting, not only by war, but by diseases of the climate quickened by intemperance. The maimed and sickly remnant of his forces, was at length carried from Nicaragua; partly by British, and partly by American government vessels.\*... The governments of Nicaragua and Costa Rica, on the 11th of May, 1858, made an appeal to the great Powers of Europe to protect them, against lawless invasions from the United States.

5. After Utah was made a Territory, President Fillmore unfortunately appointed Brigham Young, governor; thus apparently adding the sanction of the General Government to his already despotic powers, as "prophet, seer, and revelator of the Mormon church." Such of the judges and other officers appointed, as were not Mormons, soon found that neither the laws of the land, nor the usages of civilized society, could be there maintained. The whole community was bound to their chief, either as accomplices in crime, or as fanatical dupes,—believing that his will and word were those of God.

\* All who returned were brought home by American vessels. June 28, 1857, Commodore Paulding brought to New York, in the *Wabash*, 121 of Walker's men; August 3, the frigate *Roanoke* brought 204; and, August 18, the steamer *Tennessee*, 275—making in all, 600. Commodore Paulding took Walker from Nicaragua; for which, that government officially returned him their thanks.

4. What was Walker's next attempt? How had he been tempted, and enabled to tempt others? Relate his course in Nicaragua. What was the final result? By whom were he and his men taken from Nicaragua? How many Americans followed or joined him, and how many returned? (*Consult the notes.*)—5. What effect had the appointing of Brigham Young as governor of Utah? What was found by officers not Mormons to be the condition of that deluded people?

The Danites, a secret military organization, were his avenging spirits,—ready to take off, by poison or otherwise, any man whom his spies should report as about to escape, or any woman, who should dare refuse to marry or join a harem, at his dictation. These secret murders no Mormon may or will disclose. Impanelled as a grand jury, they will not indict; as a petit jury, they will not convict. At length, the wholesale murder of an emigrant train of eighty persons, at *Mountain Meadows*, charged upon the Indians, but believed (now known) to have been the work of the Mormons, aroused the country.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. VII.

(Also the destruction of Lieut. Gannison with an exploring party of 8.)

6. Mr. Buchanan removed Brigham Young, and appointed Mr. CUMMING, of Georgia, his successor. He, with other officers, set out for the Territory under the escort of a detachment of U. S. troops. When Brigham Young learned these measures, he issued a treasonable proclamation,—openly assumed sovereign powers, and prepared to resist the United States authority by force of arms. Congress empowered the President to send against him an additional and competent force. In the spring of 1858, the troops intended for this service were detained on account of the troubles in Kansas, till it was too late before the army of Utah began their march across the plains. GEN. JOHNSON, their able leader, would, however, have had them comfortably fed, as well as sheltered, at *Fort Bridger*, but that the Mormons burnt and wholly destroyed, on *Green River*, a provision train of eighty wagons. This left the army to diminished rations, and the fear of starvation, before supplies could be obtained in the spring.

1857.  
Brigham Young removed.

Sept. 18.  
Brigham Young's proclamation.

June.  
Army began their march.

Dec. 14.  
Army goes into camp at Ft. Bridger.

7. In this condition, one of the officers, CAPTAIN MARCY—well-chosen by the commander—with 65

5. Who were the Danites? What is said of their secret murders? What terrible massacre aroused the country?—6. What was done by Mr. Buchanan? What by Brigham Young? What by Congress? How were the troops employed in 1858? Describe the further progress of the army, what happened at Green River, and the consequences.

**P.T. IV.** men, heroically undertook one of the most perilous enterprises on record. He crossed at the dead of winter, the drifted, pathless plains and mountains, from Fort Bridger to the towns of New Mexico—

**P.D. V.**  
**CH. VII**

**1857.** obtained provisions, and, though believed to have perished with his little army, he emerged from the waste of snows,—having in three months marched 1,300 miles, and brought supplies, to the great relief of the suffering army. **GEN. GARLAND, in**

**Nov. 24.**  
**Captain**  
**Marcy**  
begins his  
perilous  
march.

**1858.** command at New Mexico, had made every exertion to assist him, and furnished him on his return with a guard of mounted rifles. This is another instance, in which American officers and soldiers have done great honor to the nation.

**February.**  
**Marcy**  
arrives,  
and re-  
lieves the  
army.

8. In April, Mr. Buchanan, wishing to save a bloody conflict, sent two commissioners, Messrs. **POWELL** and **McCULLOCH**, to treat with the Mormons. Brigham Young, having found, that, in the near vicinity of 2,500 U. S. troops, his militia were not to be relied on, negotiated and made fair promises. The army peacefully passed through Salt Lake City, and forty-five miles southwest, they encamped in Cedar Valley,—built houses of adobe, and called the place *Camp Floyd*. But the farce of the Mormons voluntarily submitting themselves is almost at an end; the insecurity of life and property, and the degradation of woman continues. Brigham Young, with his Danite guard, is the same lawless tyrant now as before.

**April.**  
**Commis-**  
**sioners**  
sent.

**1857.** 9. In the summer of 1857, occurred one of those sudden and far-spreading seasons of business calamity, which has received the name of "revulsion." The first great failure was that of the "Life and Trust Company" of Cincinnati, which occurred on

**Aug. 21.**  
**Failure of**  
**the Life**  
**and Trust**  
**Company.**

**1858.** the 24th of August, 1857. . . . Our affairs with Spain have been complicated with the filibustering expeditions fitted out in American ports against her island

**(June.**  
**Banks**  
**re-nun-**  
**ciation.)**

7. Describe Captain Marcy's march and return.—8. What measures were next taken by the government and the army? Where did the army make a fortified camp?—9. What happened in 1857?

of Cuba. The English and French proposed to our government to enter into a *tri-partite treaty*, mutually to defend for Spain her possession of that island. Mr. Everett, then Secretary of State, promptly declined any such "entangling alliance." An American steamship, the *Black Warrior*, was seized in Havana, and declared confiscated. The U. S. minister in Spain was instructed to demand immediate satisfaction; but in the mean time the Cuban authorities released the vessel on the payment of 6,000 dollars, made by the owners under protest. The subject of purchasing Cuba of Spain, has been much agitated; but the offended pride of that ancient nation, refuses the most tempting offers.

**1852.**  
F. T. IV.  
P. D. V.  
CH. VII.  
Tri-par-  
tite treaty  
rejected.

**1854.**  
Feb. 28.  
Black  
Warrior  
seized.  
(100 mil-  
lions were  
offered  
for Cuba.)

10. Intercommunication with South America has increased. There has, however, been a difficulty with the Republic of Paraguay. LOPEZ, the supreme ruler (called President), had not only refused to ratify a treaty formerly negotiated, but he had refused to an American government vessel, the *Water Witch*, the privilege of sailing through Paraguay,—ordering one of his forts on the Parana to fire upon her; by which one of her men was killed. Congress empowered the President to send a force competent to bring the offending nation to terms; and Mr. Buchanan sent out a squadron of nineteen vessels under Commodore Shubrick. At Monte Video, the American Commissioner, Mr. BOWLIN, came on board the flag-ship *Fulton*, in which he proceeded up the Parana, leaving the other vessels behind to be called into action, if necessary.

**1857.**  
LIEUT.  
PAGE, in  
the *W. W.*,  
insulted.

**1858.**  
Congress  
resent the  
outrage.

11. At the city of Parana, the capital of the Argentine Confederation, Mr. Bowlin was warmly received by the gallant GEN. URQUIZA, its dictator, who generously preceded the American squadron

**1859.**  
Jan. 24.  
Mr. Bow-  
lin at As-  
sunção on

9. How were our affairs with Spain complicated? What proposal is here related? How was it met by the government? Repeat the affair of the *Black Warrior*. What is said of the purchase of Cuba from Spain?—10. With what country of S. America has there been a difficulty? What was the cause? What was done by Congress? What by the President? Describe the course of the expedition up the Parana.

**P.T. IV.** to *Assumption*, the capital of Paraguay, and used  
**P.D. V.** his influence with Lopez to persuade him to a  
**CH. VII.** friendly settlement. Lopez then prepared to receive the embassy in state; and as the American  
**1859.** Commissioner, attended by all the officers of the  
**A grand** frigate, was received by the President of Paraguay,  
**reception.** with his high officers in attendance, and in the presence of the Dictator of the Argentine Confederacy,—a novel scene was passing in the heart of South America, which may be hailed as the harbinger of advancing civilization. In three weeks, a satisfactory treaty of amity and commerce was negotiated, due apologies were made, and ten thousand dollars given as an indemnity to the family of the slain mariner.

**Feb. 10.**  
**Treaty**  
**with**  
**Para-**  
**guay.**

**1854.** 12. Disagreements between England and America have repeatedly occurred within the last ten years, but they have, thus far, had a peaceful termination. The Reciprocity treaty respected Canada, and was negotiated by LORD ELGIN, the governor-general, and Secretary Marcy. By it, duties formerly paid, were on each side remitted, and thus traffic on the border much facilitated. . . . In the summer of 1854, Great Britain, being engaged in war with Russia, opened a recruiting service in Canada, intending to receive volunteers from the United States. In carrying it on, the British Minister, MR. CRAMPTON, and two of the British Consuls in the United States, violated national law; and so offended the American government, that the recall of Mr. Crampton was requested by Secretary Marcy, and peacefully obtained by Mr. Buchanan,—then resident minister in London.—And here we record a remarkable act of British magnanimity, which seems to show the improved moral tone of the world. British vessels having attempted to search American, SECRETARY

**1855.**  
**Mr.**  
**Crampton**  
**recalled.**

---

**11.** What is said of Gen. Urquiza? Relate the reception at *Assumption*. The result of the negotiation.—**12.** What has been the state of our relations with G. Britain? What is said of the Reciprocity treaty? Describe the affair in which Mr. Crampton was implicated.

CASS made complaint, writing to MR. DALLAS, then minister at London, boldly and ably on the subject. Parliament voluntarily took up the question, and frankly abandoned, what they acknowledged had been falsely called—the British *right* of search.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. VII.

1858.

May.  
the  
Right of  
search  
aban-  
doned.

1859.

Sept.  
Gen. Scott  
sent to  
St. Juan.

13. A dispute is now pending concerning the ownership of the island of *St. Juan*, in the straits of Fuca. Gen. Scott was sent thither by Mr. Buchanan, Gen. Harney having, it was feared, endangered the peace of the country, by excluding the British from a joint occupation of the island,—to which, though it may be found contrary to treaty stipulations, they had been accustomed. Gen. Scott has returned, having restored the mutual occupany, leaving the right to the island to be decided by the civil powers.

14. Many pleasing maritime incidents have occurred, which have shown that the tie of blood and language is especially felt between the seamen of the two countries,—and the governments have lost no opportunity to foster this feeling of kindred. An example occurs in the finding, by Americans, of the British Arctic discovery ship *Resolute*, which had been abandoned by the crew—her purchase and fitting up, by the American government—and their sending her to Great Britain by Lieut. Hartstein. The Queen, to whom she was delivered, came on board of her; and received from American seamen the homage due to virtue, still more than to rank. The officers received on shore many hospitable attentions from the neighboring nobility and gentry.

1858.

Dec.  
The Reso-  
lute sent  
to Engl'd.

12. What was done in Parliament concerning the right of search?—13. Relate the dispute concerning the island of *St. Juan*. What has been done concerning it?—14. Between what classes is the tie of blood and language felt? Relate the example given

## CHAPTER VIII.

**Territories.**—Routes of travel in the Pacific.—Causes of the Diminution of Foreign Immigration.—Riots.—Disasters by sea and land.—Benefactions.—Mount Vernon Association.

**FT. IV.** 1. In the treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo, a mistake  
**1<sup>st</sup> D. V.** was made in describing the southern boundary of  
**CH. VIII.** the ceded territory,—in consequence of the incor-  
**1848.** rectness of the map after which the description was  
**Feb. 2.** made. From this arose the long dispute concerning  
**Treaty of** the Mesilla Valley, and the subsequent treaty made  
**Guada-** in Mexico by the American envoy, Mr. Gadsden;  
**lupe** by which the government quieted its title to the  
**Hidalgo.** valley, and obtained another small territory south  
**1854.** of the river Gila; both amounting to 160,000 acres,  
**Gadsden** and dearly paid for, by ten millions of dollars. The  
**Purchase** territory is called *Arizona*, and is for the present ap-  
**made.** pendended to New Mexico.

2. Gold mines have recently been discovered at  
**1858** *Pike's Peak*, on the Rocky Mountains, west of Kan-  
**-9.** sas; and a considerable population has thus been  
**Gold** attracted thither. *Oregon* and *Minnesota* were ad-  
**found at** mitted to the Union as States in May, 1858. *Wash-*  
**Pike's** ington was made a territory in 1853. The Union  
**Peak.** now,—1860,—numbers thirty-three States, and five  
**1858.** incorporated territories, exclusive of the District of  
**May.** Columbia. . . . One of the most prominent objects of  
**Oregon** the present decade has been the establishment of  
**and Min-** routes of travel, to connect together the eastern and  
**nesota** western parts of the republic. The Gadsden Pur-  
**admitted** chase was made, because it afforded an eligible route  
**as States.** for a Southern Pacific railroad, to begin in Texas  
**Southern** and pass south of the Gila. Another, and more  
**Pacific R.** northern route is needed; and several have been  
**R. to pass** surveyed by order of Congress.  
**south of**  
**the Gila**  
**route.**

**CHAPTER VIII.—1.** What caused the dispute concerning the Mesilla Valley? What new treaty was made, and what was gained and what given?—**2.** What is said of Pike's Peak? What two States were admitted? What Territory established? How many States and Territories in 1860? What is here said of railroads to the Pacific?

3. The important step, in the world's commercial progress, of carrying a railroad across the Isthmus of Darien, was accomplished in 1854,—by a company of New York merchants, of whom MR. ASPINWALL was chief; the right of way having previously been secured by the government, in a treaty with New Grenada. On the 22d of January, 1858, the road was opened from Aspinwall to Panama; and the rude inhabitants of the Isthmus forests, saw for the first time the fire and steam of the wonderful self-moving engine, with its train of travelling and mercantile apartments. . . . An overland mail-route has been established, by which regular weekly communication is kept up between St. Louis and San Francisco. The telegraph wires to accompany it are already laid along a considerable part of the way. . . . Foreign immigration has greatly diminished. In Ireland the condition of the laborer is improved; and, no doubt, America has been reported in Europe, in consequence of the Kansas civil war, and other disorders, as having fallen into anarchy, and no longer a desirable country to reside in. As about three-quarters of all the crimes committed in the country have been by foreigners, we hope our state-prisons may hereafter have fewer inmates.

PT. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. VIII.

1858.

Jan. 22.  
The first  
train over  
the Isth-  
mus. (It is  
celebrated  
at Pana-  
ma.)

(In 1850,  
350,000  
immi-  
grants; in  
1859,  
150,000.)

4. DISORDERS TENDING TO ANARCHY.—In Sept. 1858, the *Quarantine buildings*, on Staten Island, were burnt in the night; the sick were carried out, laid on the grass, and otherwise exposed. Gov. KING of New York, proclaimed the transaction to be a lawless outrage; and called out the militia to guard the remaining property. The citizens who

1858.  
September  
1 and 2.  
Quaran-  
tine build-  
ings  
destroyed.

3. What was done in 1854? By whom? How was the right of way obtained? What is said of the opening of this railroad? What communication was in 1860 established? What is said of foreign immigration? What reasons are given why fewer people come over from Ireland, and from the rest of Europe? What proportion of the crimes committed in the U. S. have been by foreigners? What then may be hoped and expected if fewer foreigners come to our country?—4. Which is the first mentioned of the disorders tending to anarchy?

**PT. IV.** committed this act had long remonstrated against  
**P.D. V.** the location of the Quarantine buildings, as en-  
**CH. VIII.** dangering the health of their families. Expense

**1854.** accrued, which the State, it is supposed, will collect  
 Disgrace- of the county. . . In 1854, men and women, at Erie,—  
 fu! riots on at Harbor Creek, and other places on the Erie rail-  
 the Erie road, made a series of attacks upon the trains,—  
 R. R. tearing up the rails and destroying the bridges.  
 They were dissatisfied with an arrangement, by  
 which the passengers were not obliged to stop on  
 their part of the road.

**1856.** 5. "Vigilance Committees" in St. Francisco have  
 May 14. taken several prisoners from the hands of the law  
 (Vigilance and hung them. These committees were too strong,  
 Committee and had too much cause for their measures, to be  
 at San put down or punished, although the governor resist-  
 Francisco ed their action, and appealed to the President of  
 hang two the United States for aid. This shows the im-  
 men.) portance, if we would avoid anarchy, to maintain  
 an independent and able judiciary. . . . Baltimore, the  
 capital of Maryland, was infested, till recently,\* with  
 organized bands, committing occasional murders,  
 and unlawfully interfering to control elections by  
 force and fraud. A set of these ruffians, calling  
 themselves "Plug Uglies," went to Washington on  
 the 1st of June, 1857, to control, by force, an  
 election there. They overpowered the police,—  
 when, at the request of the mayor, the marines  
 were ordered out. Five of the invaders were killed  
 and seventeen wounded, before they could be quelled.

**1860.** In New York, in Louisville, and in other places,  
 \* New there have been occasional riots;—but when we  
 police reg- look over this broad country, and behold its num-  
 ulations. bers of happy families, and reflect that nowhere else  
 Four has mankind ever enjoyed so much liberty and  
 volunteer prosperity, with so great a degree of security, we  
 compa-  
 nies guard  
 the city.  
**1857.** "Plug-  
 Uglies" in  
 Wash-  
 ington—  
 5 killed, 17  
 wounded.  
 were ordered out. Five of the invaders were killed  
 and seventeen wounded, before they could be quelled.

4. What that happened in 1854?—5. What lawless proceedings occurred in San Francisco? Why were they not put down and punished? What is thus shown? What is said of the city of Baltimore? What happened on the 1st of June, 1857? Have there been riots in other places? But what, on the whole, may be said of the state of the country?

are led to bless our Almighty Preserver that so great a degree of peace and safety has been enjoyed.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. VIII.

6. ACCIDENTS AND DEATHS.—It is computed that the deaths by railroad accidents, during the year 1859, were 1,000. Of those which occurred during the last ten years, the most fatal, and—in regard to the timeless fate of several children of a Sunday-school excursion—the most affecting, occurred a short distance out of Philadelphia, on the N. Pennsylvania Railroad. Sixty were killed and seventy-eight wounded. Accidents at sea have been still more fatal. The steamer *San Francisco* sailed from New York with 700 on board, a part of whom were United States soldiers. She foundered at sea, and 240 were lost. The ship *Powhatan*, from Havre to New York, having on board 311 emigrants, went ashore in a gale, on the coast of Long Island, and every soul perished. The “Collins” line of American steamers, plying between New York and Liverpool, were celebrated throughout the world for the elegance,—even to superfluity,—with which these “floating palaces” were finished and furnished. One of them, *the Arctic*, CAPT. LUCE, on her way to New York,—when near Cape Race, came in collision (the fog being dense) with the French screw-steamer *Vesta*. The bows of the *Arctic* stove in, and she went down with 322 of her crew and passengers. *The Pacific*, another of these splendid steamers, left Liverpool with 400 persons, and was never heard of more. *The Central America*, CAPT. HERNDEN, on her way from Aspinwall to New York, with 579 persons on board, was destroyed by a terrific storm. After a part of her passengers had been washed overboard, a small American brig, the *Marine*, appeared. The gallant Hernden, with great exertion, sent aboard her all she could take,—preferring the

**1856.**  
July 7.  
Railroad  
loss, near  
Phila. k.  
60, w. 78.

**1854.**  
Jan. 25.  
Loss of the  
San Francisco.  
240  
perished.

April 16.  
The Pow-  
hatan.  
311 lives l

Sept. 27.  
The Arctic  
322  
perished.

**1856.**  
Jan. 26.  
Pacific  
lost at sea  
Perished,  
400.

**1857.**  
Sept. 6.  
The Central Amer-  
ica. Per-  
ished, 425

6. How many lives were lost in the year 1859 from accidents on railroads? Which has been the most fatal of these accidents during the last decade? Give an account of the *San Francisco*. The *Powhatan*. What account can you give of the *Collins'* steamers? Of the *Arctic*? The *Pacific*? The *Central America*?

**P.T. IV.** women and children,—and himself went down with  
**P.P. V.** the remainder of his passengers, in the wreck of his  
**CH. IX.** own ship.

7. This country continues to be distinguished for the benefactions of wealthy individuals, to public objects. **GEORGE PEABODY**, the enterprising and wealthy American banker of London, has given half a million of dollars to the city of Baltimore, to found and endow a literary and scientific institution of a high order.... The "Mount Vernon Association," a Society of American women, of which **PAMELA CUNNINGHAM**, of Georgia, is the head, has purchased the estate of Mount Vernon, the home of Washington. This Society, beginning at the South, has found a warm co-operation at the North,—not from the women only, but from, at least, one honored man: **EDWARD EVERETT**, by his lectures and writings, made for this express purpose, has raised the sum of sixty-nine thousand dollars,—which he has given to aid in paying the two hundred thousand, for which the estate has been purchased of John Washington, the proprietor.

**1857.**

Feb.

Mr. Pea-

boddy gave

to 25

trustees,

for Balti-

more,

\$300,000;

subse-

quently,

\$200,000.

**1858.**

Mount

Vernon

bought of

J. Wash-

ington.

## CHAPTER IX.

### Harper's Ferry.

**1859.** 1. ON Sunday night, the 16th of October, 1859, the inhabitants of the village of Harper's Ferry were alarmed, by learning that their bridge over the Potomac was in the possession of armed men, who had stopped the train of cars coming in from the west,—but, after a parley, had permitted them to

Oct. 16.

Alarm at

Harper's

Ferry.

7. For what does America continue to be distinguished? Who is George Peabody? What act of liberality is mentioned? What society is here mentioned? What lady is at its head? What has this society done? What has Edward Everett done to aid this patriotic object?

**CHAPTER IX.—1.** As what happened at Harper's Ferry is an important event, give the day and date. What happened at Harper's Ferry that Sunday night?

go on, giving them notice, that no more trains from either direction would be allowed to pass. A negro, one of the employees of the train, who, on the bridge, had left it to reconnoitre, was shot; as also a negro porter in the town, who refused to yield himself to their direction. The people soon found that their unknown foes had possession of the arsenal, and held—there imprisoned—some of its officers, whom they had surprised and taken; as also some of the neighboring planters, among whom was Col. Lewis Washington. Horses, carriages, and wagons were seized—the wagons to carry arms. All the negroes who could anywhere be found were pressed into their service.

P.T. IV.  
P.D. V.  
CH. IX.  
1859.

2. The inhabitants, made prisoners in their own houses, were excited to the highest pitch. Whence these murderous invaders—what their object, or their numbers, none knew. But from their bold and successful measures, they judged there must be several hundreds—the report of their numbers as sent forth, varying from two hundred to seven. But relief was approaching. Although the insurgents had cut the adjacent telegraph wires, the people had found means to send out to the neighborhood, where they were sound,—and the governor of Virginia, at Richmond, was notified. The western train having gone on to Baltimore, had telegraphed in advance.

3. At one o'clock on Monday morning, Mr. GERRITT, the able director of the railroad, telegraphed to the Secretary of War, at Washington, and the President of the United States himself replied, that orders had gone on to Old Point Comfort, and several companies from there would soon be on the way. The Baltimore volunteers, under GEN. STUART,

Oct. 17.  
Monday,  
1 o'clock,  
A. M.,  
Mr. G.  
telegraphs  
from Bal-  
timore.

1. What were the two first murders committed? What did the people learn concerning the arsenal and those imprisoned in it?  
—2. What was the condition and what were the feelings of the people of Harper's Ferry? What circumstances indicated approaching relief?—3. How early on Monday morning was Mr. Gerritt (having been telegraphed) enabled to telegraph to the government at Washington? How was he answered?

**P.T. IV.** were ready for the train which left that city in the  
**P.D. V.** afternoon; and they found at the Relay House,  
**CH. IX.** where the Washington train met them, a company  
**1859.** of marines, sent forward by the Secretary of War;  
 —and the two proceeded together. COL. LEE was  
 soon to follow, charged with the chief command.  
 In the meantime, by the governor's orders, the  
 militia throughout the State were rising. Those in  
 the neighborhood of Harper's Ferry were first at  
 the scene of action. From more distant parts, as  
 the alarm spread, aid was offered.† Gen. Wool,  
 chief commander of the U. S. army, in the absence  
 of Gen. Scott, was on his way from Troy, when tele-  
 graphed that his services would not be needed.

† (Sche-  
 neectady in  
 N. York,  
 offered  
 her volun-  
 teers.)

4. On Monday evening, the neighboring militia took the bridge. The insurgents fought desperately to defend it, but were defeated. Nine on both sides were killed, and two prisoners of the rioters were taken. The militia then entered the town, relieved the inhabitants from their fears, and were there to receive the marines and Baltimore volunteers, who arrived about midnight. The Martinsburgh militia had, in the mean time, stormed the workshop of the arsenal, and set free the workmen; who, as they came, on Monday morning, to their daily labor, had been seized and there confined. It was now known, by the prisoners taken, that the leader of this astounding invasion was JOHN BROWN, the hero of Ossawatimie. It was proved, too, that his object was to raise the negroes, and set them against the masters;—that his present party was small, numbering only seventeen white men, and five negroes; but he had arms, including those in the arsenal, sufficient for arming thousands more; and it seemed obvious, that he must be expecting aid, or he would

3. What of the Baltimore volunteers? Of the marines from Washington? Who was to have the chief command? Who were first at the scene of action? As the alarm spread, what was done?  
 —4. Relate the events mentioned in the first part of paragraph 4th. What was known by the prisoners taken? What was learned of John Brown's object?—of his force?—of his means to arm the negroes, suppose they had risen?

not have ventured on a measure so bold and daring. P.T. IV.  
 Not a negro was found willing to join him. P.D. V

5. Brown had now retreated to the engine-house, the strongest building of the arsenal, and there, with his prisoners and the remains of his party, he stood like a stag at bay. At seven o'clock on Tuesday morning, Col. Lee sent him a summons to surrender; but he demanded such terms as could not be granted. The soldiers had brought artillery; but to cannonade the building would be to endanger the lives of Col. Washington and other of their friends. The hundreds of troops who had arrived were stationed around, so that no prisoner should escape, and none be maltreated by the infuriated crowd. CH. IX

1859.

Oct. 18.  
Tuesday.

The marines were then ordered to the attack,—Capt. Russel leading them on. They rushed to the large double doors of the engine-house, striking them with huge sledge-hammers,—but they resisted the blows. Then twenty men brought a heavy ladder, which, after raising, they let fall against the door. At the second stroke a part of it fell. The marines rushed through the breach. A brisk firing,—a momentary death-scuffle,—and the strife was ended. John Brown, bleeding from nine wounds, was brought forth and laid upon the grass, with five of his followers beside him,—two of whom were his sons. One was dying, the other had been killed the day before.

The Engine-house  
stormed  
by the  
marines

6. These, with two prisoners taken, and a party of three,† who had escaped to Pennsylvania, were all which now remained of a terrific foe, whose invasion had brought and was bringing together, a force more than sufficient to have crushed them, had each of its twenty-two men been a thousand. († Of this party, Cook, the highest in office under Brown, was the leader)

The planters kept by Brown as hostages were

4. Did the negroes show any favor to John Brown or his project?—5. Where was John Brown early on Tuesday morning, the 18th? What summons did he receive, and what answer return? What hindered the cannonading of the Engine House? How were the troops stationed? Give an account of the onset, and its result.—6. What now remained of Brown's party of 22? What is said of the force which the alarm had raised against them?

**P.T. IV.** unhurt. Col. Washington was not more rejoiced  
**P.D. V.** at recovering his personal liberty, than in the resto-  
**CH. IX.** ration of two precious relics,<sup>†</sup> which attested his con-  
 nection with the Father of our country; one was a

**1859.** curious antique sword, presented to him by Frederic  
 († Taken by Cook and the party who captured Col. W.) the Great of Prussia; and the other, a pair of pistols,  
 presented by La Fayette. The wounds of Brown,  
 though supposed mortal, being carefully tended,  
 healed by degrees.

**The gov. of Va. arrives.** 7. Gov. WISE arrived in season to secure the  
 prisoners for trial. The military then proceeded to  
 search the neighborhood for concealed arms and  
 papers. Brown had hired a farm in the vicinity,  
 six months before; and, under the assumed name  
 of Smith, he had caused to be brought thither, as  
 miners' tools, 200 rifles, 200 revolvers, and 1000  
 pikes. On the premises, besides these arms, were  
 found important papers,—by which it appeared,  
 that Brown was acting as commander-in-chief of a  
**Brown's provisional government.** “provisional government,” the plan of which had  
 been concocted, not in any American State, but in  
 that part of the British province of Canada in-  
 habited by runaway negroes, going thither by the  
 so-called “underground railroad.”

**Brown's expected empire, as shown from his constitution.** 8. For the nation or state, which was to be thus  
 provisionally governed, there was found a printed  
 constitution, made at Chatham, the negro capital.  
 Where the country lay, which was to form the  
 ground-plot of this new empire, is not expressly  
 stated in the constitution; but it speaks of a “con-  
 quered territory”—of an “enemy” from whom great  
 spoils were to be taken—the property, which had  
 been earned by the members of the organization,  
 but soon to be wrested from those who wrongfully  
 held it. These circumstances point unmistakably to  
 Brown's expectations of overcoming the territory of

---

6. What is here said of Col. Washington? What of Brown?  
 —7. What is said of the arrival of the governor of Virginia?  
 Where had Brown concealed arms? How many and what? What  
 besides arms were found by the military? In what capacity was  
 John Brown acting?—8. Where did he expect to make his new  
 empire?

the slaveholders, and there setting up his empire of freed slaves.

PT. IV.

P'D. V.

CH. IX.

1859.

In what sense it was true that Brown did not intend to kill.

The measures of Gov. Wise.

Nov. Trial of John Brown at Charlestown.

Dec. 2. Execution of Brown.

9. Brown, after he was taken, said he only meant to set the slaves at liberty; it was not his wish or intention to kill the owners. In what sense he meant this, is thus explained in the thirty-second article of his constitution. "No person, after having surrendered himself or herself a prisoner, and who shall properly demean himself or herself as such, to any officer or private connected with this organization" (probably meaning their own slaves then to become their masters), "no such person afterwards shall be put to death," &c.... Valuable lives had been lost among the inhabitants of Harper's Ferry, especially that of Mr. TURNER. All was yet indignation and excitement, when these disclosures added fuel to the fire. The measures of Gov. Wise were such as might have been expected. He called on Virginia to arm and defend herself; he called on the President of the United States to defend her; and he collected troops to guard the prison at Charlestown, to prevent a rescue, which he feared would be attempted.

10. At that place, in November, John Brown was tried, convicted of murder and treason,—and condemned to be executed on the 2d of December. Five thousand soldiers, on that day, surrounded the gallows, forming two squares; between the inner and outer of which, were thousands of spectators; who could see the brave old criminal mount to the scaffold with unflinching steps,—but were too distant to hear his last words. This was the only circumstance in his treatment of which he complained. He had played a deep game. If he had succeeded he would now have been at the head of an empire. He had lost the game,—and with the fortitude worthy of

9. Brown said he did not mean to kill the masters, but only to free the slaves: how do we learn what he meant by this? What was the state of feeling among the people of Harper's Ferry? What can you say of the measures of Gov. Wise?—10. When and where was John Brown's trial? Of what was he convicted? When executed? Relate the circumstances.

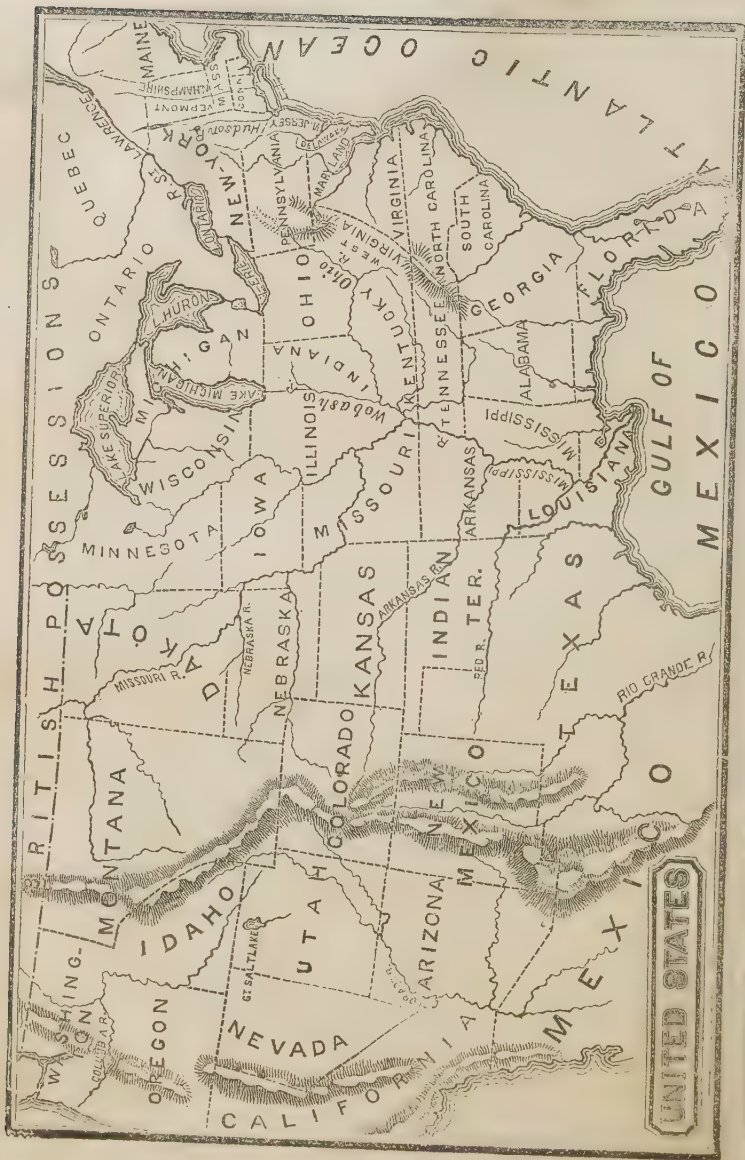
**P.T. IV.** a martyr, he paid the forfeit. Of the remainder of  
**P.D. V.** Brown's party, two white men and two negroes  
**CH. IX.** were executed, at the same place, a fortnight later

**1859.** 11. There is yet an unsolved mystery in this trans-  
 Dec. 16. action, which we hope the committee of investigation  
 Cook, appointed by the U. S. Senate, of which SENATOR  
 Coppie, MASON, of Virginia, is at the head, will bring to  
 Copeland, light. It is not only to be shown whence came the  
 and Green considerable sums of money, but whence came the  
 hung at able combinations of mind, by which a man so defi-  
 Charlestown. cient in comprehensiveness of intellect, as to believe  
 in the possible *ultimate* success of such a mad scheme,  
 Whence took such judicious measures, as to effect so much.  
 came the But by whoever this "infernal machine" of Harper's  
 money? Ferry was devised, we believe that the same Al-  
 whence mighty Power, who overruled the oppressions of  
 the deep man—first to the settlement, then to the independ-  
 calculations? and ence of this country—will overrule its terrific explo-  
 for what? sion for the good of the nation. We believe that it  
 (\*1860. will form the crisis of that fearful slavery agitation  
 July. which has so long threatened the destruction of  
 This com- what is, to the patriot's heart, nearest to his God—  
 mittee have his country. Without the preservation of the Union,  
 reported. the American has no country; with it, the noblest  
 They have the sun shines on.  
 not traced the aid  
 the aid Brown  
 must have  
 received,  
 to any  
 man or  
 men of  
 America.)

---

11. What committee was appointed by the Senate? What two things in the John Brown raid seem mysterious? In what respects has the Almighty heretofore overruled the events of American history to the good of this nation? In what present event do we hope for the same Divine protection? What does the author say concerning the fearful slavery agitation? What difference does it make to an American whether the Union is preserved, or whether it is not?





# PART V.

FROM 1860 TO 1867.



Raising the U. S. Flag at Fort Sumter, April 14, 1865.

## PERIOD I.

FROM THE CIVIL WAR	{	FROM	{	OF THE GREAT RE- BELLION.
		1860		
		TO PRESENT TIME.		

## CHAPTER I.

Presidential nominations.—Character of Abraham Lincoln.—Debate with Douglas.—Secession.—Mr. Lincoln's inauguration.

1. THE Democratic Convention met at Charleston, S. C., to nominate candidates for President and Vice-President. The favorite of the Northern delegates was Stephen A. Douglas, of Illinois, and of the Southern, John C. Breckinridge, of Kentucky. The disunion was so great as to cause an adjournment of the Convention to Baltimore, where the result was a division of the party, the Northern delegates nominating Douglas, and the Southern, Breckinridge.

PART V.

P'D I.  
CH. I.

1860.

April 23.  
Party con-  
ventions.

June 18.  
Dem.  
nomina-  
tions.

CHAPTER I.—1. What political conventions were held in 1860? Who were candidates of the Democratic Convention? Of the Union Convention? Of the Republican Convention?

**PART V.**

**P'D I.**  
**CH. I.**

**May 9.**  
**National**  
**Union**  
**nomi-**  
**nations.**

**May 16.**  
**Republi-**  
**can nomi-**  
**nations.**

**1809.**  
**A. Lincoln**  
**born in**  
**Kentucky**

**1817.**  
**Removed**  
**to**  
**Indiana.**

**1830.**  
**Removed**  
**to Illinois.**

**He**  
**chooses**  
**the law as**  
**his pro-**  
**fession.**

2. Another Convention, taking the name of National Union, assembled at Baltimore, and nominated John Bell, of Tennessee, for President, and Edward Everett, of Massachusetts, for Vice-President.

3. The new party, that, four years previous, had first organized, composed of the anti-slavery men of the whig and democratic parties, selected Abraham Lincoln, of Illinois, as their candidate for the first office, and Hannibal Hamlin for the second.

4. Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky, in 1809, of poor but honest parents. His father removed in 1817 to Indiana. The lad accompanied him, and, young as he was, aided in building the log-cabin which sheltered the family; and afterward, on their removal to Illinois, by helping to split the rails which fenced the farm, he obtained the title of "Rail-Splitter," which, though meant as opprobrious, he regarded as honorable. When President of the United States he carried a cane manufactured from one of those rails, by which his honest and faithful industry had aided his indigent parents. His mother had early taught him to read the Bible, and imbued his mind with its holy morality. She also taught him to write, and to communicate his thoughts by writing. Every thing was done that the poverty of the family allowed, to assist him in gaining from common-schools an imperfect education. Among his few books were two biographies of Washington, and one of Henry Clay. At the age of nineteen, he was intrusted with the care of a flat-boat, in which he made a voyage to New Orleans. He boldly chose the law as his profession, though with very imperfect means of learning its principles; but in the beginning of his practice he had a case in which he proved the innocence of a widow's son, who would otherwise have been condemned and

---

2. Of the National Union Convention?—3. Who nominated Lincoln and Hamlin?—4. What is said of Abraham Lincoln? What gave him his first political importance?

imprisoned. By this he gained friends and reputation. Following the examples of Washington and Henry Clay, he ever took great interest in the political movements of his country, and he was put forward to various offices of trust, first in the State, and then to a seat in the House of Representatives in Congress; and he was, at the time of his great dispute with Douglas, a rival candidate with him for a seat in the United States Senate.

PART V  
P'D I.  
CH. I.

1858.  
Great debate  
begins at  
Chicago

5. Mr. Lincoln had first been brought prominently before the nation by his contest with Mr. Douglas for a seat in the United States Senate from Illinois. The two rivals met at seven different places in the State, and discussed the political questions of the time before large assemblages of the people. In the election which followed, a majority of the people declared in favor of Mr. Lincoln; but, owing to the apportionment of the election districts, Mr. Douglas obtained a majority of the Legislature, and was chosen Senator. Mr. Lincoln's struggle and defeat had drawn the eyes of the nation upon him, and led to his nomination at Chicago.

Debate  
between  
Douglas  
and Lin-  
coln in Il-  
linois.

6. Alarmed by Southern movements, and dreading disunion, the party nominating, adopted a platform, pledging its nominee "to maintain inviolate the rights of the States, especially the right of each State to order and control its own domestic institutions." To show the South that the North did not approve of John Brown raids, it was added: "We denounce the lawless invasion by armed force of any State or Territory." Yet this availed nothing, so fully were the South bent on going out of the Union and setting up a government for themselves, being persuaded that slavery was essential to the prosperity and domestic comfort of the negroes as well as themselves.

1860.  
May 8.  
Platform  
of Chicago  
Conven-  
tion.

Seeks to  
conciliate  
the South.

7. The election of Mr. Lincoln, by the Republican Nov. 1860.

---

6. What did the Republican party in its platform say to conciliate the South? Did it avail anything?

**PART V.**

FD L.  
CH. I.

1860.

Dec. 20.  
South Carolina passes the ordinance of secession.

party, in November, was the signal for the Southern malcontents to put into execution their designs for secession. South Carolina took the initiative. A convention at Columbia repealed the law by which the Constitution of the United States had been adopted, and passed an ordinance, declaring that "the union of the States now subsisting is dissolved."

Dec. 31.  
South Carolina takes the U. S. Arsenal.

8. On the 31st of December, the State troops took full possession of the United States arsenal; but before they lowered the long-honored flag, they gave it a salute of thirty-two guns, one for each State, and when they raised the palmetto, the South Carolina flag, they modestly gave it one.

9. Governor Pickens, assuming to be the head of the "Commonwealth of Virginia," sent three Commissioners to Washington to treat with the National authorities about the surrender of the forts, arsenals, and public property at Charleston. President Buchanan refused to comply with their demands, whereupon the Secretary of War, Floyd, resigned, and his place was filled by an able Union man, Joseph Holt, of Kentucky.

Dec. 3.  
Meeting of Congress.

10. When Congress met, affairs wore a gloomy aspect. The President, in his message, dwelt upon the disturbed condition of the country; upon the agitation of the Southern mind, alarmed with vague apprehensions of a servile war; and upon the dangers of secession. He called upon Congress for guidance and aid in his difficult position.

Mr. Crittenden the most prominent senator.

11. Congress debated and deliberated. A committee was formed, with Mr. Crittenden at its head, to which was referred that part of the President's message on the agitated condition of the country. This committee recommended a plan of compromise, which was rejected.

---

7. What was the first consequence of Mr. Lincoln's election?--8. What was done in Charleston?--9. What did Governor Pickens do? How were his commissioners received?--10. What did Mr. Buchanan say in his Message to Congress?--11. What did Congress do?

12. In the mean time the secessionists at the South were hastening events. PART V.

13. On the 25th, the South Carolina members of the House of Representatives in Congress notified the Speaker that their State had dissolved its connection with the National Government. When they took their leave, no notice was taken of their absence. Secession laws were passed by Alabama on the 10th of January, 1861; by Florida, on the 11th; by Georgia, on the 18th; and by Louisiana, on the 26th. P'D I.  
CH. I.  
  
Dec. 25.  
S.C. mem-  
bers leave  
Congress.  
  
Alabama  
and Flori-  
da se-  
cede.

14. By invitation of the seceding Convention of Alabama, delegates from all the seceding States assembled, on the 4th of February, at her capital, Montgomery, and there took the style of the "Confederate States of America." They took for their constitution the American, making a few alterations, mostly respecting the right of property in slaves. They made the term of their elected President six years; and immediately proceeded to choose as Provisional President, Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi; and as Vice-President, Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia. **1861.**  
Feb. 4.  
Seceders  
meet at  
Montgom-  
ery and  
adopt a  
constitu-  
tion and  
provision-  
al govern-  
ment.  
Jeff. Davis  
Presid'nt.

15. General Houston, the patriot of San Jacinto, was governor of Texas, and he would gladly have stemmed the torrent of secession there, but a little delay was all he could obtain. A convention of the people, on the 1st of February, annulled the ordinance of annexation, and afterward joined the Southern Confederacy. General Twiggs, placed in command by Secretary Floyd, surrendered to the State authorities all the munitions of war, which, with other United States property, amounted to \$1,300,000. For this, President Buchanan, on the 3d of March, denounced him as a traitor, and had his name stricken from the roll of the army. Feb 1.  
Texas se-  
cedes.  
  
Treason  
of General  
Twiggs.  
  
Feb. 13.

16. A last effort to avert secession and war was

---

13. When did South Carolina secede? What other States followed her example?—14. When and where did the seceding States meet in convention? What did they do?—15. What was done in Texas? What is said of Gen. Twiggs?

**PART V.** made on the recommendation of the Legislature of Virginia, which resulted in the assembling of the Peace Convention at Washington. A session of **1861.** three weeks ended in the adoption of a compromise, upon which Congress failed to act.

P'D I.  
CH. I.

March 4.  
Mr. Lin-  
coln's in-  
augura-  
tion.

Mr. Lin-  
coln's in-  
augural.

17. Mr. Lincoln, in journeying from Illinois to Washington, having cause to apprehend danger in Baltimore, passed through the city privately. His inauguration passed off quietly. Mr. Buchanan having, with his wonted courtesy, made arrangements for his reception at the Presidential mansion, rode with him, on the morning of the 4th of March, to the Capitol, where, after taking the oath, Mr. Lincoln delivered an address which was listened to with intense interest. Indeed, no inaugural heretofore delivered by any President of the United States will be read by the future student of our history with so much feeling as this. It was evident that his great heart was filled with love to his whole country, and he hoped against hope that he could yet make his erring countrymen love and trust him.

Mr. Lin-  
coln  
shows the  
South that  
they are  
commit-  
ting a  
mistake.

18. Speaking, as it were, face to face with his country, he immediately struck upon the great cause of disunion, and proposed healing measures. He showed that in the Constitution, its provisions being conscientiously carried out, the South have the remedy for the evils of which they complain; and that he, as he had declared in his public speeches, and now had sworn it, honestly purposed, without any mental reservation, to conform to, and abide by, all those acts of the Constitution which stand unrepealed; and he suggests the making of several new laws in Congress, to the intent of honestly carrying out provisions of the Constitution which have heretofore been evaded. In doing this, says Mr. Lincoln, "there need be no bloodshed or violence, and there shall be none, unless it is forced upon the

---

16. What was done in Virginia and in Washington to avert secession?—17. What is said of Mr. Lincoln's journey to Washington and of his inauguration? What was the substance of his Message?

national authority." But he further says: "The power confided in me will be used to hold, occupy, and possess the property and places belonging to the Government, and collect the duties and imposts." He finally exhorts those minded to secede, to take time for reflection. "We are not," he says, "enemies, but friends—we must not be enemies;" and he concludes by referring to our common memories of kindred battle-fields and patriot graves.

19. In the formation of his cabinet, Mr. Lincoln chose the able senator from New York, William H. Seward, as Secretary of State; Salmon P. Chase, of Ohio, of the Treasury; Simon Cameron, of Pennsylvania, of War; Gideon Welles, of Connecticut, of the Navy; Caleb B. Smith, of Indiana, of the Interior; Edward Bates, of Missouri, Attorney-General; and Montgomery Blair, of Maryland, Postmaster-General.

Mr. Lincoln's cabinet.

PART V  
P'D I.  
CH. II.  
1861.

## CHAPTER II.

Fort Sumter.—Can for troops.—Mustering at Washington.—Opening of the war.—Bull Run.—Wilson's Creek.—Fort Donelson.—Shiloh.

1. THE commander of the small United States force in Charleston, Major Anderson, had removed from Fort Moultrie to Fort Sumter. The legislature of South Carolina had declared that any attempt to re-enforce him would be regarded as a declaration of war. A steamer, the *Star of the West*, was nevertheless sent with supplies, but on entering the harbor, was fired upon, and forced to return. Fort Sumter was then attacked by Gen. Beauregard. After a cannonade of thirty-four hours, Major Anderson surrendered the fort on condition that he

April 12.  
Fort Sumter attacked.

April 14.  
Surrenders.

19. Who were the members of his cabinet?

CHAPTER II.—1. What did Major Anderson do at Charleston?

**PART V.** and his men might depart with their flag and their private property.

P'D I.  
CH. II.  
1861.

2. The first shots fired were at the Star of the West, but the attack on Sumter is regarded as the opening of the war:

3. The telegraph flashed the news over the country. Mr. Lincoln issued a call for 75,000 troops. The flag had been insulted, and the people everywhere rallied to the support of the Union.

April 15.  
Mr. Lin-  
coln calls  
for 75,000  
troops.  
Response  
from the  
States.

4. The governors of all the Northern and Western States promptly responded to the call. The border Slave States, Kentucky, Tennessee, Virginia, and Missouri, returned negative answers. The Virginia convention immediately seceded; Kentucky did not, but attempted to take a neutral stand, upon a policy of non-coercion. In Missouri, a convention called by Gov. Jackson, rejected the ordinance of secession. In Maryland the legislature refused to secede. The Delaware legislature disapproved of the Southern remedy for the cure of national evils.

April 29.  
Maryland  
refuses to  
secede.  
Jan. 2.

July 20.  
Rich'm'd  
made seat  
of the  
Confed-  
eracy.

5. After Virginia seceded, the Confederate government at Montgomery immediately voted to adjourn to Richmond, which they did on the 20th of July. But before this date military and other operations centred there. Washington, the nation's capital, was threatened—the South were eager to obtain, and the North to defend it.

Danger of  
Washing-  
ton.

Riot in  
Baltimore

6. Northern troops hastened toward Washington. The first regiment to pass through Baltimore was from Massachusetts. It was assailed in the streets of the city by a mob. In the *mêlée*, nine citizens were killed, and many wounded, and two Massachusetts soldiers were slain. The troops forced their passage through, and Washington was saved. To prevent the passage of any more, the secessionists of Baltimore caused the railroad to be torn up in many places, and bridges to be destroyed.

---

2. What is said of Fort Sumter?—3. What did Mr. Lincoln do when news came of the attack on Sumter?—4. What was the response of the Governors? What was done in Missouri?—5. To what place was the Confederate government removed?—6. What happened in Baltimore?

All mail communications between Washington and the North were suspended for six days. PART V.

7. The western and northern counties of Virginia remained true to the Union. A convention, in which thirty-five counties were represented, was held at Wheeling, and this movement resulted in the formation of a new State, West Virginia.

P'D I.  
CH. II.  
**1861.**

May 13.  
West Vir-  
ginia.

8. A proclamation from the government of Great Britain was issued, in the name of Queen Victoria, on the 15th of May, commanding her subjects to observe strict neutrality in the American war. The subject was treated, not as if a friendly power had been so unfortunate as to have a part of its subjects in rebellion, but as if the North and South were equal belligerents.

May 15.  
Queen  
Victoria  
proclaims  
neutrality

9. Col. Ellsworth, who had organized a regiment, composed mostly of firemen in the city of New York, while marching through Alexandria, observed a secession flag flying from the roof of a hotel. He entered the building, tore down the flag, and was descending the stairway, when he was shot by Jackson, the keeper. A soldier, named Brownell, instantly shot the assassin. Ellsworth's death caused a great sensation at the North. His regiment was known as the Zouaves, from their costume and peculiar discipline, imitated from the French who had served in Algiers.

May 31.  
Death of  
Colonel  
Ellsworth

10. Gen. Butler, who had been placed in command of the Department of Virginia, with his headquarters at Fortress Monroe, learning that a considerable force, under the Confederate Gen. Magruder, was stationed at Big Bethel, sent Col. Pierce to dislodge him. Col. Pierce was repulsed with the loss of 100 men, and two young officers of high character, Theodore Winthrop and Lieut. Greble.

June 13.  
Big Bethel

May 10.  
Captain  
Lyon dis-  
perses the  
State  
Guard at  
St. Louis

11. In Missouri the war had begun by the prompt dispersion of the State Guard, organized by Gov. Jackson, whose camp was stormed by the Unionists

---

7. Did the whole of Virginia secede?—8. How did the government of Great Britain treat us?—9. What is said of Col. Ellsworth?—10. What is said of Gen. Butler and Big Bethel?

**PART V.** under Capt. Lyon. His decision saved St. Louis and the State, and he was rewarded by the commission of brigadier-general.

P'D I.  
CH. II.  
1861.

Battle of  
Rich  
Mount'n.

12. A Confederate force, under Gens. Garnett and Pegram, had advanced into Western Virginia. General McClellan, whose headquarters were at Cincinnati, directed Colonels Benham and Rosecrans, with what troops they could gather, to check them. A battle was fought at Rich Mountain, in which General McClellan reports that with a loss on his side of only thirteen killed and forty wounded, he captured one thousand prisoners, and inflicted a loss of two hundred killed and wounded.

July 4.  
Congress  
convened  
in extra  
session.

13. Congress convened in extra session, according to the President's proclamation, on the 4th of July. In his Message he informed them that, within the seceded States, all the United States property within their borders, movable and stationary, had been seized, except of the former class three forts, on the coast of Florida, and of the latter, that belonging to the Post-office department. Mr. Lincoln thus briefly recounted the past history of the rebellion. He especially regretted the course of Virginia, to which State their capital had now been transferred; but, he said, since she had allowed this giant insurrection to make its nest within her borders, this government has no choice left but to deal with it where she finds it.

Preparations for  
the battle  
of Bull  
Run.

14. The Confederates under Gen. Beauregard had assembled in large force, and occupied a line reaching from Manassas, or Bull Run, a small affluent of the Ocoquan River, to Harper's Ferry, on the Potomac. Gen. Scott had concentrated in and around Washington the Union army, had surrounded the city with forts, and had built fortifications on the opposite heights of Alexandria.

---

11. What did Capt. Lyon do in Missouri?—12. What occurred in Western Virginia?—13. When did Congress meet? What was the substance of Mr. Lincoln's Message?—14. Where had the Confederates assembled their forces? Who commanded the Union army?

15. Security and over-confidence raised the cry of **PART V.**  
 "On to Richmond." The people were impatient. **P'D I.**  
 Gen. Scott obeyed the impulse, contrary to his **CH. II.**  
 judgment, and gave Gen. McDowell, who had the **1861.**  
 immediate command of the army, orders to move. **July 16.**  
 The march began July 16th, and in two days **McDowell**  
 Centreville was reached. Delay in the receipt of **begins his**  
 provisions caused Gen. McDowell to defer the at- **march.**  
 tack one day. It was made July 21st, but three **July 21.**  
 hours later than was intended. These delays were **Battle of**  
 fatal; for Gen. J. E. Johnston, who was at Har- **Bull Run**  
 per's Ferry, deceived Gen. Patterson, who had  
 been ordered by Gen. Scott to watch and detain  
 him there, eluded him, and came upon the field of  
 Bull Run in time to open the fight with a part of  
 his force. In the morning the battle was in favor  
 of the Unionists; but near the close of the day the  
 arrival of the rest of Johnston's men under Kirby  
 Smith, with cavalry under the officer who subse-  
 quently became famous as Stonewall Jackson, turned  
 the tide, and the Union army was driven in disorder  
 from the field, many regiments not stopping until  
 they reached Washington.

16. The Confederate army had suffered too severely  
 to pursue the beaten foe. The defences of Wash-  
 ington were too strong to be assailed.

17. The people of the North, at first deeply mor-  
 tified at the disastrous defeat that had blasted their  
 high-raised hopes, speedily recovered their cour-  
 age, and put forth still greater efforts.

18. Gov. Jackson and Gen. Sterling Price invaded  
 Missouri, determined to force the State out of the  
 Union. They were met at Wilson's Creek by Gen.  
 Lyon. A fierce battle ensued, which resulted in  
 the death of Lyon. His army retreated to St.  
 Louis. Price marched to Lexington, on the Mis-  
 souri River, and there attacked and captured 2,300

**Aug. 10.**  
**Battle of**  
**Wilson's**  
**Creek.**

**Sept. 21.**  
**Mulligan**  
**surrend'rs**

---

15. Give an account of the Battle of Bull Run?—17. What was its  
 effect upon the people?—18. Who invaded Missouri? What was the  
 result? Who succeeded Lyon in command? Did General Fremont  
 overtake Price?

**PART V.** men under Col. Mulligan. In the mean time, Gen. Fremont had been appointed to succeed Gen. Lyon, and prepared to march against Price. An order took from him 5,000 men, who were to be sent to Washington. He failed to relieve Mulligan, and afterward, fearing that Price would overrun the State, he marched toward Springfield, which he reached Nov. 2d. But Price had escaped him. Preparing to continue the pursuit, he was stopped by an order relieving him from the command, and directing him to turn it over to Gen. Hunter. Five days after, Gen. Hunter withdrew his army to Rolla.

Nov. 2.  
Fremont  
suspended  
by Gen.  
Hunter.

Oct. 2.  
Ball's Bluff.  
Un. K. 130.  
w., 200;  
pr., 300.

Oct. 31.  
Gen. Scott  
resigns.  
McClellan  
succeeds.

Nov. 6.  
Grant at  
Belmont.  
Conf. loss,  
8,000; Un.  
10,000;  
& w., 500.

Nov. 8.  
The Trent  
affair.  
Wilkes,  
Mason, &  
Slidell.

19. Col. E. Baker, having been ordered to cross the Potomac at Ball's Bluff with 2,000 men, fell into an ambuscade, was killed, and half his troops, unable to recross, were killed or captured.

20. Lieut. Gen. Scott, on account of lameness and other infirmities, requested, in a note to the Secretary of War, to be relieved of his high command and new onerous duties. With every demonstration of respect from the President and a special Cabinet council, his request was complied with. Gen. G. B. McClellan was thereupon appointed to succeed him as commander-in-chief of the armies of the United States.

21. Gen. U. S. Grant, who had been placed in command of Cairo, led an attack upon Belmont, a place opposite Columbus, Ky., on the Missouri. He surprised and took the Confederate camp; but was subsequently attacked by superior forces under Gens. Polk and Pillow, compelling him to return to Cairo.

22. Capt. Wilkes, in the U. S. steamer "San Jacinto," learning that the two Confederate envoys, James M. Mason, for England, and John Slidell, for France, were on board the British mail-steamer

---

19. What is said of Ball's Bluff?—20. Why did Gen. Scott resign and who succeeded him?—21. Give an account of Gen. Grant's attack upon Belmont.—22. What is said of capt. Wilkes and the "Trent"?

"Trent," boarded her at sea, and with a show of force took from her Messrs. Mason and Slidell, and brought them to the United States. This unauthorized act of Capt. Wilkes came near involving the country in a war with England; but Mr. Lincoln disavowed his action, and sent the envoys to England.

PART V.  
P'D I.  
CH. II.

23. An expedition sailed from Hampton Roads, the naval forces under Com. Dupont, and the land forces under Gen. T. W. Sherman, and captured Port Royal and Hilton Head, on the coast of South Carolina. This port served as a station from which operations were afterward made against Charleston and Savannah.

Nov. 7.  
P't Roya.  
taken.

+ 24. On the 22d of February, 1862, at Richmond, Jefferson Davis was inaugurated President, and Alexander H. Stephens Vice-President of the Southern Confederacy, they having been elected by the people of the several Confederate States. On the 1st of April the Confederate Congress passed the conscription law, *compelling* every able-bodied man to serve in the army when drafted.

1862.  
Feb. 22.  
Davis and  
Stephens  
inaugurat-  
ed at Rich-  
mond.

25. The year 1862 opened with the clash of arms. Gen. Thomas defeated Gen. Zollikoffer at Mill Spring, Kentucky.

April 1.  
Law  
authoriz-  
ing draft-  
ing.  
Jan. 19.  
Battle of  
Mill  
Spring.

26. Gen. Grant entered Kentucky, his army being transported across the Ohio and up the Tennessee river by the fleet of gunboats and transports under Com. Foote. The Confederates abandoned Fort Henry, and Com. Foote's gunboats sailed up the river as far as Florence. Gen. Grant immediately invested Fort Donelson, on the Cumberland, and after an unsuccessful attack by the gunboats, and two severe battles, Gen. Buckner surrendered the whole garrison. Gens. Floyd and Pillow escaped on boats, and retired to Nashville.

Feb. 6.  
Ft. Henry  
taken.

Feb. 16.  
Fort Don-  
elson sur-  
renders.  
Con. k.,  
231; w.,  
1,007; pr.,  
10,000.

23. What was the result of the expedition against Port Royal and Hilton Head?—24. Who were elected President and Vice-President of the Confederate States?—25. What was the result of the battle of Mill Spring?—26. What were the operations of Gen. Grant and Com. Foote?

## PART V.

P'D I.

CH. II.

Jan. 12.

Burn-  
side's ex-  
pedition  
to North  
Carolina.  
Feb. 3 & 5.  
Roanoke  
Island  
taken.

March 7.  
Battle of  
Pea Ridge.

27. Gen. Burnside led an expedition to North Carolina. Having landed on Roanoke island, the forts were assailed and taken, and both Pamlico and Albemarle sounds opened, and half the coast of the State commanded by the Union fleets.

28. In Kentucky and Tennessee the Unionists pursued their advantage, and recovered Nashville, and drove the Confederates from Island No. 10, on the Mississippi River.

29. Gen. Curtis fought the bloody battle of Pea Ridge, defeating Gen. Price, who had prepared for a second invasion of Missouri.

30. On the following day happened the naval contest between the Merrimac and the Monitor, the first trial of strength between two iron-clad vessels. On the previous day the Merrimac had sunk the frigate Cumberland, had struck and disabled the Congress, and there appeared no obstacle to her destroying the whole Union fleet, and steaming triumphantly up the Potomac to Washington. The Monitor encountered and disabled the monster in a conflict of several hours.

Merrimac  
and  
Monitor.

April 6.  
Battle of  
Shiloh, or  
Pittsburg  
Landing.

31. Gen. Grant, following up his success, pushed his army down the Mississippi, and through the State of Tennessee, as far as Pittsburg Landing, or Shiloh. Here he awaited re-enforcements from Gen. Buell. The Confederates, under Gen. Albert S. Johnston, by a forced march, came suddenly upon the advance of the Union army, early on the morning of April 6, and surprised them in their tents. The battle raged all day, and at night the Unionists were driven from the ground, to the low lands on the bank of the river. During the night they were re-enforced by a division under Gen. Lew. Wallace, and by the army of Gen. Buell, and the next morning took the offensive, regained their lost camps, and defeated the Confederates, who retreated in good order to Corinth.

Un. loss,  
k., w., and  
m., 13,000.

27. What expedition did Gen. Burnside lead?—28. What was done by the Unionists in Kentucky and Tennessee?—30. What is said of the Monitor and Merrimac?—31. Give an account of the battle of Pittsburg Landing.

32. After the campaign of Corinth, Gen. Halleck was called to Washington, made General-in-chief, and Gen. McClellan's command was limited to the army of the Potomac.

PART V.  
P'D I.  
CH. III.  
July 23.  
Halleck  
General-  
in-chief.

### CHAPTER III.

McClellan's Peninsular Campaign.—New Orleans taken.—Pope's Campaign.—Antietam.—Fredericksburg.—Chancellorsville.—Stone River.—Vicksburg Campaign.—Gettysburg.—Naval Operations.—Monitor and Merrimac.—Chickamauga.—Chattanooga.—Enlistment and Draft.—Elections.

1. THE Army of the Potomac had lain in and around Washington since the battle of Bull Run. Its organization and discipline had been improved. Gen. McClellan decided to attempt Richmond by way of Yorktown and the Peninsula. Accordingly, he embarked his army in transports, and landed near Yorktown, April 6. After a siege of nearly a month, the Confederates evacuated the place. Pursuit was given, and the next day occurred the battle of Williamsburg. May 10, Norfolk was abandoned, and gunboats ascended the James River as far as Fort Darling. McClellan advanced to the White House, and from this point sent Fitz John Porter to Hanover Court House, where he expected a junction with the army of McDowell, coming by way Fredericksburg. But he had been recalled to Washington, to meet an apprehended attack by Stonewall Jackson, who had been sent into the Shenandoah Valley, where he had defeated the Union troops. The two armies struggled for the mastery from May 27 until July 1. Ten battles were fought, ending with that of Malvern Hill, in which the Confederates met with

1862.  
March 17.  
McClellan's army  
embarks for York-  
town.

May 27.  
Hanover  
Court  
House.

July 1.  
Malvern  
Hill.

32. What commands were assigned to Gen. Halleck and to Gen. McClellan?

CHAPTER III.—1. By what route did McClellan attempt Richmond? What success did he have at first? What prevented McDowell from joining him? How many battles were fought around Richmond?

**PART V.** a bloody repulse. But Richmond was not taken, and McClellan, with his whole army, was ordered back to Washington.

P.D.I.  
CH. III.  
**1862.**  
Feb. 3.  
Expedi-  
tion for  
New Or-  
leans sails

April 27.  
New Or-  
leans sur-  
renders.

2. An expedition for the capture of New Orleans sailed from Hampton Roads, under Capt. Farragut, February 2d, and entered the mouth of the Mississippi April 5th. The next three weeks were employed in passing the forts below New Orleans, which were taken after a desperate naval fight. The city surrendered to Capt. Farragut, the day before the forts capitulated, and May 1st he transferred the command to Gen. Butler, whose iron rule secured for the next six months, health, order, and quiet, if not good-will.

Aug. 30 &  
Sept. 1.  
Battle of  
Manassas  
and Chau-  
tilly.  
Sept. 5.  
Lee in-  
vades  
Maryland.

McClellan  
again in  
command.

Sept. 17.  
Battle of  
Antietam.

3. After the withdrawal of Gen. McClellan, Gen. Lee turned upon Gen. Pope, who had been assigned to the command in Northern Virginia. Gen. Pope, unable to cope with the superior force of Lee, rapidly retreated, expecting to be re-enforced by McClellan's army. But he was overtaken at Manassas and Chantilly, and defeated, and sought safety within the defences of Washington. The way was now open to Lee to fall upon the capital, or enter Maryland. He decided to cross the Potomac at Point of Rocks, and threaten Baltimore.

4. Gen. McClellan was again ordered to assume command of all the troops for the defence of the capital. He took immediate measures to check Lee. At his approach Lee withdrew from Frederick to South Mountain, where McClellan attacked and defeated him. In the mean time, Stonewall Jackson had captured Harper's Ferry, and rejoined Lee in time to take part in the battle of Antietam, which, though a drawn battle, so weakened Lee that he recrossed the Potomac, and retreated until

---

1. How did his campaign end?—2. Who commanded an expedition to New Orleans? When was the city taken? Who succeeded McClellan in command of the army of Northern Virginia?—3. What two battles were fought by Gen. Pope, and with what result? Where did Gen. Lee cross into Maryland.—4. Who succeeded Pope in command? What three great military events signalized this campaign?

he was protected behind the line of the Rappahannock. Gen. McClellan lay encamped on the north side of the Potomac until September 26th, when he started in pursuit of Lee. His delay displeased Mr. Lincoln, who removed him from the command, and gave it to Gen. Burnside.

5. Burnside led the army at once to the assault of Lee's position on the heights of Fredericksburgh. He was repulsed with terrible loss.

6. At the West the Union arms were more successful. Generals Price and Van Dorn, who had, since the battle of Pea Ridge, remained in Arkansas, having crossed the Mississippi River, were defeated by Gen. Rosecrans, in two battles, at Iuka and Corinth.

7. Gen. Buell, who had command in Kentucky, after retreating before Gen. Bragg and Kirby Smith, who had led an army from Chattanooga, northward, threatening Nashville and Louisville, finally turned upon, and defeated them at Perrysville. A few weeks later Buell was superseded by Gen. W. S. Rosecrans, who pursued Gen. Bragg to Murfreesboro, where occurred the battle of Stone River, in which the Confederates were defeated with great loss.

8. The Indians in Minnesota added to the horrors of war by a massacre of the whites at Little Medicine, and by a general attack upon the settlements. It is estimated that as many as twenty or thirty thousand persons were driven from their homes, and five hundred killed. Gen. Pope defeated the Indians at Wood Lake.

9. Congress met December 1st, 1862. The President's Message dwelt chiefly upon his favorite scheme of colonizing the negroes in some other country. He laments the apparent unwillingness

# PART V.

P'D I.

CH. III.

1862.

Nov. 7.

McClellan

removed.

Nov. 10.

Burnside

in com-

mand.

Nov. 13.

Battle of

Fred-

ericksb'g

Un. loss,

12,321.

Oct. 8.

Battle of

Perrys-

ville.

Dec. 31.

Battle of

Stone

River.

Un. loss,

1,533 K. ;

7,345 W. ;

2,800 M.

Conf. loss,

14,599

Dec. 1.

Presi-

dent's

message.

Coloniza-

tion fails

4. Why did Mr. Lincoln supersede McClellan by Burnside?—5. What battle did Burnside fight, and with what result?—6. What two victories were won by Rosecrans, and over whom?—7. What events occurred in Kentucky and Tennessee?—8. What is said of the Indians in Minnesota?—9. When did Congress meet? What is the substance of the President's Message?

**PART V.** of the negroes to emigrate. He says that application to the Central and South American States to permit colonies to be established within their limits had been rejected. The only States that would consent to receive them were Liberia and Hayti. He proposed an amendment to the Constitution, by which the States that should abolish slavery on or before the year 1900, should receive compensation. The earnestness with which this scheme is urged upon Congress and the country shows equally his dislike of slavery and his desire to do justice to slave-owners. But, alas, the Southern States were too zealously engaged for disunion and independence to listen to his appeals, while Congress and the North thought it too late to make the offer. The question was now left to the arbitrament of the sword. It was only three months after this Message was sent to Congress, that Mr. Lincoln proclaimed freedom to all the slaves within the military lines of the Confederacy.

**P'D I.**  
**CH. III.**  
  
**Compensated emancipation proposed.**  
  
**Great Britain and Confed. cruisers.**

10. A few cruisers, sailing under the Confederate flag during the war, inflicted great damage upon commerce. Every facility was afforded in Great Britain, and in her colonial ports, for building, victualling, arming, equipping, and repairing these vessels. The *Oreto* was built in Liverpool, sailed to Nassau, August, 1862, was there detained awhile, and then delivered to Capt. Maffit, and subsequently appeared as the *Florida*, sailing from Mobile. The *Alabama*, built at Birkenhead, sailed from the Mersey, June 29th, 1861, under Capt. Semmes. The *Shenandoah*, built at Glasgow in 1863, sailed from Liverpool to Madeira, and there received her crew and armament from the British brig *Laurel*, and started on a cruise to the Arctic Ocean to destroy American whaling-vessels. The British government either could not, or would not, prevent these

---

10. What is said of the Confederate cruisers? Where was the *Oreto* built? Where the *Alabama*? Where the *Shenandoah*? What was the conduct of the British government?

violations of neutrality. Our government gave England notice that indemnity would be claimed for the damage done by such vessels.

11. The opening of the Mississippi River was a leading object to which Gen. Grant directed all his skill and energy. His preparations being made, he first attempted to attack Vicksburg from the north. Foiled in all his efforts, he devised the plan of getting below the city.

12. During January he moved his army from Memphis down to Young's Point, on the west bank of the river, a few miles north of Vicksburg. The whole of February and March were spent in preparing means to get below Vicksburg with the army. On the night of April 16th he attempted to run the gunboats and transports past the batteries of Vicksburg, and march the army by land. This perilous undertaking was successfully accomplished. One transport was struck, set on fire, and abandoned by the crew. Six more followed, one of which was sunk; but the others went through with slight injury. A part of the army had already reached the bank of the river, and were taken on board the transports down to Grand Gulf, which was shelled by the gunboats, but proved too strong to be captured by them. The troops were again landed, and marched to a point below; while the gunboats and transports ran the batteries of Grand Gulf, and the troops crossed the river below, at Bruinsburg. The next day the army moved down to Port Gibson, and, defeating the Confederate troops that opposed them, Grand Gulf was evacuated, and possession taken by Com. Porter.

13. When Gen. Grant, in the prosecution of his original plan, at length moved east and north from the river, he took only five days' provisions. By

PART V.

P'D I.

CH. III.

1863.

Vicksb'rg  
campaignFeb. 2.  
Army at  
Young's  
Point.April 16.  
Vessels  
run past  
Vicksb'gMay 3.  
Grand  
Gulf eva-  
uated by  
the Con-  
federatesMay 19.  
Grant pur-  
sues his  
original  
plan.

11. How did Gen. Grant propose to open the navigation of the Mississippi River?—12. How did he pass Vicksburg? Where did he cross the river?—13. Give an account of the ensuing campaign.

**PART V.** the 19th of May he had fought five battles and one skirmish, and had occupied Jackson, the capital of Mississippi, driving Gen. Joseph Johnston into the interior, and Gen. Pemberton, with about 30,000 men, into Vicksburg. While he was closing in and around Vicksburg, Com. Porter ascended the Yazoo River; and, just as the advance of Sherman's army made its appearance at Snyder's Bluff, Com. Porter captured Haines' Bluff, just below Vicksburg, whose fourteen forts, with all their armament, fell into his hands, and the place was made thereafter the base of supplies for Grant's army.

P'D I.  
CH. III.

May 18.  
Haines'  
Bluff  
taken by  
Porter.

July 4.  
Surrender  
of Vicks-  
burg.

14. Gen. assaults were twice made upon Vicksburg, but without success, Grant not having troops enough completely to invest it; but drawing reinforcements from the army of the Ohio, Gen. Grant was thus enabled to complete the investment, and he then commenced a regular siege. After the 26th of May the firing was continued night and day. A hat was once held above a port-hole, and in two minutes was pierced with fifteen balls by the Union sharpshooters. For the first five days of the siege the garrison had full rations; but each person was afterward reduced to  $14\frac{1}{4}$  ounces of food daily. It was on the 4th of July, the nation's birthday, that the important event of Pemberton's final surrender occurred.

Confed.  
loss, k. &  
w., 10,000;  
I r., 37,000.  
Total,  
47,000.  
Un. loss,  
k., 1,234;  
w., 7,095;  
m., 557.  
Total,  
8,886.

15. The indomitable courage and perseverance shown by Grant had its influence upon the whole war; not merely in the opening of the Mississippi, but as it manifested to America and to the world that the Union had in this officer a master mind, with a genius for war; and this manifestation was made after the Confederates had lost Stonewall Jackson.

16. While Gen. Grant was assailing Vicksburg, Gen. Banks, who had superseded Butler at New Or-

---

14. When did the city surrender?—16. When did Port Hudson surrender?

leans, led an army through Western Louisiana, captured Alexandria, and then crossing the river at Bayou Sara, invested Port Hudson. The fortress surrendered July 8, and the great river was now open from its source to its mouth, and the Confederacy cut in twain.

PART V.

P'D I.  
CH. III.  
1863.General  
Banks  
invests  
Port Hud  
son  
May 21.May 2 & 3,  
Battle of  
Chancel-  
lorsville.  
Un. loss,  
11,000.

17. After the repulse of Burnside at Fredericksburg, Gen. Hooker was put in command. Gen. Lee retained his position, while Hooker lay on the opposite bank of the river at Falmouth. Late in April, Hooker crossed at Kelly's Ford, 25 miles above Fredericksburg, and took position at Chancellorsville. Here the left wing of Lee's army, led by Stonewall Jackson, surprised the right of Hooker, inflicting such a defeat as compelled him to retrace his steps. Lee met with an irreparable loss in the fall of Jackson. His success in the battle, and the strength and spirit of his army, emboldened him to attempt another northward march. Pushing rapidly onward, his advance was at one time not far from Harrisburg. Gen. Hooker kept pace with him, disposing his army so as to cover Baltimore and Washington. An order of the President, made at the request of Hooker, now placed Gen. George G. Meade, at the head of the army of the Potomac, — a hazardous change at such a critical moment.

Death of  
Stonewall  
Jackson.Lee in-  
vades  
Pennsyl-  
vania.June 28.  
General  
Meade  
super-  
sedes  
Hooker.

18. Both armies were marching for the same point — the village of Gettysburg in Pennsylvania, upon which many important roads converged. The army that should first occupy the town, would have the advantage of choosing its position. Gen. Reynolds, of the Union army, first passed through the village, and encountered the advance of the enemy on the heights north of the town. A brisk engagement followed, which ended by the withdrawal of the Union forces to Cemetery Hill, south

July 1, 2,  
and 3.  
Battle of  
Gettys-  
burg.

---

16. What was the result of these successes?—17. Who succeeded Gen. Burnside in command of the army of the Potomac? What battle was fought by him? What great loss did the Confederates sustain? Who superseded Gen. Hooker?—18. Give an account of the battle of Gettysburg.

**PART V.** of the village. During the night, both armies were placed in position for the struggle of the next day.  
**P'D I.** At noon, Gen. Lee began the attack, and hurled his  
**CH. III.** masses with great fury and persistence upon the Federal lines. The battle raged all the afternoon and until 9 o'clock in the evening. The Confederate Gen. Longstreet had gained and held a piece of ground from which Gen. Lee thought the main position, on the crest of Cemetery Hill, could be successfully assailed. Early the next morning Gen. Lee renewed the attack. The contest was kept up along the whole line, but the design of Lee was to conceal his real object, which was the Cemetery Hill, the key to Meade's position. All the forenoon was occupied in arranging his batteries to bring a concentric fire upon this hill. At 1 o'clock, at a given signal, 150 guns opened a simultaneous fire, and within five minutes the crest of the hill was swept entirely bare. This rain of iron-hail fell incessantly for three hours. Gen. Howard, who commanded the hill, had withdrawn behind the crest, and for two hours scarcely replied to the storm. Gen. Lee, supposing the Federal guns silenced, ordered his columns to scale the hill. As they approach, a terrible fire of grape, shell, and canister, is opened upon them from forty guns. They press forward, charging over the rifle-pits, and up to the muzzles of the guns. A scorching fire of infantry is now poured into their thinned and broken ranks. They reel, they fall back. A regiment throws down its arms and surrenders. All along the field smaller detachments do the same; and the escaped are seen flying, a disordered mass, over the plain. The battle was ended; and during the night the combatants, tired and exhausted, slept.

Cemetery Hill, the key of the position.

Crisis of the battle.

**July 4.** 19. The morning of the 4th was spent by both armies in burying the dead and caring for the wounded. In the afternoon it rained heavily. During the

---

18. In the battle of Gettysburg, what was the key of the position ?

night, Gen. Lee began his retreat, and by the 11th was at Williamsport, near the Potomac. On the night of the 13th, he succeeded in taking his army over the Potomac at Falling Waters and Williamsport. The Federal loss at Gettysburg was 2,834 killed, 13,790 wounded, 6,643 missing. The Confederate loss was larger—4,500 being buried on the field by the Union soldiers, and 40,121 were taken prisoners, 26,500 of whom were wounded. Nearly one-half of Lee's army was destroyed or taken.

PART V.  
P'D I.  
CH. III.

July 13.  
Lee re-  
crosses  
the Po-  
tomac.  
Un. loss,  
23,267.  
Confed-  
erate loss,  
50,000.

20. Gen. Meade continued his pursuit until July 25th, when Lee had retired south of the Rapidan, and Meade was near Warrenton. The two armies occupied nearly the same quarters that they had two months before, and so remained all winter.

Pursuit of  
Lee.

21. The naval operations in 1863 were important. The United States navy had increased, from 62 vessels, in 1860, to 588 vessels, of which 75 were iron-clads, carrying 300 guns; 301 steamers, 2,818 guns; and 112 sailing vessels, 1,328 guns. This force was divided into six squadrons, three to guard the Atlantic coast, one in the Gulf of Mexico, one on the Mississippi, and one on the Potomac.

Naval op-  
erations.

22. In January, the iron-clad Montauk ascended the Ogeechee river, engaged Fort McAllister, and destroyed the Nashville. In April, Com. Dupont, with nine iron-clads, attacked Fort Sumter. The cannonade was terrific, but the iron-clads were beaten off in a disabled condition.

Feb. 1.  
The Nash-  
ville de-  
stroyed.

April 7.  
Attack on  
Sumter.

23. In June, Com. Dupont sent the Nahant and Weehawken to Warsaw Sound, where they destroyed the Atlanta.

24. The Florida was captured in a neutral port of Brazil by Capt. Collins, of the Wachusett.

25. Two iron-clads were lost during the year. The Monitor, whose victory over the Merrimac had

Dec. 30,  
1862.  
Loss of  
the Mon-  
tor.

19. What was the Union loss? What the Confederate loss?—20. To what place did the two armies go?—21. What is said of the United States Navy?—22. What feat was performed by the iron-clad Montauk? What was the result of Com. Dupont's attack upon Sumter?—23. How was the Atlanta destroyed?—24. How the Florida?—25. What became of the Monitor and Merrimac?

**PART V.** astonished the world, went down at sea the night of December 30th, 1862. The Weehawken, whose capture of the Atlanta redeemed the iron-clads from the disgrace of the Charleston disaster, sank at her moorings December 6th, 1863, during a northeasterly gale.

**P'D I.**  
**CH. III.**  
Dec. 6,  
1863.  
Wee-  
hawken  
sunk.  
Vessels  
captured  
by the  
navy.

**1863.**  
Jan. to  
Sept.

Sept. 19.  
Battle of  
Chickamauga.

Nov. 23.  
Chattanooga.

26. The number of vessels captured by the several squadrons from the commencement of the war up to November 1st, 1863, was 1,045. The value of the prizes sent to admiralty courts for adjudication was estimated by Secretary Welles at \$13,000,000.

27. After the battle of Stone River, Gen. Rosecrans remained at rest until the middle of summer, when, by a series of strategic movements, he turned the position of Bragg, at Tullahoma, and forced him to evacuate Tennessee, and fortify himself in Chattanooga. Rosecrans crossed the Tennessee River. But Bragg, having been re-enforced by the division of Longstreet, from Lee's army, was now ready to meet Rosecrans. The two armies met at Chickamauga, and after a struggle of two days, Rosecrans was defeated and shut up in Chattanooga. The skill and conduct of Gen. Thomas, who commanded the left wing, saved the army. He maintained his ground, repulsed every assault, and brought off his division in good order.

28. After this defeat, the several military departments of the West were all combined in one, and Gen. Grant placed in command. He ordered Gen. Sherman to join him with the division at Memphis, and Gen. Hooker was also sent with his corps from the army of the Potomac. While Grant was thus concentrating his forces, Bragg weakened his by detaching Longstreet to attack Burnside at Knoxville. Grant seized his advantage, and assaulted Bragg's position at Chattanooga, carried it at all

---

26. How many vessels were captured during the war, and what was their value?—27. How did Rosecrans drive Bragg from Tennessee? What battle occurred in Northern Georgia? Who saved the Union army?—28. What military changes were now made? What victory did Grant obtain?

points, obtaining a signal victory. He immediately dispatched Gen. Sherman to relieve Knoxville. His approach caused Longstreet to raise the siege.

29. In March, 1863, Congress ordered an enrolment and draft. The enrolment was speedily completed; but as the time for the draft approached, great dissatisfaction prevailed. Combinations were formed to resist it. In New York city the resistance was manifested in a fearful riot that lasted three days. Union men, soldiers, and citizens, and especially negroes, were the objects of the fiendish hate and assault of the mob. The Colored Orphan Asylum was entered, its inmates thrust into the streets, and the building fired. Armories, gun-stores, rifle-factories, and private houses were plundered, and property worth three or four millions of dollars destroyed. Martial law was proclaimed, and the United States troops, under the command of Gen. Wool, suppressed the riot. It is said that more than a thousand lives were lost. Similar outbreaks occurred in Troy, Albany, Providence, and other places.

30. The Thirty-ninth Congress met December 1, 1863. The President's Message was mainly confined to the ordinary topics of foreign relations, finance, and war. Alluding to the still unsettled question of slavery, he expresses his resolution to abide by the Emancipation Proclamation. The effect of it had been favorable abroad and at home. He suggested a plan for restoring the rebellious States to their former relations to the Union, by which he would retain "the name of the State, its boundaries, its constitution, and general code of laws, as existing before the rebellion." He also promised not to object to any provision concerning the freedmen, which should "recognize their permanent freedom, provide for their education, and not be inconsistent, as a temporary arrangement,

PART V.

P'D I.  
CH. III.

Dec. 3.  
Knoxville  
relieved.  
Enrol-  
ment and  
draft.

1863.

July 13.  
Riots in  
New York  
and other  
places.

Riots in  
Troy, Al-  
bany, &c.

Dec. 1.  
Congress  
meets.

Presi-  
dent's  
Message.

The Afri-  
cans.

29. What is said of the draft and the riots?—30. When did Congress meet? What was the substance of the President's message?

**PART V.** with their condition as a laboring, landless, and homeless class."

**P'D I.**  
**CH. IV.**

**State**  
**elections.**

31. The State elections in the fall of this year were warmly contested. The opposition denounced arbitrary and military arrests, the suspension of the habeas corpus, and the draft; complained of the Emancipation Proclamation, and of the length and expense of the war, and everywhere made the arrest and exile of Vallandigham a principal ground of attack. In Ohio he was nominated as the Democratic candidate for governor, but the majority against him was nearly one hundred thousand. Every State, except New Jersey, sustained the administration.

## CHAPTER IV.

Number of opposing forces.—Banks' Red River Expedition.—Grant made Lieutenant-General.—Battle of the Wilderness.—Sherman's Campaign.—The Shenandoah Valley.—Wilmington and Fort Fisher.—Farragut in Mobile Bay.—Kearsarge and Alabama.—Re-election of President Lincoln.—Thomas defeats Hood.

**Confed-**  
**erate force**  
**354,000.**  
**Un. force,**  
**700,000.**

1. THE close of the year 1863 left the Federal government in possession of the Mississippi River, and also of all the important ports on the Atlantic coast and Gulf of Mexico, except Wilmington, Charleston, and Mobile. The Confederacy still had two large armies under two able commanders—Lee, in Virginia and North Carolina, at the head of 150,000, and Johnston, in Georgia, at the head of 60,000. The United States had, probably, twice that number in the field, besides those in forts and garrisons.

2. The clash of arms, that had been a short time

**31.** What was the result of the State elections?

**CHAPTER IV.—1.** What had been gained by the Union forces at the close of the year 1863? What was the strength of the two armies?—**2.** How was the campaign of 1864 opened?—**3.** What was done in Florida?

suspended, was again resumed by General Sherman, who made a destroying march from Vicksburg to Meridian and back.

3. An expedition, intended to occupy Florida, sailed from Hilton Head, landed successfully, but met with a disastrous defeat near Olustee.

4. Gen. Banks organized and led a formidable expedition to occupy the Red River country. The fleet and army ascended the river as far as Sabine Cross Roads. A series of battles resulted in the defeat of Banks, who barely escaped total destruction. The fleet was saved by the ingenuity of Lieut. Bailey, who constructed wing-dams on each side of the river, by which the channel in the middle was deepened, so that the ships could pass over the falls.

5. In March, the Confederate Gen. Forrest entered Western Kentucky as far as Paducah, captured Fort Pillow, and massacred the garrison, which consisted of negroes.

6. The guerrilla John Morgan made a raid into Eastern Kentucky, but was routed by Gen. Burbridge, and was subsequently killed while attempting to escape in the night from a house surrounded by troops under Gen. Gillem.

7. In February, Gen. Kilpatrick was sent on a raid through Virginia, with 8,000 cavalry. He went within six miles of Richmond.

8. Congress revived the act creating the office of lieutenant-general, and the President conferred it upon Gen. Grant, and assigned to him command of all the armies in the United States. He assigned to Gen. Sherman the Army of the West, with orders to move against Johnston; and to Gen. Meade, the Army of the Potomac, whose objective point was the Confederate Capital. He made his headquarters with Meade in the field.

PART V.  
P'D I.  
CH. IV.

1864.

Feb. 8.

March

Vicksb'rg

to Merid-

ian.

Feb. 6.

Expedi-

tion to

Florida.

Feb. 20.

March.

Banks'

Red River

expedit'n.

April 13.

Massacre

at Fort

Pillow.

May 1.

Morgan's

raid into

Kentucky

Feb. 28.

Kilpat-

rick's raid

Feb. 29.

Grant

made

Lieut.-

General.

4. What expedition did Gen. Banks lead? How was the fleet saved?  
—5. What is said of Fort Pillow?—6. What became of the guerrilla John Morgan?—8. What change did Congress make in the organization of the army?

**PART V.** 9. Meade's army was first in motion, and crossing the Rapidan, encamped on the battle-field of Chancellorsville. Here for three days raged the **P.D.I.** Battle of the Wilderness, a battle of musketry and **CH. IV.** personal prowess, on ground where cavalry and **1864.** artillery could not act. The loss on both sides **May 3.** was great, without decisive result. Grant then **May 5, 6, 7** made a flank movement to the left, and Lee re- **Battle of** treated to Spottsylvania, where an obstinate fight **the Wil-** ensued, lasting six days. Grant, by flank move- **derness.** ments, strove to interpose his army between Lee and Richmond. Lee skilfully foiled his adversary, but was gradually pushed back, until he was entrenched in the defences of the city.

**Spottsyl-** 10. Gen. Butler had in the mean time ascended **vania.** the James River, threatening Petersburg. Grant, finding Lee's position north of Richmond too strong for attack, transferred his whole army south of the James, hoping to surprise Petersburg, and thus compel the evacuation of Richmond. But Lee was again too quick for him, and by his ready disposition of his forces, occupied Petersburg, and held the two cities during a siege of nine months.

**Jan 14.** 11. Before Grant crossed the Rapidan, he had **Grant** planned an attack on Lynchburg, by a cavalry **crosses** force under Generals Crook and Averill, from **the James** North Virginia, and an army under Gen. Sigel to ascend the Shenandoah Valley. But Crook and Averill were checked at Wytheville, and Sigel defeated at New Market, and the plan failed.

**May.** 12. Gen. Sherman began his campaign May 6th. **Attempt** Johnston was strongly posted at Dalton. By a **on Lynch-** flank movement he was forced to retreat to Resaca, **burg fails.** where an obstinate battle was fought, compelling another retreat to Dallas. A series of flank movements, alternating with bloody conflicts, drove

**May 6.**  
**Sher-**  
**man's**  
**campaign.**  
**May 13, 14.**  
**Battle of**  
**Resaca.**

---

9. Where and when occurred the battle of the Wilderness? How did Grant attack and Lee defend?—10. What movement was made by Gen. Butler? How long did the siege of Richmond last?—11. What was attempted by Crook and Averill, and Gen. Sigel?—12. Describe Sherman's campaign from Chattanooga to Atlanta?

Johnston at length into Atlanta. Here Johnston was superseded by Hood, who took the offensive, and for three days made successive and fruitless attacks upon the Union lines. After a siege of several days, and an unsuccessful attempt by cavalry raids to cut the railroads south of the city, Sherman moved with nearly his whole army, defeated Hood, and forced him to withdraw. The city was entered by Gen. Slocum, September 2d, and the whole army was concentrated in and around it, to rest and recruit.

PART V.  
P.D.I.  
CH. IV.

July 20, 22,  
23.  
Battles  
before At-  
lanta.

Sept. 2.  
Capture  
of Atlanta

13. During September and the early part of Oct., Hood attempted to destroy the railroad between Atlanta and Dalton, but the approach of Sherman drove him into Alabama.

14. The Shenandoah Valley was the granary of Virginia. Although armies had marched through it many times, houses, barns, mills, and all kinds of property had been spared. From it Lee drew large supplies for his armies. It was, besides, the chosen and open route to the Potomac, by which at any time Washington could be threatened. During the summer, Lee dispatched a large force under Gen. Early, who descended the Valley, crossed into Maryland, and at one time advanced to the very defences of Washington. Gen. Sheridan was finally put at the head of a sufficient force, and in a series of brilliant battles totally destroyed Early's army. He then utterly destroyed and laid waste the beautiful and fertile Valley, burning barns, grain, forage, farming implements, and mills, and driving off all the cattle. With this campaign ended all military operations in the Shenandoah Valley.

Aug. 19 to  
Oct. 19.  
Sheridan  
in the  
Shenan-  
doah  
Valley.

15. During the whole war, it had been found impossible to blockade and shut up the harbor of Wilmington, North Carolina. From Oct. 1st, 1863, to December 31st, 1864, 397 vessels entered the

---

13. Where did Hood go?—14. What events occurred in the Shenandoah Valley?—15. Describe the blockade and capture of Wilmington.

**PART V.** port. While Grant was sitting down before Richmond, he formed the design of capturing Fort Fisher, which guarded the mouth of Cape Fear River. Gen. Butler was directed to organize a force under Gen. Weitzel and co-operate with the fleet under Com. Porter, in an attack upon Fort Fisher. Com. Porter performed his part, but Gen. Butler, after landing near the fort, deeming it too strong for assault, re-embarked, and returned to Fortress Monroe. Gen. Grant immediately sent back the troops under Gen. Terry, who landed, stormed the fort, and in a few days had possession of Wilmington.

**1865.**  
Jan. 16.  
Fort Fisher  
taken.

Aug. 4.  
Com. Farragut  
entered Mobile Bay.

16. One of the most brilliant achievements of the war was the capture of the forts at the mouth of Mobile bay, and the taking of the iron-clad ram Tennessee, by an expedition under Com. Farragut. Lashed to the topmast of his Flag-ship, the Hartford, he boldly led the way past the batteries, encountered and forced the formidable ram to surrender. The forts were invested, and yielded on the 7th and 23d of August.

**1864.**  
June 19.  
Naval  
fight between  
the Kearsarge  
and Alabama.

17. The Confederate cruiser, Alabama, Captain Semmes, after having sailed round the world, everywhere spreading terror to American commerce, and capturing and burning richly laden ships, at last took refuge in the French harbor of Cherbourg. The United States steamer Kearsarge, Capt. Winslow, then lying at Flushing, immediately sailed to Cherbourg, to watch the Alabama. Capt. Semmes, after his ship had been repaired by French mechanics, and his guns been manned by English artillerymen from the practice-ship Excellent, came out of the harbor, and engaged the Kearsarge. After a brief engagement, the Alabama was sunk. The Kearsarge picked up 69 of her men, 12 escaped to France, and the English yacht Deerhound, a

16. What brilliant achievement was performed by Com. Farragut?  
—17. What was the history and fate of the Alabama?

tender of the Alabama, saved 42, including Capt. Semmes, and took them to England. **PART V.**

18. November, of this year, brought the Presidential election. Mr. Lincoln was again the candidate of the Republican party. The Democratic candidate was Gen. McClellan. Three States voted for McClellan, giving him 21 votes; all the others voted for Mr. Lincoln, casting 212 votes. The popular vote was, Lincoln 2,213,665; McClellan 1,802,237; majority, 411,428. The elections for the 39th Congress were even more decisive for the administration.

19. Sherman having destroyed the railroad to Dalton, and burnt Atlanta, turned his face toward the sea. His march lay between the two great lines of railroad leading from Atlanta, the one to Charleston, South Carolina, and the other to Savannah. He lived upon the country. The two wings of his army overlapped the railroads, which they tore up, burning the ties, and twisting the rails. All cotton discovered was burned. All cattle, horses, mules, hogs, and poultry were taken and consumed, or brought away. Eight or ten thousand slaves followed the army. In less than a month, Sherman had marched without a check to Savannah, which was abandoned by Gen. Hardee, eight days after the storming of Fort McAllister. Here Sherman stayed about six weeks. In the mean time his late opponent, Hood, had invaded Tennessee, having collected an army of 42,000 men. Gen. Thomas, whom Sherman had left in command, concentrated his forces at Nashville. Gen. Schofield, who was opposing Hood's march, slowly retreated, standing once at bay, near Franklin, and giving Hood a bloody repulse, and then joining Thomas. Hood pushed on to Nashville. A battle, lasting two days, ended in the total discomfiture of Hood, and the dispersion of his army. The war was ended in the West.

P'D I.  
CH. IV.

Nov. 8.  
Presiden-  
tial  
election.

Mr. Lin-  
coln re-  
elected.

Nov. 14.  
Sher-  
man's  
march to  
the sea.

Dec. 12.  
Fort Mc-  
Allister  
taken.

Dec. 21.  
Savannah  
occupied.

Nov.  
Hood  
invades  
Tennes-  
see.

Nov. 30.  
Battle of  
Franklin.

Dec. 15,  
and 16.  
Thomas  
defeats  
Hood at  
Nashville.

18. What was the result of the election in the fall of 1864?—19. Describe Sherman's march to the sea. What was the fate of Hood in Tennessee? Who defeated Hood? Where? *See side-note.*

## PART V.

P'D I.  
CH. V.

## CHAPTER V.

Sherman's March through the Carolinas.—Siege of Petersburg and Richmond.—Fall of Richmond.—Pursuit and surrender of Lee.—Closing events of the war.—Capture of Jeff. Davis.—Assassination of Lincoln.

**1865.**

Jan. 15.  
Sher-  
man's  
march  
through  
the Caro-  
linas.

Feb. 17.  
Columbia  
taken.

Feb. 18.  
Charles-  
ton sur-  
renders.

March 22.  
Arrives at  
Goldsboro

Feb. 27.  
Sheridan  
sets out  
from Win-  
chester.

1. GRANT had ordered Sherman to put his army on transports at Savannah, and join him at Richmond. But the news from Gen. Thomas changed his plans, and he directed Sherman to continue his march through the Carolinas, by way of Columbia and Fayetteville, to Raleigh. Sherman started by the middle of January; but the rains and swamps so impeded his progress that he was a month in reaching Columbia. As he moved along, all the places on the coast, from Savannah to Newbern, including Charleston, were deserted by the Confederates, and with all their forts, guns, docks, and property, fell into the hands of the Unionists. In North Carolina, Sherman again met his old opponent Johnston, worsted him in two encounters, at Averysboro and Bentonville, and pursued him as far as Goldsboro, where he left his army, for a few days, to rest and be reloaded, and recruited, while he paid Grant a visit at City Point.

2. Sheridan lay in winter-quarters, at Winchester, until February 27, when, with 10,000 cavalry, he set out for an overland journey to join Grant or Sherman, his instructions directing him to cross the James River, strike the Southside Railroad at Farmville, destroy it, and seek Sherman at Raleigh. But after scattering Early's small infantry

---

1. Describe Sherman's march from Savannah to Goldsboro.—2. Where were Sheridan's winter-quarters? Describe his march to join Grant.

force at Staunton, and destroying the railroad from Charlottesville to Lynchburg, and the James River Canal from New Market to Duiguidsville, he learned that the bridges across the James had been burned by the Confederates. He therefore took another route, marched through Virginia to the White House, and thence across the Peninsula to Jones' Landing, and joined the army before Petersburg.

PART V.  
P'D I.  
CH. V.

Feb. 24.  
Joins  
Grant at  
Petersb'g.

3. The grand campaign projected in the spring of 1864, though drawn out to an unexpected length, had been everywhere successful. Three small armies remained to uphold the Confederate cause, one under Lee, in Petersburg and Richmond, another under Johnston, near Raleigh; and a third under Dick Taylor, in Mississippi.

4. The siege of Petersburg and Richmond had lasted nearly nine months. The two most considerable incidents were, first, the springing of a mine under one of the Confederate forts. The works were blown up, but the assailants were driven out of it. The attempt was a failure. The second was a night attack by Lee upon Fort Steadman, which was surprised and taken, but immediately retaken by a counter-assault, led by Gen. Hantranft.

July 30.  
Springing  
of a mine.

March 25.  
Assault  
on Fort  
Steadman

5. Grant had already ordered a general movement. It began by turning Lee's left at Five Forks, about ten miles west of Petersburg. The battle raged for two days; but Gen. Sheridan, on the second day, broke through Lee's lines, captured and dispersed the Confederate force, and carried the main works. During the night Grant ordered a general bombardment along the whole line, which was followed by an assault, in which Gen. Wright, with the sixth corps, pierced through to the Appomattox River, separating Lee's left wing from his centre

March 31.  
Battle of  
Five  
Forks.

April 1.  
Bombardment and  
assault of  
Petersb'g

---

3. What forces had the Confederates in the spring of 1863?—4. What were the two most important incidents in the siege of Petersburg?—5. How did Grant begin the final assault? What part did Sheridan perform? What part Gen. Wright?

- PART V.** and right. Richmond was no longer tenable, and  
**P'D I.** at ten o'clock Sunday morning, Lee telegraphed  
**CH. V.** to Jefferson Davis that the city must be abandoned.
- April 2.** During the day, Davis, with all the State officers,  
**Evacua-** and the coin and papers belonging to the Confed-  
**tion of** erate government, departed for Danville. Sun-  
**Richm'nd** day night the army deserted the works they had  
so long and bravely defended, and in the gray  
dawn of Monday morning forty troopers entered  
Richmond and planted their colors on the capitol.
- April.** 6. It was Lee's object to reach Danville, and effect  
**Pursuit of** a junction with Johnston at Raleigh. To prevent  
**Lee.** this, Grant hurried his columns across the paths of  
retreat, and intercepted Lee at all points. Sheridan  
led the pursuit, and at Appomattox station inter-  
posed himself between Lee and his only place of  
safety, Lynchburg. Grant now summoned Lee to  
surrender. Lee, in a letter, requested a suspension  
of hostilities and an interview.
- April 9.** 7. In an old farm-house the two generals met, and  
**Surrender** on a plain deal-table drew up the form of an agree-  
**of Lee.** ment by which the army of Northern Virginia  
ceased to exist.
- April 1 to** 8. The city of Mobile surrendered to Gen. Canby  
**May 26.** April 12th; Johnston yielded to Gen. Sherman  
**Closing** April 14th; General Stoneman, crossing the  
**events of** mountains from Tennessee, reached and captured  
**the war.** Salisbury on the 13th; Wilson, starting from  
Chickasaw, Alabama, captured Selma, Talla-  
hassce, Columbus, Montgomery, and Macon, de-  
stroying millions of property; Dick Taylor, May  
4th, surrendered to Gen. Canby all the forces in  
Louisiana and Mississippi; and, finally, Kirby  
Smith, May 26th, surrendered Texas.
- Pursuit of** 9. Jefferson Davis, after leaving Richmond, estab-  
**Jeff. Davis** lished himself for a few days at Danville. The  
surrender of Johnston left him defenceless and a

---

5. When did Jefferson Davis leave Richmond? Who first entered it?—6. Describe the pursuit of Lee.—7. When did he surrender?—8. What were the closing events of the war?

fugitive. With a small body of cavalry as an escort, he tried to thread his way south through the Federal lines, but was overtaken near Irwinsville, Ga., by a squadron of Michigan cavalry, captured with his family, and taken to Fortress Monroe.

PART V.  
P'D I.  
CH. V.

May 11.  
Captured.

10. On the 4th of March President Lincoln was sworn into office for a second term. The closing paragraph of his inaugural speech shows that he felt that the hour of triumph was at hand. He said: "With malice towards none, with charity for all, with firmness in the right, as God gives us to see the right, let us strive on to finish the work we are in; to bind up the nation's wounds; to care for him who shall have borne the battle, and for his widow and his orphan; to do all which may achieve and cherish a just and lasting peace among ourselves and with all nations."

March 4.  
Inauguration of  
President  
Lincoln

11. He visited Gen. Grant at City Point, and was present during the closing scene, telegraphing to Secretary Stanton the progress of the attack. He went into Richmond the morning after it was occupied by the Union troops.

March 27.  
Visits  
City Point  
and  
Richm'd

12. He returned to Washington, and busied himself in forming plans for the restoration of peace and good feeling.

13. Mr. Lincoln naturally felt the elation which follows success. It was apparent in his gait, in his face, in his talk. The events of the last month lifted a burden from his mind, and inspired him with new life. The cares and perplexities, the labors and responsibilities of office had borne heavily upon him. That his election had been made the occasion of secession and rebellion; that his whole term of four years had been one of civil war; that thousands of his fellow-citizens had fallen in the fratricidal contest, had sorely afflicted his gen-

Mr. Lin  
coln re-  
joicing.

---

9. What became of Jeff. Davis?—10. When was President Lincoln sworn in for a second term? Repeat the closing paragraph of his message?—11. Where did he go about the 1st of April? Describe his appearance and character at this time.

PART V.

P.D.I.  
CH. V.Lincoln  
desires  
union, and  
peace.

1865.

April 14.  
His assassi-  
nation.

erous and placable spirit. His tall form, that had bent slightly before the storm, was now again erect. The sadness that had settled upon his countenance was dispersed by the sunrise of peace. If he had pushed the war resolutely and sternly, if he had refused to listen to any proposition that looked to a broken Union and disrupted territory, it was then a conviction of duty, and with a determination to transmit to his successor the constitution unimpaired and the country undiminished. His triumph was certain, and his ambition satisfied. The war had not embittered his feelings. He loved his friends, and did not hate his enemies. He did not speak of crime and punishment; his thoughts dwelt upon reconciliation and forgiveness. It was his intention to temper justice with mercy, and to spend his second term in healing the wounds that had been given and received during the first.

14. And yet this good man, whose heart at the time was going out in mercy and kindness to his enemies, was the victim of a foul conspiracy. The conspirators only waited for the place and occasion. Mr. Lincoln, oppressed with the cares of state, had occasionally sought relief in recreation in the theatre. He had been invited, and consented to attend Ford's Theatre on the evening of the 14th of April. While he was seated in a private box, with his family and friends around him, absorbed in the mimic representation of the stage, the assassin stealthily entered the box, fastened the door with a beard previously prepared for the purpose, so that he could not be followed, and with a Derringer pistol shot his unconscious victim behind the ear, the ball penetrating the brain. Mr. Lincoln's head fell back upon the chair, and his body remained motionless. He was removed to a house near by, and attended by surgeons. But the wound was mortal. He did not speak after it, but

---

14. What day did he visit Ford's Theatre? What happened there? When did he die?

sank gradually until twenty-two minutes after PART 7.  
seven o'clock in the morning, when he expired. P. 51

15. The funeral was celebrated April 18, and the body was subsequently taken to Springfield by the same route by which Mr. Lincoln came to Washington four years before. April 16.  
Died at  
7:22 A. M.

16. Everywhere on the route the funeral cortège was received with demonstrations of respect and grief. The engines and cars on all the railroads were going with steps; churches were draped in mourning; the buildings on all the principal streets in every village and city were festooned in black; every citizen, male or female, wore some funeral emblem. Everywhere the national flag waved at half-mast. Wherever the cortège stopped, thousands thronged to obtain a last look at the face of the dead. The nation was profoundly grieved. No man, whether monarch, statesman, martyr, or public benefactor, was ever more widely or sincerely mourned, and by none was his death more deeply lamented and regretted than by those who had stood towards him for four years in the attitude of enemies. His body  
is borne  
to Spring-  
field.

General  
mourning

17. The funeral train arrived in Springfield, Ill., on the 30 of May. The remains were carried to the State House, and placed in the Hall of Representatives. The people came into the city from every direction, and more than seventy-five thousand persons passed into the hall, gazed a moment at the familiar features and went weeping away. The next morning the coffin was finally closed at ten o'clock, and the body, followed by the procession, under the charge of Maj.-Gen. Hooker, was carried to Oak Ridge Cemetery, and deposited in the tomb. May 4.  
His burial.

18. The assassin of Mr. Lincoln was John Wilkes Booth. He was recognized by Laura Keane, the actress, as he leaped from the box to the stage. He stood a moment, waved his pistol, and cried, The assassin.

15. Where did he die?—16. How did he die?—17. What took place at Springfield?—18. Who was the assassin?

PART V. " *Sic semper tyrannis !* " then leaping to the stage,  
 P.D. he fell, rose, and cried, " The South is avenged,"  
 ch. v. and instantly running behind the scenes, escaped  
 His through a rear door into the street, where a horse  
 escape. stood ready to bear him from the place of his  
 crime. One of his accomplices had entered the  
 house of Mr. Seward, and stabbed him in the face  
 and neck as he lay helpless upon a sick bed, and  
 Attempt had also fractured the skull of his son, F. A. Sew-  
 to assas- ard, who attempted to arrest the flight of the as-  
 sinate sassin. Another assassin had endeavored to find  
 Secretary his way to the room of the Vice-President, and  
 Seward. others had tried to reach the persons of Gen. Grant  
 and Secretary Stanton. Mr. Seward and his son  
 were not fatally wounded.

19. Pursuit was at once made for the conspirators.  
 Booth, who had concealed himself for a few days  
 among friends in Maryland, was overtaken in Vir-  
 ginia, and shot while resisting arrest. Eight of  
 Death of them were tried and convicted. Harrold, Payne,  
 Booth. Atzerot, and Mrs. Surratt were hung; Arnold,  
 Mudd, and McLaughlin imprisoned for life, and  
 Convic- Spangler for six years.  
 tion of his accomplices.

20. The accession of the Vice-President, Andrew  
 Johnson, to the Presidency, and the order and reg-  
 ularly with which the military and civil affairs of  
 the country moved on, is not so much due to the  
 strength of the government as to the intelligence  
 of the people. The political education of the peo-  
 ple, and the training of a century of self govern-  
 ment, have imbued them with a spirit of organiza-  
 tion strong and unerring as instinct. Mr. Lincoln  
 aptly and grandly said on the field of Gettysburg,  
 it was the duty of those present highly to resolve  
 " that government of the people, *by* the people,  
 and *for* the people, shall not perish from the earth."  
 It should be understood that the United States  
 government exists by and for the people, and not  
 the people by and for the government.

18 What became of him and his accomplices? What other per-  
 sons were assaulted? 20. Who succeeded Mr. Lincoln?

The Vice-  
 President  
 succeeds.

## PART V

P'D I.  
CH. VI.

## CHAPTER VI.

Financial History of the Parties.—Orders and Proclamations.—Conflicting Policy of President and of Congress.—Proposed Constitutional Amendment.—Reconstruction Law.—Russian America.—Electro-Magnetic Telegraph.

1. WHEN Mr. Lincoln was elected, the country was in debt \$64,769,703.08. The revenues were chiefly derived from two sources—the customs and the sale of public lands. The political events of 1860 had disturbed the public mind, and after the secession of some of the States, the government could not effect small loans of six to twelve millions of dollars, such was the distrust of the public credit.

Public  
debt be-  
fore the  
the war.

2. When Congress assembled in July, 1861, two loans, amounting to \$170,000,000, were authorized, but not more than eighty millions were sold as late as December 1, at the regular session. During the month, the banks suspended specie payments. The demands of the war were met, however, by loans, all negotiated in this country, without once resorting to foreign markets. The debt after the war, the 31st of August, 1865, rose to its highest sum, \$2,757,689,571. Since that date it has been diminished nearly three hundred millions.

When and  
how in-  
creased?

3. To support the war and sustain the public credit, a general excise law was passed, which yields about two hundred millions a year. The duties on foreign imports have been increased.

Taxation.

4. The passage of a National Bank law also strengthened the public credit, the circulation being secured by the deposit of United States bonds

Bank-law

---

CHAPTER VI.—1. What was the amount of the public debt at the time of Mr. Lincoln's election?—2. In the extra session of Congress what loans did it authorize? When did the banks suspend specie payments? How were loans obtained? When, after the war, was the public debt greatest? How much has it diminished? What is its amount?—3. What is said of an excise law?—4. Of a law for a National Bank?

**PART V.** in the treasury: it now amounts to about three hundred millions of dollars.

**P'D I.**  
**CH. VI.**  
**Fluctua-**  
**tions of**  
**the money**  
**market.**

5. Since the suspension of specie payments, December, 1860, for seven years, gold and silver have entirely disappeared from circulation, their place being supplied by treasury notes, "greenbacks," by fractional notes, and by the notes of the banks. The predictions of national bankruptcy and general insolvency, so confidently uttered by foreign statesmen, have not come to pass. The war has been prosecuted at enormous cost, but the credit of the nation has stood firm, and the business of the country has prospered. The premiums on gold have fluctuated greatly since January 1, 1862, when it was at par. January 1, 1863, it was at 35 per cent.; January 1, 1864, at 52 per cent.; January 1, 1865, at 59 per cent.; and January 1, 1866, at 48 per cent. Its highest point was \$1.85 above par, July 11, 1864.

**The Con-**  
**federate**  
**finances.**

6. The Confederate finances were in a wretched condition in less than a year after secession. The banks suspended payment, and specie disappeared. The government at first carried on the war by the aid of loans, and when this resource failed, an impressment law was passed, by which property was taken at an appraisal, and paid for in government notes. These notes, on account of the amount issued, their want of security, and the counterfeits of them, soon became worthless. In January, 1865, the premium of gold was as high as \$50. The result of the war was the total collapse of the Confederate credit and debt, a loss estimated at two thousand millions of dollars.

**Steps by**  
**which**  
**slavery**  
**was abol-**  
**ished.**  
**1861 to**  
**1867.**

7. The war, begun in the fear that slavery was in danger, ended with its extinction. The government for two years forebore to strike at slavery, and directed the military leaders not to disturb the

---

5. What can you say of the fluctuations of the money-market?—6. Give a sketch of the financial history of the Confederacy.—7. Of the history of slavery.

relation of master and slave. But in January, 1863, Mr. Lincoln issued a Proclamation declaring slavery abolished within the military lines of the Confederacy. In December, 1861, a law was passed abolishing it in all the Territories of the United States; in March, 1862, it was abolished in the District of Columbia; and at length, in 1864, an amendment of the Constitution was proposed by Congress, which was accepted by the States, in 1865, prohibiting slavery and involuntary servitude throughout the United States.

8. During the war, several attempts were made to negotiate a peace. Only two had the sanction of the Confederate authorities. The first was a mission of A. H. Stephens, July 3, 1863, who endeavored to obtain passage through the military lines to Washington, wishing to effect an exchange of prisoners. He was denied.

First over-  
ture for  
peace.  
July 3,  
1863.

9. The second was in January, 1865, when three Commissioners from Richmond—A. H. Stephens, J. A. Campbell, and R. M. T. Hunter—asked leave to confer with Mr. Lincoln. An interview was held on board a steam transport, at Fortress Monroe, February 3, 1865. The meeting was informal—nothing was written or read. The conversation was free, and ranged over all the subjects of difference. It ended without producing any agreement of views upon any of the matters discussed.

Second,  
Feb. 3,  
1865.

10. Soon after his accession, Mr. Johnson offered large rewards for the apprehension of Jefferson Davis, Clement C. Clay, Jacob Thompson, George N. Saunders, Beverly Tucker, and Wm. C. Cleary, on a charge of having incited and procured the murder of Mr. Lincoln. Mr. Clay was arrested in Alabama, but has been released. The manner of Mr. Davis's arrest has been related. He was kept a prisoner in Fortress Monroe for two years, then released on bail, and has since resided in Canada.

Supposed  
conspirators ar-  
rested.

---

8. Of a first overture for peace.—9. Of a second.—10. Of the arrest of supposed conspirators.

**PART V.** He was indicted for treason, and arraigned before the United States Court at Richmond. His trial is set down for the November term. The remaining persons have not been arrested. They live in exile.

P'D I.  
CH. VI.

Things  
done  
by Presi-  
dent  
Johnson  
to restore  
the se-  
ceded  
States.

11. An order was issued by the President for restoring the authority of the Union, and re-establishing government in Virginia. Similar orders followed in succession, appointing provisional governors in all the States lately in "rebellion," authorizing the calling of conventions to adopt constitutions suited to the new state of things. The several States proceeded under these orders to reorganize their governments, to resume their positions in the Union and their relations with the central administration. Among other things, all assented to the proposed amendment abolishing slavery, and all repudiated the debts incurred in the war against the Union.

Measures  
assented  
to by all.

A series  
of orders  
issued.

12. A series of orders was also issued, rescinding the blockade; restoring commercial intercourse; withdrawing martial law; annulling the suspension of the Habeas Corpus; granting a general amnesty with fourteen specified exceptions; and, finally, a proclamation declaring the insurrection "at an end."

**1866.**  
Move-  
ment of  
the Irish  
"Fenian-  
ism"  
arrested.

General  
Meade  
employed.

13. In the spring, several armed bodies belonging to an organization of Irishmen, called "Fenians," assembled at various points in the United States, near the Canada line, and threatened invasion. One of them crossed near Buffalo, but was speedily dispersed, some being taken prisoners, and some escaping to the United States. The President issued a proclamation against the invasion of friendly territory, and ordered Gen. Meade to the border, who proceeded to arrest and disarm the "Fenians."

---

11. Of the order of President Johnson for restoring to the Union Virginia and the seceded States. What two measures being assented to, all the South showed their sincere desire for peace?—12. What further series of orders was issued?—13. What can you say of "Fenianism."

14. The legislatures of the several States, assembled by virtue of the orders of President Johnson, proceeded to pass laws relating to the freedmen, regulating contracts for their labor, providing for their apprenticeship, and punishing vagrancy among them by imprisonment, and, in some instances, by sale into slavery for limited terms. When Congress assembled, a majority at once took decided ground against the President's policy of reconstruction. It was denied that the President had any power, under the laws and Constitution, to dictate the terms upon which the lately rebellious States should be readmitted to the Union. It was asserted that Congress alone had power to prescribe the conditions of restoration.

PART V.  
P'D I.  
CH. VI.

Orders of  
President  
Johnson

Displease  
a majority  
of Con-  
gress.

15. Congress passed certain bills, which were based on the assumption that no constitutional governments existed in those States, such as the Freedman's Bureau Bill and the Civil Rights Bill, which the President vetoed, and Congress passed over his veto. Congress also saw in the contract, apprentice, and vagrant laws, an attempt to restore the system of slavery in a modified form, and adopted a joint resolution proposing an amendment to the Constitution, making all persons born or naturalized in the United States citizens, entitled to equal rights and privileges; regulating the basis of representation in Congress, so that persons excluded by the States from suffrage should not be represented; forbidding any person to hold office under the General or State Government "who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given

What bills  
passed  
which the  
President  
vetoed,  
but Con-  
gress  
passed  
over the  
veto

What fur-  
ther  
Congress  
did.

---

14. What laws were passed by the legislatures of seceded States by orders given by President Johnson? How received by Congress?—  
15. What action was taken by Congress, and by the President?

**PART V.** aid and comfort to the enemies thereof;" guaran-  
**P'D I.** teeing the validity of the public debt of the United  
**CH. VI.** States; and declaring all debts and obligations in-  
 curred by the States in rebellion illegal and void.

**The** 16. This amendment has been ratified by twenty-  
**amend-** one States, rejected by thirteen, and not acted on  
**ment.** by three. In every one of the insurrectionary  
**Its fate.** States it was rejected almost unanimously. In con-  
 sequence of this rejection, Congress passed what is  
 known as the Reconstruction Bill, which treats all  
 the proceedings under President Johnson's policy  
 as without constitutional authority, and orders all  
 insurrectionary States under military law, with di-  
 rections to the Major-Generals to cause a registry  
 of the voters to be made, and elections to be held  
 for calling conventions to remodel their State Con-  
 stitutions. The President vetoed this bill, but  
 Congress passed it over the veto.

**Effect of** 17. The disagreement between the President and  
**the dis-** Congress has postponed the restoration of the se-  
**agreem't.** ceding States, and given rise to a bitter political  
 controversy, whose end no human foresight can  
 predict.

**States ad-** 18. During the session Colorado and Nebraska  
**mitted.** applied for admission into the Union. Congress  
 passed bills admitting both, but the President ve-  
 toed them. The Nebraska Bill was passed over  
 the veto.

**1867.** 19. By treaty between Czar Alexander and the  
**Russian** United States, Russian America was purchased and  
**territory** annexed to the United States, increasing its area  
**acquired.** about 400,000 square miles. The price paid was  
 \$7,200,000.

20. In 1844, Professor Morse, with the aid of

---

16. Give an account of the amendment proposed to the Constitu-  
 tion. What States ratified, and what rejected it; and what else was  
 done by Congress in opposition to the policy of the President? What  
 orders has Congress given concerning States under military law?—17.  
 How did the President meet the law passed? What has been the  
 effect of this disagreement between the President and Congress?—18.  
 What can you say of Colorado and Nebraska?—19. What of the new  
 Russian possessions? When was the treaty made? Between whom?  
 How much was the price?

Government, constructed between Washington and Baltimore the first line of the electro-magnetic telegraph for the transmission of intelligence. In a few years many lines were built, connecting distant cities, and extending hundreds of miles. In 1850, J. T. Mullock, Roman Catholic Bishop of Newfoundland, conceived the idea of a submerged line across the Atlantic Ocean from Trinity Bay to Ireland. In 1854, Cyrus W. Field took hold of the same idea: within the next two years organized a company in New York and London to put his plan in execution. He induced the governments of Great Britain and the United States each to grant to the company subsidies of \$70,000 a year. In 1857, an unsuccessful attempt was made to lay the cable. In 1858, a renewed attempt was made, and after one failure, a second trial was successful. But before it could be opened to public use, and on the very day of a great celebration in honor of Mr. Field and his success, the wire fails to transmit the signals. Mr. Field, convinced of the feasibility of the work, did not give up his labors. His zeal and efforts were at length rewarded with a splendid triumph. A new company was organized. The steamship Great Eastern was chartered, and in 1865, another trial was made and failed, but under circumstances that promised success in a future effort. In 1866, after careful preparation, the Great Eastern, laden with the cable, started from the coast of Ireland, and sailed with almost uniform daily speed for fourteen days, reaching Newfoundland June 28, having payed out 1837 miles of cable in a surface distance of 1652 miles. The inequalities of the bottom of the ocean required a length of 185 miles, or a slack of less than one-twelfth of the whole length. Since that day the two continents have been in daily interchange of news.

PART V.

P'D I.  
CR. VI.

Electro-magnetic telegraph, 1844, by Professor Morse. 1850. A submerged telegraph. First thought of plan carried out by C. W. Field.

1858. Fails; is renewed, and finally succeeds in 1867.

---

20. Who began the telegraph, and when? When and by whom was the idea of a submerged telegraph conceived? Who began the Atlantic telegraphs? Give a history of the operations of Cyrus W. Field.

## PART V.

P.D. I.  
cu. vi.  
**1867.**  
Importance of  
the telegraph.

21. The electric wires now reach in an almost unbroken line from Egypt to San Francisco, a distance of nearly 8,000 miles. In a few years the electric nerves will shoot intelligence, with almost instantaneous velocity, throughout the whole habitable portion of the world.

22. Our own continent is crossed by the wires, and all our principal cities are connected, and in daily intercourse with each other.

The Pacific Railroad the most important of any one ever built

23. Several lines of railroad are also in process of construction from important points on the Mississippi River toward the Pacific Ocean. Probably three or four will be built. One of them is already completed from San Francisco to the summit of the Sierra Nevada, whose peak has been tunnelled; and from Chicago to the top of the Rocky Mountains. Probably another year will see a continuous line of railroad from Easton to San Francisco, more than 3,000 miles. Good roads are the great agents of civilization, and as they penetrate the western plains and valleys the Indians and Mormons will disappear, overwhelmed by the resistless wave of civilization.

---

21. What does your author remark concerning the wires of railroads connecting the Mississippi River with the Pacific Ocean?—23. What is said of the Pacific Railroad?

THE CONSTITUTION

OF THE

UNITED STATES.

THE  
CONSTITUTION  
OF THE  
UNITED STATES OF AMERICA.

*Framed during the year 1787, by a convention of delegates, who met at Philadelphia, from the States of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North Carolina, South Carolina, Georgia.*

---

Preamble. We, the people of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defence, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this Constitution for the United States of America.

ARTICLE I.

Legislative powers. SECT. I.—All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a senate and a house of representatives.

Its source. SECT. II.—1. The house of representatives shall be composed of members, chosen every second year by the people of the several states, and the electors in each state shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the state legislature.

Eligibility of representatives. 2. No person shall be a representative, who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state in which he shall be chosen.

Manner and ratio of representation and taxation. 3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several states which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to servitude for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three-fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made

within three years after the first meeting of the congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each state shall have at least one representative: and, until such enumeration shall be made, the state of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three, Massachusetts eight, Rhode Island and Providence Plantations one, Connecticut five, New York six, New Jersey four, Pennsylvania eight, Delaware one, Maryland six, Virginia ten, North Carolina five, South Carolina five, and Georgia three.

4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any state, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies. Vacancies

5. The house of representatives shall choose their speaker, and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment. Speaker.  
Impeach-  
ments.

SECT. III.—1. The senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each state, chosen by the legislature thereof, for six years: and each senator shall have one vote. Senators,  
two from  
each state.

2. Immediately after they shall be assembled, in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one-third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the legislature of any state, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments, until the next meeting of the legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies. Arrange-  
ment for a  
choice of  
one-third  
every sec-  
ond year

3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that state for which he shall be chosen. Eligibility  
to office.

4. The vice-president of the United States shall be president of the senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided. Presiding  
officer.

5. The senate shall choose their other officers, and also president pro tempore, in the absence of the vice-president, or when he shall exercise the office of president of the United States.

**Power of trial in impeachments and** 6. The senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments. When sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath, or affirmation. When the president of the United States is tried, the chief-justice shall preside: and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two-thirds of the members present.

**penalty.** 7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall, nevertheless, be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

**Elections.** SECT. IV.—1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives, shall be prescribed in each state by the legislature thereof; but the congress may, at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

**Meeting of congress.** 2. The congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall, by law, appoint a different day.

**Their organization.** SECT. V.—1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner and under such penalties as each house may provide.

**Rules,** 2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two-thirds, expel a member.

3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may, in their judgment, require secrecy; and the yeas and nays of the members of either house, on any question, shall, at the desire of one-fifth of those present, be entered on the journals.

**and adjournment.** 4. Neither house, during the session of congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

**Compensation and privileges.** SECT. VI.—1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall, in all cases except treason, felony, and breach of peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance

at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased during such time; and no person, holding any office under the United States, shall be a member of either house during his continuation in office.

Plurality  
of offices.

SECT. VII.—1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the house of representatives; but the senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

Origin of  
bills,

2. Every bill which shall have passed the house of representatives and the senate shall, before it becomes a law, be presented to the president of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two-thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved of by two-thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the president within ten days (Sundays excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the congress, by their adjournment, prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

their  
course in  
becoming  
laws.

3. Every order, resolution, or vote, to which the concurrence of the senate and house of representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment), shall be presented to the president of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him; or, being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two-thirds of the senate and house of representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

Approval  
and  
powers.

SECT. VIII.—The congress shall have power—

1. To lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises; to pay the debts, and provide for the common defence and general welfare of the United States; but all duties,

imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States.

2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States.

3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several states, and with the Indian tribes.

4. To establish a uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States.

5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures.

6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States.

7. To establish post-offices and post-roads.

8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors, the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries.

9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the supreme court.

Of the duties and power of congress.

10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offences against the law of nations.

11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land or water.

12. To raise and support armies; but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years.

13. To provide and maintain a navy.

14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces.

15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions.

16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the states, respectively, the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia, according to the discipline prescribed by congress.

17. To exercise exclusive legislation, in all cases whatsoever, over such district (not exceeding ten miles square), as may, by cession of particular states, and the acceptance of congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the legislature of the state in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings:—and

18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department, or office thereof.

SECT. IX.—1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the states now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the congress, prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

Personal  
taxes.

2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when, in cases of rebellion or invasion, the public safety may require it.

Right of  
trial.

3. No bill of attainder, or ex-post facto law, shall be passed.

Attainder.

4. No capitation, or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census, or enumeration, hereinbefore directed to be taken.

Capitation

5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any state. No preference shall be given, by any regulation of commerce or revenue, to the ports of one state over those of another; nor shall vessels, bound to or from one state, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

Commer-  
cial  
revenues.

6. No money shall be drawn from the treasury, but in consequence of appropriations made by law; and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

Treasury.

7. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States; and no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

Interdic-  
tion of  
titles.

SECT. X.—1. No state shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

Conserva-  
tion of  
powers  
vested in  
the Union

2. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any imposts or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws: and the net produce of all duties and imposts, laid by any state on imports and exports, shall be for the use

Further  
defined.

of the treasury of the United States, and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of congress. No state shall, without the consent of congress, lay any duty on tonnage, keep troops, or ships of war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another state, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.

**SECT. I.—1.** The executive power shall be vested in a president of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the vice-president, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

The chief  
magistrate.

2. Each state shall appoint, in such manner as the legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the state may be entitled in the congress; but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

The man-  
ner of his  
election

3. The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot for two persons, of whom one at least shall not be an inhabitant in the same state with themselves. And they shall make a list of all the persons voted for, and of the number of votes for each; which list they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having the greatest number of votes shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if there be more than one who have such majority, and have an equal number of votes, then the house of representatives shall immediately choose, by ballot, one of them for president: and if no person have a majority, then from the five highest on the list, the said house shall, in like manner, choose the president. But in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two-thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. In every case, after the choice of the president, the person

by the  
people;

by the  
house of  
represent-  
atives,

having the greatest number of votes of the electors, shall be the vice-president. But if there should remain two or more who have equal votes, the senate shall choose from them, by ballot, the vice-president.

and of the  
vice-presi-  
dent.

4. The congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes: which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

5. No person, except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this constitution, shall be eligible to the office of president, neither shall any person be eligible to that office, who shall not have attained the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years a resident within the United States.

Require-  
ment for  
office.

6. In case of the removal of the president from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the vice-president; and the congress may, by law, provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the president and vice-president, declaring what officer shall then act as president, and such officer shall act accordingly, until the disability be removed, or a president shall be elected.

Provide in  
case of  
death or  
removal.

7. The president shall, at stated times, receive for his services, a compensation, which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive, within that period, any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

Compen-  
sation, and

8. Before he enters on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath, or affirmation:

"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of president of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

Oath of  
office.

SECT. II.—1. The president shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several states, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices, and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offences against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

His duties

2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the senate, to make treaties, provided two-

and powers  
to make  
treaties, &c.  
thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the senate, shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, judges of the supreme court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law. But the congress may, by law, vest the appointment of such inferior officers as they think proper in the president alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

3. The president shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the senate, by granting commissions, which shall expire at the end of their next session.

SECT. III.—He shall, from time to time, give to the congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them, with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

SECT. IV.—The president, vice-president, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

## X ARTICLE III.

SECT. I.—The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one supreme court, and in such inferior courts as the congress may, from time to time, ordain and establish. The judges, both of the supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation, which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

SECT. II.—1. The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority; to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls; to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction; to contro-

versies to which the United States shall be a party; to controversies between two or more states, between a state and citizens of another state, between citizens of different states, between citizens of the same state claiming lands under grants of different states, and between a state, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

2. In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls, and those in which a state shall be a party, the supreme court shall have original jurisdiction. In all other cases before mentioned, the supreme court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions, and under such regulations as the congress shall make. Rules of procedure.

3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury; and such trials shall be held in the state where the said crime shall have been committed; but when not committed within any state, the trial shall be at such place or places as the congress may, by law, have directed.

SECT. III.—1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court. Nature of treason, and

2. The congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason, but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted. how punished.

## ARTICLE IV.

SECT. I.—Full faith and credit shall be given in each state to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other state. And the congress may, by general laws, prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof. Guaranty of state rights,

SECT. II.—1. The citizens of each state shall be entitled to all the privileges and immunities of citizens in the several states. and equalization.

2. A person, charged in any state with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another state, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the state from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the state having the jurisdiction of the crime. State re quitation

and surrendered, 3. No person, held to labor or service in one state, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law, or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

Now states, SECT. III.—1. New states may be admitted by the congress into this Union, but no new state shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other state; nor any state be formed by the junction of two or more states, or parts of states, without the consent of the legislature of the states concerned, as well as of the congress.

and public lands, 2. The congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory, or other property, belonging to the United States; and nothing in this constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular state.

Protection of form of government, SECT. IV.—The United States shall guarantee to every state in this Union, a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against invasion; and on application of the legislature, or of the executive (when the legislature cannot be convened), against domestic violence.

## ARTICLE V.

Amendments of the constitution, with provisions, The congress, whenever two-thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the legislature of two-thirds of the several states, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid, to all intents and purposes, as part of this constitution, when ratified by the legislatures of three-fourths of the several states, or by conventions in three-fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the congress: Provided, that no amendment, which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, shall, in any manner, affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no state, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrages in the senate.

## ARTICLE VI.

A recognition of antecedent claims, 1. All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this constitution, shall be as valid

against the United States under this constitution, as under the confederation.

2. This constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof, and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every state shall be bound thereby, any thing in the constitution or laws of any state to the contrary notwithstanding.

Basis of  
govern-  
ment con-  
solidated,

3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several state legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several states, shall be bound by oath, or affirmation, to support this constitution; and no religious test shall ever be required, as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

and obli-  
gation of  
its officers.

## ARTICLE VII.

The ratification of the conventions of nine states shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution, between the states so ratifying the same.

Consti-  
tution.

*Done in convention by the unanimous consent of the states present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord, one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the Independence of the United States of America, the twelfth. In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.*

The Constitution, although formed in 1787, was not adopted until 1788, and did not commence its operations until 1789. The number of delegates chosen to this convention was sixty-five, of whom ten did not attend, and sixteen refused to sign the Constitution. The following thirty-nine signed the Constitution:—

Time of  
adoption.

*New Hampshire.*—John Langdon, Nicholas Gelman.

*Massachusetts.*—Nathaniel Gorham, Rufus King.

*Connecticut.*—William Samuel Johnson, Roger Sherman.

*New York.*—Alexander Hamilton.

*New Jersey.*—William Livingston, David Brearley, William Patterson, Jonathan Dayton.

*Pennsylvania.*—Benjamin Franklin, Thomas Mifflin, Robert Morris, George Clymer, Thomas Fitzsimmons, Jared Ingersoll, James Wilson, Gouverneur Morris.

*Delaware.*—George Read, Gunning Bedford, jr., John Dickinson, Richard Bassett, Jacob Broom.

*Maryland.*—James M'Henry, Daniel of St. Thomas Jenifer, Daniel Carroll.

*Virginia.*—John Blair, James Madison, jr.

*North Carolina.*—William Blount, Richard Dobbs Spaight, Hugh Williamson.

*South Carolina.*—John Rutledge, Charles C. Pinkney, Charles Pinkney, Pierce Butler.

*Georgia.*—William Few, Abraham Baldwin.

GEORGE WASHINGTON, *President.*

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

## AMENDMENTS,

*To the Constitution of the United States, ratified according to the Provisions of the Fifth Article of the foregoing Constitution.*

Religious  
toleration.

ART. I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the rights of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for a redress of grievances.

Rights of  
the press,  
petition.

The  
militia.

ART. II.—A well-regulated militia being necessary to the security of a free state, the right of the people to keep and bear arms, shall not be infringed.

ART. III.—No soldier shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

Search-  
warrant  
and  
seizures.

ART. IV.—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated; and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

Present-  
ment of  
grand  
juries.

ART. V.—No person shall be held to answer for a capital, or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service, in time of war, or public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offence to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled, in any

Judicial  
sage-  
guards.

criminal case, to be a witness against himself, nor be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use without just compensation.

ART. VI.—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the state and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defence.

Total by  
jury.

and wit-  
nesses.

ART. VII.—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact, tried by jury, shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of the common law.

regulated  
by com-  
mon law.

ART. VIII.—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

Bail.

ART. IX.—The enumeration in the Constitution, of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

line be-  
tween con-  
stitutional

ART. X.—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the states, are reserved to the states respectively, or to the people.

and state  
powers  
drawn.

ART. XI.—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another state, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

limitation  
of judicial  
power.

ART. XII.—The electors shall meet in their respective states, and vote by ballot, for president and vice-president, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same state with themselves; they shall name, in their ballots, the person voted for as president, and, in distinct ballots, the person voted for as vice-president; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as president, and of all persons voted for as vice-president, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit, sealed, to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the senate. The president of the senate shall, in the presence of the senate and house of representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted. The person having

Amend-  
ment to  
art. II,  
sect. IV.

respecting  
elections.

the greatest number of votes for president, shall be the president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such a majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers, not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as president, the house of representatives shall choose immediately by ballot, the president. But, in choosing the president, the votes shall be taken by states, the representation from each state having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the states, and a majority of all the states shall be necessary to a choice. And if the house of representatives shall not choose a president, whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the vice president shall act as president, as in the case of the death, or other constitutional disability of the president.

The person having the greatest number of votes as vice-president, shall be the vice-president, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then, from the two highest numbers on the list, the senate shall choose the vice-president—a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two-thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice.

But no person, constitutionally ineligible to the office of president, shall be eligible to that of vice-president of the United States.

Abolition  
of slavery.

ART. XIII.—Neither slavery, nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the party shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

Citizens of  
the United  
States.

Their  
rights in  
the states  
wherein  
they  
reside

ART. XIV.—All persons born, or naturalized, in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States, and of the states wherein they reside. No state shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any state deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

Bases of  
representation.

2. Representatives shall be apportioned among the several states, according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each state, in-

cluding Indians not taxed; but whenever the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for president and vice-president of the United States, representatives in congress, the executive and judicial officers of the state, or members of the legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such state, being twenty-one years of age, and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridge, except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens, twenty-one years of age in such state.

Reduction of the basis of representation.

3. No person shall be senator or representative in congress, or elector of the president and vice president, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any state, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any state legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any state, to support the Constitution of the United States shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion, against the same, or given aid and comfort to the enemies thereof; but congress may by a vote of two-thirds of each house, remove such disability.

Persons disqualified for holding office under the United States government.

The power of congress in such cases

4.—The validity of the public debt of the United States authorized by law, including debts incurred for the payment of pensions and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any state shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

In regard to the validity of the public debt.

Debt irregularly incurred, illegal and void.

5.—The congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation the provision of this article.

ART. XV.—The rights of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States or by any State on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

2. The Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

# ORTHOGRAPHY AND READING.

## NATIONAL SERIES

OF

## READERS AND SPELLERS,

BY PARKER & WATSON.

---

The National Primer . . . . .	.\$ 25
National First Reader . . . . .	38
National Second Reader . . . . .	63
National Third Reader . . . . .	1 00
National Fourth Reader . . . . .	1 50
National Fifth Reader . . . . .	1 88

---

National Elementary Speller . . . . .	25
National Pronouncing Speller . . . . .	50

---

Independent Third Reader . . . . .	75
Independent Fourth Reader . . . . .	1 00
Independent Fifth Reader . . . . .	1 50

---

The salient features of these works which have combined to render them so popular may be briefly recapitulated as follows:

1. THE WORD-BUILDING SYSTEM.—This famous progressive method for young children originated and was copyrighted with these books. It constitutes a process with which the beginner with *words* of one letter is gradually introduced to additional lists formed by prefixing or affixing single letters, and is thus led almost insensibly to the mastery of the more difficult constructions. This is justly regarded as one of the most striking modern improvements in methods of teaching.

2. TREATMENT OF PRONUNCIATION.—The wants of the youngest scholars in this department are not overlooked. It may be said that from the first lesson the student by this method need never be at a loss for a prompt and accurate rendering of every word encountered.

3. ARTICULATION AND ORTHOEPY are recognized as of primary importance.

## *The National Series of Standard School-Books.*

### ORTHOGRAPHY AND READING—Continued.

4. **PUNCTUATION** is inculcated by a series of interesting *reading lessons*, the simple perusal of which suffices to fix its principles indelibly upon the mind.

5. **ELOCUTION.** Each of the Higher Readers (3d, 4th and 5th) contains elaborate, scholarly, and thoroughly practical treatises on elocution. This feature alone has secured for the series many of its warmest friends.

6. **THE SELECTIONS** are the crowning glory of the series. Without exception it may be said that no volumes of the same size and character contain a collection so diversified, judicious, and artistic as this. It embraces the choicest gems of English literature, so arranged as to afford the reader ample exercise in every department of style. So acceptable has the taste of the authors in this department proved, not only to the educational public but to the reading community at large, that thousands of copies of the Fourth and Fifth Readers have found their way into public and private libraries throughout the country, where they are in constant use as manuals of literature, for reference as well as perusal.

7. **ARRANGEMENT.** The exercises are so arranged as to present constantly alternating practice in the different styles of composition, while observing a definite plan of progression or gradation throughout the whole. In the higher books the articles are placed in formal sections and classified topically, thus concentrating the interest and inculcating a principle of association likely to prove valuable in subsequent general reading.

8. **NOTES AND BIOGRAPHICAL SKETCHES.** These are full and adequate to every want. The biographical sketches present in pleasing style the history of every author laid under contribution.

9. **ILLUSTRATIONS.** These are plentiful, almost profuse, and of the highest character of art. They are found in every volume of the series as far as and including the Third Reader.

10. **THE GRADATION** is perfect. Each volume overlaps its companion preceding or following in the series, so that the scholar, in passing from one to another, is barely conscious, save by the presence of the new book, of the transition.

11. **THE PRICE** is reasonable. The books were not *trimmed* to the minimum of size in order that the publishers might be able to denominate them "the cheapest in the market," but were made *large enough* to cover and suffice for the grade indicated by the respective numbers. Thus the child is not compelled to go over his First Reader twice, or be driven into the Second before he is prepared for it. The competent teachers who compiled the series made each volume just what it should be, leaving it for their brethren who should use the books to decide what constitutes true *cheapness*. A glance over the books will satisfy any one that the same amount of matter is nowhere furnished at a price more reasonable. Besides which another consideration enters into the question of relative economy, namely, the

12. **BINDING.** By the use of a material and process known only to themselves, in common with all the publications of this house, the National Readers are warranted to outlast any with which they may be compared—the ratio of relative durability being in their favor as two to one.

# Parker & Watson's National Series of Readers

## TESTIMONIALS.

*From HON. T. A. PARKER, State Sup't of Public Instruction, Missouri.*

By authority of law it becomes my duty to recommend a list of Text-books for use in the Public Schools of Missouri. I deem it necessary to approve a list of books which will secure to the youth of the State a *uniform, cheap, and practical* course of study, and after careful examination have selected the following: *THE NATIONAL READERS AND SPELLERS, Monteith & McNally's Geographies, Peck's Ganot's Natural Philosophy, Jarvis' Physiology and Health, &c., &c.*

*From SAM'L P. BATES, LL.D., Asst. Sup't. Public Schools of Pennsylvania.*

I find that your series of Parker & Watson's National Readers are going into use in all our leading Normal Schools. They are unquestionably ahead of any thing yet published.

*From A. J. HAILE, Prin. Hebrew Educational Institute, Memphis, Tennessee.*

I take great pleasure in bearing testimony to the superior merits of Parker & Watson's Series of "National Readers."

*From PROF. F. S. JEWELL, of the New York State Normal School.*

It gives me pleasure to find in the National Series of School-Readers ample room for commendation. From a brief examination, I am led to believe that we have none equal to them. I hope they will prove as popular as they are excellent.

*From MOSES T. BROWN, Superintendent Public Schools, Toledo, Ohio.*

The different Series of other authors were critically examined by our Board of Education and myself, and the decision was unanimous in favor of the National Series. Our teachers are delighted with the books, and none more so than our primary teachers. *I consider the Series better adapted to our graded school system than any other now before the public.*

*From WM. B. AMES, Superintendent of Schools, Morris, Connecticut.*

They are well adapted to all degrees of scholarship—one lesson prepares the mind of the pupil for the next in consecutive order, from book to book—till the highest order of English composition is attained in the Fifth Reader.

*From JOHN S. HART, Prin. N. J. State Normal School.*

I approve of Parker & Watson's Readers highly. The selections are judicious, the arrangement good, and the books well made mechanically. We have adopted the 3d, 4th, and 5th of the Series in this school.

*From R. P. DECKARD, President Ewing College, La Grange, Texas.*

I think the National Series of Readers the best I have seen.

*Extracts from Report made to the California State Teachers' Association.*

The Committee, in presenting to this Convention the Series of Readers by Parker & Watson, would state that, regarded as a whole, we would give our unqualified support to them in preference to all others.

*From B. J. YOUNG, Superintendent Schools, Shelbyville, Illinois.*

The National Readers have been selected for use in the public schools of this city, and are giving very excellent satisfaction. During ten years' experience in teaching, I have found no books so well adapted to secure rapid and thorough progress.

*From the WILMINGTON (N. C.) DAILY HERALD.*

The National Series has attained probably a higher reputation than any other complete series of School-Books in existence.

For further testimony of a similar character, see special circular, or current numbers of the Educational Bulletin.

## The National Readers and Spellers.

### THEIR RECORD.

These books have been adopted by the School Boards, or official authority, of the following important States, cities, and towns—in most cases for exclusive use.

The State of Minnesota.

The State of Missouri.

The State of Alabama.

The State of North Carolina.

The State of Louisiana.

New York.

New York City.  
Brooklyn.  
Buffalo.  
Albany.  
Rochester.  
Troy.  
Syracuse.  
Elmira.  
&c., &c.

Pennsylvania.

Reading.  
Lancaster.  
Erie.  
Scranton.  
Carlisle.  
Carbondale.  
Meadville.  
Schuylkill Haven.  
Williamsport.  
Norristown.  
Bellefonte.  
Altoona.  
&c., &c.

New Jersey.

Newark.  
Jersey City.  
Paterson.  
Trenton.  
Camden.  
Elizabeth.  
New Brunswick.  
Phillipsburg.  
Orange.  
&c., &c.

Delaware.

Wilmington.

D. C.

Washington.

Illinois.

Chicago.  
Peoria.  
Alton.  
Springfield.  
Aurora.  
Galesburg.  
Rockford.  
Rock Island.  
&c., &c.

Wisconsin.

Milwaukee.  
Fond du Lac.  
Oshkosh.  
Janesville.  
Racine.  
Watertown.  
Sheboygan.  
La Crosse.  
Waukesha.  
Kenosha.  
&c., &c.

Michigan.

Grand Rapids.  
Kalamazoo.  
Adrian.  
Jackson.  
Morroe.  
Lansing.  
&c., &c.

Ohio.

Toledo.  
Sandusky.  
Conneaut.  
Chardon.  
Hudson.  
Canton.  
Salem.  
&c., &c.

Indiana.

New Albany.  
Fort Wayne.  
Lafayette.  
Madison.  
Logansport.  
Indianapolis.

Iowa.

Davenport.  
Burlington.  
Muscatine.  
Mount Pleasant.  
&c.

Nebraska.

Brownsville.  
Lincoln.  
&c.

Oregon.

Portland.  
Salem.  
&c.

Virginia.

Richmond.  
Norfolk.  
Petersburg.  
Lynchburg.  
&c.

South Carolina.

Columbia.  
Charleston.

Georgia.

Savannah.

Louisiana.

New Orleans.

Tennessee.

Memphis

## SCHOOL-ROOM CARDS.

To Accompany the National Readers.

---

Eureka Alphabet Tablet . . . . . \$1 50

Presents an alphabet upon the Word Method System, by which the child will learn to read in nine days, and make no small progress in reading and spelling in the same time.

National School Tablets, 10 Nos. . . . . \$8 00

Embrace reading and conversational exercises, object and moral lessons, form, color, &c. A complete set of these large and elegantly illustrated Cards will embellish the school-room more than any other article of furniture.

---

## READING.

---

Fowle's Bible Reader . . . . . \$1 00

The narrative portions of the Bible, chronologically and topically arranged, judiciously combined with selections from the Psalms, Proverbs, and other portions which inculcate important moral lessons or the great truths of Christianity. The embarrassment and difficulty of reading the Bible itself, by course, as a class exercise, are obviated, and its use made feasible, by this means.

North Carolina First Reader . . . . . 40

North Carolina Second Reader . . . . . 65

North Carolina Third Reader . . . . . 1 00

Prepared expressly for the schools of this State, by C. H. Wiley, Superintendent of Common Schools, and F. M. Hubbard, Professor of Literature in the State University.

Parker's Rhetorical Reader . . . . . 1 00

Designed to familiarize Readers with the pauses and other marks in general use, and lead them to the practice of modulation and inflection of the voice.

Introductory Lessons in Reading and Elocution . . . . . 75

Of similar character to the foregoing, for less advanced classes.

High School Literature . . . . . 1 50

Admirable selections from a long list of the world's best writers, for exercise in reading, oratory, and composition. Speeches, dialogues, and model letters represent the latter department.

# ORTHOGRAPHY.

## SMITH'S SERIES

Supplies a speller for every class in graded schools, and comprises the most complete and excellent treatise on English Orthography and its companion branches extant.

1. Smith's Little Speller . . . . . \$ 20  
First Round in the Ladder of Learning.
2. Smith's Juvenile Definer . . . . . 45  
Lessons composed of familiar words grouped with reference to similar signification or use, and correctly spelled, accented, and defined.
3. Smith's Grammar-School Speller . . . . . 50  
Familiar words, grouped with reference to the sameness of sound of syllables differently spelled. Also definitions, complete rules for spelling and formation of derivatives, and exercises in false orthography.
4. Smith's Speller and Definer's Manual . . . . . 90  
A complete *School Dictionary* containing 14,000 words, with various other useful matter in the way of Rules and Exercises.
5. Smith's Hand-Book of Etymology . . . . . 1 25  
The first and only Etymology to recognize the *Anglo-Saxon* our *mother tongue*; containing also full lists of derivatives from the Latin, Greek, Gaelic, Swedish, Norman, &c., &c ; being, in fact, a complete etymology of the language for schools.
- Sherwood's Writing Speller . . . . . 15
- Sherwood's Speller and Definer . . . . . 15
- Sherwood's Speller and Pronouncer . . . . . 15  
The Writing Speller consists of properly ruled and numbered blanks to receive the words dictated by the teacher, with space for remarks and corrections. The other volumes may be used for the dictation or ordinary class exercises.
- Price's English Speller . . . . . \*15  
A complete spelling-book for all grades, containing more matter than "Webster," manufactured in superior style, and sold at a lower price—consequently the cheapest speller extant.
- Northend's Dictation Exercises . . . . . 63  
Embracing valuable information on a thousand topics, communicated in such a manner as at once to relieve the exercise of spelling of its usual tedium, and combine it with instruction of a general character calculated to profit and amuse.
- Wright's Analytical Orthography . . . . . 25  
This standard work is popular, because it teaches the elementary sounds in a plain and philosophical manner, and presents orthography and orthoepy in an easy, uniform system of analysis or parsing.
- Fowle's False Orthography . . . . . 45  
Exercises for correction.
- Page's Normal Chart . . . . . \*3 75  
The elementary sounds of the language for the school-room walls.

# ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

## CLARK'S DIAGRAM SYSTEM.

Clark's First Lessons in Grammar . . . . .	45
Clark's English Grammar . . . . .	1 00
Clark's Key to English Grammar . . . . .	75
Clark's Analysis of the English Language . . . . .	60
Clark's Grammatical Chart . . . . .	83 75

The diagram system of teaching grammar in American schools is making rapid progress, and has been the result of the use of this system. While the old method of teaching grammar was tedious and weary, the new method is so simple and so easy that the pupil only after much weary practice can do it. The diagram system has effected the improvement of the old method, and has been the result of the use of this system. Teachers who are using this system will find it useful that they and their pupils did it in the most interesting and easy manner.

Like all other well-contrived improvements, the system naturally met at first with much opposition and ridicule. It has not only withstood the greatest part of this opposition, but has many of its warmest admirers among those who at first tolerate so radical an innovation. All it wants is to be tried, and to convince the most skeptical of its merit. No one who has tried it and intelligently tested it in the school-room has ever returned to the old method. A great success is already achieved, and it is easy to prophesy that the day is not far distant when the diagram system of teaching English Grammar. As the system is so simple and so easy, other text-books can appropriate this system and give it to the world.

Welch's Analysis of the English Sentence . . . . .	1 25
--	------

Remarkable for its clear and simple classification, its method of treating the various parts of the sentence, its method of treating the idioms and constructive laws of the language, etc.

## ETYMOLOGY.

Smith's Complete Etymology, . . . . .	1 25
---------------------------------------	------

Containing the Anglo-Saxon, French, Dutch, German, Welsh, Danish, Latin, Spanish, Italian, Greek, and Greek Words, and the English words derived therefrom accurately spelled, accented, and defined.

The Topical Lexicon, . . . . .	1 75
--------------------------------	------

This work is a *Synonym Dictionary*, an *Etymology*, a compilation of synonyms, and a *Dictionary of General Information*. It differs from the ordinary dictionary in being arranged by topics instead of the letters of the alphabet, and containing the synonyms of a "Readable Dictionary." An unusually valuable school-book.

# Clark's Diagram English Grammar.

## TESTIMONIALS.

From J. L. F. ...

...

From ...

...

From ...

...

From ...

...

From ...

...

From ...

...

From ...

...

From ...

...

From ...

...

From ...

...

...

# GEOGRAPHY.



## NATIONAL GEOGRAPHICAL SYSTEM.

### THE SERIES.

I. Monteith's First Lessons in Geography, . . . . .	\$ 75
II. Monteith's New Manual of Geography, . . . . .	1 10
III. McNally's System of Geography, . . . . .	2 00

### INTERMEDIATE OR ALTERNATE VOLUMES.

1 <sup>st</sup> Monteith's Introduction to the Manual, . . . . .	63
2 <sup>nd</sup> Monteith's Physical and Intermediate Geography, . . . . .	1 75

### ACCESSORIES.

Monteith's Wall Maps (per set) . . . . .	\$20 00
Monteith's Manual of Map-Drawing, . . . . .	25
Monteith's Map-Drawing and Object-Lessons, . . . . .	75
Monteith's Map-Drawing Scale, . . . . .	*25

**1. PRACTICAL OBJECT TEACHING.** The infant scholar is first introduced to a *picture* whence he may derive notions of the shape of the earth, the phenomena of day and night, the distribution of land and water, and the great natural divisions, which mere words would fail entirely to convey to the untutored mind. Other pictures follow on the same plan, and the child's mind is called upon to grasp no idea without the aid of a pictorial illustration. Carried on to the higher books, this system culminates in No. 2<sup>d</sup>, where such matters as climates, ocean currents, the winds, peculiarities of the earth's crust, clouds and rain, are pictorially explained and rendered apparent to the most obtuse. The illustrations used for this purpose belong to the highest grade of art.

**2. CLEAR, BEAUTIFUL, AND CORRECT MAPS.** In the lower numbers the maps avoid unnecessary detail, while respectively progressive, and affording the pupil new matter for acquisition each time he approaches in the constantly enlarging circle the point of coincidence with previous lessons in the more elementary books. In No. 2<sup>d</sup>, the maps embrace many new and striking features. One of the most effective of these is the new plan for displaying on each map the relative sizes of countries not represented, thus obviating much confusion which has arisen from the necessity of presenting maps in the same atlas drawn on different scales. The maps of No. 3 have long been celebrated for their superior beauty and completeness. This is the only school book in which the attempt to make a *complete atlas also clear and distinct*, has been successful. The map *coloring* throughout the series is also noticeable. Delicate and subdued tints take the place of the startling glare of inharmonious colors which too frequently in such treatises dazzle the eyes, distract the attention, and serve to overwhelm the names of towns and the natural features of the landscape.

# The Advanced Course of Arithmetic

## GEOMETRY—Continued

1. THE ELEMENTS OF THE TRIANGLE. A triangle is a figure bounded by three straight lines. The three straight lines are called the sides of the triangle. The angles formed by the sides of the triangle are called the angles of the triangle. The sum of the angles of a triangle is equal to two right angles.

2. THE CLASSIFICATION AND STRATIFICATION OF THE TRIANGLE. The classification of triangles is based upon the number of equal sides and the number of equal angles. A triangle is called equilateral if all three sides are equal and all three angles are equal. A triangle is called isosceles if two sides are equal and the two angles opposite the equal sides are equal. A triangle is called scalene if no two sides are equal and no two angles are equal. A triangle is called acute if all three angles are less than a right angle. A triangle is called right if one angle is a right angle. A triangle is called obtuse if one angle is greater than a right angle.

3. THE AREA OF THE TRIANGLE. The area of a triangle is the measure of the surface enclosed by the three sides of the triangle. The area of a triangle is equal to one-half the product of the base and the height. The base of a triangle is any one of the three sides. The height of a triangle is the perpendicular distance from the vertex opposite the base to the base.

4. THE AREA OF THE PARALLELOGRAM. The area of a parallelogram is the measure of the surface enclosed by the four sides of the parallelogram. The area of a parallelogram is equal to the product of the base and the height. The base of a parallelogram is any one of the four sides. The height of a parallelogram is the perpendicular distance from the vertex opposite the base to the base. The area of a parallelogram is equal to the area of a rectangle having the same base and height.

5. THE AREA OF THE RECTANGLE AND THE SQUARE. The area of a rectangle is the measure of the surface enclosed by the four sides of the rectangle. The area of a rectangle is equal to the product of the base and the height. The base of a rectangle is any one of the four sides. The height of a rectangle is the perpendicular distance from the vertex opposite the base to the base. The area of a square is the measure of the surface enclosed by the four sides of the square. The area of a square is equal to the product of the side and the side. The side of a square is any one of the four sides.

6. THE AREA OF THE CIRCLE. The area of a circle is the measure of the surface enclosed by the circumference of the circle. The area of a circle is equal to one-half the product of the circumference and the radius. The circumference of a circle is the measure of the distance around the circle. The radius of a circle is the perpendicular distance from the center of the circle to the circumference.

7. ANALOGOUS FIGURES. Two figures are called analogous figures if they are similar figures. The area of a figure is proportional to the square of the length of any one of its sides. The area of a figure is proportional to the square of the length of any one of its altitudes. The area of a figure is proportional to the square of the length of any one of its medians.

## Monteith & McNally's National Geographies.

### CRITICAL OPINIONS.

FROM R. A. ADAMS, *Member of Board of Education, New York.*

I have caused by examination of the Book of Supply of our Board, that considerably the largest number of any series now used in our public schools is the National, by Monteith and McNally.

FROM BRO. FARRAR, *Chief of Department of the vast Educational Society of the CHRISTIAN BROTHERS in the United States.*

Having been convinced for some time past that the series of Geographies in use in our schools were not giving satisfaction, and came far short of meeting our most reasonable expectations, I have felt it my imperative duty to examine into this matter, and see if a remedy could not be found.

Copies of the different Geographies published in this country have been placed at our command for examination. On account of other pressing duties we have not been able to give as much time to the investigation of all these different series as we could have desired; yet we have found enough to convince us that there are many others better than those we are now using; but we cheerfully give our most decided preference, above all others, to the National Series, by Monteith & McNally.

Their easy gradation, their thoroughly practical and independent character, their comprehensive completeness as a full and accurate system, the wise discrimination shown in the selection of the subject matter, the beautiful and copious illustrations, the neat cut type, the general execution of the works, and other excellencies, will commend them to the friends of education everywhere.

From the "HOME MONTHLY," Nashville, Tenn.

MONTETH'S AND McNALLY'S GEOGRAPHIES. Geography is so closely connected with Astronomy, History, Ethnology, and Geology, that it is difficult to define its limit in the construction of a text-book. If the author confines himself strictly to a description of the earth's surface, his book will be dry, meager, and unintelligible to a child. If, on the other hand, he attempts to give information on the cognate sciences, he enters a boundless field, and may wander too far. It seems to us that the authors of the series before us have hit on the happy medium between too much and too little. *The First Lessons*, by applying the system of object-teaching, renders the subject so attractive that a child, just able to read, may become deeply interested in it. The second book of the course enlarges the view, but still keeps to the maps and simple descriptions. Then, in the third book, we have Geography combined with History and Astronomy. A general view of the solar system is presented, so that the pupil may understand the earth's position on the map of the heavens. The first part of the fourth book treats of Physical Geography, and contains a vast amount of knowledge compressed into a small space. It is made bright and attractive by beautiful pictures and suggestive illustrations, on the principle of object-teaching. The maps in the second part of this volume are remarkably clear, and the map exercises are copious and judicious. In the fifth and last volume of the series, the whole subject is reviewed and systematized. This is strictly a Geography. Its maps are beautifully engraved and clearly printed. The map exercises are full and comprehensive. In all these books the maps, questions and descriptions are given in the same volume. In most geographies there are too many details and minute descriptions—more than any child out of purgatory ought to be required to learn. The power of memory is overstrained; there is confusion—no clearly defined idea is formed in the child's mind. But in these books, in brief, pointed descriptions, and constant use of bright, accurate maps, the whole subject is photographed on the mind.

# The National System of Geography,

BY MONTEITH & McNALLY.

## ITS RECORD.

These popular text-books have been adopted, by official authority, for the schools of the following States, cities, and associations—in most cases for exclusive and uniform use.

### CALIFORNIA.

MISSOURI.

ALABAMA.

TENNESSEE.

### STATES.

VERMONT.

IOWA.

LOUISIANA.

MINNESOTA.

NORTH CAROLINA.

KANSAS.

### CITIES.

New York City.

Brooklyn.

New Orleans.

Buffalo.

Richmond.

Jersey City.

Hartford.

Worcester.

Louisville.

Newark.

Milwaukee.

Charleston.

Rochester.

Mobile.

Syracuse.

Memphis.

Nashville.

Utica.

Wilmington.

Trenton.

Norfolk.

Norwich.

Lockport.

Dubuque.

Portland.

Savannah.

Indianapolis.

Springfield.

Wheeling.

Toledo.

Bridgeport.

St. Paul.

### ASSOCIATIONS.

The Society of the CHRISTIAN BROTHERS, representing 40,000 pupils.

The FRANCISCAN BROTHERS, 8,000 pupils.

AMERICAN MISSIONARY SOCIETY, 50,000 pupils.

---

## Monteith's Physical & Intermediate Geography.

This is the most recently published of the Geographical Series, and as might have been anticipated, was very warmly received.

### TESTIMONIALS IN BRIEF.

The more I examine the better I am pleased.—J. T. GOODNOW, *State Supt. Kans.*

Has no superior as a text-book.—E. J. THOMPSON, *Supt. Fillmore Co., Minn.*

Brief, clear, suggestive, and admirably adapted.—E. CONANT, *Prin. Vt. Normal.*

It is a gem of a book.—E. A. STRONG, *Supt. Public Schools, Grand Rapids, Mich.*

The best adapted we have seen.—O. FAVILLE, *State Supt., Iowa.*

A book that has long been needed.—A. J. KINGMAN, *Supt. McHenry Co., Ill.*

Prepared with labor, care, and well adapted.—C. B. HALSTEAD, *Supt. Newburg, N. Y.*

The best Geography ever published.—J. HUTCHISON, *Prin. Boys' Sch. Jefferson, La.*

I like it very much.—A. J. CRAIG, *State Superintendent, Wisconsin.*

Cannot fail to awaken a new interest.—*Vermont School Journal.*

[*Coll., Va.*

A new field cultivated with great success.—T. C. JOHNSON, *Pres. Randolph Macon.*

Contains more common sense than any other.—J. ANGEAR, *Prin. Madison Ac. Iowa.*

# M A T H E M A T I C S.

## DAVIES' NATIONAL COURSE.

### A R I T H M E T I C.

		SLATED.
1. Davies' Primary Arithmetic . . . . .	\$ 25	
2. Davies' Intellectual Arithmetic . . . . .	45	
3. Davies' Elements of Written Arithmetic . . . . .	50	\$ 65
4. Davies' Practical Arithmetic . . . . .	1 00	1 10
Key to Practical Arithmetic . . . . .	*1 00	
5. Davies' University Arithmetic . . . . .	1 40	1 55
Key to University Arithmetic . . . . .	*1 40	

### A L G E B R A.

1. Davies' New Elementary Algebra . . . . .	1 25	1 40
Key to Elementary Algebra . . . . .	*1 25	
2. Davies' University Algebra . . . . .	1 60	1 75
Key to University Algebra . . . . .	*1 60	
3. Davies' Bourdon's Algebra . . . . .	2 25	2 45
Key to Bourdon's Algebra . . . . .	*2 25	

### G E O M E T R Y.

1. Davies' Elementary Geometry and Trigonometry . . . . .	1 40	1 55
2. Davies' Legendre's Geometry . . . . .	2 25	2 45
3. Davies' Analytical Geometry and Calculus . . . . .	2 50	2 70
4. Davies' Descriptive Geometry . . . . .	2 75	3 00

### M E N S U R A T I O N.

1. Davies' Practical Mathematics and Mensuration . . . . .	1 40	1 55
2. Davies' Surveying and Navigation . . . . .	2 50	2 70
3. Davies' Shades, Shadows, and Perspective . . . . .	3 75	4 00

### M A T H E M A T I C A L S C I E N C E.

Davies' Grammar of Arithmetic . . . . .	* 50
Davies' Outlines of Mathematical Science . . . . .	*1 00
Davies' Logic and Utility of Mathematics . . . . .	*1 50
Davies & Peck's Dictionary of Mathematics . . . . .	*3 50

## DAVIES' NATIONAL COURSE of MATHEMATICS. ITS RECORD.

In claiming for this series the first place among American text-books, of whatever class, the Publishers appeal to the magnificent record which its volumes have earned during the *thirty-five years* of Dr. Charles Davies' mathematical labors. The unremitting exertions of a life-time have placed the *modern series* on the same proud eminence among competitors that each of its predecessors has successively enjoyed in a course of constantly improved editions, now rounded to their perfect fruition—for it seems indeed that this science is susceptible of no further demonstration.

During the period alluded to, many authors and editors in this department have started into public notice, and by borrowing ideas and processes original with Dr. Davies, have enjoyed a brief popularity, but are now almost unknown. Many of the series of to-day, built upon a similar basis, and described as "modern books," are destined to a similar fate; while the most far-seeing eye will find it difficult to fix the time, on the basis of any data afforded by their past history, when these books will cease to increase and prosper, and fix a still firmer hold on the affection of every educated American.

One cause of this unparalleled popularity is found in the fact that the enterprise of the author did not cease with the original completion of his books. Always a practical teacher, he has incorporated in his text-books from time to time the advantages of every improvement in methods of teaching, and every advance in science. During all the years in which he has been laboring, he constantly submitted his own theories and those of others to the practical test of the class-room—approving, rejecting, or modifying them as the experience thus obtained might suggest. In this way he has been able to produce an almost perfect series of class-books, in which every department of mathematics has received minute and exhaustive attention.

Nor has he yet retired from the field. Still in the prime of life, and enjoying a ripe experience which no other living mathematician or teacher can emulate, his pen is ever ready to carry on the good work, as the progress of science may demand. Witness his recent exposition of the "Metric System," which received the official endorsement of Congress, by its Committee on Uniform Weights and Measures.

DAVIES' SYSTEM IS THE ACKNOWLEDGED NATIONAL STANDARD FOR THE UNITED STATES, for the following reasons:—

1st. It is the basis of instruction in the great national schools at West Point and Annapolis.

2d. It has received the *quasi* endorsement of the National Congress.

3d. It is exclusively used in the public schools of the National Capital.

4th. The officials of the Government use it as authority in all cases involving mathematical questions.

5th. Our great soldiers and sailors commanding the national armies and navies were educated in this system. So have been a majority of eminent scientists in this country. All these refer to "Davies" as authority.

6th. A larger number of American citizens have received their education from this than from any other series.

7th. The series has a larger circulation throughout the whole country than any other, being *extensively used in every State in the Union.*

MATHEMATICS—Continued.

## ARITHMETICAL EXAMPLES.

Reuck's Examples in Denominate Numbers \$ 50

Reuck's Examples in Arithmetic . . . . 1 00

These volumes differ from the ordinary arithmetic in their peculiarly *practical* character. They are composed mainly of examples, and afford the most severe and thorough discipline for the mind. While a book which should contain a complete treatise of theory and practice would be too cumbersome for every-day use, the insufficiency of *practical* examples has been a source of complaint.

## HIGHER MATHEMATICS.

Church's Elements of Calculus . . . . 2 50

Church's Analytical Geometry . . . . 2 50

Church's Descriptive Geometry, with Shades,  
Shadows, and Perspective . . . . 4 00

These volumes constitute the "West Point Course" in their several departments.

Courtenay's Elements of Calculus . . . . 3 00

A work especially popular at the South.

Hackley's Trigonometry . . . . 3 00

With applications to navigation and surveying, nautical and practical geometry and geodesy, and logarithmic, trigonometrical, and nautical tables.

---

## SLATED ARITHMETICS.

The Publishers have the pleasure to announce that they have perfected arrangements with the proprietor of Jocelyn's patent for Slated Books, whereby the "National Series of School Books" will enjoy the exclusive use of this remarkable and valuable invention. It consists of the application of an artificially slated surface to the inner cover of a book, with flap of the same opening outward, so that students may refer to the book and use the slate at one and the same time, and as though the slate were detached. When folded up, the slate preserves examples and memoranda till needed. The material used is as durable as the stone slate. The additional cost of books thus improved is trifling.

---

## THE METRIC SYSTEM.

Resolution of the Committee of the House of Representatives on a "Uniform System of Coinage, Weights, and Measures."

*Be it Resolved*, That Professor Charles Davies, LL.D., of the State of New York, be requested to confer with superintendents of public instruction, and teachers of schools, and others interested in a reform of the present incongruous system, and by lectures and addresses, to promote its general introduction and use.

The official version of the Metric System, as prepared by Dr. Davies, may be found in the Written, Practical, and University Arithmetics of the Mathematical Series, and is also published separately, price postpaid, *five cents*.

## Davies' National Course of Mathematics.

### TESTIMONIALS.

*From L. VAN BOKKELEN, State Superintendent Public Instruction, Maryland.*

The series of Arithmetics edited by Prof. Davies, and published by your firm, have been used for many years in the schools of several counties, and the city of Baltimore, and have been approved by teachers and commissioners.

Under the law of 1865, establishing a uniform system of Free Public Schools, these Arithmetics were unanimously adopted by the State Board of Education, after a careful examination, and are now used in all the Public Schools of Maryland.

These facts evidence the high opinion entertained by the School Authorities of the value of the series theoretically and practically.

*From HORACE WEBSTER, President of the College of New York.*

The undersigned has examined, with care and thought, several volumes of Davies' Mathematics, and is of the opinion that, as a whole, it is the most complete and best course for Academic and Collegiate instruction with which he is acquainted.

*From DAVID N. CAMP, State Superintendent of Common Schools, Connecticut.*

I have examined Davies' Series of Arithmetics with some care. The language is clear and precise; each principle is thoroughly analyzed, and the whole so arranged as to facilitate the work of instruction. Having observed the satisfaction and success with which the different books have been used by eminent teachers, it gives me pleasure to commend them to others.

*From J. O. WILSON, Chairman Committee on Text-Books, Washington, D. C.*

I consider Davies' Arithmetics decidedly superior to any other series, and in this opinion I am sustained, I believe, by the entire Board of Education and Corps of Teachers in this city, where they have been used for several years past.

*From JOHN L. CAMPBELL, Professor of Mathematics, Wabash College, Indiana.*

A proper combination of abstract reasoning and practical illustration is the chief excellence in Prof. Davies' Mathematical works. I prefer his Arithmetics, Algebras, Geometry, and Trigonometry to all others now in use, and cordially recommend them to all who desire the advancement of sound learning.

*From MAJOR J. H. WHITTLESEY, Government Inspector of Military Schools.*

Be assured I regard the works of Professor Davies, with which I am acquainted, as by far the best text-books in print on the subjects which they treat. I shall certainly encourage their adoption wherever a word from me may be of any avail.

*From T. MCC. BALLANTINE, Professor Mathematics, Cumberland College, Kentucky.*

I have long taught Prof. Davies' Course of Mathematics, and I continue to like their working.

*From JOHN McLEAN BELL, B. A., Principal of Lower Canada College.*

I have used Davies' Arithmetical and Mathematical Series as text-books in the schools under my charge for the last six years. These I have found of great efficacy in exciting, invigorating, and concentrating the intellectual faculties of the young.

Each treatise serves as an introduction to the next higher, by the similarity of its reasonings and methods; and the student is carried forward, by easy and gradual steps, over the whole field of mathematical inquiry, and that, too, in a *shorter* time than is usually occupied in mastering a single department. I sincerely and heartily recommend them to the attention of my fellow-teachers in Canada.

*From D. W. STEELZ, Prin. Philekoian Academy, Cold Springs, Texas.*

I have used Davies' Arithmetics till I know them nearly by heart. A better series of school-books never were published. I have recommended them until they are now used in all this region of country.

---

A large mass of similar "Opinions" may be obtained by addressing the publishers for special circular for Davies' Mathematics. New recommendations are published in current numbers of the *Educational Bulletin*.

# HISTORY.

**Monteith's Youth's History, . . . . .** \$ 75

A History of the United States for beginners. It is arranged upon the catechetical plan, with illustrative maps and engravings, review questions, dates in parentheses (that their study may be optional with the younger class of learners), and interesting Biographical Sketches of all persons who have been prominently identified with the history of our country.

**Willard's United States, Sch. ed., \$1 40. Un. ed. 2 25**

Do. do. University edition, . 2 25

The plan of this standard work is chronologically exhibited in front of the title-page; the Maps and Sketches are found useful assistants to the memory, and dates, usually so difficult to remember, are so systematically arranged as in a great degree to obviate the difficulty. Candor, impartiality, and accuracy, are the distinguishing features of the narrative portion.

**Willard's Universal History, . . . . .** 2 35

The most valuable features of the "United States" are reproduced in this. The peculiarities of the work are its great conciseness and the prominence given to the chronological order of events. The margin marks each successive era with great distinctness, so that the pupil retains not only the event but its time, and thus fixes the order of history firmly and usefully in his mind. Mrs. Willard's books are constantly revised, and at all times written up to embrace important historical events of recent date.

**Berard's History of England, . . . . .** 1 75

By an authoress well known for the success of her History of the United States. The social life of the English people is felicitously interwoven, as in fact, with the civil and military transactions of the realm.

**Ricord's History of Rome, . . . . .** 1 60

Possesses the charm of an attractive romance. The Fables with which this history abounds are introduced in such a way as not to deceive the inexperienced, while adding materially to the value of the work as a reliable index to the character and institutions, as well as the history of the Roman people.

**Hanna's Bible History, . . . . .** 1 25

The only compendium of Bible narrative which affords a connected and chronological view of the important events there recorded, divested of all superfluous detail.

**Summary of History, Complete . . . . .** 60

American History, \$0 40. French and Eng. Hist. 35

A well proportioned outline of leading events, condensing the substance of the more extensive text-book in common use into a series of statements so brief, that every word may be committed to memory, and yet so comprehensive that it presents an accurate though general view of the whole continuous life of nations.

**Marsh's Ecclesiastical History, . . . . .** 2 00

Questions to ditto, . . . . . 75

Affording the History of the Church in all ages, with accounts of the pagan world during Biblical periods, and the character, rise, and progress of all Religions, as well as the various sects of the worshippers of Christ. The work is entirely non-sectarian, though strictly catholic.

*The National Series of Standard School-Books.*

# PENMANSHIP.

**Best System of Progressive Penmanship.**

This "ground hand" system of Penmanship in twelve numbers, commencing with the first number, is a complete and systematic course of instruction in the art of writing. It is the only system of penmanship that has been adopted by the National Education Association, and is the only one that has been adopted by the National Association of Teachers.

**Best Slated Copy Slips, per doz. . . . .** \*50

Being them with the form of the letters, the motions of the hand and arm, and the position of the body, as a complete series of writing-lessons, as a writing-lesson.

**Payson Dunton & Scribner's Copy-Books, P. 10x, 2 25**

The National System of Penmanship, in three distinct series—1. Common School Series, comprising the first six numbers; 2. Business Series, Nos. 7, 8, and 9; and 3. Ladies' Series, Nos. 10, 11, and 12.

**Fullon & Eastman's Chirographic Charts, \*3 75**

**Payson's Copy-Book Cover, per hundred . . . . .** \*8 00

**National Steel Pens, Gold and all kinds . . . . .** \*15

Gold Pens		Steel Pens	
Gold Pens, per gross	8 00	Steel Pens, per gross	15 00
Gold Pens, per doz.	80	Steel Pens, per doz.	150
Gold Pens, per gross	8 00	Steel Pens, per gross	15 00
Gold Pens, per doz.	80	Steel Pens, per doz.	150
Gold Pens, per gross	8 00	Steel Pens, per gross	15 00
Gold Pens, per doz.	80	Steel Pens, per doz.	150
Gold Pens, per gross	8 00	Steel Pens, per gross	15 00
Gold Pens, per doz.	80	Steel Pens, per doz.	150

**Stimpson's Scientific Steel Pen, per gross . . . . .** \*2 00

**Stimpson's Ink-Retaining Holder, per doz. . . . .** \*2 00

**Stimpson's Gold Pen, 23 00; with Ink Retainer . . . . .** \*1 50

**Stimpson's Penman's Card, . . . . .** \*1 50

These pens are made of the best steel and are the only ones that will retain the ink.

## BOOK-KEEPING

Smith & Martin's Book-keeping . . . . .	\$1 25
Blanks to ditto . . . . .	*60

This work is by a practical teacher and a practical book-keeper. It is of a thoroughly popular class, and will be welcomed by every one who loves to see theory and practice combined in an easy, concise, and methodical form.

The Single Entry portion is well adapted to supply a want felt in nearly all other treatises, which seem to be prepared mainly for the use of wholesale merchants, leaving retailers, mechanics, farmers, &c., who transact the greater portion of the business of the country, without a guide. The work is also commended, on this account, for general use in Young Ladies' Seminaries, where a thorough grounding in the simpler form of accounts will be invaluable to the future housekeepers of the nation.

The treatise on Double Entry Book-keeping combines all the advantages of the most recent methods, with the utmost simplicity of application, thus affording the pupil all the advantages of actual experience in the counting-house, and giving a clear comprehension of the entire subject through a judicious course of mercantile transactions.

The shape of the book is such that the transactions can be presented as in actual practice; and the simplified form of Blanks, three in number, adds greatly to the ease experienced in acquiring the science.

## DRAWING.

The Little Artist's Portfolio . . . . .	*50
25 Drawing Cards (progressive patterns), 25 Blanks, and a fine Artist's Pencil, all in one neat envelope.	

Clark's Elements of Drawing . . . . .	*1 00
---------------------------------------	-------

Containing full instructions, with appropriate designs and copies for a complete course in this graceful art, from the first rudiments of outline to the finished sketches of landscape and scenery.

Fowle's Linear and Perspective Drawing . . . . .	*60
--	-----

For the cultivation of the eye and hand, with copious illustrations and directions, which will enable the unskilled teacher to learn the art himself while instructing his pupils.

Monk's Drawing Books—Six Numbers, per set*2 25	
--	--

A series of progressive Drawing Books, presenting copy and blank on opposite pages. The copies are fac-similes of the best imported lithographs, the originals of which cost from 50 cents to \$1.50 each in the print-stores. Each book contains *eleven* large patterns. No. 1.—Elementary studies; No. 2.—Studies of Foliage; No. 3.—Landscapes; No. 4.—Animals, I.; No. 5.—Animals, II.; No. 6.—Marine Views, &c.

Ripley's Map Drawing . . . . .	1 25
--------------------------------	------

One of the most efficient aids to the acquirement of a knowledge of geography is the practice of map drawing. It is useful for the same reason that the best exercise in orthography is the *writing* of difficult words. Sight comes to the aid of hearing, and a double impression is produced upon the memory. Knowledge becomes less mechanical and more intuitive. The student who has sketched the outlines of a country, and dotted the important places, is little likely to forget either. The impression produced may be compared to that of a traveler who has been over the ground, while more comprehensive and accurate in detail.

